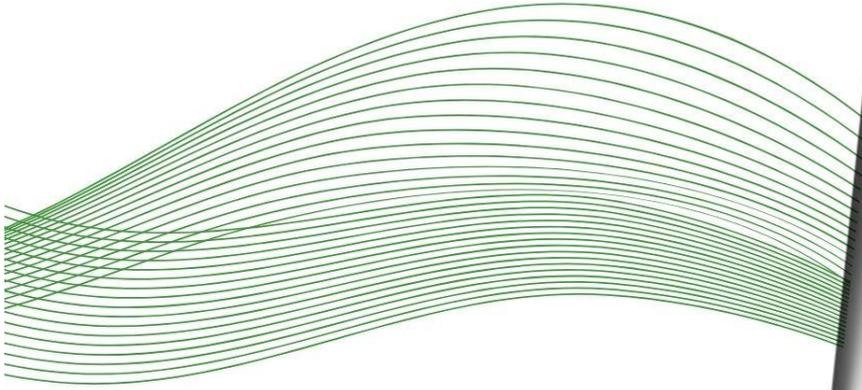


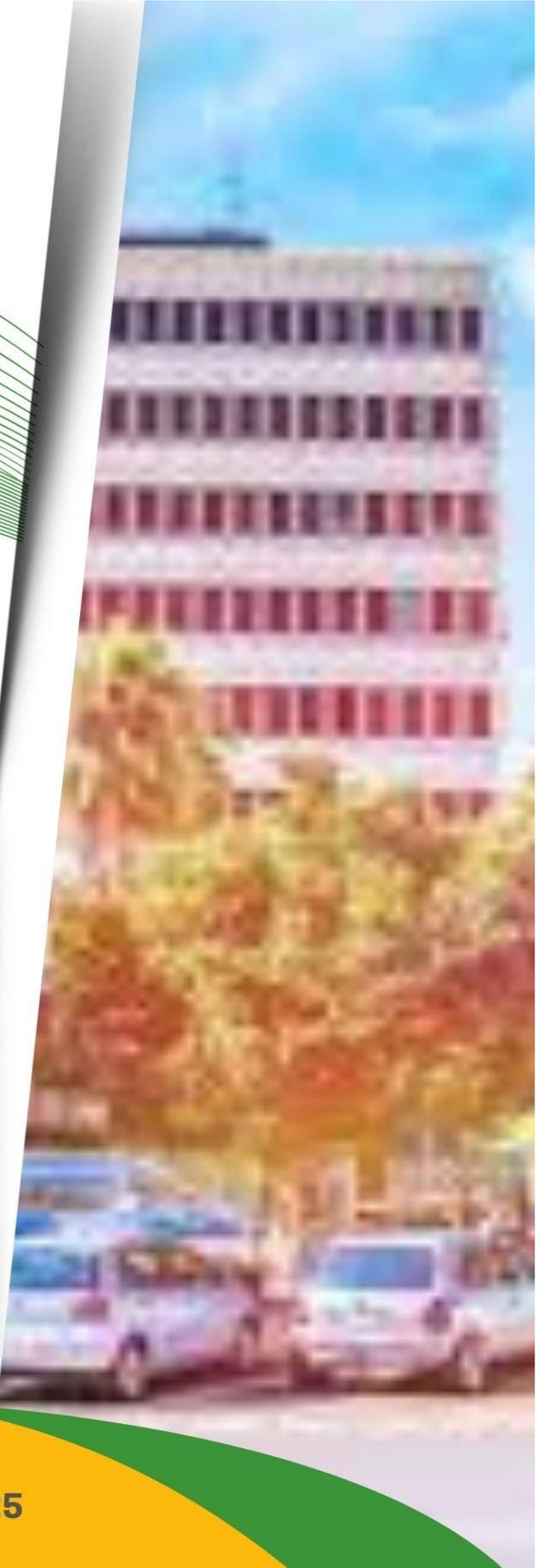


A smart and environmentally friendly city where all communities  
enjoy a high quality of life and diversity



# **IDP REVIEW**

## **2025/26**



**Adopted Per Item 60 of 31 March 2025**

## **1. WHAT IS THE INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN?**

**Main focus: Addressing the developmental imbalances of the past.**

The IDP is a process through which municipalities prepare a strategic development plan which extends over a five-year period. The IDP of the Rustenburg Local Municipality is a principal strategic planning instrument which guides and informs all planning, budgeting, management and decision-making processes.

**It is a tool aimed at achieving:**

- **focused and Proactive Management.**
- **matching Resources to Needs; and**
- **enabling Measuring Performance**

The plan is mostly informed by community needs, stakeholder inputs, a contextual analysis, and an evaluation of existing levels of services, all of which helps identify the challenges that the municipality is faced with and plan for the manner in which they may be addressed in order to achieve its vision. Priorities and objectives agreed to provide focus in addressing the most critical strategic challenges.

The implementation plan will then focus on only those key strategic programmes, projects and initiatives that are critical to support the achievement of strategic priorities during the review period of the 5-year term of the current council. The implementation plan called the Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) sets out which Directorate is responsible and accountable for each programme/project.

During this review period, the IDP will ensure the municipality addresses what is not working and continue to serve the community and support the growth of Rustenburg to make it a smart and environmentally friendly city where all communities enjoy a high quality of life and diversity. This is what happens to ensure the IDP was consulted on:

## RUSTENBURG! GET TO UNDERSTAND YOUR INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN PROCESS. #RLMIDP#

|    |   |    |  |
|----|---|----|--|
|    |   |    |  |
| 1. | The municipality collaborates and empowers the community through community-based meetings where the RLM finds what the needs are,   | 2. | At the end of the public participation process, the Strategy and Planning unit consolidates the information received then circulate to directorates for Analysis, formulation of strategies then propose projects for budgeting purpose. This is received as input into the IDP. |
| 3. | The draft IDP is tabled before council for adoption and subjected to a further public participation process allowing for inputs and comments. A 21-day period is granted for such comments to be submitted. | 4. | Once the draft IDP is crafted, a budget is compiled as informed by the IDP. Funds are then allocated for both Capital and Operational costs.   |
| 5. | The final draft IDP is tabled to council for approval and implementation. It no longer is referred to as a draft once approved.   | 6. | Implementation of the IDP and the Budget happens through the Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) as informed by both and entails information such as where a project will be implemented, when and how much does the project cost.                           |
|    |   |    |  |

**Diagram 1: RLM Strategic Agenda**

Municipal Vision, Mission, Strategic Priorities and Values. **The Vision, Mission and Strategic Priorities, including Municipal Values are:**

**Vision:** A smart and environmentally friendly city where all communities enjoy a high quality of life and diversity

**Mission:** To continuously improve quality of life by stimulating economic growth, improving quality of services through best practice, sustainability, and inclusive government.

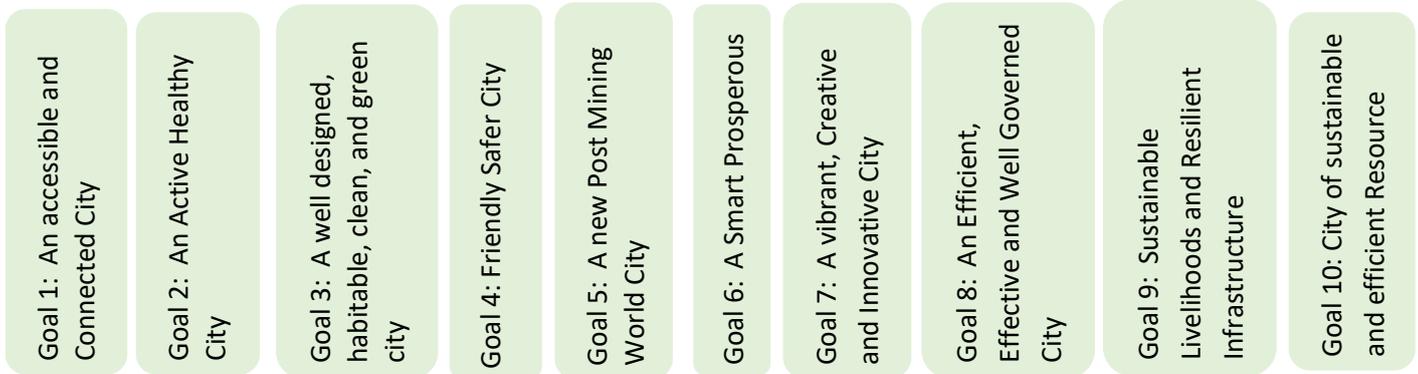
**Values**

Customer First, Integrity and Transparency & Speedy execution,

**Strategic Priorities (6)**



**Municipal Goals**



**Local Government Key Performance Areas (6)**

- KPA 1: Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development.
- KPA 2: Municipal Financial Viability and Management
- KPA 3: Spatial Rationale and Municipal Planning Alignment
- KPA 4: Local Economic Development and Job Creation
- KPA 5: Basic Service Delivery
- KPA 6: Good Governance and Public Participation

## Table of Contents

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Foreword by the Executive Mayor.....  | 1   |
| Municipal Manager’s Overview.....   | 3   |
| Executive summary.....  | 4   |
| 1. Contextual Analysis and Overview.....                                    | 10  |
| 2. Municipal overview, situational analysis and strategies.....             | 13  |
| 2.1 Provincial and Regional context.....                                    | 13  |
| 2.2 Local spatial features.....   | 13  |
| 2.3 Socio – economic profile.....   | 18  |
| 2.4 Rustenburg Strategic Framework.....                                     | 28  |
| 2.5 Managing the people’s contract.....                                     | 30  |
| 2.6 Rustenburg Strategic Priorities per Key Performance Area.....           | 33  |
| 2.6.1 Municipal Institutional Development and Transformation.....           | 33  |
| 2.6.2 Municipal Financial Viability .....                                   | 58  |
| 2.6.3 Spatial Analysis and Rational.....                                    | 61  |
| 2.6.4 Local Economic Development.....                                       | 91  |
| 2.6.5 Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development.....            | 111 |
| 2.6.6 Roads and Transport.....  | 180 |
| 2.6.7 Community Development.....  | 186 |
| 2.6.8 Public Safety.....  | 231 |
| 3. Alignment.....   | 277 |
| 4. Projects and Programmes.....   | 314 |
| 4.1 Capital Projects and Programs for the MTREF Period .....                | 315 |
| 4.2 Grant Funded.....   | 315 |
| 4.3 Internally Funded.....  | 315 |
| 4.4 Public Sector, Business and other Stakeholders’ Projects/Programs ..... | 318 |
| 4.5 District Development Model.....   | 317 |
| 5. Integration.....   | 318 |
| 6. Financial Plan.....  | 342 |
| 7. Performance Monitoring, Reporting and Evaluation Framework.....          | 423 |

## ACRONYMS

| Acronym  | Detail  |
|----------|---|
| IDP      | Integrated Development Plan   |
| CCTV     | Closed Circuit Television   |
| DLG&HS   | Department of Local Governance and Human settlements                      |
| GDP      | Gross Domestic Product  |
| CPI      | Consumer Price Index  |
| DPME     | Department: Monitoring and Evaluation                                     |
| DPLG     | Department of Provincial and Local Government                             |
| DTI      | Department of Trade and Industry  |
| EEP      | Employment Equity Plan  |
| EIA      | Environmental Impact Assessment   |
| GIS      | Geographic information system   |
| HH       | Households  |
| HIV/AIDS | Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infection/Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome |
| HRD      | Human Resource Development  |
| ICT      | Information and Communication Technology                                  |
| IT       | Information Technology  |
| IUDM     | Integrated Urban Development and Management                               |
| WAN      | Wireless Area Network   |
| LAN      | Local Area Network  |
| IRPTN    | Integrated Rapid Public Transport Network                                 |
| RRT      | Rustenburg Rapid Transport  |
| KPI      | Key performance Indicator   |
| LED      | Local Economic Development  |
| MFMA     | Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act 56 of 2003             |
| MIG      | Municipal Infrastructure Grant  |
| MM       | Municipal Manager   |
| MPRA     | Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Act 6 of 2004                  |
| MSA      | Local Government: Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000                        |
| MTREF    | Medium- term Revenue and Expenditure Framework                            |
| NDP      | National Development Plan   |
| NGO      | Non-government Organisation   |
| PIP      | Performance Improvement Plan  |
| PMS      | Performance Management System   |

| <b>Acronym</b> | <b>Detail</b>                                   |
|----------------|---|
| PMU            | Project Management Unit                         |
| PR             | Proportional Representation                     |
| SEDA           | Small Enterprise Development Agency             |
| SETA           | Sectoral Education Training Authority           |
| SMMEs:         | Small, Micro and Medium Enterprises             |
| SEO            | Search Engine Optimization                      |
| SCM            | Supply Chain Management                         |
| SDBIP          | Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan |
| SDF            | Spatial Development Framework                   |
| SLA            | Service Level Agreement                         |
| SHI            | Social Housing Institutions                     |
| WSP            | Workplace Skills Plan                           |

## **FOREWORD BY EXECUTIVE MAYOR**

The Rustenburg Local Council is in the fourth year of the current administration. At the beginning of this current term, upon the assumption of duties by elected public representatives of the City Council, a daunting task lay ahead of among others cushioning the consequences of the economic downturn that had affected the world, and from which Rustenburg was not spared.

The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) is hinged on coordinated planning considering the available funding combination processes coupled with available resources, for the betterment of socio-economic objectives. As stated in Chapter 4 of the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000, community participation is central to achieving the ideals of a transparent and accountable sphere of government. As such, development becomes result driven and impactful where the community participates in the affairs, programmes, and activities of the municipality which serves them. The success we have been able to register in the last two and a half years of the IDP process, would therefore not have been realized had it not been for the support of our local community and stakeholders.

It is for this reason, that the successful undertaking of an IDP process becomes central in achieving the legislative prescripts relating to participatory and inclusive governance. To that extent public participation allows communities to make input in the way in which service delivery ought to be implemented, addressing their needs in a priority-driven approach. As the sphere of government located at the doorstep of communities, with the purpose of dispensing service delivery, this process is critical in responding to the varying needs of our communities. Further to that, the process enables the communities to gain full insight into the various funding models and how expenditure is to be used in accordance with the applicable financial regulations. Where shortfalls are anticipated and identified, the community together with the Municipality reach a consensus on how priorities are to be addressed with the existing limitations. This process is not always a smooth one because community needs far outweigh the available resources. This, though a difficult and daunting process, counts with the principle of Batho Pele.

The inertia in the economy due to the Covid-19 pandemic which resulted in huge and devastating job losses and slow economic growth thereafter dented our city's revenue collection trends, something none of us could have anticipated, with severe consequences which until now are still evident in many sectors of the economy which had hit a slump already in the previous three financial years. This was evident in the mass exodus of job cuts in the mining sector, which Rustenburg's economic livelihood has been heavily dependent on. Moderate economic activity affected the continued implementation of the identified IDP objectives as the country was under a state of national disaster. The Municipality continues to keep a developmental agenda in the different facets of service delivery. The Municipality's responsibility is to ensure that it guards the implementation of the IDP process and reports intermittently as and when required by law on the progress, achievements, and challenges that may arise in the process. This forms part of the reporting during the annual review process in the interest of transparency and accountable governance principle.

Further to that, the economic recession, with the prolonged negative effects of the shrinking mining sector, which the City's GDP (Gross Domestic Product) has been heavily reliant on, has adversely affected the growth of the city. This as Rustenburg has begun a new developmental path of "Rustenburg beyond mining" which seeks to dispense development that is economically varied and broad to include other sectors of the City's economy critical in the development of its people thus reducing dependency on the mining sector. The Municipality has purchased parcels of land, which will address one of the longstanding challenges which have been consistent in the 5-year IDP, which is around housing the landlessness.

After concluding a successful transaction of land in Boshhoek, construction of low-cost housing will commence to accommodate a small farming community, who were victims of illegally forced removals by farm owners. The growth of informal settlements in our city continues to threaten our capacity to consistently dispense service delivery equitably and fairly, using the available human and infrastructural resources to meet the service delivery standards. Understanding the long-term effects of informal settlement growth, we are on course to finalize a relocation process to a new area of residents known to be from Plastic View.

With support from the provincial government the land which has already been purchased in Boitekong, will be home to under a thousand new households which will significantly reduce the number of informal settlements in our city. We are pleased to indicate that work to formalize Popo Molefe informal settlements where three contractors are appointed for installation and construction of internal services to 1600 sites can be reported. More work has been realized out of the inputs of our stakeholders and communities in line with the approved Medium-Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework (MTREF).

It is through this important action in implementing the IDP that we were able to roll out massive infrastructure projects, such as the capacitation of our bulk water, sanitation, and electrical capabilities to meet the current demands against the growth of the city. We continue to make great progress with implementation of bulk sewer infrastructure in Zendeling street, multimillion rand wastewater treatment plant (WWTP) in Lethabong, Tlhabane bulk sewer and water projects.

We have embarked on a programme to provide and maintain public roads in our wards across the city. Of these programmes we have invested in roads in Modikwe, Tlaseng, Phatsima amongst others and we continue to maintain many of our internal roads in and around the city. The implementation of these projects continues to address the previously identified service delivery backlogs of sewer spillages, poor quality drivable roads and lack of water in the identified areas.

Cleaning of the City's public spaces and sporting facilities as well as improving the sidewalks and outlook of our city is given priority. We are proud to be hosting a variety of sporting codes and we are hosts to the Orbit FC team which is playing its trade in the National First Division league. This city is also home to Spain FC of Boitekong who are playing in the Vodacom league. We are indeed very proud about the achievements of these teams, and we continue to support them through the free use of Olympia Park stadium and its amenities.

Rustenburg city has over the past year seen great interest and support from all the events that have been hosted and organised in Rustenburg. Markete Wa Pitori-Rustenburg Edition keeps on growing in popularity and in stature. Our local SMMEs can showcase their businesses and crafts. The monthly Farmers Market is drawing revelers from far and wide thus enhancing the local economy.

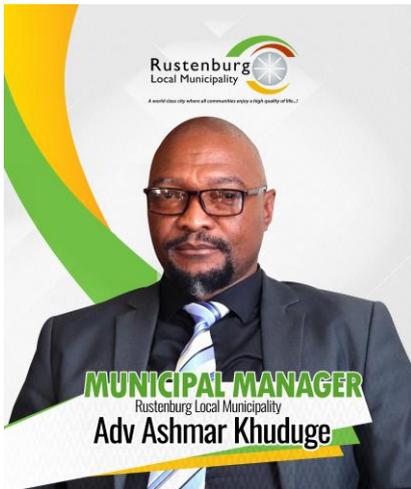
As the country celebrates thirty years of the dawn of our democracy this year and as we move towards the end of the term of this current administration, we do so knowing that ours is a journey of a thousand miles which started with the first step in November 2021. We will always lead alongside our people towards a world class city we thrive for.

Together we can do more.

I thank you.

Councillor Shiela Mabale-Huma  
Executive Mayor

## MUNICIPAL MANAGER'S OVERVIEW



This Integrated Development Plan (IDP) enunciates the basis to review and restructuring of administrative operations, assess the service quality and models as well as the operational efficacies to enable effective provisioning of services to the communities.

As the second review to the 2022/27 five-year IDP of the Rustenburg Local Municipality, the 2024/25 IDP review has not only focused on continued delivery of basic services even under immense pressure and uncertainty but has committed to uphold the notion of government and prioritise the needs of communities.

Through this IDP Review process, the gap between ideal (“nice to have”) and real projects (“achievable, measurable results”) is clearly shown and demonstrates quite clearly the extent to which

National, Provincial and District planning instruments have expression in the local plan. The recognition of the National Development Plan, National Spatial Planning Framework and other key National and Provincial planning instruments have remained essential.

Focus is given on a set of objectives to ensure that public resources are channelled to the programmes and projects that deliver the most benefit for the public, as equitably as possible. The activities of the municipality, its budget and the allocation of resources will be guided and informed by this plan.

The 2024/25 IDP review provides a clear sense of direction, centred on the municipality doing everything it can to support faster job creation and economic growth, creating programmes and projects to capture the municipality’s commitment to providing reliable and high-quality basic services and provides the necessary foundation for the municipality to function and prosper i.e. right service delivery at the right time.

In its development, communities were extensively engaged, and their inputs shaped the municipality’s priorities in delivering of the vision of a smart and environmentally friendly city where all communities enjoy a high quality of life and diversity.

I would like to thank those residents who provided input and comments during the development of this IDP. The impact of these objectives should be experienced, felt and become visible over the next year as the municipality collectively drives out this promise. I would like to thank the employees of the municipality for their continued dedication to delivering high quality services. I urge all employees to embrace this plan and ensure that its ambitious objectives are met for the benefit of all the residents of our municipality.

---

**Adv AR Khuduge**  
**Municipal Manager**

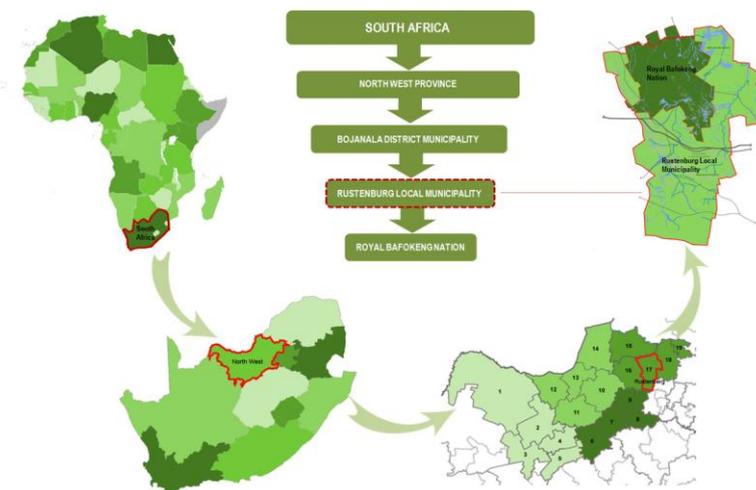
## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

### E.1. Background and Location of Rustenburg Local Municipality (RLM) (Who are we)

#### E.1.1 Location and Geography

Rustenburg Local Municipality forms part of the North-West Province that further forms part of the border between South Africa and Botswana. The North-West Province consists of 4 District Municipalities and 21 Local Municipalities with a geographical area of 116,180 km<sup>2</sup>. Rustenburg Local Municipality is located in Bojanala District Municipality. The total geographical area is 3,423 km<sup>2</sup>. The other municipalities falling under Bojanala District Municipality are Moretele Local Municipality, Local Municipality of Madibeng, Kgetlengrivier Local Municipality and Moses Kotane Local Municipality. Within Rustenburg Local Municipality is the Royal Bafokeng Nation (RBN), other Traditional Authorities such as the Bakubung baa- Mathope, Bakwena baa MmaMogale and Baphalane at Rankelenyane. The tribal authorities are a key stakeholder in the development of RLM. RBN occupies over 1500 km<sup>2</sup> of land located north of RLM.

Figure 2.1 shows the location hierarchy of RLM and RBN within the context of South Africa (IMP, 2014)



#### E.1.2 Connectivity

The Rustenburg Local Municipality is located in the eastern parts of the North-West Province and is accessible to a number of major South African urban centres. These centres include Johannesburg and Tshwane, which are located approximately 120km from Rustenburg. Smaller centres surrounding Rustenburg are Madibeng LM, Mogale City, Lichtenburg Town and Zeerust in the Ramotshere Moilwa Local Municipality. Rustenburg is linked to the above urban centres through an extensive regional road network. The most notable of these are the R49 connecting Rustenburg and Lichtenburg, N4 Freeway or Platinum Corridor, which links Rustenburg to Tshwane in the east and Zeerust to the west. The R24 links Rustenburg to Pretoria to the east, Johannesburg in the south and the Pilanesberg to the north. The routes within the municipality connects:

- The Rustenburg/Sun City road R565 links Rasimone, Luka and Phokeng to Rustenburg.
- The Rustenburg/Thabazimbi road (R510) links Tlaseng, Kanana and Boitekong to Rustenburg.
- The provincial road R556 links Pilanesberg to the N4 toll road east of Marikana (IMP, 2014).

## 1.2 IDP REVIEW PROCESS

---

The Review of the IDP is informed by section 34 of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act No. 32 of 2000) which also takes cue from section 21 of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act No. 56 of 2003) that requires that a municipal council should adopt a Time Schedule with clear deadlines and activities. The Time Schedule was approved by council on the 20 September 2024 per item 113. The Draft 2025/26 Integrated Development Plan (IDP) Review is in compliance with Section 29(1)(b) and 16(1)(a)(i) of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act No. 32 of 2000). Section 26 of the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 states that the Municipal IDP must reflect the under-mentioned components:

- a) the Municipal Council's Vision for long-term development with special emphasis on the municipality's most critical developments and internal transformation needs.
- b) An assessment of existing land for development in the Municipality, which must include an identification of communities which do not have access to basic services.
- c) the Council's development priorities and objectives for its elected term, including its local economic development aims and its internal transformation needs.
- d) the Council's developmental strategies which must be aligned with any National or Provincial Sector plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of legislation.
- e) a spatial development framework which must include the provision of basic guidelines for a land use management system for the municipality.
- f) the Council's operational strategies.
- g) applicable disaster management plans.
- h) a financial plan, which must include a budget projection for at least the next three years; and
- i) the key performance indicators and performance targets determined in terms of Section 41 of the Municipal Systems Act of 2000.

The structure of the Draft 2025/26 IDP Review is in line with the legislative provisions. The IDP highlights the Municipality's Vision, Priorities and Strategies, including key performance indicators and Performance Targets and Sector Plans as espoused therein.

This Section contains the Introduction & Legislative Framework which establishes the basis of the IDP emanating from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, the White paper on Local Government, Local Government: Municipal System Act No. 32 of 2000 and various other pieces of legislation. The Long-term Municipal Developmental Vision Statement is clearly outlined in this chapter which still remains to be the attainment of ***"A Smart and Environmentally friendly City where all communities enjoy a high quality of life and diversity"***. Section 1 further outlines the processes followed during the IDP review.

The section further looks at the Global, National and Provincial Policy context to ensure that the IDP aligns with the Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs), National (National Development Plan) as well as the Provincial agenda (North West Province Development Plan).

The IDP as detailed in this section sets out the Municipal Strategic agenda which includes the Vision, Mission, Municipal Values, Strategic Priorities/Thrusts as well as the Municipal Goals.

### 1.3 MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC AGENDA

In line with the global, national and provincial Vision directives noted above, the Rustenburg Local Municipality Strategic Agenda which includes a Vision, Mission, Municipal Values, Strategic Priorities/ Thrusts and Municipal Goals are reflected in **Diagram 1** below:

The document is duly aligned to the following global, national and provincial plans and programme: Agenda 2030, National Development Plan, Medium Term Strategic Framework, North West Development Plan, Back to Basics and National Outcomes.

### 1.4 AGENDA 2030 – SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS (SDGs)

Globally countries have a responsibility to report on implementation of the Sustainable Development Goals or Agenda 2030. The Rustenburg Local Municipality is one of the municipalities participating in the Voluntary Local Review (VLR) process which impacts in the National report – VNR.

There are 17 SDGs which are to be linked to projects/programmes implemented in different Directorates. For easy reporting, linkage should commence and be linked to PMS for monitoring purpose. The 17 Goals are:



The RLM selected 6 that was reported on in the VLR but there is a need to align all activities of the municipality to all goals.

### 1.5 NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL POLICY CONTEXT

Development in South Africa is broadly guided and directed by a wide range of legislation. Some legislation is sector specific e.g. housing, transport and environment, while others are more generic in nature, focusing on planning processes, alignment of planning processes and proposals, and the legal requirements pertaining to sector plans to be compiled.

The following section briefly deals with each of these and highlights the most salient aspects emanating from the aforementioned policies/ plans.

### **1.5.1 CONSTITUTION OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA 108 OF 1996**

The Constitution of South Africa, contained in Act 108 of 1996, is the supreme law of South Africa. Amongst other things, it prescribes different functions to different tiers of government to ensure the equitable and functional distribution of roles, responsibilities and duties. Accordingly, it has assigned specific functional areas to national, provincial and local government.

In terms of the Constitution, the Rustenburg Local Municipality is legally obliged to:

- Structure and manage its administration, budgeting and planning processes to give priority to the basic needs of the community, and to promote the social and economic development of the community; and
- Participate in national and provincial development programmes.

### **1.5.2 National Development Plan**

The National Development Plan envisages an economy that serves the needs of all South Africans – rich and poor, black and white, skilled and unskilled, those with capital and those without, urban and rural, women and men. The Vision is that by 2030 the economy should be close to full employment, equip people with the skills they need; ensure that ownership of production is less concentrated and more diverse (where black people and women own a significant share of productive assets); and be able to grow rapidly while providing the resources to pay for investment in human and physical capital.

Subsequently, the National Development Plan proposes to create 11 million jobs by 2030 by:

- Realising an environment for sustainable employment and inclusive economic growth;
- Promoting employment in labour-absorbing industries;
- Raising exports and competitiveness;
- Strengthening government's capacity to give leadership to economic development;
- Mobilising all sectors of society around a national vision.

Proposals to increase employment and growth include the following:

- Raise exports, focusing on those areas where South Africa already has the endowments and comparative advantage, such as mining, construction, mid-skill manufacturing, agriculture and agro-processing, tourism and business services;
- Increase the size and effectiveness of the innovation system, and ensure closer alignment with companies that operate in sectors consistent with the growth strategy;
- Improve the functioning of the labour market to help the economy absorb more labour, through reforms and specific proposals concerning dispute resolution and discipline;
- Support small businesses through better coordination of activities in small business agencies, development finance institutions, and public and private incubators;
- Improve the skills base through better education and vocational training;
- Increase investment in social and economic infrastructure to lower costs, raise productivity and bring more people into the mainstream of the economy;
- Reduce the regulatory burden in sectors where the private sector is the main investor, such as broadband internet connectivity, to achieve greater capacity and lower prices;

- Improve the capacity to the state to effectively implement economic policy;
- The upgrading of informal settlements;
- Public transport infrastructure and systems, including the renewal of the commuter rail fleet, supported by station and facilities upgrades to enhance links with road-based services;
- Producing about 20 000 MW of renewable electricity by 2030, importing electricity from the region, decommissioning 11 000 MW of aging coal-fired power stations, and accelerated investments in demand-side savings, including technologies such as solar water heating;
- To create a million jobs through agricultural development based on effective land production;
- Ensuring food security and the empowerment of farm workers, and promote industries such as agro-processing, tourism, fisheries and small enterprises in rural areas where potential exists.

### 1.5.3 Medium Term Development Plan (MTDP) 2024 - 2029

The Medium-Term Development Plan (MTDP) is Government’s strategic plan for the 2024 – 2029 which is a short-term plan of the National Development Plan. The MTDP be focused on the following three priorities:

- Drive inclusive growth and Job creation
- Reduce Poverty and Tackle the High cost of living
- Build a Capable, Ethical and Developmental State

The RLM has priorities aligned to the MTDP priorities which will be used to impact on delivery when measuring implementation.

### 1.5.4 North West Province Development Plan

The North-West Provincial Development Plan (PDP) is predominantly based on the National Development Plan (NDP) and attempts to align with the vision, objectives and priorities of a united South Africa by 2030.

### 1.6 People-driven IDP and Budget Processes

In an effort to re-affirm community needs, wards visitations in the form of Mayoral Imbizo were undertaken during November and December 2024. Needs identified are summarized below.

| DIRECTORATE                  | TYPE OF SERVICE               | CAPITAL (TOTAL NUMBER OF WARDS) | ORDER OF RANKING |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|
| TECHNICAL AND INFRASTRUCTURE | Water                         | 45                              | 1                |
|                              | Electricity                   | 32                              | 2                |
|                              | Sanitation                    | 16                              | 5                |
| ROADS AND TRANSPORT          | Roads and Stormwater Drainage | 21                              | 4                |
|                              | Sidewalks                     | 10                              | 7                |
| COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT        | Parks And Open Spaces         | 8                               | 9                |
|                              | Cemeteries                    | 4                               | 11               |
|                              | Community Halls               | 11                              | 6                |
|                              | Waste                         | 4                               | 11               |
|                              | Environment                   |                                 |                  |

| DIRECTORATE                   | TYPE OF SERVICE                    | CAPITAL (TOTAL NUMBER OF WARDS) | ORDER RANKING OF |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|
| PLANNING AND HUMAN SETTLEMENT | Housing                            | 25                              | 3                |
|                               | Buildings And Vacant Stands        | 5                               | 10               |
|                               | Informal Settlements Formalization |                                 |                  |
| PUBLIC SAFETY                 | Disaster And Fire                  | 1                               | 13               |
|                               | Community Safety                   |                                 |                  |
|                               | Licensing And Testing              |                                 |                  |
| LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT    | Hawkers' stalls                    | 2                               | 12               |
|                               | SMME Development                   | 5                               | 10               |
|                               | Job Creation                       | 45                              | 7                |
|                               | Youth and Women Development        | 45                              | 11               |
| SPECIAL PROJECTS/PROGRAMMES   | Satellite/Police Station           | 8                               | 9                |
|                               | Education/School                   | 9                               | 8                |
|                               | Grants Pay Point                   | 2                               |                  |
|                               | Clinic/ Health Issues              | 11                              | 6                |
|                               | Post Office                        | 2                               | 12               |
|                               | Shopping Mall/Complex              | 1                               | 13               |

## CHAPTER 1: CONTEXTUAL ANALYSIS AND OVERVIEW

### WHAT IS THE INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN?

#### **Main focus: Addressing the developmental imbalances of the past.**

The IDP is a process through which municipalities prepare a strategic development plan which extends over a five-year period. The IDP of the Rustenburg Local Municipality is a principal strategic planning instrument which guides and informs all planning, budgeting, management and decision-making processes.

- **It is a tool aimed at achieving:**
- **focused and Proactive Management;**
- **matching Resources to Needs; and**
- **enabling Measuring Performance**

The plan is mostly informed by community needs, stakeholder inputs, a contextual analysis, and an evaluation of existing levels of services, all of which helps identify the challenges that the municipality is faced with and plan for the manner in which they may be addressed in order to achieve its vision. Priorities and objectives agreed to provide focus in addressing the most critical strategic challenges.

The implementation plan will then focus on only those key strategic programmes, projects and initiatives that are critical to support the achievement of strategic priorities during the review period of the 5-year term of the current council. The implementation plan called the Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) sets out which Directorate is responsible and accountable for each programme/project.

During this review period, the IDP will ensure the municipality addresses what is not working and continue to serve the community and support the growth of Rustenburg to make it a smart and environmentally friendly city where all communities enjoy a high quality of life and diversity.

### 1.1 LEGAL BACKGROUND

The objectives of Local Government are based on a co-operative government framework that encourages participation of all Municipal Councils as well as the Provincial and National spheres of Government in public policy setting, development planning and the delivery of services.

The Constitutional Mandate for Municipalities is that they strive, within their Financial and Administrative capacity, to achieve these objectives and carry out the developmental duties assigned to Local Government. Municipal Councils therefore take charge of the following principal responsibilities:

- The provision of democratic and accountable government without favour of prejudice;
- Encouraging the involvement of the local community;
- Providing all members of the local community with equitable access to the municipal services that they are entitled to;
- Planning at the local and regional levels for the development and future requirements of the area;

- Monitoring the performance of the Municipality by carefully evaluating Budget Reports and Annual Performance Reports to avoid financial difficulties, and if necessary, to identify causes and remedial measures for the identified Financial and Administrative challenges;
- Providing services, facilities and financial capacity within the guidelines provided by the Constitution and Legislative Authority.

Against this backdrop, Integrated Development Planning is a process through which a Municipality, various national, provincial and parastatal service providers, and private interested and affected parties come together to identify development needs, and to outline clear objectives and strategies which serve to guide the allocation and management of financial, human and infrastructure resources within the Municipality's jurisdictional area.

From this planning process emanates the Municipal Integrated Development Plan (IDP), with its main objective being the improvement of coordination and integration of planning, budgeting and development within the Municipal area. As a five (5) year budgeting, decision-making, strategic planning and development tool, the IDP is used by the Municipality to fulfil its role of '*developmental local governance*'. Central to this are the overarching objectives and strategies encapsulated in the plan, which guide the Municipality in the realm of:

- Municipal Budgeting;
- Institutional Restructuring in order to realise the strategic intent of the plan;
- Integrating various sectors in the form of Infrastructure, Land Use, Economic, Social and Ecological dimensions; and
- Performance Management.

In addition to the legal requirement for every Municipality to compile an Integrated Development Plan as referred to above, the Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000 (MSA) also requires that:

- The IDP be implemented;
- The Municipality monitors the implementation of the IDP;
- The Municipality evaluates its performance with regard to the implementation of the IDP; and
- The IDP be reviewed annually to effect improvements where necessary.

Section 34 of the Act deals with the Review and Amendment of the IDP and states that:

"The Municipal Council:

- a) Must review its Integrated Development Plan
  - i) annually in accordance with an assessment of its performance measures in terms of Section 41 and;
  - ii) to the extent that changing circumstances so demand and;
- b) May amend its Integrated Development Plan in accordance with the prescribed process".

The annual review process thus relates to the assessment of the Municipality's performance against organisational objectives as well as implementation delivery and also takes into cognisance any new

information or change in circumstances that might have arisen subsequent to the adoption of the previous IDP. The review and amendment process must also adhere to the requirements for public participation as articulated in Chapter 4 of the MSA (2000). The IDP process described above represents a continuous cycle of planning, implementation, monitoring and review. Implementation commences after the Municipal Council adopts the Final IDP and Budget for the subsequent financial year and implementation feeds into the Performance Management System of the municipality. Public Participation remains pivotal throughout the process of the IDP.

In line with the above directives this document represents the Draft Revised Integrated Development Plan as prepared by the Rustenburg Local Municipality (RLM) as part of its 2024/25 IDP Review process. It is submitted and prepared in fulfilment of the Municipality's legal obligation in terms of Section 34 of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (MSA Act 32 of 2000).

## 1.2 FREE BASIC SERVICES

The free basic services and indigent support were provided by the Rustenburg Local Municipality in the following manner:

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| <b>Water</b>          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Free basic water of 6kl per household per month;</li> <li>• Additional free basic water of 3kl per indigent household per month;</li> <li>• Water leak fixing for indigent households;</li> <li>• Free stand pipe water for informal settlements</li> </ul>  |
| <b>Sewerage</b>       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Free basic sewer per household per month;</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Electricity</b>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Free basic electricity of 50kWh per month for all Tariff A users;</li> <li>• Free basic electricity to Eskom supply areas. This amount is based on the FBE rate as per the NERSA Guidelines and is further based on number of registered indigents in the areas where Eskom supplies electricity to residents of Rustenburg Local Municipality;</li> </ul> |
| <b>Refuse removal</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Free weekly refuse collection for indigent households;</li> <li>• Free refuse removal service to informal settlements</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Property rates</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• First R100 000 assessment rates rebate to residential properties;</li> <li>• Hundred per cent (100%) assessment rates rebate to indigent households;</li> <li>• Additional assessment rates rebates to pensioners</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Other support</b>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Indent Support Policy has assisted several community members living in poverty and squalor to be buried in dignity with almost no charge.</li> </ul>   |

## CHAPTER 2: MUNICIPAL OVERVIEW AND SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS AND STRATEGIES

---

### 2.1 PROVINCIAL AND REGIONAL CONTEXT

---

Rustenburg Local Municipality is one of 21 local municipalities in North West Province and forms part of the Bojanala District Municipality. It represents the core part of platinum mining in South Africa, and the N4 Platinum Development Corridor runs from east to west through the municipal area.

The RLM accommodates about 16% of the provincial population, and it is estimated that it will in future experience significant population growth (up to 32.9% of the provincial population growth). At present it also represents about 18% of the provincial housing backlog ( $\pm$  60 000 units).

As illustrated on **Figure 1**, Rustenburg Town is classified as one of five primary nodes in the provincial SDF, but it also comprises a large number of Villages, Towns and Small Dorpies (second, third and fourth order nodes).

In the context of the Bojanala District (**Figure 2**) it is clear that the bulk of platinum mining activity is located in the RLM area. From here it extends northwards towards Moses Kotane LM (west of the Pilanesberg) and eastwards past Marikana towards Madibeng LM. The platinum mining belt runs parallel to the north of the Magalies Mountain which extends from the Pilanesberg right up to the City of Tshwane to the far east. Also evident is the concentration of informal settlements along the mining belt.

Another prominent feature is the large number of rural villages and small towns located in the northern extents of the District, and more specifically in Moses Kotane, northern parts of Rustenburg, Madibeng and the Moretele municipalities. Most of these areas are under traditional leadership.

The regional road and railway network traversing the district provides good accessibility to the majority of areas in the district and surrounding provinces (Limpopo and Gauteng). Most notable in this regard is the N4 Development Corridor.

### 2.2 LOCAL SPATIAL FEATURES

---

#### 2.2.1 Structuring Elements

From **Figure 3** it is evident that four major elements have shaped the historical development of the settlement patterns in the RLM area:

- **Rustenburg town** represents the centre of population concentration, employment opportunities and shopping opportunities. This attracted urban development towards the town.
- The **Magalies Mountain Range** traverses the municipal area south of Rustenburg Town and inhibited urban expansion in a south westerly direction. Hence, urban expansion was forced in a northern and north-easterly direction.
- The **Provincial Roads** that cross the Rustenburg Municipal Area have had a profound impact on the shape of urban development within the municipal area. Two provincial roads traversing the

municipal area can be distinguished as having the largest impact on urban development in the region. These roads are the Rustenburg/Sun City road (R565) that links Rasimone, Luka and Phokeng to Rustenburg; and the Rustenburg/Thabazimbi road (R510) that links Tlaseng, Kanana and Boitekong to Rustenburg.

- The **Platinum Mines**, running parallel to the north of the Magaliesberg mountain range, have dramatically shaped the settlement pattern in the municipal area. On the one hand, it fragmented urban development by creating physical barriers such as transport facilities, pipelines, infrastructure and surface mining infrastructure between Rustenburg and the settlements located north of the mining belt, (e.g. Boitekong). On the other hand, it also led to the development of isolated towns such as Luka, Kanana, Thekwane and Photsaneng in close proximity to mining activities (job opportunities).

### 2.2.2 Settlement Patterns

Four broad types of settlements can be distinguished in the RLM:

- **Formal Urban Settlements** have a formal (proclaimed) layout plan with registered erven and erf numbers; are serviced with a full range of municipal services; and the households can obtain security of tenure. These include areas such as Rustenburg, Tlhabane, Boitekong, Phatsima, Hartbeesfontein, Kroondal and Marikana.
- **Tribal Settlements** are located on Bafokeng, Bakubung and Baphalane tribal land and the households living in these settlements are considered traditional citizens. Although these households do not own title deeds, they have security of tenure (permission to occupy) through their association with the tribe and are characterised by varying levels of service.
- **Rural Settlements** are settlements that are similar in nature to the tribal settlements with regard to the residential densities and functions, but they are not located on tribal land.
- **Informal Settlements** have mainly developed along the mining belt and close to mine shafts. These include areas such as Mbeki Sun, Nkaneng, Zakhele, Popo Molefe, Freedom Park etc. The 39 informal settlements in the RLM area are characterised by a lack of security of tenure and a lack of basic municipal services. Collectively these areas represent at least 24 000 households. The total number of households residing in informal structures (including backyard units and informal units in traditional authority areas) in the RLM municipal area is about 68 800 units.

### 2.2.3 Open Space and Protected Areas

The natural landscape of Rustenburg is primarily defined by its mountain ranges and water sources which comprises the prominent topographic features in the municipal area (refer to Figure 3). Certain areas within the Rustenburg Municipal Area are protected by environmental legislation including:

- ***Kgaswane Game Reserve***

Located south-west of Rustenburg, this 4000-hectare reserve is located against the northern slopes of the Magaliesberg. A unique feature of this reserve is an extensive valley basin which lies between the ridges of the Magaliesberg. To the west of this basin lies a large plateau. The plateau and the basin form a catchment area that drains into ravines, most of which have water for at least part of the year. The Magaliesberg ridges are characterised by giant quartz-site boulders and rocky mountain slopes.

- ***Vaalkop Dam Nature Reserve***

The Vaalkop Dam Nature Reserve lies near Beestekraal, north-east of Rustenburg. An 800ha section of the reserve has been set aside as a bird sanctuary, which is not open to the general public. The reserve hosts over 340 species of birds. In addition, the reserve is stocked with a variety of bushveld game species and the dam is stocked with many fish species. A section of the dam has been set aside for water sports.

- ***Magaliesburg Protected Environment***

Although not a formal proclaimed nature reserve it is protected in terms of a previous Administrators notice, as well as the recently completed Environmental Management Framework for the Magaliesberg Protected Environment.

The recently listed **Magaliesberg Biosphere** stretches from Rustenburg Local Municipality in North West Province up to the City of Tshwane in Gauteng Province. It comprises three functional areas:

- a) a legally constituted core area devoted to long term protection, according to the conservation objectives of the Biosphere Reserve, and of sufficient size to meet these objectives;
- b) A buffer zone or zones clearly identified and surrounding or contiguous to the core areas, where only activities compatible with the conservation objectives can take place;
- c) An outer transition area where sustainable resource management practices are promoted and developed.

The Magaliesberg Biosphere reserve has three core areas viz: Kgaswane Mountain Reserve (North West Province); Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site (Gauteng Province) and the Magaliesberg Protected Environment, which straddles both Gauteng and North West Provinces.

The Rustenburg Environmental Management Framework defined four Environmental Management Zones in the RLM area:

- **The Conservation Management Zone**

The conservation management zone comprises conservation areas such as open spaces, proclaimed and non-proclaimed protected areas (i.e. heritage sites and tourism areas). These areas are characterised by their biodiversity, ecological, cultural and recreational importance. Conservation areas in this context refer to areas of high biodiversity and ecological status, which are not necessarily in proclaimed areas.

- **Aquatic Systems Management Zone**

This zone represents all aquatic systems in RLM and they include rivers or watercourses, streams, dams and wetlands. These systems are under severe pressure of pollution and degradation due to

unmonitored activities that occur near them; hence these areas need specific strategic management interventions.

- **Agricultural Management Zone**

RLM is mainly characterised by commercial farming that ranges from citrus to vegetable farming. Furthermore, some rural parts of RLM also practice subsistence farming of maize, sunflower and vegetables. Historically, agriculture used to be the main RLM GDP contributor. However, due to trade-offs to other activities such as mining and development, agriculture has turned into a less preferred source of income resulting in loss of high potential agricultural land. The agricultural management zone also includes agricultural holding land that must be saved for current/ future agricultural activities.

- **Built up Management Zone**

Built up areas refer to areas with existing urban activities/ land use development.

#### **2.2.4 Agriculture**

The majority of agricultural activities take the form of commercial dry-land farming which is mainly concentrated in the extreme southern parts of the municipality. There are also notable areas of commercial agriculture in the central parts immediately north and south of the N4 between Kroondal and the eastern boundary of the municipality, as well as in the north-western parts along the foothills of the Magaliesberg mountain range in the vicinity of Boschoek. Agricultural activities in the central and northeastern parts of the municipality are very limited.

The occurrence of irrigated agriculture is mainly based in the extreme southeastern parts of the municipality as well as in the areas south and southwest of Kroondal. The occurrence of cultivated small holdings is extensive in the central parts of the municipality, especially around the Kroondal node.

From a climatic perspective, the municipal area is marginal for dry land cultivation with the mean annual rainfall in the central and southern parts being between 600mm and 800mm and between 400mm and 600mm in the northern parts. In addition, high evaporation rates, especially in summer, mean that any drought period in the growing season can easily lead to moisture stress for crops.

The main source of income derived from agricultural products in the Rustenburg area is from animals (46.6%), field crops (25.1%) and animal products (23.9%). The income from animal products in the Rustenburg area is the most prominent of all municipalities in North-West Province accounting for 22.2% of total income derived from this source within the province. In the case of animals, horticulture and field crops, the extent of production in the Rustenburg area represents 12.1%, 5.0%, and 4.8% of the provincial total respectively.

#### **2.2.5 Mining**

The economic, social and physical characteristics of Rustenburg have been largely determined by the presence of mining activities within the Municipal Area. Mining activities are mainly concentrated along a geological belt, known as the Bushveld Complex. This part of the Bushveld Complex is one of the most heavily mineralised districts in the world and the platinum mines in this region are the largest producers of platinum in the world. The Merensky Reef and the UG2 chromite layers are

renowned for their Platinum Group Metal (PGM) content and together they form the world's largest depository of PGMs.

Apart from chrome and platinum, other minerals mined in the region are tin, lead, marble, granite and slate. Underground mining predominates, although open cast mining also exists. The Platinum-Group Metals (PGM) constitute a family of six chemically similar elements. Their excellent catalytic qualities, resistance to corrosion, chemical inertness and high melting points render them most suitable for a number of specialist applications.

Rustenburg Platinum Mines (RPM), which belongs to the Anglo-American Platinum Corporation Limited (Anglo Platinum), is the largest single producer, and operates three geographically separate sections: Rustenburg, Union and Amandelbult Sections, all on the western limb. The other mines on the western limb are Impala Platinum Holdings Limited's Impala Platinum and Crocodile River (through Barplats Investments Limited) mines; Lonmin Platinum's Eastern Platinum, Western Platinum and Karee mines; Northam Platinum Limited's Northam Mine, and Aquarius Platinum's Kroondal and Marikana mines.

### **2.2.6 Tourism**

The main local tourism attractions the region has to offer, are closely linked to the comparative advantages the area has to offer with regard to its natural assets, the occurrence of many heritage sites relating to iron/stone age, Anglo-boer history and indigenous tribes such as the Tswana and Ndebele, and the variety of minerals and mining activities found in the area.

Most of the tourism and accommodation establishments are located in the immediate Rustenburg area (71%) with the remainder being in the Buffelspoort/ Mooinooi/ Maanhaarand area (16%), at Vaalkop dam (5%), at Boshhoek (4%) or near Magaliesburg (4%).

Tourism plays an increasingly important role within the Rustenburg Municipal Area. The typical Bushveld climate and vegetation of the Municipal Area, as well as the unique topography of the Magaliesberg, offer several opportunities for tourism. These include opportunities for eco-tourism, as well as tourism associated with the variety of historical and cultural interests found within the municipal area. Primary tourism areas and facilities located within the municipal area are as follows:

- Rustenburg Town;
- Kgaswane Game Reserve;
- Vaalkop Dam Nature Reserve;
- Kroondal;
- Bafokeng Sport Palace; and
- Buffelspoort Dam.
- Olifantsnek Dam

Despite the above-mentioned tourist attractions, the most prominent regional tourist destination is not located within the RLM area itself, but on its borders. The broader region has some of the finest game parks, cultural and archaeological sites and entertainment resorts in South Africa, including:

- Pilanesberg National Park;

- Madikwe Game Reserve;
- Sun City and Lost City Resort; and
- Cradle of Humankind.

## **2.3 SOCIO-ECONOMIC PROFILE<sup>1</sup>**

"Demographics", or "population characteristics", includes analysis of the population of a region. Distributions of values within a demographic variable, and across households, as well as trends over time are of interest.

In this section, an overview is provided of the demography of the Rustenburg Local Municipality and all its neighbouring regions, Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, North-West Province and South Africa as a whole.

The analysis contained herein provides challenges and opportunities faced in the development process. They tie directly into areas highlighted within the Master Plan 2030 and provide focal points towards targeted interventions the municipality aims to concentrate on.

### **2.3.1 DEMOGRAPHIC PROFILE OF THE MUNICIPALITY**

#### **INTRODUCTION**

The demographic chapter provides an overview of the key demographic indicators that will inform municipal planning and budgeting.

The chapter will investigate the estimated population size and the density thereof, the distribution of the population within the age cohorts, dependency ratios as well as the household size and density in the Rustenburg Local Municipal area.

The following Statistical Overview Report aims to quantify the economic, demographic and socio-economic environment of Rustenburg Local Municipality in context of its neighbouring regions, the district, the province and South Africa. A better understanding of the demographic, economic and socio-economic environment could inform stakeholders to implement and monitor plans and policies that will allow for a healthy, growing and inclusive economy and society.

Understanding the changes in the composition of the population with respect to population group, age and gender is vital in the face of growing pressure on food, energy, water, jobs and social support on the country's citizens. An understanding of how the total fertility rates, age-specific fertility rates, sex ratios at birth, life expectancies and international migration affect the respective population groups, ages and genders is essential for effective planning on a spatial level.

#### **Demography**

"Demographics", or "population characteristics", includes analysis of the population of a region. Distributions of values within a demographic variable, and across households, as well as trends over time are of interest.

In this section, an overview is provided of the demography of the Rustenburg Local Municipality as a comparison between the 2011 and 2022 population census.

### **Total Population**

Population statistics is important when analysing an economy, as the population growth directly and indirectly impacts employment and unemployment, as well as other economic indicators such as economic growth and per capita income.

Total population - Rustenburg, between 2011 and Total, 2022 [Numbers and percentages]

With 562 031 people, the Rustenburg Local Municipality housed 1.2% of South Africa's total population in 2022 while in 2011 census figures were at 549 575 which shows a growth by 12 456 people.

Total population - Rustenburg 2011 and 2022

| Name             | 2022    | 2011    |
|------------------|---------|---------|
| Total population | 562 031 | 549 575 |

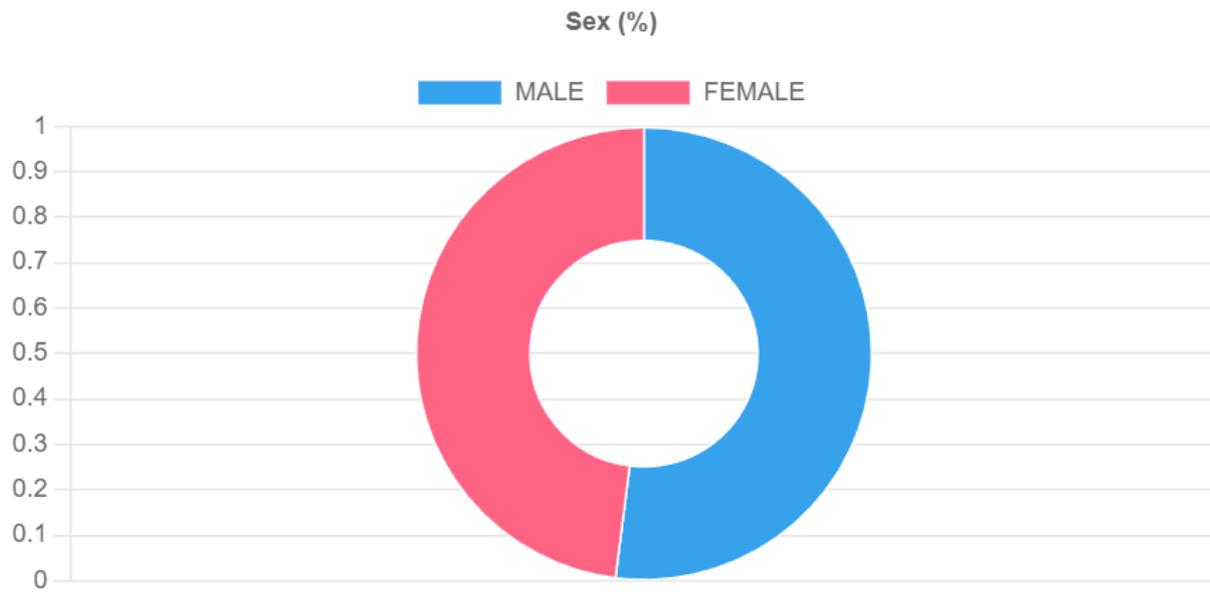
*Source: STATSSA census 2022*

Population by gender - Rustenburg Local Municipality, 2022 [Census].

Population Pie chart

A population pie chart is a graphic representation of the population categorised by gender, for a specific year. The horizontal axis depicts the share of people, where the male population is charted on the right-hand side and the female population on the left-hand side of the chart.

Population pie chart by gender - Rustenburg Local Municipality



Data Source: Stats SA census 2022

|        |         |       |
|--------|---------|-------|
| MALE   | 292 290 | 52,0% |
| FEMALE | 269 741 | 48,0% |

By comparing the population of the Rustenburg Local Municipality, the most significant differences are:

| Age   | Male   | Male (%) | Female | Female (%) |
|-------|--------|----------|--------|------------|
| 85+   | 431    | 0,1%     | 1 024  | 0,2%       |
| 80-84 | 662    | 0,1%     | 1 289  | 0,2%       |
| 75-79 | 1 483  | 0,3%     | 2 118  | 0,4%       |
| 70-74 | 2 558  | 0,5%     | 3 197  | 0,6%       |
| 65-69 | 4 817  | 0,9%     | 5 129  | 0,9%       |
| 60-64 | 7 750  | 1,4%     | 8 040  | 1,4%       |
| 55-59 | 12 040 | 2,1%     | 10 008 | 1,8%       |
| 50-54 | 14 347 | 2,6%     | 12 027 | 2,1%       |
| 45-49 | 18 936 | 3,4%     | 15 148 | 2,7%       |

| Age   | Male   | Male (%) | Female | Female (%) |
|-------|--------|----------|--------|------------|
| 40-44 | 26 679 | 4,7%     | 20 275 | 3,6%       |
| 35-39 | 31 122 | 5,5%     | 26 070 | 4,6%       |
| 30-34 | 30 594 | 5,4%     | 29 857 | 5,3%       |
| 25-29 | 26 947 | 4,8%     | 27 173 | 4,8%       |
| 20-24 | 23 298 | 4,1%     | 21 502 | 3,8%       |
| 15-19 | 19 655 | 3,5%     | 19 210 | 3,4%       |
| 10-14 | 22 073 | 3,9%     | 21 468 | 3,8%       |
| 5-9   | 21 433 | 3,8%     | 21 098 | 3,8%       |
| 0-4   | 27 507 | 4,9%     | 25 111 | 4,5%       |

Data Source: Stats SA Census 2022

### Sex and Age Distribution (%)



Data Source: Stats SA Census 2022

There is a significantly larger share of working age people - aged 15-64 years 70.0% - in 2022, compared to the 72,5% in 2011. This is an indication that unemployment is growing thus poverty may end up being high which influences factors such as crime and gender-based violence amongst others.

Fertility in Rustenburg is slightly lower compared to South Africa as a whole.

The share of children between the ages of 0 to 14 years makes up (24,7%) in 2022 compared to (24,1%) in 2011. Demand for expenditure on schooling as percentage of total budget within Rustenburg Local Municipality will therefore be lower than that of South Africa.

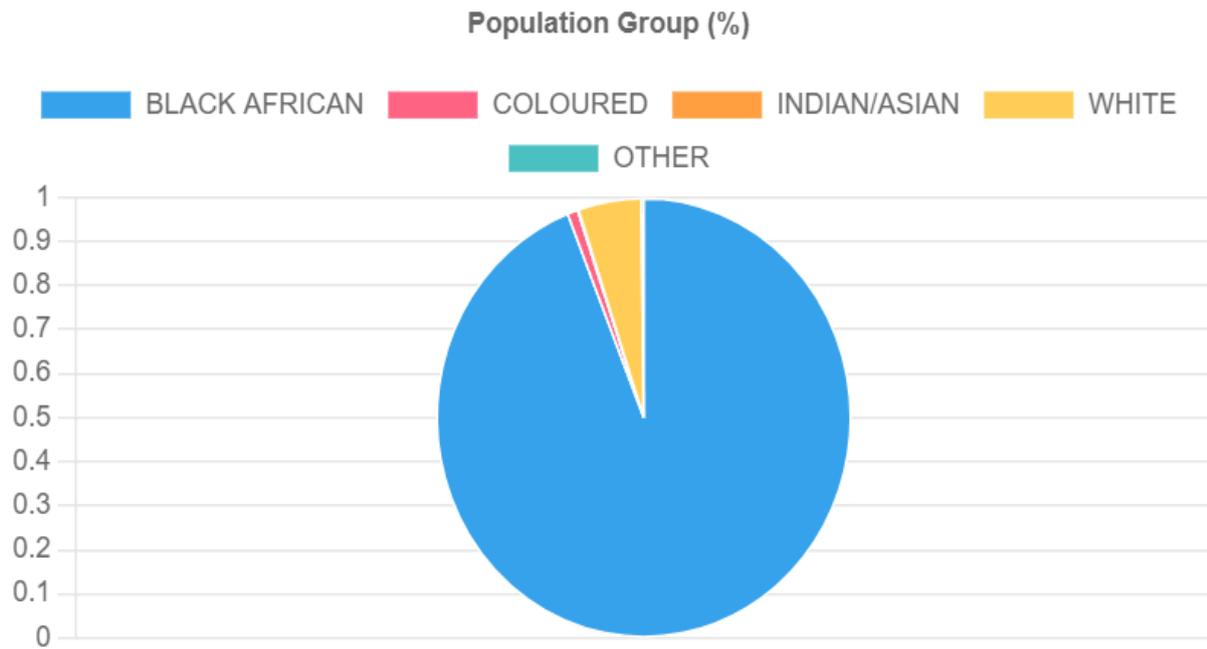
Life expectancy is increasing.

In 2020, the female population for the 20 to 34 years age group amounted to 14.9% of the total female population while the male population group for the same age amounted to 18.0% of the total male population. In 2010 the male working age population at 18.3% still exceeds that of the female population working age population at 14.6%.

A household is either a group of people who live together and provide themselves jointly with food and/or other essentials for living, or it is a single person living on his/her own. An individual is considered part of a household if he/she spends at least four nights a week within the household. To categorise a household according to population group, the population group to which the head of the household belongs, is used.

| <b>Population Group</b> | <b>Frequency</b> | <b>%</b> |
|-------------------------|------------------|----------|
| BLACK AFRICAN           | 528 206          | 94,0%    |
| COLOURED                | 4 412            | 0,8%     |
| INDIAN/ASIAN            | 617              | 0,1%     |
| WHITE                   | 27 296           | 4,9%     |
| OTHER                   | 1 317            | 0,2%     |

Data Source: Stats SA Census 2022



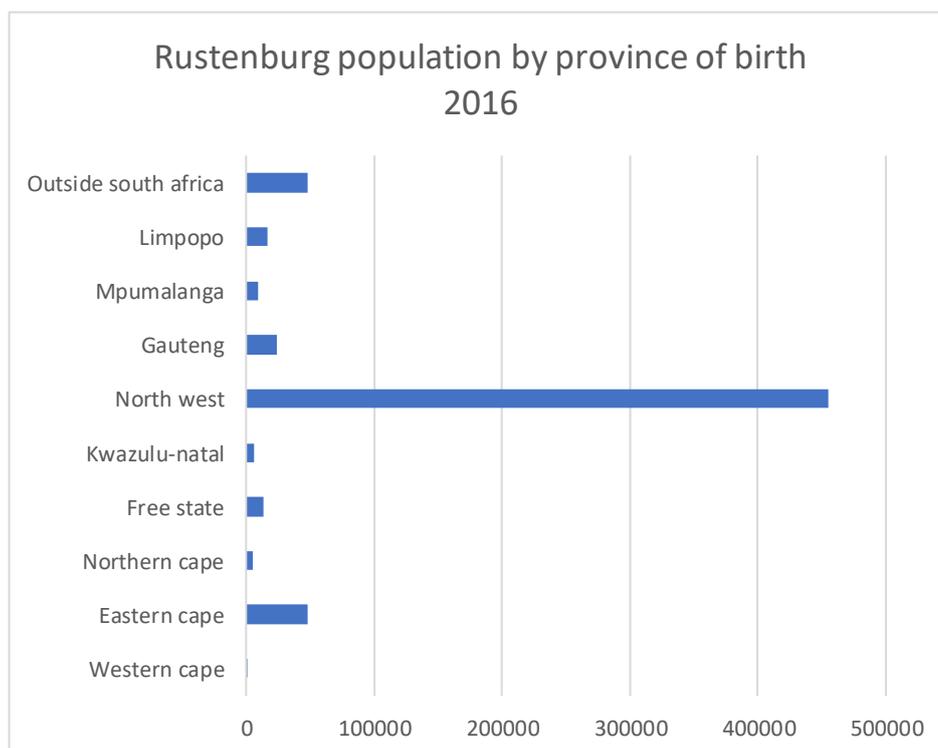
Data Source: Stats SA census 2022

If the number of households is growing at a faster rate than that of the population it means that the average household size is decreasing, and vice versa. In 2020, the Rustenburg Local Municipality comprised of **239 000** households. This equates to an average annual growth rate of 3.12% in the number of households from 2010 to 2020. With an average annual growth rate of 3.03% in the total population, the average household size in the Rustenburg Local Municipality is by implication decreasing.

**Migration in and out of Rustenburg Local Municipality**

The area appears to be a migrant receiving area, with many of people migrating into Rustenburg, either from abroad, SADEC countries, other Provinces within the Republic or from the more rural areas in the country looking for better opportunities.

The diagram below shows that most of in migration is from within the province while it cannot be disputed that all other provinces also contribute to the migration challenge faced by the municipality.

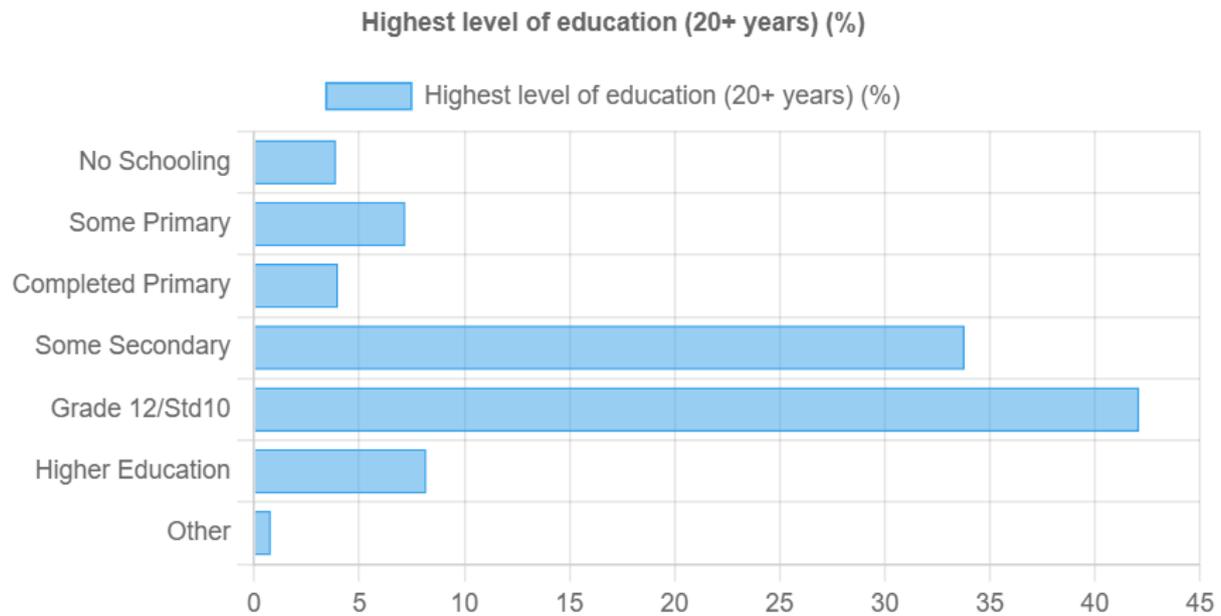


Data Source: StatsSA Census 2022

#### EDUCATIONAL ATTAINMENT

| Row No. | label             | counts | Percentage |
|---------|-------------------|--------|------------|
| 1       | No Schooling      | 13856  | 3.9        |
| 2       | Some Primary      | 25713  | 7.2        |
| 3       | Completed Primary | 14476  | 4          |
| 4       | Some Secondary    | 120820 | 33.8       |
| 5       | Grade 12/Std10    | 150428 | 42.1       |
| 6       | Higher Education  | 29300  | 8.2        |
| 7       | Other             | 2890   | 0.8        |

Data Source: StatsSA Census 2022



Data Source: StatsSA Census 2022

### Health services delivery platform in Rustenburg

In terms of the table below, the Rustenburg Local Municipality has 23 health facilities. The list is as follows:

| Type of Facility   | Total No. |
|--|-----------|
| Clinic   | 19        |
| Community Health Centres (Tlhabane, Phokeng and Boitekong) | 3         |
| District Hospital  | 0         |
| Tertiary Hospital (Job Shimankana Tabane)                  | 1         |
| Private Hospitals (Peglare, Ferncrest and Medicare)        | 3         |

Of the 23 health facilities listed, the three (3) Community Health Centres provide 24hour services which includes maternity and minor trauma services.

Additionally, there are:

- 674 Mobile visiting points
- 1 forensic mortuary
- Dental services at all hospitals and CHCs

The 674 Mobile clinics services areas without clinic structures which are functional. Mobile services are rendered once a week in the said areas. They provide preventative and promotive health services.

## Burden of diseases

The Rustenburg Local Municipality faces the quadruple epidemic of diseases that the health infrastructure should be responsive to, that is:

- HIV/AIDS – the leading cause of death
- Tuberculosis
- Chronic diseases of lifestyle
- Violence and trauma (High motor vehicle accident rate on the N4)

## Rustenburg’s Strategic Framework

The municipality’s IDP and the annual Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) including directorates’ Business Plans/technical SDBIP and the RWST have identified key strategic initiatives and operational plans aimed at addressing the developmental needs of its residents. The rapidly changing world brought about by unprecedented impact of the pandemic and the new normal suggests that planning processes should adapt to accommodate any form of crisis while maintaining a long-term vision. The 2025/2026 IDP Review tries to balance the situation while bridging the gap between the Master Plan aspirations and goals as set in the immediate programs that need implementation. The implication is that the municipality remains focused on its long-term objectives while responding to present realities and pressing community needs.

### SWOT ANALYSIS

| STRENGTH  | WEAKNESS   |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Council approved and adopted strategy (Integrated Master Plan).</li> <li>• Approved By-laws &amp; policies.</li> <li>• Municipality is functioning as both the Water Services Authority and Water Services Provider.</li> <li>• Mining Town</li> <li>• Strategic positions are filled (Section 56 Manager) 9 out of 9</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Outdated Spatial Development Framework (SDF)</li> <li>• Outdated LED Strategy</li> <li>• Limited access to strategically located land.</li> <li>• Areas that are not habitable</li> <li>• Land invasion and mushrooming of informal settlements.</li> <li>• Contravention of Land Use Management Scheme</li> <li>• Poor maintenance and management of open space and heritage sites</li> <li>• Poor maintenance of municipal assets</li> <li>• High Water &amp; electricity losses</li> <li>• Negative Audit Opinion</li> <li>• Lack of cash reserves</li> <li>• Low revenue collection rate/growing debtor’s book</li> </ul> |

| OPPORTUNITIES   | THREATS  |
|---|--|
| <p>The municipality is strategically located along the N4 corridor.</p> <p>Potential for agricultural, tourism and mining related economic development.</p> <p>Increased revenue</p> <p>Private Public Partnership, mining industries to be engaged to assist in capital funding.</p> <p>The Municipality is classified as the economic HUB of the province.</p> <p>Development of integrated public transport network.</p> <p>Diversification of the economy/Explorer Green energy/alternative sources</p> <p>Partnering with Magosi especially on land issues</p> | <p>Declining mining economy</p> <p>Service delivery protests.</p> <p>Insufficient budget for infrastructure development and maintenance.</p> <p>Ageing and failing Infrastructure.</p> <p>Low levels of skills and education.</p> <p>High dependency rate (Growing indigent register)</p> <p>Negative perception about the municipality by the community</p> <p>Illegal connection of services. (Unauthorized usage of municipal services)</p> <p>Undiversified economy</p> <p>High unemployment rate</p> <p>Low level of household income</p> <p>Influx of migrant workers</p> <p>Vandalism and theft of infrastructure network</p> |

## 2.5 MANAGING THE PEOPLE’S CONTRACT

### Introduction

The RLM approved a Time Schedule for the 2025/26 IDP Review per item 113 of 20 September 2024. The preparation of the municipal IDP is a serious engagement and participatory process. Consultation is a legislated necessity as enshrined in Chapter 4 of the Local Government Municipal Systems Act (MSA), 32 of 2000. Participation allows communities to raise their issues, concerns and needs and get a platform for receiving feedback.

### Profile of Each Ward in RLM

Table 2-1 provides an overview of the RLM Ward Demarcation in 2021. The RLM is divided into 45 wards each made up of various areas.

**Table 2.1: Rustenburg Local Municipality Ward Demarcation, 2021**

| WARD NUMBER | CLR               | AREAS   |
|-------------|-------------------|---|
| 1           | Cllr D M Sethonga | Phatsima, Boshhoek, Boekenhoutfontein, Rasimone, Mafenya, Rafredi   |
| 2           | Cllr E. Langeni   | Chaneng and Robega  |
| 3           | Cllr V. Mputle    | Bafokeng North Mine, Impala, Luka Mogono, Rathibedi, Tau, Ralesobesobe, Ratshwene, Impala Number 6 Hostel   |
| 4           | Cllr E K Vena     | Luka, Phokeng: - Windsor – old Police Station – Punodung Section  |
| 5           | Cllr B I Moreki   | Phokeng – Lemenong to Kgale, Lenatong, Punodung – Segema  |
| 6           | Cllr S S Tause    | Phokeng: Tshwara – Kotokoto, Saron, Dithabaneng, Masosobane, Masosobane 2, Salema, Moseitlha & Radiala, Ntsweng & Pitso, Greenside & Riverside, Makgokgwane, Ratshufi.                                  |
| 7           | Cllr E S T Pule   | Bubuanja, Lefaragatlhe, Matlhasi Marwane Section, Letlhaneng Section, Raphafana Section, Bethel, Mahosana Section, Ngeneng Section<br><b>Tlhabane</b> – Lekwakwa P.S, Mashao Street,                    |
| 8           | Cllr T O Moduke   | Tlhabane West 15 <sup>th</sup> – 24 <sup>th</sup> Avenue, Geelhout view 24 <sup>th</sup> to 37 <sup>th</sup> Avenue, Mountain Ridge partly, Geelhoutpark 6; 9; Mmilo Drive, Geelhoutpark Phase 1 and 2. |
| 9           | Cllr M Malinga    | Tlhabane: Mokgethi Street, Bester, Monareng, Lebone, Glycerine – Spar, G.G - 11,14, 16, 17 & 18 Rauwane, Phomolong  |

| WARD NUMBER | CLR                 | AREAS   |
|-------------|---------------------|---|
| 10          | Cllr F S Moatshe    | Tlhabane: From Monareng street, Foxlake, Lebone, RTB North-Plight, Sundown, Oukasi  |
| 11          | Cllr Ntshabele K P  | Tlhabane: Mokgethi, Mogotsi, Zinniaville – Gousblou, Industrial side  |
| 12          | Cllr S M Motshegwe  | Meriting ext 1, phase 1, 2 & 3 and Boitekon X13&14; Boitekong Ext 23; Lusikisiki.   |
| 13          | Cllr S L Sentsho    | Tlhabane: Oukasi - Sidzumo, Motsatsi, Lebone up to Dikgabong, Foxlake, RTB. North – Benoni; Hommer; Byron; Napolion; Scott; Burns; Rietz; Snel; Oxford; Johnson; Foord; Schuidings; Berry; Noord Park & part of Taxi rank   |
| 14          | Cllr G J Du Plessis | Geelhoutpark ext 4, Proteapark above field college, BoDorp; Rustenburg North: Even numbers of Homer str. From Dr. Moroka to crn. Rietz to Benoni, Dr. Moroka from house no. 108 up to corner Homer, Protea park, Boo Dorp, Cashan 1,2, Safari garden 2,3,5,8, Rustenburg North – Benoni to Impala |
| 15          | Cllr Edwards I      | Protea Park, Safari Tuin  |
| 16          | Cllr J C Cronje     | Mooka Farm, Geelhout park Ext 5, Protea Park, Rietvlei  |
| 17          | Cllr T Rothman      | Cashan 3, 4, & 28; Azalliapark, Portion of Safarituin 4, 5, 7, 13 & 15, Schoongesicht.  |
| 18          | Cllr J J Nortje     | Rustenburg East, Rustenburg North, and CBD  |
| 19          | Cllr J B Mpele      | Paardekraal ext 1, Sunrise Park ext. 9, sunrise view phase 1 & 2  |
| 20          | Cllr A Seleka       | Boitekong Ext 4 & 2   |
| 21          | Cllr D T Rampou     | Boitekong Ext   |
| 22          | Cllr A Makhuto      | Kanana Hostel, Sunrise 10,11, Leshibidung, Mpho Khunou, Popo Molefe, Skeirlik, Mzanzi, Siza; Plot 45, powerline and Majozi view.  |
| 23          | Cllr L Mokapi       | Kanana, Mafika, Chachalaza  |
| 24          | Cllr G S Motlhamme  | Freedom Park  |
| 25          | Cllr P H Serongoane | Monnakato, Kopman, Rooikraal, Chaneng (Part),   |

| WARD NUMBER | CLR               | AREAS   |
|-------------|-------------------|---|
| 26          | Cllr O C Mmapitsa | Tantanana, Mamerotse, Tlaseng, Tsitsing, Mogajane , impala Hostel   |
| 27          | Cllr K B Morei    | Lethabong   |
| 28          | Cllr W Fulane     | Lethabong   |
| 29          | Cllr K K Phutu    | Mabitse, Maumong, Makolokwe, Barseba, Rankelenyane and Iekgalong view.  |
| 30          | Cllr T Z Mooketse | Modikwe, Bethanie   |
| 31          | Cllr V Shomang    | Marikana, Marikana CBD, Skierluk, Storm Huis, Brampie, Big House, Group Five, Burnley, RDP, Mahumapelo 1 &2, Mabonvana and Marasmas.                                      |
| 32          | Cllr J Salang     | Wagkraal, Suurplaat, Mmaditlhokwa, Marikana West, Retief, Mabomvaneng, Lapologang, New stands, part of Marasmas, Phase 1 RDP and rental flats.                            |
| 33          | Cllr L Khoeli     | Nkaneng, Bleskop Hostel, Ngawana Hotel  |
| 34          | Cllr K B Phiri    | Mfidikoe, Zakhele, Hostel, Bokamoso   |
| 35          | Cllr S P Mkhohwa  | Matebeleng, Ikemeleng, Phuane, Lenvus Bayer, Lekotjaneng, Bolane, Waterval, Dinie Estate,   |
| 36          | Cllr C K Serunye  | Cyverbuilt, Breedvlei, Vlakdrift, Sandfontein, Manharand, Donkerhoek, Mathopestad, Boons, Molote, Moderfontein, Spakling Water, Olifantsnek, Boshfontein, Naauwpoort      |
| 37          | Cllr M C Dumani   | Jabula, Sondela and Million Dollar  |
| 38          | Cllr M E E Mosete | Freedom Park, New Freedom Park, Merititing exts 4 & 5   |
| 39          | Cllr A M Mosito   | Ramotshanana, Tsumani section phase 2, D4 section E2 & E5   |
| 40          | Cllr J Qobeka     | Boitekong Ext 8, Boitekong Ext 2 – Paardekraal, Flats Ext23, plot 14 portion 50, Yizoyizo (Boitekong) Boitekong ext 1, Abudabi and part of million dollar and New stands. |
| 41          | Cllr Z Xhanela    | Seraleng RDP  |

| WARD NUMBER | CLR              | AREAS  |
|-------------|------------------|--|
| 42          | Cllr A S Grova   | Waterfall East, CDB, Ext 5   |
| 43          | Cllr L B Snyders | Seraleng, Jabula, Zinniaville, KarlienPark, part of Rustenburg North – Burns str., Johnson from crn Burns to Middle, part of Snel from crn Napolion towards railway line, Middle, Haarhoff & Witt streets. |
| 44          | Cllr I S Macone  | Lekgalong, Ikageng, Mosenthal, Serutube, Lesung, Marakana  |
| 45          | Cllr T G Molefe  | Photsaneng, Thekwana, Karee Mine   |

## 2.6 Rustenburg’s Strategic Priorities per Key Performance Area (KPA)

2.6.1. MUNICIPAL INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND TRANSFORMATION,  
GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION: SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL 16

### 2.6.1.1 CORPORATE SUPPORT DIRECTORATE

The Rustenburg Local Municipality was established as a Category B municipality in terms of the provisions of the Municipal Demarcation Act 1998.

### 2.6.1.2 Powers, Duties and Functions

In line with the provisions of the Municipal Structures Act (117 of 1998) the RLM has been assigned the following statutory Powers, Duties and Functions (Table 9).

Table 2.2: Allocated Powers, Duties and Functions of RLM

| Directorate           | Powers from the Allocated Carried out | Performed (P)<br>Not Performed (NP) |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Community Development | Municipal Parks and Recreation        | P                                   |
|                       | Cemeteries and Funeral Parlours       | P                                   |
|                       | Local Amenities                       | P                                   |
|                       | Local Sports Facilities               | P                                   |
|                       | Public Places                         | P                                   |
|                       | Cleansing                             | P                                   |
|                       | Municipal Abattoir                    | NP                                  |
|                       | Fencing and Fences                    | NP                                  |

| Directorate                              | Powers from the Allocated Carried out                               | Performed (P)<br>Not Performed (NP) |
|--|---|-------------------------------------|
|  | Air Pollution   | P                                   |
| Public Safety                            | Control of Public Nuisance  | P                                   |
|  | Fire Fighting   | P                                   |
|  | Municipal Public Transport (only with regard to taxis)              | P                                   |
|  | Traffic and Parking   | P                                   |
|  | Noise Pollution   | P                                   |
|  | Public Places   | P                                   |
|  | Licensing of Dogs (In terms of Ordinance...)                        | NP                                  |
|  | Pounds  | P                                   |
|  | Disaster Management   | P                                   |
|  | Licensing and Registration Authority                                | P                                   |
| Planning and Human Settlement            | Municipal Parks and Recreation                                      | P                                   |
|  | Building Regulations  | P                                   |
|  | Public Places   | P                                   |
| Technical and Infrastructure Development | Municipal Public Works  | P                                   |
|  | Water   | P                                   |
|  | Sanitation  | P                                   |
|  | Street Lighting   | P                                   |
|  | Refuse Removal  | P                                   |
|  | Solid Waste disposal  | P                                   |
|  | Electricity Regulations   | P                                   |
|  | Storm Water   | P                                   |
|  | Fencing and Fences  | NP                                  |
|  | Municipal Airports  | NP                                  |
| Local Economic Development               | Local Tourism   | P                                   |
|  | Street Trading  | P                                   |
|  | Licensing and control of undertakings that sells food to the public | P                                   |
|  | Control of Undertakings that sells Liquor to the Public             | NP                                  |
|  | Trading Regulations   | P                                   |
|  | Billboards and display of Adverts                                   | P                                   |
|  | Municipal Airports  | NP                                  |
|  | Local amenities   | P                                   |
|  | Markets   | NP                                  |
| Roads and Transport                      | Municipal Airports  | NP                                  |
|  | Municipal Public Transport  | P                                   |
|  | Municipal Roads   | P                                   |
| Office of the Municipal Manager          | Municipal Planning  | P                                   |

## Institutional Arrangements

The Rustenburg Local Municipality consists of two interlinked organisational streams; one providing Political Leadership and Governance, and the other performing Operational and Administrative functions.

### Introduction

This section will explain the framework of the institutional structures that the council will use to implement its strategies and appropriate resources. The Rustenburg Local Municipality consists of two interlinked organizational streams; one providing Political leadership and governance and the other performing Operational and Administrative functions.

#### 2.6.1.3 Political Leadership and Governance Structures

On the 15 June 2023 Cllr Mogomotsi K. resigned as the speaker of council. Subsequent to his resignation, Council elected the Speaker, Clr Pule L J in terms of section 36 of the Municipal Structures Act, act 117 of 1998, per item 125.

The municipality operates within an Executive Mayoral System under the leadership of Executive Mayor Clr Mabale-Huma SSK, who was appointed as per section 55 of Municipal Structures Act, act 117 of 1998. The council of RLM is constituted by 90 Councillors, with 45 ward and 45 proportional representative Councillors. The Mayoral Committee consisting of ten members. Ward Councillors chair ward committees which are responsible for discussing local concerns.

Clr. Makhanda R R was elected as the Single Whip of the Council. The party-political representation of Councillors is reflected in the Table 1-2 below:

Table 1: Political Representation

| POLITICAL PARTY           | NUMBER COUNCILLORS | GENDER DISTRIBUTION |        |
|---------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------|
|                           |                    | MALE                | FEMALE |
| African National Congress | 42                 | 29                  | 13     |
| Economic Freedom Fighters | 17                 | 8                   | 9      |
| Democratic Alliance       | 13                 | 9                   | 4      |
| F4SD                      | 1                  | 1                   | 0      |
| Freedom front+            | 3                  | 2                   | 1      |
| BCM                       | 1                  | 1                   | 0      |
| UDM                       | 1                  | 0                   | 1      |
| AIC                       | 1                  | 0                   | 1      |
| ACDP                      | 1                  | 1                   | 0      |
| INDEPENDENT CANDIDATE     | 1                  | 1                   | 0      |

|           |    |    |    |
|-----------|----|----|----|
| ARONA     | 1  | 1  | 0  |
| TCM       | 7  | 5  | 2  |
| MKP       | 1  | 1  | 0  |
| SUB-TOTAL | 90 | 59 | 31 |
| TOTAL     | 90 |    |    |

The municipality had 242 435 registered voters, of whom 109 832 cast their vote in the August 2016 local government elections, which translates to 45.23% of the registered voters. According to the IEC voter turnout report the figures for the 2021 local government where slightly different compared to 2016. The municipality had 288 347 registered voters in audited voting districts, of whom 104 913 cast their vote in November 2021 local government elections, which translates to 36,33% of voters Turnout in audited Voting districts.

#### Council Committees

The council has established Committees in terms of Section 79 and 80 of the Municipal Systems Act to give political guidance and direction to the municipal council. Section 79 Committees:

Municipal Public Accounts Committee (MPAC)

Performance Audit Committee;

Rules of Order Committee;

Municipal Planning Tribunal;

Local Labour Forum;

Table 2: Section 80 Committees

| No. | PORTFOLIO                             | MEMBER OF MAYORAL COMMITTEE |
|-----|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1   | Corporate Support Services            | Gaonakala M                 |
| 2   | Community Development                 | Xatasi, NS                  |
| 3   | Public Safety                         | Mputle V                    |
| 4   | Planning and Human Settlement         | Marekoa B                   |
| 5   | Budget and Treasury Office            | Kombe OJ                    |
| 6   | IDP and Legal                         | Macone I                    |
| 7   | Local Economic Development            | Phutu K                     |
| 8   | Rustenburg Roads and Transport        | Pule EST                    |
| 9   | Technical and Infrastructure services | Rampou T                    |

|    |  |          |
|----|--|----------|
| 10 | Inter-Governmental Relations, Traditional Affairs and Special Projects | Khoeli L |
|----|--|----------|

Operations of Section 79 & 80 Committee;

The scheduling of portfolio committees, mayoral committee as well as Council meetings for January to June 2025 has been approved as per resolution number 238 of the Special Council meeting held on 11th December 2024, to allow effective administration of Council. To align operations of Council and its committees to the functionality of the municipality, the Central Diary will from July 2025 be approved on a financial year basis; i.e. from July to June.

Cell phones:

The cell phone and data allowance policy of the Municipality that was approved as per Council resolution 160 of 2016 makes provision for allocation of allowances as follows:

Standby phones and data for officials

Data for a total approximately 600 meter reading infrastructure

Provision of cell phones and data to certain officials whose nature of work requires that they should be always available and reachable

Management perks for Unit Managers and Specialists

Councillors receive cell phones and data allowance as per Determination of Upper Limits of Salaries, Allowances and Benefits of Different Municipal Councils as promulgated on the 18<sup>th</sup> August 2023.

Administration Governance Structure

The new term of office for the current council will provide an opportunity to examine the efficiency and efficacy of the governance and institutional structures and arrangements, and if necessary, introduce improvement measures. Adv. Khuduge appointed by council as the Municipal Manager is the head of the Administration and Accounting Officer, supported by Line Function Directors and Managers. The overleaf diagram depicts the macro-organizational Structure of the RLM.

Yellow: Change of position name  
 Green: New Position  
 Grey: Relocation of position  
 Red: Position dissolved  
 Orange: Unfunded Mandate



The attached top management structure is based on the organizational structure previously proposed. The Accounting Officer shall in line with section 66 of the Municipal Systems Act, embark on the organizational restructuring process and any such new organogram which shall be approved by Council shall replace the one depicted above.

### STATUS QUO ANALYSIS

Table 2.3

| #  | SITUATION  | CHALLENGES   |
|----|--|--|
| 1. | Lack of Medical Surveillance program/service due to lapsed contract which ended in October 2020. | Medical Surveillance Program is a legislative requirement to expose employees on an annual basis, employees were last examined in March 2020 before the State President announced the COVID-19 lockdown, and the contract ended in September 2020, since then the appointment of a service provider has been a challenge. The tender was advertised several times without getting responsive bidders, and the recent one closed on 03 February 2025. The item is yet to be evaluated and tabled before the Bid Adjudication Committee. |
| 2. | No Employee Assistance Programme (EAP) in place.   | Distressed employees are not sufficiently assisted due to a lack of appointed EAP Service Providers. The tender was advertised several times without getting responsive bidders, and the recent one closed on 03 February 2025. The item is yet to be evaluated and tabled before the Bid Adjudication Committee.  |
| 3. | Document Management is done manually.  | Lack of a proper Electronic Document Management System   |
| 4. | Prolonged Disciplinary Processes   | Cases wherein parties are legally represented take longer because of the (unnecessarily) legalistic nature of proceedings.   |
| 6. | Loss of computers  | Municipal unaccounted Data loss due to loss of computers.  |
| 7. | Lack of security to the infrastructure.  | Vandalism of network infrastructure  |
| 8. | Lack of maintenance of the Council Chambers Civic Centre   | Dilapidated facilities   |

## HUMAN RESOURCES SERVICES UNIT

The Human Resource Unit, deals with, inter alia, the following:

### Policy Framework

The Directorate Corporate Support Services through its Human Resources Unit developed a substantial number of policies to support and enhance Human Resources systems, process and procedures.

Table 2. 4: Existing Municipal Policies

| Directorate | Unit                      | Title of an Existing Policy              | Date approved by Council | Date of next review | Item number | Aligned to Business process |    |
|-------------|---------------------------|--|--------------------------|---------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|----|
|             |                           |  |                          |                     |             | Yes                         | No |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management | Acting Appointment and Allowance policy  | 23.02.2021               | 31.06.2025          | 45          | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management | Career & Succession Management           | 30.05.2006               | 30.06.2025          | 90          | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management | Parking: Municipal Building              | 26.05.2003 I             | 30.11.2025          | 245         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management | Recruitment and Selection Policy         | 28.03.2023               | 31.06.2025          | 54          | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management | Remuneration Structure for Scarce Skills | 27.06.2006               | 30.01.2026          | 163         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management | Secondment Policy                        | 24.11.2020. I            | 31.06.2025          | 207         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management | Transfer Policy                          | 24.11.2021.              | 31.06.2025          | 208         | Yes                         |    |

| Directorate | Unit                               | Title of an Existing Policy                              | Date approved by Council | Date of next review | Item number | Aligned to Business process |    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|--|--------------------------|---------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|----|
|             |                                    |  |                          |                     |             | Yes                         | No |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management          | Placement Policy   | 24.11.2021.              | 30.09.2025          | 209         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management          | Sport Participation of the Rustenburg Local Municipality | 16.09.2003               | 31.07.2025          | 538         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management          | Training and Development policy                          | 20.12.2011               | 30.09.2025          | 374         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management          | Transport Allowance policy                               | LLF<br>07.10.2015        | 30.06.2025          | 53          | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management          | Study Aid Policy   | 28.03.2023 I             | 30.11.2025          | 53          | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management          | Workplace Skills Plan                                    |                          | 30.06.2025          |             |                             | No |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management          | Succession Planning                                      | 29.03.2022               | 30.06.2025          |             |                             | No |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management          | Experiential Training                                    | 20.03.2022               | 30.06.2025          |             |                             | No |
| DCSS        | Occupational Health & Safety (OHS) | HIV & AIDS Policy  | 29.10.2002               | 30.06.2025          | 797         | Yes                         |    |

| Directorate | Unit                               | Title of an Existing Policy           | Date approved by Council | Date of next review | Item number | Aligned to Business process |    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|----|
|             |                                    |                                       |                          |                     |             | Yes                         | No |
| DCSS        | Occupational Health & Safety (OHS) | ALCOHOL AND DRUG ABUSE POLICY         | 29.10.2020               | 30.06.2025          | 139         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Occupational Health & Safety (OHS) | EMPLOYEE ASSISTANCE PROGRAMME POLICY  | 29.09.2020               | 30.06.2025          | 140         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Occupational Health & Safety (OHS) | MEDICAL SURVEILLANCE POLICY           | 29 .09.2020              | 30.06.2025          | 141         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Occupational Health & Safety (OHS) | PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT POLICY  | 29.09.2020               | 30.06.2025          | 142         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Occupational Health & Safety (OHS) | OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY POLICY | 23.02.2021               | 30.06.2025          | 46          | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Information Technology             | Data Backup and Recovery Policy       | 29.09.2020               | 30.06.2025          | 143         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Information Technology             | Group Information Security            | 29.09.2020               | 30.06.2025          | 144         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Information Technology             | CGICT Policy                          | 29.09.2020               | 30.06.2025          | 146         |                             |    |
| DCSS        | Information Technology             | Patch Management Policy               | 29.09.2020               | 30.06.2025          | 145         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Information Technology             | Information Technology                | 24.11.2020               | 30.06.2025          | 213         | Yes                         |    |

| Directorate | Unit                            | Title of an Existing Policy              | Date approved by Council | Date of next review | Item number | Aligned to Business process |    |
|-------------|---------------------------------|--|--------------------------|---------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|----|
|             |                                 |  |                          |                     |             | Yes                         | No |
|             |                                 | Change Management Policy                 |                          |                     |             |                             |    |
| DCSS        | Information Technology          | ICT Strategic Plan                       | 24.11.2020               | 30.06.2025          | 212         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Information Technology          | IT Service Continuity Plan               | 24.11.2020               | 30.06.2025          | 211         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Information Technology          | Computer Hardware Management Policy      | 30.03.2021               | 30.06.2026          | 148         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Information Technology          | Information Technology Management Policy | 24.11.2020               | 30.06.2026          | 213         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Information Technology          | Password Policy                          | 26.11.2019               | 30 November 2026    | 226         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Information Technology          | Firewall Policy                          | 26.11.2019               | 30 November 2026    | 225         | Yes                         |    |
| DCSS        | Administrative Support Services | Cell Phone Policy                        | 31.05.2016               | 30 June 2025        | 160         |                             |    |

Table 2.5: Municipal Policies to be developed

| Directorate | Unit                           | Title of a NEW Policy to be developed | Date to be submitted to Council | Date of next review | Item number if applicable | Aligned to Business process |    |
|-------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|----|
|             |                                |                                       |                                 |                     |                           | Yes                         | No |
| DCSS        | Human Resource Management      | Human Resources Bereavement Policy    | June 2026                       |                     |                           |                             |    |
| DCSS        | Human Resources Management     | Standard Danger Allowance Policy      | June 2026                       |                     |                           |                             |    |
| DCSS        | Information Technology         | Cyber Security Policy                 | June 2024                       |                     |                           |                             |    |
| DCSS        | Occupational Health & Safety   | Workplace Gender Based Violence       | June 2025                       |                     |                           |                             |    |
| DCSS        | Occupational & Health & Safety | Workplace Housekeeping Policy         | June 2025                       |                     |                           |                             |    |

WORKFORCE TOTALS ON 2024/12/31

| Directorate           | Division                       | No of posts | No Employees | Vacancies | Budgeted Vacancies |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|-------------|--------------|-----------|--------------------|
| Community Development | Director & Admin Support       | 7           | 4            | 3         | 0                  |
|                       | Community Facilities           | 603         | 197          | 406       | 73                 |
|                       | Libraries & Information Serv.  | 94          | 47           | 47        | 9                  |
|                       | Waste Management               | 305         | 144          | 161       | 33                 |
|                       | Integrated Environmental Mang  | 5           | 4            | 1         | 0                  |
|                       | Civil Facilities & Maintenance | 40          | 22           | 18        | 9                  |

| Directorate                                | Division                       | No of posts | No Employees | Vacancies | Budgeted Vacancies |
|--|--------------------------------|-------------|--------------|-----------|--------------------|
| Corporate Support Services                 | Sub-Total                      | 1054        | 418          | 636       | 124                |
|  | Director & Admin Support       | 4           | 2            | 2         | 1                  |
|  | Human Resources                | 37          | 20           | 17        | 13                 |
|  | Information Technology         | 19          | 12           | 7         | 3                  |
|  | Admin Support Services         | 37          | 25           | 12        | 4                  |
|  | Occupational Health & Safety   | 19          | 9            | 10        | 3                  |
|  | Corporate Pool                 | 6           | 6            | 0         | 0                  |
|  | Sub-Total                      | 122         | 74           | 48        | 23                 |
| Infrastructure and Infrastructure Services | Director & Admin Support       | 8           | 6            | 2         | 2                  |
|  | Electrical Engineering         | 235         | 109          | 126       | 44                 |
|  | Mechanical Engineering         | 77          | 33           | 44        | 19                 |
|  | Water Services                 | 317         | 186          | 131       | 46                 |
|  | Sanitation Services            | 303         | 59           | 244       | 22                 |
|  | Sub-Total                      | 940         | 393          | 547       | 133                |
| Planning and Human Settlement              | Director & Admin Support       | 9           | 5            | 4         | 1                  |
|  | Building Control & Regulations | 15          | 13           | 2         | 3                  |
|  | Development Planning           | 31          | 23           | 8         | 8                  |
|  | Unit Housing                   | 40          | 29           | 11        | 4                  |
|  | Estate Admin & Land Sales      | 15          | 7            | 8         | 4                  |
|  | Sub-Total                      | 110         | 77           | 33        | 20                 |
| Public Safety                              | Director & Admin Support       | 11          | 7            | 4         | 5                  |
|  | Emergency & Disaster Mang.     | 363         | 82           | 281       | 27                 |
|  | Licensing & Testing            | 178         | 64           | 114       | 25                 |

| Directorate                     | Division                   | No of posts | No Employees | Vacancies | Budgeted Vacancies |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------|--------------|-----------|--------------------|
|                                 | Traffic Services           | 505         | 99           | 406       | 57                 |
|                                 | Law Enforcement            | 524         | 88           | 436       | 64                 |
|                                 | Sub-Total                  | 1581        | 340          | 1245      | 178                |
| Budget and Treasury             | CFO & Admin Sup            | 5           | 4            | 1         | 2                  |
|                                 | Revenue & collection       | 86          | 32           | 54        | 19                 |
|                                 | Billing                    | 61          | 38           | 23        | 15                 |
|                                 | Financial Management       | 59          | 28           | 31        | 9                  |
|                                 | Financial Control          | 22          | 15           | 7         | 9                  |
|                                 | Supply Chain Management    | 29          | 20           | 9         | 11                 |
|                                 | Sub-Total                  | 262         | 137          | 125       | 65                 |
| Local Economic Development      | Director & Admin Support   | 4           | 3            | 1         | 1                  |
|                                 | Trade & Invest/Rural Dev   | 11          | 4            | 7         | 4                  |
|                                 | Economic Research & Policy | 10          | 4            | 6         | 0                  |
|                                 | Enterprise Development     | 16          | 6            | 10        | 4                  |
|                                 | Sub-Total                  | 41          | 18           | 24        | 9                  |
| Office of the Municipal Manager | MM & Admin Support         | 7           | 6            | 1         | 2                  |
|                                 | Strategy & Planning        | 9           | 4            | 5         | 0                  |
|                                 | Project Management         | 26          | 12           | 14        | 1                  |
|                                 | Legal & Valuation          | 11          | 8            | 3         | 0                  |
|                                 | Auditing                   | 8           | 7            | 1         | 0                  |
|                                 | Risk Management            | 4           | 2            | 2         | 0                  |
|                                 | RCC Offices                | 38          | 17           | 21        | 4                  |
|                                 | Customer Care              | 53          | 36           | 17        | 16                 |

| Directorate                   | Division                    | No of posts | No Employees | Vacancies | Budgeted Vacancies |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|--------------|-----------|--------------------|
|                               | Sub-Total                   | 156         | 92           | 64        | 24                 |
| Roads and Transport           | Director & Admin Support    | 12          | 0            | 12        | 10                 |
|                               | Roads & Stormwater          | 228         | 124          | 104       | 70                 |
|                               | Sub-Total                   | 240         | 124          | 116       | 80                 |
| Office of the Executive Mayor | Admin Support Services      | 16          | 9            | 7         | 4                  |
|                               | Mayoral Admin Officer       | 10          | 7            | 3         | 2                  |
|                               | Communication               | 7           | 2            | 5         | 0                  |
|                               | Inte-governmental Relations | 3           | 2            | 1         | 0                  |
|                               | Special Projects            | 7           | 6            | 1         | 0                  |
|                               | VIP Protection Services     | 4           | 2            | 2         | 2                  |
|                               | Monitoring & Evaluation     | 6           | 2            | 4         | 0                  |
|                               | Sub-Total                   | 53          | 30           | 23        | 8                  |
| Office of Chief Whip          | Admin Support Services      | 5           | 1            | 4         | 5                  |
| Office of the Speaker         | Admin Support Services      | 17          | 0            | 17        | 11                 |
|                               | MPAC                        | 7           | 4            | 3         | 1                  |
|                               | Sub-Total                   | 29          | 5            | 24        | 17                 |
|                               | TOTAL                       | 4588        | 1688         | 2900      | 683                |

#### 2.6.1.4.3 EMPLOYMENT EQUITY – GOAL 5

The Municipality has approved Employment Equity Plan starting from 2022 to 2027. The plan targets employment ratios that reflect the racial demographics of the community of Rustenburg as follows:

Africans 13%  
Indians 21%  
Coloured 16%

Whites 40%

People with disability 2%

A gender ratio 44% females and 2% people with disabilities are targeted. The racial representation on the first four reporting levels of management is as follows:

Table 2.6: Numerical Goals

The numerical goals as contained in the EE Plan (i.e. the entire workforce profile including people with disabilities) you project to achieve at the end of your current Employment Equity Plan in terms of occupational levels. Note: A =Africans, C =Coloureds, I =Indians and W =Whites

**Table 2.7: Numerical Targets**

The numerical targets as contained in the EE Plan (i.e. the workforce profile including people with disabilities) you project to achieve at the end of the next reporting cycle, in terms of occupational levels.

Note: A =Africans, C =Coloureds, I =Indians and W =Whites

| Occupational Level  | Male |    |    |    | Female |    |    |    | Foreign Nationals |        | TOTAL |
|---|------|----|----|----|--------|----|----|----|-------------------|--------|-------|
|   | A    | C  | I  | W  | A      | C  | I  | W  | Male              | Female |       |
| Top Management  | 2    | 1  | 0  | 1  | 2      | 1  | 1  | 1  | 0                 | 0      | 8     |
| Senior Management   | 0    | 1  | 1  | 1  | 0      | 1  | 1  | 1  | 0                 | 0      | 6     |
| \Professionally qualified and experienced specialists and mid-management  | 15   | 10 | 8  | 10 | 0      | 5  | 12 | 13 | 0                 | 0      | 73    |
| Skilled technical and academically qualified workers, junior management, supervisors, foremen, and superintendent | 10   | 5  | 6  | 25 | 0      | 5  | 5  | 20 | 0                 | 0      | 76    |
| Semi-skilled and discretionary decision making  | 8    | 6  | 10 | 15 | 0      | 4  | 3  | 40 | 0                 | 0      | 86    |
| Unskilled and defined decision making   | 3    | 5  | 6  | 7  | 0      | 4  | 8  | 1  | 0                 | 0      | 34    |
| TOTAL PERMANENT   | 38   | 28 | 31 | 59 | 2      | 20 | 30 | 76 | 0                 | 0      | 284   |
| Temporary employees   | 0    | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0      | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0                 | 0      | 0     |
| GRAND TOTAL   | 38   | 28 | 31 | 59 | 2      | 20 | 30 | 76 | 0                 | 0      | 284   |

Table 2.8: Employees with disabilities only in each of the following occupational levels: note: A =Africans, C =Coloureds, I =Indians and W =Whites

| Occupational Level  | Male |   |   |   | Female |   |   |   | Foreign Nationals |        | TOTAL |
|---|------|---|---|---|--------|---|---|---|-------------------|--------|-------|
|   | A    | C | I | W | A      | C | I | W | Male              | Female |       |
| Top Management  | 0    | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0      | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0                 | 0      | 0     |
| Senior Management   | 0    | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0      | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0                 | 0      | 0     |
| Professionally qualified and experienced specialists and mid-management   | 0    | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0      | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0                 | 0      | 0     |
| Skilled technical and academically qualified workers, junior management, supervisors, foremen, and superintendent | 1    | 0 | 0 | 2 | 1      | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0                 | 0      | 4     |
| Semi-skilled and discretionary decision making  | 0    | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0      | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0                 | 0      | 340   |
| Unskilled and defined decision making   | 2    | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0      | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0                 | 0      | 0     |
| TOTAL PERMANENT   | 3    | 0 | 0 | 2 | 1      | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0                 | 0      | 6     |
| Temporary employees   | 0    | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0      | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0                 | 0      | 0     |
| GRAND TOTAL   | 3    | 0 | 0 | 2 | 1      | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0                 | 0      | 6     |

**2.6.1.4.4 SKILLS DEVELOPMENT WITHIN THE MUNICIPALITY – SDG 4: Ensure inclusive and equitable quality education and promote life-long learning opportunities for all**

**Target:** 4.3 by 2030 ensure equal access for all women and men to affordable quality technical, vocational and tertiary education, including university

4.4 by 2030, increase by x% the number of youth and adults who have relevant skills, including technical and vocational skills, for employment, decent jobs and entrepreneurship.

The Municipality also complies with the Skills Development Act and Skills Development Levies Act by submitting the Workplace Skills Plan and Annual Training Report to LGSETA on the 30th of April each year, and by paying a monthly skills levy of 1% of the salary bill to SARS. After compliance, RLM receives mandatory grants to be used for the implementation of Skills Programmes, and Discretionary Grants for implementation of learnerships Programmes for both the employed (18.1) and unemployed (18.2) from LGSETA.

The appointment of accredited training service was advertised with 3 years panel tenders to render specialised training on the implementation of Rustenburg Local Municipality's Workplace Skills Plan.

The Workplace Skills Plan of the municipality will be implemented by giving priority to the Legislative Requirements trainings as recommended by the Department of Employment and Labour (DoEL) as well as trainings identified in the WSP to avoid incidents from happening.

The Rustenburg Local Municipality also have a Study Aid Policy to assist all permanent employees who wish to pursue part-time studies towards formal recognised tertiary qualifications. The policy was approved on 28 March 2023, Item 53.

#### **INFORMATION AND COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY – SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS 9: Build resilient infrastructure, promote inclusive and sustainable industrialization and foster innovation**

**Target:** 9.c significantly increase access to ICT and strive to provide universal and affordable access to internet in LDCs by 2020

Information and Communications Technology (ICT) has become a vital part of any organization's capability. The defining character of modern times is the importance of gathering and dissemination of information, a phenomenon referred to as "Information Society" or the "Knowledge Age". What is seen is an unprecedented proliferation of ICT technologies to the point where all key processes of service delivery have information as a key core ingredient of execution. We live in an age that emphasizes the rapidity and extensiveness of distribution of information as a key determinant of the effectiveness of organizations. This centrality of information calls for a strategic approach to the design and deployment of information systems of an organisation.

The RLM is host to the reputedly fastest growing city in South Africa. This growth which is fuelled by rich harvesting of minerals of the Merensky Reef; platinum constituting the primary mineral mined in this area. Stewardship of such resources demands that the municipality invest in infrastructure that will drive industrial growth of Rustenburg and its continued relevance in the economy beyond the age when caterpillars have ceased to excavate for minerals. The legacy of mineral wealth must persist in the form of a rich metropolis that has diversified its economy to encompass other viable industries.

It is a common feature in a globalized environment for cities that investors generally look at a city's infrastructure and the quality of human resources in the immediate catchment area to decide on where they will invest. This laudable vision of the RLM becoming a metropolitan requires it to become a "smart city" equipped with all the infrastructure of a modern city. ICT infrastructure development is a key

requirement to attain this vision. The journey must start with a transformative approach to deploying and utilizing ICT to make RLM a model of an efficient and effective organisation. The office intends to do the following strategies different over the next five years:

**Strategic Pillars:** strategy will be based on the following pillars

Integrated systems: ensure that all systems (financial, HR, support, CRM, etc.) are integrated and work off the same master data

Leverage outsourcing contracts: to ensure high quality of service and manage SLAs effectively

Team development: Through training, hiring and performance management ensure IT team is effective

Use best practice frameworks such as ITIL (service management) and TOGAF (for Enterprise Architecture) and CoBIT (for IT Governance)

Create roadmaps towards exploiting benefits of latest trends such as cloud computing and mobility.

### **Strategic Objectives**

Improved customer relationship management

Cost reduction

Develop a high-performance organisation

Strategic use of business intelligence for decision support

Effective and automated IT asset management system

Creating a paperless environment (e-government)

Enhance network security.

### **Strategic Initiatives**

Explore opportunities for cost reduction e.g. using VoIP and Unified Communications to reduce voice costs

Development of Enterprise Architecture for Municipal systems

Integration of core systems (Financial, Support, Human Resources and Telephony)

Enterprise Project Management tools deployed to ensure project governance and visibility

Improve customer satisfaction through improved customer interactions using Customer Relationship Management (CRM) and Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) systems (for call centre) and online self-service

Introduction of Business Intelligence for assisting key decision makers with timely information

Security and IT Governance frameworks put in place. Develop policies and procedures to ensure all IT assets secure and ensure Governance compliance

IT asset management system put in place

Broadband strategy- through wireless and fiber-optic medium for high-speed internet access.

The RLM intends to follow the following practical approach toward spending beyond 90%:

Programmes

IT policy workshops

Workshops on optimum utilization of latest technology trends

Enhanced support and improved turnaround time

Enhance IT organisation in terms of skills and structure

Monitoring existing contracts and outsourced services

Evaluate software license agreements and explore opportunities to reduce costs

Engage with other stakeholders to understand their long-term plans and IT needs

Establish existence or effectiveness of Customer Relationship Management system

Develop an effective IT Strategic Plan in responding to ICT Services requirements.

Develop a 120days plan to realize short-term gains.

Put into effect the Disaster Recovery Plan by ensuring offsite storage of backup information is affected

Redesign network architecture and make it hierarchical and introduce VLANs and automatic assignment of IP addresses. Plan for re-addressing using private IP address in accordance with RFC 1918

Implement Information Security Management; in particular institute security policies, identity management, place servers in DMZs and use proper firewalls, introduce intrusion prevention systems and other measures

Convert from Workgroup into a domain and implement user access policies

Move to Microsoft Exchange based email

Implement WLAN security and open the service to users

Define standard desktop and put in place standard based on branded equipment

Define standard configurations for servers

Work on plan towards virtualization of server infrastructure. In collaboration with RRT procure an infrastructure of blade servers that can be deployed as a private cloud supporting the whole municipality. The incremental costs will be minimal, but the benefits will be immense

Commence planning for integrated applications

Assign team to look into master data management and assign a leader of that project

Put in place policies on configuration and management of applications including password policy, documentation, support backup, management and measurement of SLAs

Monthly reports on application performance

Put in place application monitoring

Periodic routines such backups and preventative maintenance.

Projects

IT Strategy or Master Systems Plan and Enterprise Architecture: Sustainable Development Goal 17 Indicator 17.14

Required to provide a long-term IT strategic plan for information systems and information technology, this will encompass the broadband strategy, IT governance framework, business continuity and disaster recovery plans and risk management

Wireless network upgrade: SDG Indicator 9b1, 9c1

Municipal broadband wireless networks that allow access anywhere within the city limits employees who are traveling to meet with clients can have access to company resources and email wherever they are, connection to RCCs, waste management system and remote meter reading

Active Directory (domain) and Exchange:

The RLM does not operate off a domain. It is an anomaly for such a large network to operate as a Microsoft Workgroup. This constrains the management of the whole network and misses the opportunity of using policies to manage the domain. As a result, securing the network is not easy. It is then best advised to switch to a Microsoft Exchange based email. It gives the municipality more control over their messaging application and assists in the migration to unified communications. A hosted email solution is limiting in certain cases of standardization of e-mail to make it professional such as using uniform signature templates or adding important notices to all outgoing emails. The control over spam, archiving of e-mails, anti-virus, etc., should not be relinquished to a third party as it can easily result in serious embarrassment should sensitive emails be leaked or stolen.

VoIP and Integrated Communication Centre:

Reduced telecom cost, increased mobility, i.e. when employees are no longer tied up with the phone in their offices, it enables workers to communicate on business matters from home or even on the road. Benefits of virtual workforce, i.e., this system enable call centers and other business desks to operate independent of physical boundaries. Effective as well as efficient management of a person's fax, voicemail, and email messages

Computer Telephony Integration for call centre to enhance service delivery

Data Centre/Server room and DRP site Upgrade and virtualisation:

Virtualization is the technology that abstracts hardware from an operating system and allows operating environments to be independent of the underlying hardware. One of the inefficiencies of having discrete servers is that some of these servers are operating under-capacity while others are over-capacity. (To have infrastructure that is a RRT project and cloud computing ready).

ERP-Enterprise Resource Planning:

For integration, automation and real-time information flow. ERP forms the core system for Financial System, Customer Relationship Management, Project Management, Document Management System and Business Intelligence. Typical ERP systems such as SAP will contain CRM, PM and BI as modules, to enable e-government services

Integrated Operations:

Integration of real-time communication services such as instant messaging (chat), presence information, telephony, video conferencing, data sharing (including web connected electronic whiteboards), call control and speech recognition with non-real-time communication services such as unified messaging (integrated voicemail, email, SMS and fax)

Network Security:

Network security is rudimentary in the RLM network. There is no security on the LAN ports and WLAN

The security architecture of the network will be revised and bring in proper firewalls and multi-tiered security architecture

There is need to introduce intrusion inspection and host-based intrusion detection. There are devices that are called unified threat management solutions which address all possible angles of security breach

It is important to introduce Windows domain to effect security policies for users

Integrated Security solution:

The best practice is to have integrated identity and access management where a person's credentials on their access cards correlate to their network access and there is a link to CCTV system

With increasing use of biometric and technologies like Radio Frequency Identification (which can be used for tracking assets) the opportunities for securing the municipality's access and concomitantly ensure safe access to municipal premises are limitless

#### Internet Access:

The municipality currently has two fibre lines provided by Telkom and liquid Telecoms.

Internet: the bandwidth provided by Telkom line for internet is 100mbps and the lines provided by Liquid Telecoms is 200mbps.

#### Printing Solutions

The service provider was appointed on a three-year contract effective from 02 June 2021. The scope of the agreement is the leasing and maintenance of printers and equipment for three years.

### **OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY – SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL 3: INDICATOR 3.9**

The OHS strategic plan provides Rustenburg Local Municipality with a clear program of improvement to achieve our safety objectives, based on the risk profile of the organization. The plan is endorsed by management and shows commitment to the development of a resilient safety culture and encourages all employees to take the pledge and commit to helping achieve our safety vision and objectives.

#### Purpose

The purpose of the plan is to protect workers from health and safety hazards on the job in line with the OHS Act. It sets out duties for all workplace parties and rights for workers. It establishes procedures for dealing with workplace hazards and provides for enforcement of the law where compliance has not been achieved voluntarily.

#### **Safety Culture**

The safety culture of an organization is the product of individual and group values, attitudes, perceptions, competencies, and patterns of behaviour that determine the commitment to, and the style and proficiency of, an organization's health and safety management. Safety culture is a part of organizational culture and has been described by the phrase "the way we do things around here".

Other factors important for developing a safety culture are ensuring training and information is provided for everyone, a system for hazard management is in place and good safety practice is acknowledged and celebrated with positive feedback and reinforcement.

#### **Strategic priorities**

A health and safety management system is a process put in place by an employer to minimize the risk of injury and illness. This is achieved by identifying, assessing, and controlling risks to workers in all workplace operations. The Health and Safety Management System (HSMS) has been developed to achieve our safety objectives. The HSMS is built on five pillars each containing key elements of safety management.

Table 2-9: Each pillar supports the other and the elements are not mutually exclusive, they are interlinked such that one is crucial to the success of the other.

| FIVE PILLARS OF OHS  |   |  |   |   |
|--|---|--|---|---|
| OHS Policies and Procedures  | OHS Training  | Hazard Management  | Incident Management   | Health and Wellbeing  |
| The development and regular review of OHS policies, procedures, safe work procedures (SWPs), inspection forms, and checklists to ensure that RLM complies with all legislative requirements and as far as is practicable, mitigates the risk of injury to all employees, contractors and visitors. | The identification and provision of appropriate OHS-related training as identified through the risk assessment process.<br><br>All training identified will be included in the OHS training matrix. | A systematic approach to the identification, assessment, and control of all the hazards RLM employees may be exposed to.<br><br>For example, will include, a risk assessment process, Job Safety Analysis (JSA), ergonomics, Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) and after-hours employee welfare. | The provision of an electronic reporting and investigation system to enable the appropriate follow-up of all incidents and injuries.<br><br>This also includes first aid management, emergency response procedures and Workmen's Compensation Insurance | The development of an annual plan to help build a more resilient workforce.<br><br>The program aims to improve employees' work-life balance. Also includes the Employee Assistance Program (EAP) and mental health initiatives. |
| FIVE (5) YEAR ACTION PLAN  |   |  |   |   |
| Develop new policies or review existing policies, procedures, guidelines, SWPs, multiple forms, checklists, and more appropriate use of JSAs<br><br>Establish a review process of all OHS documents managed  | OHS training matrix Established<br><br>Training matrix reviewed and approved by OHS Committee annually<br><br>Training matrix   | Risk Register included in annual OHS calendar with OHS Committee responsible for ensuring all actions implemented,<br><br>100% of all scheduled inspections completed with 85% of all actions  | All managers / team leaders trained in investigation process<br><br>New performance measures established and reported quarterly<br><br>Establish and implement first  | Annual budget for health and wellbeing established<br><br>Annual plan established with yearly calendar of events  |

|  |   |   |  |  |
|--|---|---|--|--|
| <p>by the OHS Committee</p> <p>Implement a clear document control procedure and process for all OHS documents consistent with RLM-wide policies/procedures</p> <p>Implement an internal audit process, managed by the OHS Committee to ensure the effectiveness of the OHSMS</p> <p>Purge all obsolete documents</p> | <p>update includes input from the risk register annual review</p> <p>Annual OHS training plan established</p> <p>Training in all OHS systems included in the annual plan</p> <p>Key training courses included in the annual plan:</p> <p>» Hazard Identification and Risk Assessment (HIRA)</p> | <p>completed within 20 days</p> <p>Establish ergonomic champions in each office/directorate with an annual plan for ergonomic assessments in place</p> <p>Develop a clear documented procedure and training for:</p> <p>» Use of and management of all PPE /equipment</p> <p>» Contractor/visitor management</p> <p>» Vehicles/driver training for employees</p> <p>» Hazard ID risk assessment</p> | <p>aid/wellness room management plans</p> <p>Include emergency scenarios in annual emergency training plan</p> | <p>Health and wellbeing Brochures/information available</p> <p>Mental health first aid training provided to key RLM employees</p> <p>Training from EAP provider included in annual OHS training plan</p> |
|--|---|---|--|--|

## 2.6.2 KPA: MUNICIPAL FINANCIAL VIABILITY AND MANAGEMENT – SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT

### GOAL 17: Strengthen the means of implementation and revitalize the global partnership for sustainable development

17.1 strengthen domestic resource mobilization, including through international support to developing countries to improve domestic capacity for tax and other revenue collection

Functions performed under this KPA are led by the Budget and Treasury Office but collaboratively performed with all Directorates internally and other Social Partners of the Municipality externally.

#### 2.7.1 BUDGET AND TREASURY OFFICE

The Budget and Treasury Office (BTO) of the Rustenburg Local Municipality is responsible for the financial management of the organisation as a whole. The mandate of BTO is to ensure that all directorates are provided with the resources to enable them to perform their functions. BTO is the face of the municipality to the public and to ensure that the municipality is financially sustainable.

In order to fulfil this mandate, BTO comprises the following five units each performing a specific function, and which collectively seek to enhance the financial viability of the municipality:

**Billing:** The billing unit is responsible for ensuring that the consumers of Rustenburg get billed for basic services, consumption, rates and taxes. This ensures that the municipality receives an income to deliver services to the community and run the administration of the municipality.

**Financial Management:** The financial management unit is responsible for ensuring that the service providers of the municipality as well as its employees are paid. Financial management is also the custodian of the asset registers, investments, bank accounts and loans of the municipality.

**Revenue:** The revenue unit is responsible for the collection of funds due to the municipality. This function includes the debt collection, credit control, client services and finalisation of accounts.

**Supply Chain Management:** The supply chain management unit is responsible for ensuring that all goods and services procured by the municipality is in accordance with applicable legislations. The unit is also responsible for contract management including reporting on commitments and ensuring that new contracts are entered to prevent irregular expenditure.

**Budget and Reporting:** The budget and reporting unit is responsible for management of the municipality's budget, including the approved budget, virements and assisting with the adjustment budget. Reporting includes section 71 reports, section 72 reports, monthly and annual financial statements.

The following have been identified as the major **operational issues** impacting on the financial sustainability of the Rustenburg Local Municipality:

- System and billing challenges: New financial system procured and on-going engagement with the service provider on teething issues.

- Weak controls in implementation compliant supply chain management process resulting in increased irregular expenditure.
- Lack of cash reserve to fund capital projects and other operational activities
- Inadequate use of technology to achieve effective and efficient operations: smart metering and billing.

**Deteriorating debtors' collection rate**, due to the economic downturn and culture of non-payment of services by our residents.

**Free basic services: (So far how many indigents are being registered and plans in place to increase numbers)**

The municipality is keeping a register of all indigents. The current approach of letting persons walk in and register as indigents alone does not yield the intended results. The municipality is in the process of finalising the procurement of the system that will enable the municipality to verify additional clients that should form part of indigents household through very check.

**Critical Success Factors** towards enhanced financial sustainability have been identified as follows:

- Competent and committed staff complement: Ongoing as billing unit have already appointed incumbents with requisite skill.
- Cost containment measures to curb spending on non-core services (Expenditure)
- Expenditure and commitment limited to approved budget (improved budget management)
- Credit control intensified to improve our cash flow
- Debt collectors strictly monitored to improve cash flow and build up reserves.
- Short- and Long-term debt facilities considered for project funding in order to accelerate service delivery.

**Proposed Interventions**

- Capacitation of SCM: Intervention done through the SCM learnership level 5 programme, attended by 7 employees for the 12 months. Provincial Treasury support
- BTO skills review and ensure optimal use of staff
- **Automation of SCM processes:** Was achieved.
- Implement all phases and modules of the new financial system (MSCoA). Inadequate use of documents management function.
- Procure and implement revenue management software to assist in indigent management and credit control.
- Data cleansing and profiling: The municipality has already segmented its debtors' book to isolate the sundry debtors to verify collectability of these debts else recommend a bad write-off through a council resolution. The credit control system to be procured will be an add on whilst the system is up and running to isolate non-collectable debts.

- Intensify enforcement of credit control actions: War room has been introduced as a project to ensure effective credit control and curbing illegal connection to improve on collection of long overdue amount and is yielding results.
- Collection incentives to encourage payment for services #MyMunicipalityMyResponsibility

**Risk Management:** The Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003, section 62 (1) (c) (i) states that: “the accounting Officer of the municipality is responsible for managing the financial administration of the municipality, and for this purpose take all responsible steps to ensure- that the municipality maintains an effective, efficient and transparent systems of financial and risk management and control” for the achievement of the objectives of the municipality as contained in the IDP.

1. Municipality will strive to maintain effective risk management function through support of the existing structure and systems.

- Risk Management Committee properly constituted
- Annual review of the Risk Management Policy and Strategy
- Annual review of the Risk Management Implementation Plan and a Risk Committee Charter.
- Annual review of the Fraud Prevention Strategy and Implementation Plan

2. The municipality has reviewed the Fraud Prevention Strategy and Implementation Plan and will be conducting Fraud Risk Assessments in the third quarter of the current financial year. This is to analyse and improve the management of risk and fraud in the municipality.

3. The Municipality is in the process of developing Business Continuity Management Policy and Strategy.

The following table presents a high-level summary of the top five (5) financial risks of the RLM.

**Table 2-10: High Level Summary of the Top Five (7) Financial Risks.**

| Risk No | Risk description at Strategic Objective level | Cause (Risk at Business unit level)   | Consequence (Effect)   | Inherent Risk Rating |
|---------|---|---|--|----------------------|
| 1.      | Increase in SCM deviations                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor planning.</li> <li>• Not following the procurement plan.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Irregular expenditure</li> <li>• Negative Audit findings.</li> </ul>          | 25                   |
| 2.      | Water and Electricity Losses.                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Illegal connections</li> <li>• Cable theft</li> </ul>                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Loss of revenue</li> <li>• Investor confidence in the municipality</li> </ul> | 25                   |

| Risk No | Risk description at Strategic Objective level  | Cause (Risk at Business unit level)   | Consequence (Effect)  | Inherent Risk Rating |
|---------|--|---|---|----------------------|
| 3.      | Financial System Failure, loss of data, delayed or inaccurate accounts to consumers. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CCG (SAGE system not meeting municipal expectations in terms of MSCOA)</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Loss of revenue</li> <li>Inaccurate billing</li> <li>Non-payment of services by consumers</li> </ul> | 25                   |
| 4.      | General lack of consequence Management.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lack of decisive leadership/ inability to enforce accountability.</li> </ul>   | Decline in service delivery performance.  | 25                   |
| 5.      | Diminishing revenue streams  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Closing of some mining shafts</li> <li>Community and business resorting to using solar panels due power cuts</li> </ul>  | Loss of revenue   |                      |
| 6.      | Growing outstanding debtors' books.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Non-payment by Councillors, employees, and community members.</li> <li>Lack of political will to drive revenue collection programs.</li> <li>Lack of performance monitoring of debt collectors.</li> </ul> | Loss of revenue.  | 25                   |
| 7.      | Slow on spending of Capital Budget   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delay in SCM processes</li> </ul>  | The municipality might lose Grants.   | 25                   |

**2.6.3 KPA: SPATIAL ANALYSIS AND RATIONAL – SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL 11: Make cities and human settlements inclusive, safe, resilient and sustainable**

**TARGET 11.1** by 2030, ensure access for all to adequate, safe and affordable housing and basic services, and upgrade slums

Functions performed under this KPA are led by the Directorate of Planning and Human Settlements, but collaboratively performed with DLED, DCD internally and other Social Partners of the Municipality externally.

## **2.6.3 PLANNING AND HUMAN SETTLEMENT**

---

### **2.6.3.1 ESTATE ADMINISTRATION AND LAND SALES**

#### **2.6.3.1.1 LAND DISPOSAL**

Council may alienate the land or rights on land by means of direct sale, public tender, auction or donation once it is satisfied such property or right is not required to provide the minimum level of basic municipal service.

#### **CORE FUNCTIONS**

- Management of applications of right in the land
- Management of pre-emptive conditions registered against the title deeds (Consent)
- Survey and compilation of property data.
- Initiation of investor interest in property development.
- Management of servitude and encroachments.

#### **2.6.3.1.2 RAPID LAND RELEASE PROGRAMME**

The programme plans for the municipality's intended Program of residential, mixed use, community land releases with particular emphasis on the previously disadvantaged communities, within a well-planned environment. The programme is indicative and subject to change as forecast population changes, demand for land and the capacity to cost effectively deliver key infrastructure and services.

The programme seeks to assist effective communication of the municipality's intentions or actions thereby avoiding the Pitfalls of desperate people who would be vulnerable to exploitation and encourage people to be wary of land grabbers.

Through the land release strategy, legitimate beneficiaries would be able to get legal access to the property through transfer. The programme seeks to verify and quantify the total number of properties owned by the municipality. The process would provide economic incentives to invest in strategic parcels of land and thereby identifying specific precincts that stimulate economic and social development.

By transferring the properties, simultaneously compiling verifiable and more accurate asset register, the land release will be an important source of revenue (Will secure and increase the rate base), contributing to financial, social and environmental objectives by seeking to:

- Facilitate housing diversity through different typology and the provision of affordable housing choices;
- Meet the demand for land by allowing " mixed use proposal" and stimulate economic activity in the residential sector;
- Establish appropriate inventory of serviced/developable land;
- Achieve satisfactory returns, e.g. rates and taxes from the potential sale of such land,
- Assist in curbing potential land invasion in municipal/privately owned land.

The following erven were made available through the Rapid Land Release Programme in the following townships:

The following erven were made available through the Rapid Land Release Programme in the following townships:

- **Ward 42: Cashan 28:** The sale of stands is in progress. There are two (2) stands left to sell from a total of 177 stands.
- **Ward 40: Portion 187(a Portion of Portion 50) of the farm Paarkeraal 279 JQ:** The beneficiary list in the process of being finalised.
- **Safarituine /Cashan:** A total off number of 15 erven will be made available during the financial year of 2024/2025.

### **2.6.3.1.3 LAND ACQUISITION**

The Rustenburg Local Municipality requires land for Integrated Human Settlement. Economic expansion in the city, as a result of mining in the area resulted in high population growth and in-turn the sprawl of informal settlements. There are currently **24** profiled informal settlements in the Municipality and various requests for assistance have been sent to Government entities such as the NW COGHSTA and HDA.

Land availability is a big challenge within the Rustenburg Local Municipality, with land ownership being vested in the hands of Traditional Authorities, Mines, Private owners, and Government. Another issue is that of the concentration of mining rights within the jurisdiction, preventing any form of development on that particular land. These aspects impact on housing development activities within the jurisdiction.

The following acquisitions have been initiated as a means of securing tenure and creating sustainable human settlements.

The following land acquisitions were achieved:

| NR | WARD | PROPERTY DESCRIPTION  | TYPE OF ACQUISITION |          |               | STATUS QUO   | DATE OF REGISTRATION                         |
|----|------|---|---------------------|----------|---------------|--|--|
|    |      |   | Acquisition         | Donation | Expropriation |  |  |
| 1  | 8    | Portion 8 Boschoek 103 JQ was acquired by the Rustenburg Local Municipality   | X                   |          |               | Housing Development Agency (HDA) and the Northwest Provincial Government responsible for Human Settlements (NW COGHSTA) is in the process of formalization of the area.  | Registered on 11/10/2019                     |
| 3  | 31   | Portion 182 Rooikoppies 297 JQ was acquired through the assistance of Housing Development Agency (HDA)  | X                   |          |               | <b>Title Deed was received</b> , the formalisation process is being driven by the Housing Development Agency (HDA) and the Northwest Provincial Government responsible for Human Settlements (NW COGHSTA) as part of Marikana x 13 | TD 19051/2022<br>Registered on 17 March 2022 |
| 4  |      | Ptns 61(a Portion of Portion 55) of the farm Rooikoppies 297 JQ to the total extent of 16,61 hectares was acquired through the assistance of Housing Development Agency |                     | X        |               | <b>Title Deed was received</b> , the formalisation process is being driven by the Housing Development Agency (HDA) and the Northwest Provincial Government responsible for Human Settlements (NW COGHSTA) as part of Marikana x 13 | Registered on 22/6/2023<br>TD37279/2023      |
| 5  |      | Portion 62, 47, 64 and 9/20th share of Portion 63 of the farm Rooikoppies   |                     | X        |               | <b>The Title Deed was received.</b> The formalisation process is being driven by the Housing Development Agency (HDA)  |  |

| NR | WARD | PROPERTY DESCRIPTION   | TYPE OF ACQUISITION |          |               | STATUS QUO  | DATE OF REGISTRATION   |
|----|------|--|---------------------|----------|---------------|---|--|
|    |      |  | Acquisition         | Donation | Expropriation |   |  |
|    |      | 297 JQ to the total extent of 8 hectares was acquired through the assistance of Housing Development Agency   |                     |          |               | and the North West Provincial Government responsible for Human Settlements (NW COGHSTA) as part of the Greater Marikana.  |  |
| 6  |      | Ptns 62 (a Ptn of Ptn 55), re/47 (a Ptn of Ptn 12), Ptn 64 (Ptn of Ptn 47) and Ptn 63(Ptn of Ptn 55) of the farm Rooikoppies in the extent of 8,3 hectares |                     |          |               | <b>Title Deed was received,</b> the formalisation process is being driven by the Housing Development Agency (HDA) and the Northwest Provincial Government responsible for Human Settlements (NW COGHSTA) as part of Marikana x 13                   | Registered on 2023   |
| 7  |      | Portions of the farm Rooikoppies 297 JQ  |                     |          | X             | <p>Portion 46 (a Portion of Portions 12) of the farm Rooikoppies 297 JQ</p> <p>Portion 80(a Portion of Portion 12) of the farm Rooikoppies 297 JQ</p> <p>Remaining Extent of Portion 87(a Portion of Portion 31) of the farm Rooikoppies 297 JQ</p> | <p>TD 57316/2023<br/>Registered on 19/9/2023</p> <p>TD 55671/2023<br/>Registered on 11/9/2023</p> <p>TD 63750/2023<br/>Registered open on 18/10/2023</p> |

| NR | WARD | PROPERTY DESCRIPTION   | TYPE OF ACQUISITION |          |               | STATUS QUO  | DATE OF REGISTRATION   |
|----|------|--|---------------------|----------|---------------|---|--|
|    |      |  | Acquisition         | Donation | Expropriation |   |  |
|    |      |  |                     |          |               | <p>Undivided shares: Remaining Extent on Portion 184(a Portion of Portion 12) of the farm Rooikoppies 297 JQ and Portion 55 (a Portion of Portion 12) of the farm Rooikoppies 297 JQ</p> <p>Portion 179 (a Portion of Portion 12) of the farm Rooikoppies 297 JQ</p> <p>The Expropriation Notice of Portion 183 of the farm Rooikoppies 297 JQ was in the North West Gazette on 2 July 2024. The title deed will be endorsed, and that the property is expropriated from August 2024.</p> | <p>TD 67645/2023<br/>Registered on<br/>1/11/2023</p> <p>TD 80032/23<br/>Registered on<br/>29/11/2023</p> |
| 8  | 40   | Portion 26/Re Paardekraal 279 JQ                                     |                     | X        |               |   | T 36408/2021<br>Registered 24/5 2021   |
| 9  |      | Portion 148, 39, 15 and 112 of the farm Paardekraal 279 JQ           | X                   |          |               |   | TD 000009428/2022<br>Was registered<br>18/2/2022   |
| 10 |      | Portion 187 (a Portion of Portion 50) of the farm Paardekraal 279 JQ | X                   |          |               |   | TD 52970/2022<br>Registered<br>13/7/2022   |

| NR | WARD | PROPERTY DESCRIPTION  | TYPE OF ACQUISITION |          |               | STATUS QUO  | DATE OF REGISTRATION  |
|----|------|---|---------------------|----------|---------------|---|---|
|    |      |   | Acquisition         | Donation | Expropriation |   |   |
| 11 |      | Portion 109/Re Paardekraal 279 JQ   |                     | X        |               |   | T 037708/2021<br>Registered on 27 May 2021                  |
| 12 | 22   | Remaining Extent of Portion 25, Portion 84, 85, 86, 87 (A Portion of Portion 25) all of the Farm Paardekraal 279 JQ, North West Province, to be known as Boitekong Extension 39 |                     |          |               | Township establishment application was approved by the Municipal Planning Tribunal sitting held on 30/10/2024 |   |
| 13 |      | Portion 137 of the farm Rustenburg Town and Townlands 272 JQ  | X                   |          |               |   | Property registered 19 September 2024.<br>Await Title Deed. |

**Land Acquisitions still in process:**

| NR | WARD | NUMBER OF PORITONS IDENTIFIED   | TYPE OF ACQUISITION |          |               | STATUS QUO   |
|----|------|---|---------------------|----------|---------------|--|
|    |      |   | Acquisition         | Donation | Expropriation |  |
| 1  | 8    | 1 Portion Identified of the farm Boschoek 103 JQ to the extent of 160 hectares. 03 JQ | X                   |          |               | Item served at Special Council sitting of 28 February 2025 |

|          |              |  |   |   |  |  |
|----------|--------------|--|---|---|--|--|
| <b>2</b> | <b>31/32</b> | 20 Portions identified of the farm Rooikoppies 297 JQ to the total extent of 114,82 hectares.                        | X |   |  | Item served at Special Council sitting of 28 February 2025   |
| <b>3</b> | <b>31/32</b> | 2 Portions of the farm Rooikoppies 279 JQ to be donated by Tharisa Mine to the extent of 177 hectares                |   | X |  | Township establishment process in progress. Await Environmental Impact Assessment approval.  |
| <b>4</b> | <b>31/32</b> | 1 Portion of the farm Rooikoppies 279 JQ in the extent of 28,9392 hectares to be donated by Sibanye Still water      |   | X |  | A Land suitability study was being conducted by the Housing Development Agency. The Deed of donation can commence after the objection on the valuation has been resolved, outstanding rates and taxes have been paid and the Mining Closure certificate has been issued. |
| <b>5</b> | <b>31/32</b> | 14 Portions of the farm Rooikoppies 297 JQ within Marikana by Sibanye Stillwater to the extent of 114,9977 hectares. |   | X |  | The Deed of donation can commence after the objection on the valuation has been resolved, outstanding rates and taxes have been paid and the Mining Closure certificate has been issued.   |
| <b>6</b> | <b>35/42</b> | 20 Portions of land identified of the farm Waterkloof 305 JQ to the extent of 126,36 hectares                        | X |   |  | Item served at Special Council sitting of 28 February 2025   |
| <b>7</b> | <b>22/40</b> | 8 Portions of the farm Paardekraal 279 JQ to the extent of 129,14 hectares   | X |   |  | Council resolutions already obtained.  |

- **Expropriation of land: Infrastructural Services.**

Council is in the process with new negotiations with private landowners concerning the location of a servitude to provide water three meter wide to the Waterkloof East Extension 31 and an electricity servitude of two meter wide. If negotiations are not to succeed, then expropriation will follow.

The properties applicable are:

| <b>PROPERTY DESCRIPTON</b>                             |
|--|
| Holding 29 Waterglen Small Holdings                    |
| Holding 30 Waterglen Small Holdings                    |
| Holding 34 Ptn 4 Waterglen Small Holdings              |
| Holding 34 Ptn 3 Waterglen Small Holdings              |
| Holding 34 Ptn 2 Waterglen Small Holdings              |
| Holding 34 Ptn 1 Waterglen Small Holdings              |
| Holding 15 Waterglen Small Holdings                    |
| Holding 55/Remainder Waterglen Small Holdings          |
| Holding 55 Ptn 2 Waterglen Small Holdings              |
| Holding 54 Waterglen Small Holdings                    |
| Remainder of Portion 317 of the farm Waterkloof 305 JQ |
| Remainder of Portion 250 of the farm Waterkloof 305 JQ |
| Remainder of Portion 263 of the farm Waterkloof 305 JQ |

The total area applicable is to the extent of 19. 885 hectares.

- The following properties for Human Settlement purposes
- **Cashan 28**

Registration of a 7 meter-wide servitude for infrastructural purposes within Cashan x 28 as to protect the 33kv electrical cable off Council and the Rand Water Pipeline. The following erven are applicable:

| <b>ERF NUMBER</b> | <b>REGISTERED OWNER</b> |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| 2499              | P Cassius               |
| 2506              | MB Regomoditswe         |

| ERF NUMBER | REGISTERED OWNER          |
|------------|---------------------------|
| 2509       | Sido Consulting Engineer  |
| 2510       | Ikatiseng Construction CC |
| 2512       | Salooje Firoz             |
| 2515       | Salooje Fatima            |
| 2516       | Cashan Hills              |

### **Ward 34: Bokamoso / Thekwane and Photsaneng Cluster**

Sibanye Stillwater has donated the following portions of land within the vicinity of Bokamoso, Thekwane and Photsaneng. Land suitability study was conducted by the Housing Development Agency. Drafting of the Deed of donations is to commence once positive resolutions are received. The formalisation process will then be driven by Council with assistance from the Housing Development Agency (HDA), the Northwest Provincial Government responsible for Human Settlements (NW COGHSTA) and Sibanye Stillwater

The properties are as follows:

- Remainder of Portion 49, 84, 85 and 87 of the farm Waterval 303 JQ in the extent of 39 hectares.
- A portion of Portion 10 and a Portion of the Remainder of the farm Waterval 303 JQ in the extent of 162,4 hectares

The Deed of donation can commence after the objection on the valuation has been resolved, outstanding rates and taxes have been paid, and the Mining Closure certificate has been issued.

### **Boitekong Cluster**

- Portion 3, 79 and 80 of the farm Waterval 303 JQ in the extent of 131 hectares were donated by Sibanye Stillwater. (Rustenburg Landfill Site). The Deed of donation can commence after the objection on the valuation has been resolved, outstanding rates and taxes have been paid and the Mining Closure certificate has been issued.
- Portion of Portion 45 of the Farm Paardekraal 279 JQ is in process to be finalised where after the Deed of Donation will be received from H D A / NW COGHSTA.
- Housing Development Agency (HDA) and the North West Provincial Government responsible for Human Settlements (NW COGHSTA) entered into new discussion with the registered owner of Portion 45 Paardekraal 279 JQ in the extent of 36 hectares. The registered owner agreed to sell to COGHSTA and is in the process of finalization of Deed of Sale. H D A indicated that owner needs to submit approval of SG diagram.

- Popo Molefe: we are waiting for decision from Municipal Planning Tribunal
- **Council identified the following portions for acquisition R/E Portion 50 by way of Donation from Anglo Platinum, 182, 183 and R/E 180 of the farm Paardekraal 279 JQ,**

### Ward 35: Kroondal Cluster

**The whole farm Kroondal has an existing land claim, which now makes it impossible to proceed with acquisition.**

### Household by Dwelling Type

Using the Stats SA definition of a household and a dwelling unit, households can be categorised according to type of dwelling. The categories are:

Very formal dwellings - structures built according to approved plans, e.g. houses on a separate stand, flats or apartments, townhouses, rooms in backyards that also have running water and flush toilets within the dwelling.

Formal dwellings - structures built according to approved plans, i.e. house on a separate stand, flat or apartment, townhouse, room in backyard, rooms or flatlet elsewhere etc, but without running water or without a flush toilet within the dwelling. Formal and very formal dwellings in 2022 makes up 85,9 % compared to 68,7% in 2011

Informal dwellings - shacks or shanties in informal settlements, serviced stands, or proclaimed townships, as well as shacks in the backyards of other dwelling types.

Traditional dwellings - structures made of clay, mud, reeds, or other locally available material.

Other dwelling units - tents, ships, caravans, etc.

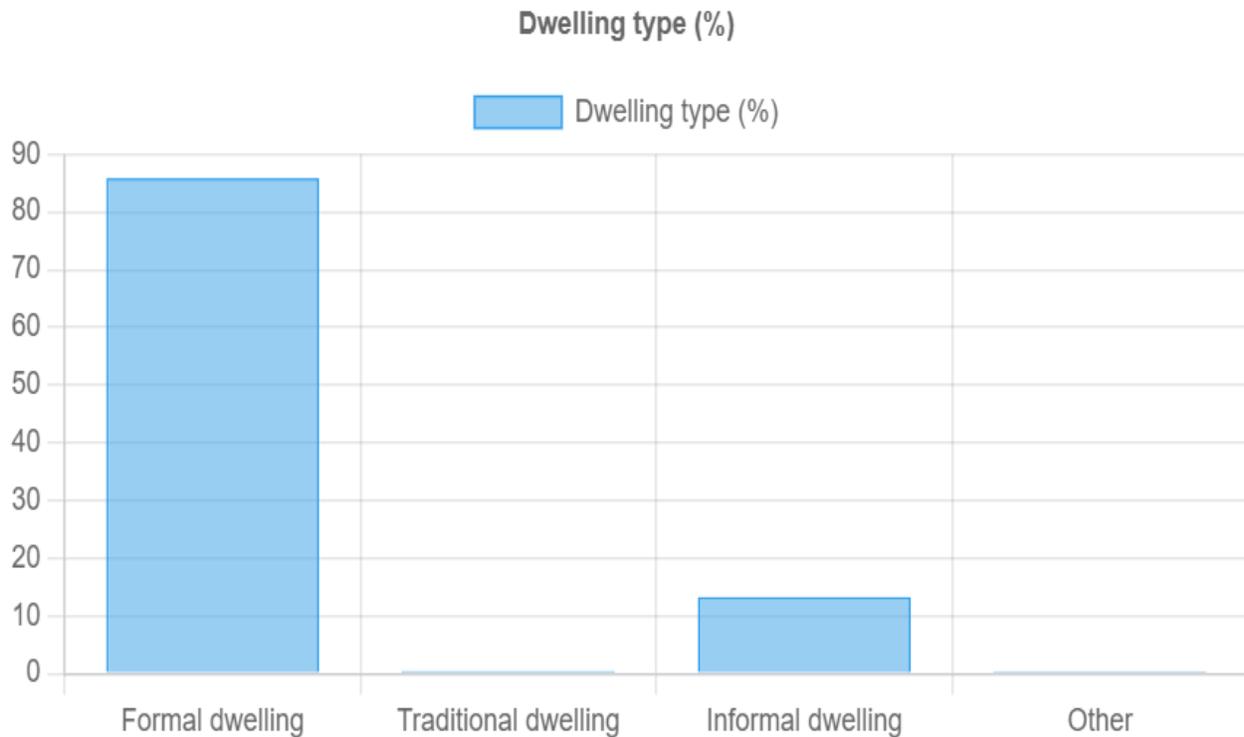
Households by dwelling unit type - Rustenburg, Bojanala Platinum, North-West and National Total, 2019 [Percentage]

Rustenburg Local Municipality had a total number of 199 035 in 2011 which showed growth in 2022 and counts 203 658 Households. **Source: Stats Sa Census 2022**

The table and the graph below illustrate the dwelling types within the Rustenburg Local Municipality.

| Name                 | Frequency | %     |
|----------------------|-----------|-------|
| Formal dwelling      | 174 860   | 85,9% |
| Traditional dwelling | 1 004     | 0,5%  |
| Informal dwelling    | 27 060    | 13,3% |
| Other                | 734       | 0,4%  |

**Source: StatsSA – Census 2022**



**Source: StatsSA – Census 2022**

### **2.6.3.2 MUNICIPAL FACILITIES**

The Directorate Planning and Human Settlement has taken over the functions of contract management for the following municipal facilities: Kloof Resort, Rustenburg Aerodrome, Rustenburg Golf Course and Bojanala District Municipality Offices. This entails checking for compliance in terms of the lease for the municipal facilities, this includes adherence to clauses in the lease agreement as well as timeous payment of the rental amount. These facilities are assets of the Municipality and through effective contract management can generate considerable revenue for the Municipality.

#### **2.6.3.2.1 BUILDING CONTROL & REGULATIONS**

##### **2.6.3.2.1.1 Purpose of the National Building Regulations**

Development in the building industry is a continuous process. With the passage of time, new materials become available, design methods are refined, and innovative building systems are introduced. Political change also results in the development of new policies and approaches to various aspects of building and construction that might impact on regulatory requirements. It is therefore obvious that building regulations and the interpretation thereof cannot remain static if they are to accommodate such policy changes and allow for the early use of innovation in construction.

The Bill of Rights contained in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act No. 108 of 1996), contains rights relating to the environment. Section 24 reads as follows: *Everyone has the right*

- a. to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being; and*
- b. to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through*

*reasonable legislative and other measures that:*

- i. prevent pollution and ecological degradation;*
- ii. promote conservation; and*
- iii. secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.*

The major non-tariff trade barriers that inhibit building and the construction trade are prescriptive or deemed-to-comply building codes and standards. To address this issue, the World Trade Organization (WTO) has included Clause 2.8 in the Agreement on Technical Barriers to Trade (WTO 1997), which states that *“Wherever appropriate, Members shall specify technical regulations based on product requirements in terms of performance rather than design or descriptive*

### **Introduction**

Cognizance of the constitutional imperatives and World Trade Organization requirements has been taken into account in the revision of **SANS 10400**.

The National Building Regulations do not purport, and were never intended, to be a handbook on good building practice. They set out, in the simplest and shortest way possible, requirements to ensure that buildings will be designed and built in such a way that persons can live and work in a healthy and safe environment.

There are other aspects of a building that might affect only the comfort or convenience of people, but these are not controlled by the National Building Regulations.

Market and economic considerations will obviously also limit the degree to which these matters can be considered in the design of a building. It is important, therefore, that entrepreneurs, designers and building owners should be aware that the mere fact that a building complies with the National Building Regulations does not necessarily indicate that it is a desirable building.

There are many aspects to be considered and the relative economic worth of each should be related to the final cost of the building. Professional designers are trained to take these matters into account and can be expected to do so without any obstructive and possibly inhibiting and inappropriate control by the Regulations. In the case where the designer of a building is not professionally qualified, there is a wealth of information on good building practice available in textbooks and from organizations such as the CSIR, the South African Bureau of Standards, the National Home Builders Registration Council, the South African Institution of Civil Engineering and various trade associations.

In order to understand and interpret the National Building Regulations correctly, it is important to understand the philosophy and intent behind the Regulations.

One aim of the drafters of the Regulations was to keep the number of Regulations to a minimum. It was therefore decided that, as far as possible, the Regulations should be concerned only with the health and safety of persons in a building, that all technical aspects should be covered by functional regulations and that the Regulations should be written in such a way that they assist rather than impede the use of innovative building systems and designs. This philosophy was taken a step further in the current amendment of the interpretation of the regulations by introducing the concept of two different types of buildings to cater for different user needs and expectations.

A new category of buildings (category 1 buildings) has been introduced in certain classes of buildings that have a floor area not exceeding 80 m<sup>2</sup> to make buildings affordable to poorer communities. The revised SANS 10400 allows choices to be made in the performance requirements of certain attributes for buildings falling within this category. Such buildings have comparable safety standards with buildings not so categorized, but may, depending upon the choices exercised in respect of particular attributes, have different resistances to rain penetration, deflection limits, maintenance requirements, lower levels of natural lighting, etc. It should, however, be stressed that choices exercised in respect of these buildings relate only to the performance of some of the attributes of such buildings.

The nature of developments is determined by environmental and town planning processes which are independent of such choices. This should be kept in mind by any local authority when assessing a building in terms of these revised functional regulations. In applying the National Building Regulations, it will be found that, in certain instances, there is an overlap with the requirements of regulations made in terms of other Acts. Some of these anomalies have been overcome by suitable amendments to other regulations, but there are some regulations made in terms of local town planning schemes that it might be desirable to retain.

In particular, this refers to requirements for building lines and for materials which are permitted as exterior finishing for buildings. The requirements in the National Building Regulations are there for technical reasons, but what is technically acceptable might not necessarily be acceptable for other reasons.

Table 2-11:

| Level of Service   | What was planned for 2023/27  | Achievements  | Challenges   | Changes in the ranked community needs |
|--|---|---|--|---------------------------------------|
| Regulatory implementation on the application of the National Building Regulations and Building Standard Act. | <p>Extensive community awareness regarding the requirements of the legislation.</p> <p>Law Enforcement activity undertaken by the Directorate has yielded some progress, but the impact is static.</p> <p>Revision of by-laws supplementary to the National Building Regulations And Building</p> | NBRs provides for the building that meet health, safety, access (disability) and of recent – eco or “green” building standards. | Erection of building and government buildings without prior approval of the Local Authority. | All wards.                            |

| Level of Service                              | What was planned for 2023/27   | Achievements  | Challenges | Changes in the ranked community needs |
|---|--|---|------------|---------------------------------------|
|   | Standards Act, 1977 (Act 103 of 1977), and the regulations made under the act and approved by the minister of trade and industry in terms of section 29(2) and 29(8) (a) of the act. |   |            |                                       |
| National Heritage Resource Act No 11 of 1999. | To audit and regulate to preserve buildings of monument stature.   | All buildings that are older than sixty years need the approval (permit) of the heritage council prior to their demolition or the approval by the municipality for their alterations. |            | All wards.                            |

## STRATEGIES

Table 2-12: The following are remedial plans that will be put in place to address challenges and re-ranked community priorities as outlined in the situational analysis.

| Identified Challenges   | Changed/reprioritised community needs   |
|---|---|
| From time-to-time breaches and contraventions occur and landowners, businesses, applicants and general public many claims to have limited experience and knowledge of how the system works. | Extensive community awareness regarding the requirements of the legislation.<br><br>Applicants and general public complain about financial implications caused by the |

| Identified Challenges  | Changed/reprioritised community needs   |
|--|---|
|  | implementation of the recent – eco or “green” building standards.   |
| Capacity of staff dealing with this function is not practicable enough to carry out the service standards as customers can expect. | Implementations of the municipal court will save municipality lots of money spent on private lawyers to deal with municipal by-law cases. |

### 2.6.3.3 DEVELOPMENT PLANNING

In complying with the requirements of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (Act 16 of 2013) (hereafter referred to as SPLUMA), the Rustenburg Local Municipality Council has approved and promulgated its Spatial Planning and Land Use Management By-Law (in 2015 and reviewed in 2018) so as to give effect to “Municipal Planning” as contemplated in the Constitution of South Africa, 1996 (Act 106 of 1996) and in so doing to lay down and consolidate processes and procedures, to provide for the establishment of structures such as a Municipal Planning Tribunal, Authorised Official/Land Development Officer and Appeal Authority, and to provide for any other matters incidental thereto. The implementation of the By-law has allowed the Municipality to consider all planned land development and land use applications, include innovative systems which reduce the red tape and increase public involvement in the processes.

In terms of the Rustenburg Local Municipality Spatial Planning and Land Use Management By-law, 2018, there are two categories of land use and land development applications: Category 1 considered by the Municipal Planning Tribunal and Category 2 considered by the Authorised Official (Land Development Officer).

#### 2.6.3.3.1 Spatial Planning

Spatial planning aims to positively shape the way a city develops in space into the future, it therefore seeks to influence or change the urban and rural form. Spatial plans such as Spatial Development Frameworks (hereafter referred to as SDF) guide changes in land-use rights and public investment in infrastructure, they do not, however, give or take away land use rights. A Spatial Development Framework is therefore a useful and effective tool with which to manage and monitor growth and development in the city and informs investors about what they are ‘buying’ and where development opportunities exist in the short and longer term.

The Rustenburg Spatial Development Framework, 2010, was adopted before the enactment of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (Act 16 of 2013, which came into operation in 2015. The Rustenburg Local Municipality is currently in the process of reviewing its SDF in line with the provisions of SPLUMA. Council has in November 2023 adopted the draft reviewed SDF and authorised the public participation process in line with provisions of the Municipal Systems Act. It is thus anticipated that the process of reviewing SDF will be completed before the midyear of 2025.

The Rustenburg SDF forms part of a hierarchy of plans, which is informed by the Integrated Development Plan (hereafter referred to as IDP). The SDF is one of the required sector plans of the IDP. It serves as an input into the IDP and concentrates on the spatial aspects of development planning, whereas the IDP focuses on broader development and financial issues. Following the Rustenburg SDF in the hierarchy of plans are the local spatial development framework plans focusing on specific areas within the municipal area and thus deals with these areas in more detail than the SDF and followed by precinct plans. The local spatial development frameworks were drafted on selected areas located within the Municipal area as per terms of reference. Precinct plans typically deal with the specific areas requiring a specific form of planning intervention and are typically identified for the establishment of mixed nodes, development corridors etc.

#### **2.6.3.3.2 Rustenburg Land Use Scheme**

The Rustenburg Local Municipality has approved its land use scheme in line with the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (Act 16 of 2013), known as the Rustenburg Land Use Scheme, 2021.

#### **RLM SDF (2010) Priority Projects**

The SDF (at the time) identified the following priority projects to be initiated in the RLM area:

- **Project 1:** preparation of a detailed development plan, including road network hierarchy, for the Waterkloof/Waterval development areas southeast of Rustenburg. During the SDF review process, it became clear that individual developments are taking place in this area in an uncoordinated fashion, and it is very difficult to plan a systematic road network hierarchy in this area.

**Progress: A road master plan was prepared in 2015.**

- **Project 2:** the implementation of the detailed proposals for the Rustenburg core area will be dependent on a detailed traffic modeling study of the proposed Beyers Naude/Pres Mbeki one-way system as proposed in the Rustenburg integrated transport plan. The services capacities, and potential upgrading requirements associated with these land use proposals should also be analysed as part of this investigation prior to in-principle support for these proposals.

**Progress: Not achieved.**

- **Project 3:** the implementation of the detailed proposals within Karlienpark, Tlhabane, Rustenburg North and Zinniaville will be dependent on the availability of services (water, electricity and sanitation) in the area. A service infrastructural study assessing the current capacity of services in these areas needs to be undertaken prior to densification being permitted.

**Progress: In 2012 Council approved Karlienpark, Tlhabane, Rustenburg North and Zinniaville precinct plans.**

- **Project 4:** the mixed land use precinct around the Waterfall node and N4 will form one of the primary commercial growth and development areas of Rustenburg in the future. It would be imperative to prepare a detailed precinct development plan for this mixed land use precinct in order to facilitate coordinated development and infrastructure investment.

**Progress: The Waterval precinct plan was approved by the Council in 2013.**

- **Project 5:** the development of a mixed land use service delivery centre in the Boitekong cluster remains a development priority. A detailed feasibility study is required to identify the most appropriate site for such development, the infrastructure and other development requirements associated therewith and identify potential investors to support this initiative.

**Progress: Not Achieved. This is due to a rapid increase in the invasion of land in the Boitekong Cluster.**

- **Project 6:** the proposed mining supply park is one of the anchor local economic development projects of the RLM. It is also identified as a priority project in the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy. The proposed location of this facility is identified in the spatial development framework proposals. A detailed feasibility study considering all relevant factors relating to the implementation of this supply park should be completed as a matter of priority.

**Progress: A township establishment application was made on the identified land in order to establish a mining supply park or industrial township which was unsuccessful.**

- **Projects 7:** a number of intensive urban agricultural focus areas have been identified in the local Spatial Development Framework. The feasibility of these areas should be investigated in more detail, taking cognisance of physical factors such as geology, soil conditions, availability of ground water, possibility of obtaining water for irrigation purposes and other relevant factors. Priority implementation areas should emanate from this investigation.

**Progress: Achieved through Local Economic Development agricultural programmes.**

- **Projects 8:** the possibility of establishing a tertiary education facility in Rustenburg was under discussion for a period of time. A detailed feasibility analysis regarding the sustainability of such an initiative, as well as identifying a potential location thereof should be undertaken.

**Progress: Potential sites for the development of a tertiary education facility are identified and approved by Council.**

- **Projects 9:** The Rustenburg LM should develop, implement and maintain a GIS based land use information system to keep track of all development applications, and applications for land use changes within the municipal area. This system should be fully integrated with the day-to-day activities of the planning directorate and will significantly enhance the effectiveness and productivity of these functions within the municipality.

**Progress: Not achieved**

#### **2.6.3.4 HUMAN SETTLEMENT**

The Rustenburg Local Municipality faces the enormous housing challenge of providing housing opportunities to some 400 000 families in Rustenburg who are currently without adequate shelter. As the provision of housing at scale is often socially, technically and financially demanding, the task is a difficult one that is further complicated by increasing population growth rates and beset by impediments such as Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) processes, limits in construction industry capacity, and skills, funding and land shortages.

The Unit's activities, which are primarily concerned with reducing the housing backlog and providing the service infrastructure for housing. This is being addressed via the development of social housing, the upgrading of informal settlements, the developing of subsidy (BNG) housing and the provision of subsidised rental accommodation. The 2019/2020 review of the plan provides an overview of the housing development strategies therein and details key challenges that need to be addressed to meet its objectives.

#### **2.6.3.4.1 Legislative framework**

##### **The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996**

The Bill of Rights contained in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa entrenches certain basic rights for all citizens of South Africa, including: 'The right to ... access to adequate housing' (Section 26).

The Constitution broadly defines the role for each sphere of government as follows:

- National Government must establish and facilitate a sustainable housing development process for the entire country.
- Provincial Government must do everything in its power to create and promote an enabling environment for this process.
- Municipalities must pursue the delivery of housing (within the framework of national and provincial housing legislation and policy).

##### **2.6.3.4.2 The Housing Act, 107 of 1997**

The Housing Act of 1997, which supports the aims and goals of the Constitution, sets out the general principles of housing development that the three spheres of government must adhere to, encourage and promote. The Act gives the Municipality responsibility for primary development (major housing development) and also sets out policies that establish the needs of the poor as paramount, and advice on how to achieve sustainability, integration, consultation, good governance, empowerment, equity and the optimal use of resources.

Section 9(1)(f) of the Act obliges the Municipality to 'as part of the municipalities' process of integrated development planning, take all reasonable and necessary steps within the framework of national and provincial housing legislation and policy to initiate, plan, coordinate, facilitate, promote and enable appropriate housing development in its area of jurisdiction.'

##### **2.6.3.4.3 The Municipal Finance Management Act, 56 of 2003**

The Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA) was enacted in 2003 to establish sound financial governance frameworks for South African municipalities. It does this by clarifying the roles and responsibilities of their constituent political and administrative parts.

##### **2.6.3.4.4 Accreditation Framework**

The Accreditation of municipalities is one of the statutory instruments, in terms of Section 10 (1) of the Housing Act (Act 107 of 1997) to ensure that a municipality delivers the basic services by being capacitated through funding provided by provinces and national government grants. Rustenburg Local Municipality was granted level 2 Accreditation status and issued with a certificate of compliance by the

MEC for Local Government and Human Settlements in July 2013. The granting of Level 2 Accreditation status to the Municipality officiated its readiness and capacity to administer national housing programmes and projects.

Two levels of accreditation are available that devolve the national housing programme administration functions:

- **Accreditation Level One:** Subsidy Budget Planning, submission of identified Housing Projects and Programmes to the MEC for approval, Beneficiary Management, Housing Subsidy Registration, Subsidy Management, Accreditation Reporting and Document Management.
- **Accreditation Level Two:** Subsidy Budget Planning, submission of identified Housing Projects and Programmes to the MEC for approval, Beneficiary Management, Housing Subsidy Registration, Subsidy Management, Accreditation Reporting and Document Management, Procurement and appointment of Implementing Agents, Project/ Programme management, Contract Administration, Technical Quality Assurance and Budget Management. Financial administration responsibilities for national housing programmes only shift to municipalities through assignment.

Through the signing of the Accreditation Housing Implementation Protocol the Rustenburg Local Municipality became the first municipality in the Northwest to be granted the authority to oversee housing and human settlement initiatives independently.

#### **2.6.3.4.5 National Housing Code**

The Municipality's housing strategies are guided by a policy framework that is contained in the National Housing Code. The Code is the government's overall vision for housing in South Africa and provides guidelines on how to achieve this. As such, it is a live document and is enhanced as and when policy changes and evolves.

#### **A comprehensive plan for development of sustainable human settlements – Breaking New Ground:**

The Municipality is committed to the principles in National Government's BNG strategy. BNG, which was approved by Cabinet in 2004, specifies the role that South Africa's Municipalities must play in the creation of sustainable human settlements. It envisages:

- That the supply of State-assisted housing responds to the demand for different State-assisted housing types.
- A greater integration of housing in the Municipality's IDP.
- That the Municipality will ensure that new developments facilitate spatial restructuring in accordance with its Spatial Development Framework.
- Efforts to effect densification, integration and the development of social and economic infrastructure.

#### **2.6.3.4.6 Other legislation**

Other enacted laws that impact on housing development and administration includes:

- The Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act No 50 of 1999).
- The Prevention of Illegal Eviction from and Unlawful Occupation of Land Act, 1998 (Act No 19 of 1998).

- The Housing Consumers' Protection Measures Act, 1998 (Act No 95 of 1998).
- The Social Housing Act, 2008 (Act No 16 of 2008.)
- The Housing Development Agency Act, 2008 (Act No 23 of 2008.)
- The National Environmental Management Act, 2009 (Act No 62 of 2009).

#### 2.6.3.4.7 Housing Programmes

The Municipality's housing programmes are aligned to those of National Government and informed by its own spatial development planning frameworks. Most of them are run via partnerships between the Municipality and other arms of government and private organisations.

The table below details the intervention categories, definitions and the various National Housing Subsidy instruments being implemented by the Municipality.

**Table 1: Housing Programmes**

| PROGRAMME                                   | DESCRIPTION  | ADDITIONAL COMMENTS  |
|---|--|--|
| <b>RDP house BNG 45 m<sup>2</sup> house</b> | Provide a minimum of a 45 m <sup>2</sup> RDP (subsidised house built between 1994 and pre-September 2004) or BNG (a house built according to the BNG policy, post-September 2004) house to families on the Municipality's waiting list earning a combined income of R0 - R3 500 per month, with the subsidy amount provided by the National Housing Department.  | Beneficiaries must be in the jurisdiction of RIm and meet the requirements as prescribed in the National Housing Code. |
| <b>Consolidation subsidy</b>                | Facilitate improvements to a home where people already own a serviced stand without a top structure.   | Access a subsidy for top structure only  |
| <b>People's Housing Programme</b>           | Households that wish to maximise their housing subsidy by building or organising the building of their homes themselves. Beneficiaries can apply for subsidies via the Project-linked instrument (the subsidy granted to qualifying beneficiaries to enable to them to acquire a house as part of an approved project), the Consolidation instrument (the subsidy granted to owners of a serviced site for the construction of a house) or the Institutional subsidy (the subsidy that is available to institutions to | Beneficiaries must comply with prescribed policy criteria.   |

| PROGRAMME  | DESCRIPTION   | ADDITIONAL COMMENTS   |
|--|---|---|
|  | enable them to create affordable housing stock on a deed of sale, rental or rent to buy option).  |   |
| <b>Emergency Housing Programme</b>                 | Temporary assistance to victims of housing-related disasters (such as fire and flood damage), including the provision of Temporary Resettlement Areas (TRA).  | Provide funding for minimum services and shelter.   |
| <b>Upgrading of Informal Settlements Programme</b> | Provide (1) basic services (water, standpipes and toilet facilities) (2) permanent services and (3) houses to existing informal settlement areas wherever possible (including in <i>situ</i> upgrading)   | Participants less restricted than beneficiaries who qualify for an individual subsidy. Aimed at permanent areas for upgrading, not temporary in nature. |
| <b>Social Housing Programme</b>                    | Higher density subsidised housing that is implemented, managed and owned by independent accredited social housing institutions in designated restructuring zones (for rental purposes). Households earning between R3 000 and R15 000 per month qualify.  | Municipality is encouraging SHI to invest in Rustenburg through social Housing Development  |
| <b>Institutional Housing Subsidy Programme</b>     | This mechanism targets housing institutions that provide tenure alternatives to immediate ownership.  | Rent with option to purchase after a certain period.  |
| <b>Community Residential Units</b>                 | Programme for the building of new rental stock (including hostels) and upgrade of existing higher density stock. Caters for families who prefer rental housing and earn less than R3 500 per month). The City remains the owner of the rental units. Includes the former Hostels Redevelopment Programme. |   |
| <b>Social and rental housing</b>                   | Programme that facilitates access to rental housing opportunities to support urban restructuring and integration.   | Social Housing<br>Community Residential Units   |

## Finances

The Municipality's funding for housing is of two primary types:

- Capital funding: Major maintenance/services installation.
- Operating funding.

Capital funding: Housing development/major maintenance/services installation/informal settlement upgrades.

Capital funding for housing originates from the following sources:

- State Housing Subsidy (Division of Revenue Act (DORA)).
- Rustenburg Local Municipality: Social Development Capital Fund.
- MIG.
- Informal Settlement Upgrading Partnership Grant Provinces

### **Division of Revenue Act**

The Division of Revenue Act (DORA), which is prepared annually by National Treasury, allocates funding to the Provincial Housing Department which, in turn allocates funding to the Municipality. Attaining Level Three accreditation will alter this procedure by channelling these funds directly to the Municipality.

The Municipality's housing subsidy allocations for the remainder of the five-year plan is highlighted in 2.8.5.4 below: These funds will be allocated to the Municipality's housing subsidy projects and programmes.

### **Municipal Infrastructure Grant**

Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG) funding, which is obtained from National Government, supplements the Municipality's other funding sources to allow it to address the infrastructure backlogs that are necessary for it to provide basic services and subsidy housing.

#### **2.6.3.4.8 Human Settlement Developments**

The Municipality's primary response to the challenge of addressing Rustenburg's housing backlog is joint effort between the Municipality and Northwest Department of human settlement through the provincial HSDG

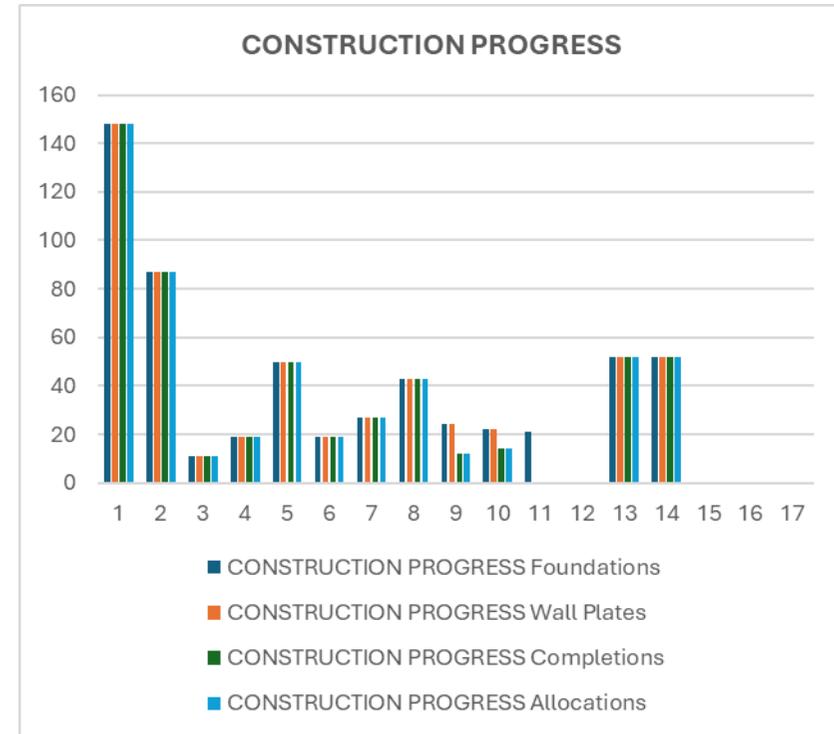
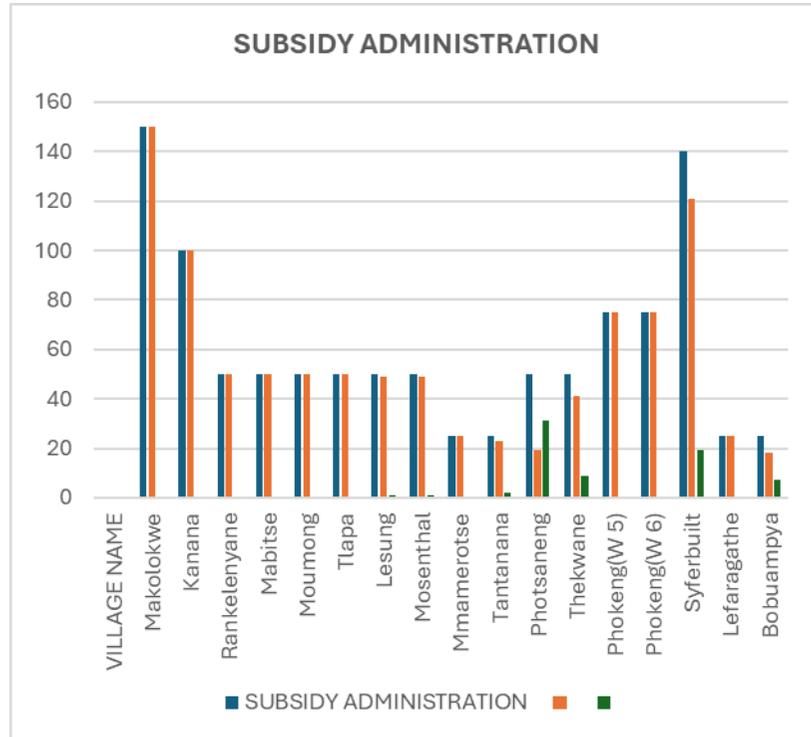
#### 2.6.3.4.8 Housing Programmes Deliveries to date

| PROJECT NAME              | UNITS ALLOCATED | UNITS COMPLETED | OUTSANDING UNITS |
|---------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| Freedom park phase 1      | 2000            | 2000            | 0                |
| Freedom park phase 2      | 2000            | 2000            | 0                |
| Bethani                   | 150             | 137             | 13               |
| Bethani(masosobane)       | 100             | 99              | 1                |
| Wonderkop                 | 150             | 150             | 0                |
| Mathopestad               | 100             | 90              | 10               |
| Lethabong                 | 1417            | 1376            | 41               |
| Boitekong X 2,4 & 5       | 3200            | 2663            | 537              |
| Boitekong X 9 & 10        | 2150            | 1126            | 1026*            |
| Marikana                  | 650             | 650             | 0                |
| Phatsima                  | 1000            | 986             | 14               |
| Meriting X 1 & 3          | 559             | 397             | 162              |
| Boitekong X 13            | 440             | 427             | 13               |
| Boitekong X 23            | 1075            | 1075            | 0                |
| Boitekong X 18 & 22       | 1282            | 1282            | 0                |
| Tsitsing                  | 100             | 100             | 0                |
| Monakato                  | 305             | 298             | 7                |
| Seraleng                  | 3200            | 2981            | 219              |
| Seraleng 557              | 557             | 557             | 557              |
| Bokamoso                  | 1150            | 955             | 200              |
| Rustenburg x26(Ramochana) | 981             | 981             | 0                |
| Boitekong x 8             | 1523            | 1523            | 0                |
| Phatsima                  | 480             | 480             | 0                |
| Mathopestad               | 210             | 210             | 0                |
| Bethani                   | 200             | 200             | 0                |
| Woman Built Projects      | 300             | 300             | 0                |
| Rural 570                 | 570             | 490             | 80               |
| Boitekong Ext 12 CRU      | 200             | 200             | 0                |
| Marikana BNG              | 292             | 0               | 292              |
| Marikana CRU              | 252             | 0               | 252              |
| Monakato                  | 515             | 515             | 0                |
| Rankelenyane              | 65              | 0               | 65               |
| Meriting X 4 & 5          | 1590            | 1241            | 349              |
| Rustenburg Rural 1040     | 1040            | 502             | 538              |
| Dinie Estate              | 290             | 290             | 0                |
| Dinie Estate              | 300             | 300             | 0                |
|                           | <b>30393</b>    | <b>25991</b>    | <b>3350</b>      |

**RUSTENBURG RURAL 1040 HOUSING DEVELOPMENT PROJECT**

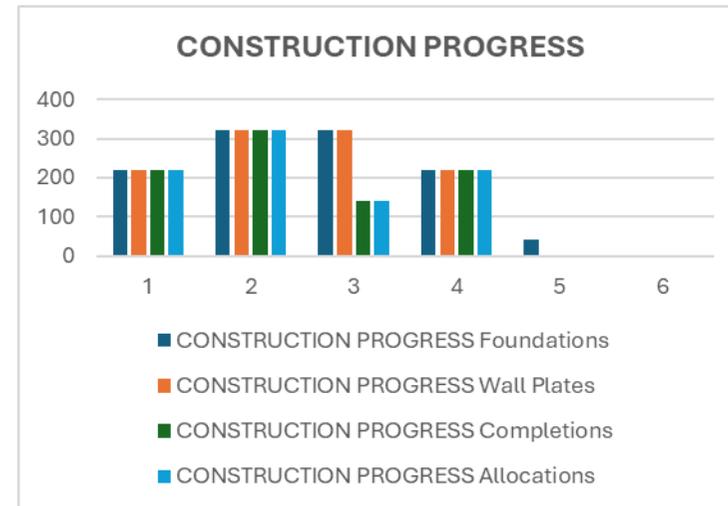
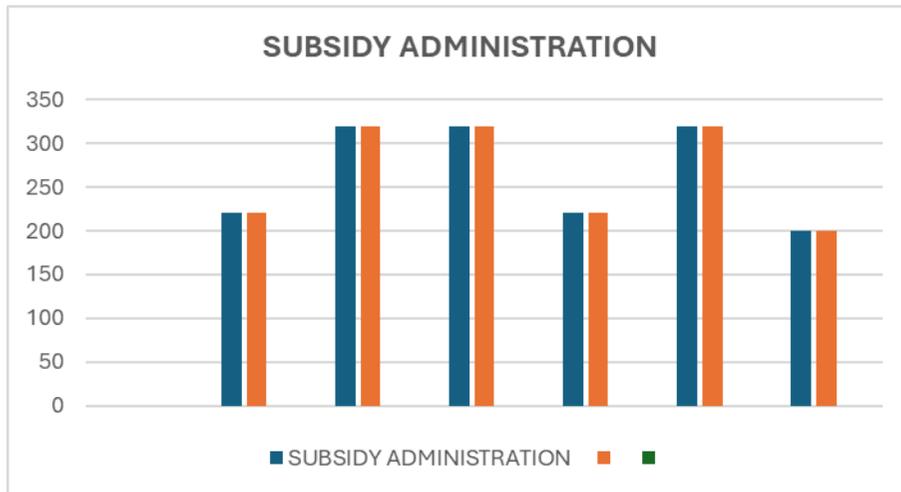
| <b>SUBSIDY ADMINISTRATION</b> |              |                               |                              | <b>CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS</b>        |                    |   |                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|---|--------------------|
| <b>VILLAGE NAME</b>           | <b>UNITS</b> | <b>APPROVED BENEFICIARIES</b> | <b>OUTSTANDING APPROVALS</b> | <b>Foundations</b>                  | <b>Wall Plates</b> | <b>Completions</b>                        | <b>Allocations</b> |
| Makolokwe                     | 150          | 150                           | 0                            | 148                                 | 148                | 148                                       | 148                |
| Kanana                        | 100          | 100                           | 0                            | 87                                  | 87                 | 87  | 87                 |
| Rankelenyane                  | 50           | 50                            | 0                            | 11                                  | 11                 | 11  | 11                 |
| Mabitse                       | 50           | 50                            | 0                            | 19                                  | 19                 | 19  | 19                 |
| Moumong                       | 50           | 50                            | 0                            | 50                                  | 50                 | 50  | 50                 |
| Tlapa                         | 50           | 50                            | 0                            | 19                                  | 19                 | 19  | 19                 |
| Lesung                        | 50           | 49                            | 1                            | 27                                  | 27                 | 27  | 27                 |
| Mosenthal                     | 50           | 49                            | 1                            | 43                                  | 43                 | 43  | 43                 |
| Mmamerotse                    | 25           | 25                            | 0                            | 24                                  | 24                 | 12  | 12                 |
| Tantanana                     | 25           | 23                            | 2                            | 22                                  | 22                 | 14  | 14                 |
| Photsaneng                    | 50           | 19                            | 31                           | 21                                  | 0                  | 0   | 0                  |
| Thekwane                      | 50           | 41                            | 9                            | 0                                   | 0                  | 0   | 0                  |
| Phokeng(W 5)                  | 75           | 75                            | 0                            | 52                                  | 52                 | 52  | 52                 |
| Phokeng(W 6)                  | 75           | 75                            | 0                            | 52                                  | 52                 | 52  | 52                 |
| Syferbuilt                    | 140          | 121                           | 19                           | 0                                   | 0                  | 0   | 0                  |
| Lefaragathe                   | 25           | 25                            | 0                            | 0                                   | 0                  | 0   | 0                  |
| Bobuampya                     | 25           | 18                            | 7                            | 0                                   | 0                  | 0   | 0                  |
|                               | 1040         | 970                           | 70                           | 575                                 | 554                | 534                                       | 534                |
| <b>PERCENTAGE COMPLETION</b>  |              | <b>PERCENTAGE ALLOCATIONS</b> |                              | <b>PERCENTAGE SUBSIDY APPROVALS</b> |                    | <b>PERCENTAGE COMPLETION per APPROVAL</b> |                    |
| 51.34615385                   |              | 51.34615385                   |                              | 93.26923077                         |                    | 55.05154639                               |                    |

## RUSTENBURG RURAL 1040 HOUSING DEVELOPMENT PROJECT



| SUBSIDY ADMINISTRATION |                        |                      |
|------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| UNITS                  | APPROVED BENEFICIARIES | OUSTANDING APPROVALS |
| 220                    | 220                    | 0                    |
| 320                    | 320                    | 0                    |
| 320                    | 320                    | 0                    |
| 220                    | 220                    | 0                    |
| 320                    | 320                    | 0                    |
| 200                    | 200                    | 0                    |
| <b>1600</b>            | <b>1600</b>            | <b>0</b>             |

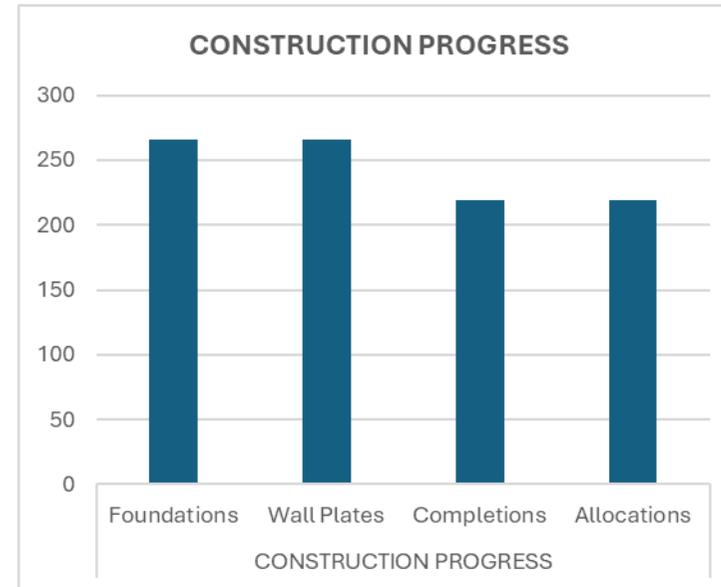
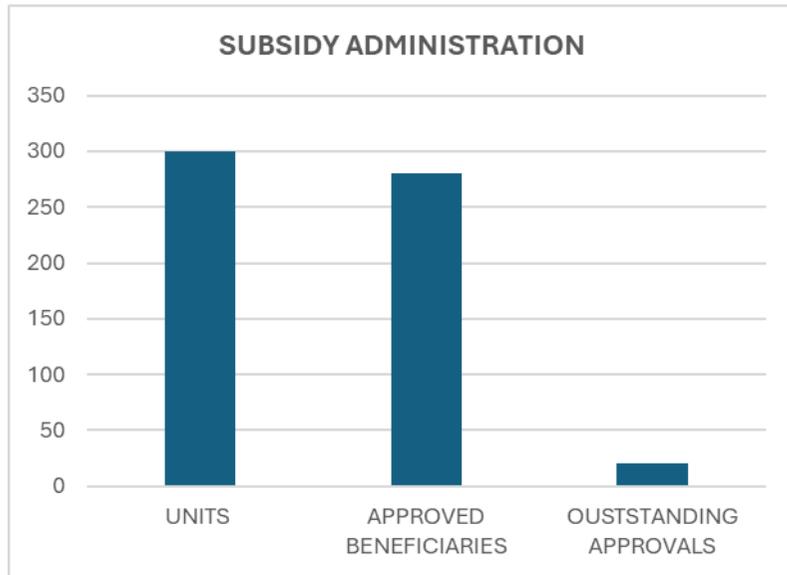
| CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS |             |             |             |
|-----------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Foundations           | Wall Plates | Completions | Allocations |
| 220                   | 220         | 220         | 220         |
| 320                   | 320         | 320         | 320         |
| 320                   | 320         | 139         | 139         |
| 220                   | 220         | 220         | 220         |
| 41                    | 0           | 0           | 0           |
| 0                     | 0           | 0           | 0           |
| <b>1121</b>           | <b>1080</b> | <b>899</b>  | <b>899</b>  |



### DINIE ESTATE 300 HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

| SUBSIDY ADMINISTRATION |       |                        |                      |
|------------------------|-------|------------------------|----------------------|
| TOWNSHIP NAME          | UNITS | APPROVED BENEFICIARIES | OUSTANDING APPROVALS |
| Dinie Estate           | 300   | 280                    | 20                   |

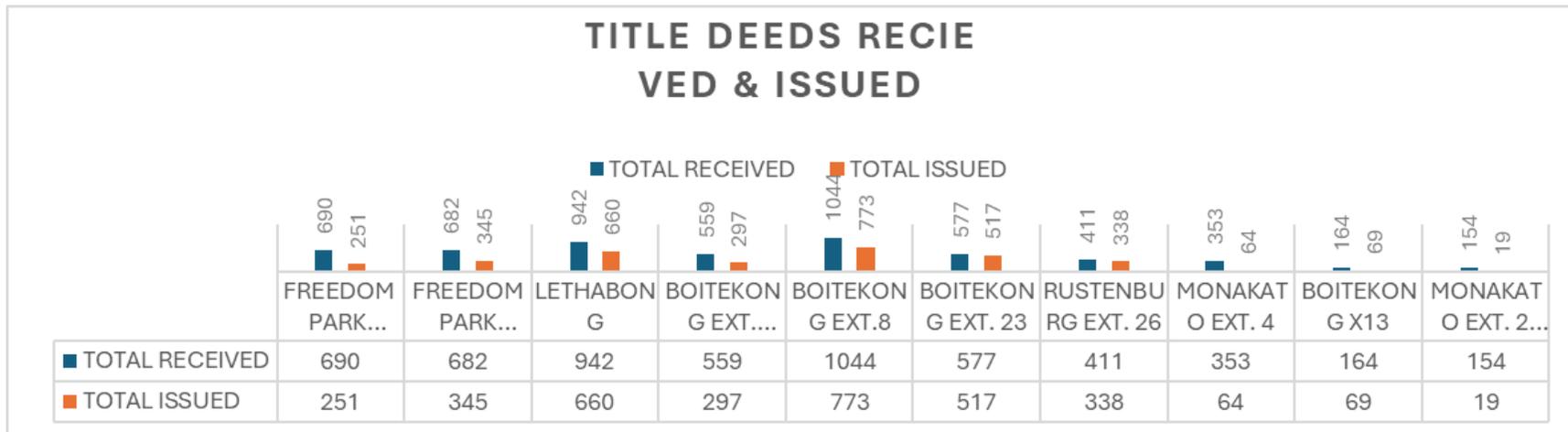
| CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS |             |             |             |
|-----------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Foundations           | Wall Plates | Completions | Allocations |
| 266                   | 266         | 219         | 219         |



**STATS ON ISSUING OF TITLE DEEDS**

| TOWNSHIP NAME          | TOTAL RECEIVED | TOTAL ISSUED |
|------------------------|----------------|--------------|
| FREEDOM PARK PHASE 1   | 690            | 251          |
| FREEDOM PARK PHASE 2   | 682            | 345          |
| LETHABONG              | 942            | 660          |
| BOITEKONG EXT. 2,4 & 5 | 559            | 297          |
| BOITEKONG EXT.8        | 1044           | 773          |
| BOITEKONG EXT. 23      | 577            | 517          |
| RUSTENBURG EXT. 26     | 411            | 338          |
| MONAKATO EXT. 4        | 353            | 64           |
| BOITEKONG X13          | 164            | 69           |
| MONAKATO EXT. 2 & 3    | 154            | 19           |
| <b>TOTAL No.</b>       | <b>5576</b>    | <b>3333</b>  |

**TITLE DEEDS RECIEVED & ISSUED**



**2.8.5.5 Human Settlement Developments Subsidy projected Budget**

|                    | Human Settlement Development Grant |              |                 | Informal Settlement Upgrading Grant |               |              |                 |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|--------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|--------------|-----------------|
|                    | Target Sites                       | Target units | Budget          | Land Acquisition                    | Township      | Target Sites | Annual Budget   |
| Revised 2024/2025  | 0                                  | 456          | R123,226,872.00 | R4,110,483.00                       | R4,681,736.00 | 1835         | R161,357,721.00 |
| Proposed 2025/2026 | 0                                  | 459          | R113,762,279.00 | R4,000,000.00                       | R4,335,732.00 | 1617         | R170,325,381.00 |
| Proposed 2026/2027 | 0                                  | 370          | R126,769,150.00 | R0.00                               | R0.00         | 900          | R62,649,615.00  |
| Proposed 2027/2028 | 0                                  | 405          | R129,170,025.00 | R0.00                               | R0.00         | 755          | R63,611,015.00  |
| Proposed 2028/2029 | 0                                  | 808          | R243,662,190.00 | R0.00                               | R0.00         | R0.00        | R0.00           |
| Proposed 2029/2030 | 0                                  | 1030         | R277,207,850.00 | R0.00                               | R0.00         | R0.00        | R0.00           |

**2.6.4 KPA 3: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT (LED) – SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL 8:  
Promote sustained, inclusive and sustainable economic growth, full and productive  
employment and decent work for all**

**SDG Target 8.3** promote development-oriented policies that support productive activities, decent job creation, entrepreneurship, creativity and innovation, and encourage formalization and growth of micro-, small- and medium-sized enterprises including through access to financial services

**LED DIRECTORATE STRATEGIC OVERVIEW**

**Culture and Values**

In working towards the achievement of the municipal vision and mission, LED subscribes to the following values which are in line with the *Batho Pele* principles:

| <b>Values</b>                 | <b>What it means in practice for RLM</b>  |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <b>Performance excellence</b> | Through teamwork, dedication and commitment to service delivery, we strive to continuously improve our skills, processes and systems to deliver excellent performance to service the broader RLM community  |
| <b>Integrity</b>              | Displaying honesty, respect, dignity and caring in our work and discouraging all forms of discrimination  |
| <b>Community Involvement</b>  | Based on the Batho Pele principles, we grow respect through involving communities.  |
| <b>Transparency</b>           | Ensuring that all stakeholders have access to relevant information to ensures accountability  |
| <b>Cooperative governance</b> | As a sphere of government, we will embrace legislative and regulative prescripts that guides the operations of local government, and advocate for intergovernmental relations and other key stakeholders' relations in implementing LED programmes and projects |

## **Strategic Goals**

Five (5) strategic goals have been developed to enable the LED to effectively focus and prioritize in delivering on its mandate and strategic priorities:

- 1) Policy coherence and economic intelligence to drive socio-economic transformation and a sustainable local economy.
- 2) Create an enabling and conducive business environment to enhance RLM competitiveness as a destination of choice for tourism, investment and trade.
- 3) Accelerated and shared economic growth through skills development and enterprise development to promote an entrepreneurial culture that will contribute towards improving the livelihoods of the RLM communities.
- 4) Good cooperative governance that promotes public private partnerships in support of the socio-economic development programme of RLM.
- 5) Effective systems and processes and efficient resource utilisation to promote and support a high-performance culture

## **Strategic Objectives**

- Develop vibrant and diversified local economy through high value adding economic sectors
- Create an enabling and conducive business environment to enhance RLM competitiveness as a destination of choice for tourism, investment and trade. To enable the development of enterprises in the following economic sectors: tourism, arts, culture, sports and heritage; agriculture and agro-processing; manufacturing, logistics and industrial development; mining beneficiation, education & skills development; informal trading and green economy.
- Support Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment through the development of sustainable small medium and micro enterprises
- Enable transformation of the local economic landscape through development of the township and rural economies
- Establish and maintain strong stakeholder relations and public private partnerships with local industries in support of local economic development programmes

## INTRODUCTION

### **Socio-Economic Overview**

Rustenburg Local Municipality, located in South Africa's North West province, is a significant economic hub within the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality. According to the 2022 Census by Statistics South Africa, the municipality's population was approximately 562,031, making it the most populous in the district.

The municipality's economy is predominantly driven by the mining sector, which contributes about 61.1% to its gross value added (GVA). This substantial contribution underscores Rustenburg's role as a vital player in South Africa's mining industry. In addition to mining, government and community, social, and personal services are significant, accounting for 11.1% of the GVA.

Demographically, Rustenburg has experienced notable growth, with the population increasing from 387,096 in 2001 to 449,776 in 2007. This growth trend continued, as evidenced by the 2022 Census figures. The municipality's age distribution indicates a predominantly young population, with 24.7% under the age of 15 and 71.3% within the working-age bracket of 15 to 64 years. This demographic profile presents both opportunities and challenges in terms of service delivery and economic development.

Rustenburg Local Municipality has a diverse economic base, with its Gross Domestic Product (GDP) primarily driven by mining, particularly platinum group metals (PGMs), which dominate the local economy. The municipality's GDP is significantly bolstered by the mining sector, which accounts for over 60% of the total economic output. However, there is potential for diversification, with agriculture, manufacturing, and tourism presenting opportunities for future growth. The region's agricultural potential includes large-scale farming of crops such as maize and sunflower, and its natural beauty offers tourism prospects that could attract visitors seeking eco-tourism experiences. Additionally, industrial development, including the establishment of value-added processing plants in mining and agriculture, could help mitigate the municipality's dependence on mining, creating job opportunities and fostering sustainable economic growth.

The Directorate of Local Economic Development (LED) plays a critical role in championing the economic development of Rustenburg Local Municipality. This department focuses on fostering a conducive environment for economic growth, poverty alleviation, and the creation of sustainable employment opportunities. By promoting local industries, facilitating infrastructure development, and attracting investments, the LED Directorate works towards diversifying the municipality's economic base, reducing its heavy reliance on mining. Through strategic initiatives like supporting small businesses, encouraging skills development, and fostering public-private partnerships, the directorate aims to create an inclusive economy that benefits all segments of society.

Furthermore, the Directorate plays a key role in identifying and nurturing growth sectors such as agriculture, tourism, and manufacturing. By promoting these industries, the LED Directorate ensures that the municipality can tap into new sources of income and employment, ultimately improving the quality of life for residents. Additionally, the LED Directorate works closely with community stakeholders to address local needs, enhance infrastructure, and create a more resilient and

diversified economy. The directorate’s efforts help build a more sustainable economic future by ensuring that development is balanced, inclusive, and responsive to the evolving needs of the population.

Through these various initiatives, the Directorate of Local Economic Development acts as a driving force in Rustenburg's economic transformation, helping to reduce poverty and unemployment while improving socio-economic conditions. Its focus on creating opportunities for local businesses and communities ensures that the benefits of development are widely shared, contributing to long-term prosperity and sustainability for the municipality.

**Mandate and Purpose**

The mandate of Local Economic Development Directorate is to lead, promote and facilitate economic growth and development, and economic transformation within the Rustenburg Local Municipality.

In terms of the National Development Plan (NDP), LED primary alignment to the NDP is through **Chapter 3: Economy and Employment** where the vision is to achieve full employment, and decent and sustainable livelihoods.

**LED DIRECTORATE STRATEGIC OVERVIEW**

**Culture and Values**

In working towards the achievement of its vision and mission set out above, LED subscribes to the following values which are in line with the *Batho Pele* principles:

| Values                        | What it means in practice for RLM  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <b>Performance excellence</b> | Through teamwork, dedication and commitment to service delivery, we strive to continuously improve our skills, processes and systems to deliver excellent performance to service the broader RLM community |
| <b>Integrity</b>              | Displaying honesty, respect, dignity and caring in our work and discouraging all forms of discrimination   |
| <b>Community Involvement</b>  | Based on the Batho Pele principles, we grow respect through involving communities.   |

| Values                 | What it means in practice for RLM   |
|------------------------|---|
| Transparency           | Ensuring that all stakeholders have access to relevant information to ensures accountability  |
| Cooperative governance | As a sphere of government, we will embrace legislative and regulative prescripts that guides the operations of local government, and advocate for intergovernmental relations and other key stakeholders' relations in implementing LED programmes and projects |

### **Strategic Goals**

Five (5) strategic goals have been developed to enable the LED to effectively focus and prioritize in delivering on its mandate and strategic priorities:

- 6) Policy coherence and economic intelligence to drive socio-economic transformation and a world class local economy.
- 7) Create an enabling and conducive business environment to enhance RLM competitiveness as a destination of choice for tourism, investment and trade.
- 8) Accelerated and shared economic growth through skills development and enterprise development to promote an entrepreneurial culture that will contribute towards improving the livelihoods of the RLM communities.
- 9) Good cooperative governance that promotes public private partnerships in support of the socio-economic development programme of RLM.
- 10) Effective systems and processes and efficient resource utilisation to promote and support a high-performance culture

### **Strategic Objectives**

- Develop vibrant and diversified world class local economy through high value adding economic sectors

- 11) Create an enabling and conducive business environment to enhance RLM competitiveness as a destination of choice for tourism, investment and trade. To enable the development of enterprises in the following economic sectors: tourism, arts, culture, sports and heritage; agriculture and agro-processing; manufacturing, logistics and industrial development; mining beneficiation, education & skills development; informal trading and green economy.
- Support Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment through the development of sustainable small medium and micro enterprises
  - Enable transformation of the local economic landscape through development of the township and rural economies
  - Establish and maintain strong stakeholder relations and public private partnerships with local industries in support of local economic development programmes

### **LED Directorate' Core Business**

LED plays a central role in fighting the triple challenges of poverty, inequality and unemployment by striving to stimulate economic growth, development and transformation. In this case, LED is striving to develop Rustenburg local economy into a diversified and vibrant world class economy.

In partnership with all key role players, LED promotes and facilitates industrial development, enterprise development, skills development, economic transformation and poverty alleviation. The structure of the directorate will thus have to be the one that enables the Directorate to achieve these goals hence the five (5) focus allocated to the following operational Units in the DLED

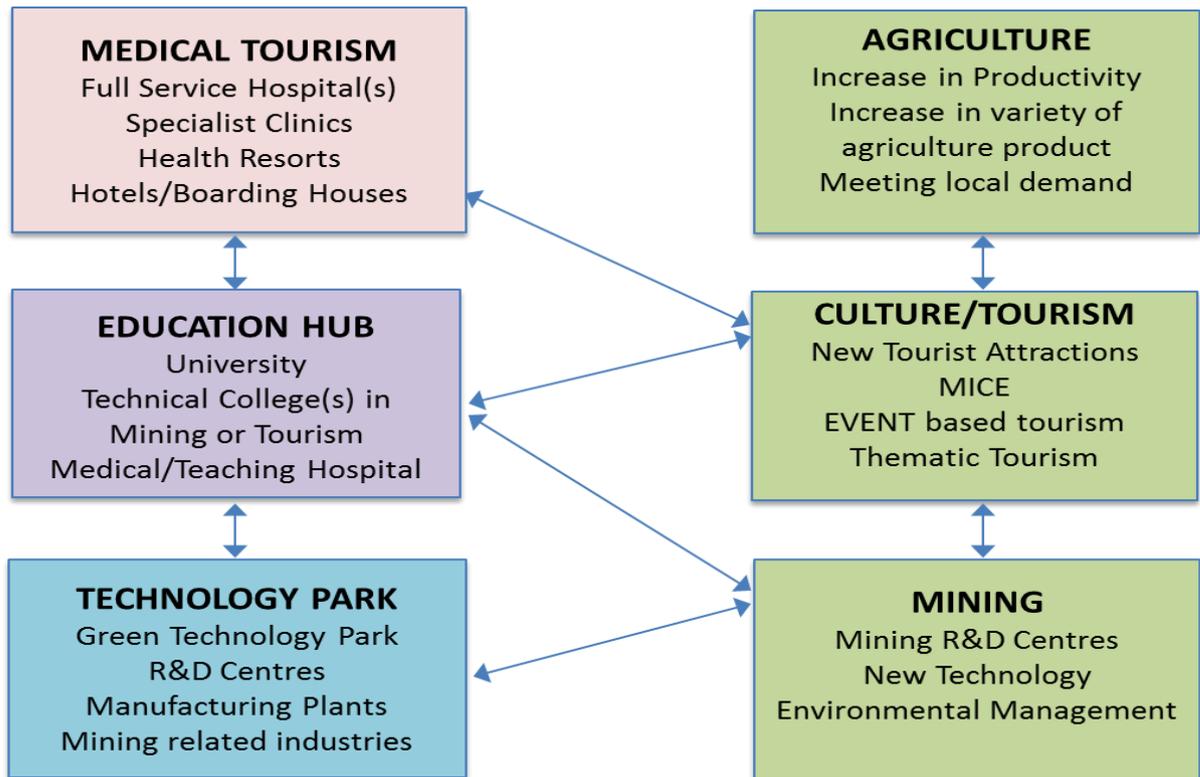
- 1) Enterprise Development
  - Development and support of SMMEs, co-operatives and informal traders
  - Construction sector development
  - Manufacturing sector development
  - Green economy sector development
- 2) Rural Development
  - Tourism development
  - Arts, culture and Heritage development
  - Agriculture and agro-processing development
- 3) Industrial Development and Investment Facilitation
  - Implementation of catalytic projects
  - Investment promotion
  - Industrials sector development

- 4) Research and Policy Development
- Monitoring of employment programmes
  - Skills development
  - Economic policy development
  - Economic research and analyses

### **Diversification**

Rustenburg Local Municipality Economic sector diversification will focus on the following sectors to develop the local economy:

- Mining and beneficiation
- Construction
- Agriculture and Ago-processing
- Tourism
- Arts, culture and heritage development
- Industrial development and manufacturing
- Education and skills development
- Green economy



Economic Diversification will be achieved through implementing the following:

- ❖ Strategic Policy Development & Implementation
- ❖ ESD Programme Development & Implementation
- ❖ Investment Attraction, Retention and Facilitation
- ❖ Skills Development
- ❖ Economic Data Knowledge Management
- ❖ Strategic Communication & Profiling
- ❖ Partnerships

The economy sector development is largely informed by the Rustenburg Integrated Masterplan 2040, the ward priorities expressed during Mayoral consultations and the following Council approved economic sector programmes:

1. The Agricultural Development Support Programme
2. The Green Economy Development Programme
3. The Enterprise Development Programme

The **Enterprise Development Programme** focuses on the support local enterprises (formal & informal) in all business sectors with following:

- ❖ Rustenburg Business Council
- ❖ Capacity Development & Skills Transfer
- ❖ Incubation (Mining, 4IR, Construction, Manufacturing etc.)
- ❖ Support with Working Capital, Raw Materials Supply, Machinery & Equipment
- ❖ Advisory, linkages, mentorship
- ❖ Co-operative Development
- ❖ Informal Trading Development (including spaza shops)
- ❖ On-going Enterprise Day in different wards
- ❖ Financial Support
- ❖ 1-Stop centres

#### **Informal Economy Support**

- ❖ Rustenburg Townships Economy approved by Council
- ❖ Database registration is on-going
- ❖ Business Licence application received awaiting to be processed by DEDECT

Support offered to the sector through partnerships:

- ❖ Compliance support
- ❖ Capacity building and training
- ❖ Equipment support
- ❖ Working stock support
- ❖ Marketing materials
- ❖ Incubations
- ❖ Digitalisation

**Mining and Industrialisation Programme** to be developed to support and develop local business in the mining and industrial sector which has a lot of economic activity needed to be explored and facilitated for local businesses to participate. The programme to cover the following as part of its implementation plan:

- ❖ Small Scale Mining Re-mining
- ❖ Mine ownership
- ❖ Compliance Support
- ❖ Skills Development
- ❖ Financing
- ❖ Infrastructure Development
- ❖ Social Investment
- ❖ Environmental sustainability
- ❖ Incubation
- ❖ Beneficiation and processing

### **Tourism Promotion and Development**

The Tourism Sector Development has identified numerous activities supporting the Municipality's vision of developing Tourism as one of the key sectors to diversify the local economy. The key areas of focus in developing tourism included the following:

- ❖ Resuscitation of relationships with the Tourism facilities owners and tourist tour operators
- ❖ Rebuilding the crafters database to enable ease of access to support offered by the Municipality and key stakeholders.
- ❖ Promoting Rustenburg as a host city for different types of events and programmes for both government and private sector.
- ❖ Sports tourism development
- ❖ Destination marketing
- ❖ Eventing
- ❖ Events Calendar
- ❖ Capacity building
- ❖ Tourism route development
- ❖ Heritage development & promotion
- ❖ Performance art development
- ❖ Textile development and marketing
- ❖ Facility grading
- ❖ Sports promotion and development

To this end, productive engagements have been held with the various players in the tourism sector, ensuring that Rustenburg becomes a tourist destination of choice. This has largely been achieved through promoting Rustenburg as a host city for different types of events and programmes for both government and private sector.

## **Agriculture Development Support Programme**

The first season of the Agricultural Development Support Programme that was approved by Council in 2018/2019 financial year was a clear demonstration of the principles of cooperative governance where a consolidation of support available through the Municipality's own resources, including those by other Government Departments and Private Sector stakeholders in agriculture, ensured implementation of agricultural support initiatives in Rustenburg. The implementation of the programme includes:

- ❖ Horticulture and crop production
- ❖ Livestock, poultry and piggery
- ❖ Two Flagship projects adopted by Council- Sunflower Production (Precision farming) and the Farmer Production Support Unit Flagships
- ❖ Expo market development (Beans, Lucerne, Meat, Sunflower, Wheat, Citrus)
- ❖ Supported through: production inputs, technical advisory, capacity building, mechanisation and market access as per technical committee recommendations.

### **Sunflower Production flagship**

Farmers received support for feed to improve the condition of the livestock which were affected due to veld fires farmers experienced. Twenty (20) Grain farmers were supported with seeds through partnership with Department: Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development. Local farmers were also to attend the Provincial Market /Farmers Day to expose them to new markets and establish business linkages. Through this flagshig, agricultural resources such as (equipment, inputs, and implements) – over 10 dorper sheep, seeds, fresh fruit storage container, saffron seeds, 40 000 litres of diesel were provided to farmers as government support. In addition, farmers were provided to the technical skill transfer to ensure precision farming, through the following interventions:

- Strengthening Horticulture Education course, Crop Strategy and Crop Rotation course, Farm business Management etc were offered through a partnership with the University of Stellenbosch and Orbit TVET College
- Business Development (precision farming training, business linkages and market development) through attendance of expos such as NAMPO Agricultural Show etc.
- Farmers were provided with specialist training on breeding of Dorpers (sheep) by Plenty Dorpers (PTY) LTD through RLM and Mining Stakeholder (RCM) partnership

### **Farmer Production Support Unit (FPSU) Flagship**

The Rustenburg Local Municipality Council approved the establishment of the Rustenburg Farmers Production Support Unit at the Rustenburg show grounds. The Department of Rural development through the Agri-Parks programme is the driver of the FPSU and funding is sourced from various stakeholders within government and the private sector. The FPSU seeks to resuscitate the agricultural activities and create a One stop shop for farmers. The farming community has been able to benefit from the FPSU in many ways through attending agricultural events such as monthly Farmers Market days, livestock shows, trainings, and study groups and information sessions on different aspects of farming. Farmers markets held from November 2023 to June 2024. Market and Information access to local farmers attending the events.

### **The Green Economy Development Programme**

The programme has been developed to encourage local SMMEs to create innovative projects from processing of waste materials (Household and Industrial). The programme includes the following:

- ❖ Processing of waste into new consumer products
- ❖ e.g. Tire tube clothing & bags, e-waste, brick manufacturing
- ❖ Market access (Buy back centre, waste processing plants ...)
- ❖ Alternative Energy generation e.g. self-powered inventors, Eskom collaboration, sludge processing
- ❖ Training and development
- ❖ Infrastructure and equipment support
- ❖ Value chain analysis
- ❖ Employment opportunities (waste pickers, sorters, washers, arts and crafts)
- ❖ Re-mining

The Municipality to develop a skills, education and employment programme to support locals with access to information and opportunities. Skills and Education programmes for local unemployed people:

- ❖ Collaboration with strategic internal (municipal directorates) and external stakeholders (govt departments and private organisations) to inform the local unemployed of available opportunities for training and skills programmes
- ❖ Partnerships with strategic stakeholders to assist and refer job seekers to available opportunities
- ❖ Proposed quarterly sessions to be held in municipal ward clusters

- ❖ To launch the Rustenburg Employment Centre (online and physical) – linked with Business sector to identify employment opportunities.
- ❖ Database to be managed by Municipality

### **Five-Year Implementation Plan**

| STRATEGIC GOAL AND FOCUS AREA  | PLANNED TARGETS   | PROGRESS TO DATE   |
|--|---|--|
| Rustenburg Gateway Precinct - African Convention Centre & Hotel                | Land acquisition / availability and investment promotion  | Council has availed land for the development of a convention centre and hotel.   |
| Rustenburg Gateway Precinct Trade and Investment Promotions Development Centre | Trade and investment promotional products identified and ring-fenced  | LED one-stop office for implementation for catalytic projects and enterprise development has been constructed at the showgrounds and will be resourced to support the catalytic investment function and SMMEs.             |
| Rustenburg Gateway Precinct – Flea Market                                      | Operation of flea market  | The Directorate is leading a programme to promote the facility and to ensure that there are activities at the Visitors Information Centre. The facility to be used to promote tourism, culture and heritage of Rustenburg. |
| Rustenburg Gateway Precinct – Rustenburg Showgrounds                           | Development of the Farmer Support/ Agri-Park Model. Facility to be used to promote activities and support the tourism sector. | Farmer Production Support Unit approved to be hosted at the showgrounds for livestock farming support including agriculture shows and auctions. Long term lease pending approval for racetrack & other amenities           |
| Industrial Park (SEZ)  | Proclamation, re-zoning   | Alternative land identified through land   |

| STRATEGIC GOAL AND FOCUS AREA   | PLANNED TARGETS  | PROGRESS TO DATE   |
|---|--|--|
| including Fresh Produce Market and Aerodrome                              | and investment promotion   | donations from Sibanye to host the SEZ or industrial park – donation in progress. Council has approved the transfer of land to Northwest development Corporation to be used for the purpose of establishing an Industrial Area/SEZ in Rustenburg Local Municipality. |
| CBD Regeneration and Precinct Plans                                       | Final plans with National Treasury   | Rustenburg ext.30 developed with Rustenburg Mall completed. Phase 2 of the project to be implemented.  |
| Education Hub – University of Technology & Centre of Excellence in Mining | Land availability, investment promotion and recruitment of higher learning institution   | Proposal received from the University of Northwest and Council has available land for the development of a University in Rustenburg.   |
| Packaged Projects   | Feasibility studies and bankable business plans for 6 projects                           | No approved development to date on the 5 approved precincts. Precinct plans proposed to be revised / repackaged for aggressive investment campaign   |
| Annual Review of Investment Incentives                                    | Annual review of investment incentives   | Approved incentive policy guidelines to be reviewed with comprehensive implementation plan.  |
| Market Development for SMMEs (links to masterplan projects)               | Identification and packaging of market opportunities from the municipality and the mines | Signed Agreement with DPWI for the implementation of the Contractor Development Programme. Establishment of partnership with Enterprise Development and sector specialists for the development implementation of LED   |

| STRATEGIC GOAL AND FOCUS AREA  | PLANNED TARGETS  | PROGRESS TO DATE  |
|--|--|---|
|  |  | Programmes.   |
| Identification and Profiling of SMMEs  | Acquire SMME database and register SMMEs and job seekers across all wards.                       | SMME digital database platform to be developed. Profiling and marketing of SMMEs on the LED social media platforms.<br><br>Council has approved the establishment of the Rustenburg Business Council, the process of establishing the structure has begun.  |
| SMMEs and Co-operatives to be assisted with business development support interventions | Development of sustainable businesses across all sectors. Support of the Informal trading sector | Directorate to continue conducting enterprise days and cooperatives development workshops across all Wards.<br><br>Programme to develop cooperatives across all wards and to facilitate financial and non-financial support through sector stakeholders. Cooperatives to be profiled for market access through various municipality platforms and private sector opportunities.<br><br>Various programmes developed and being implemented to support SMME to become sustainable – i.e. Vuk'uphile contractor development; Incubation in engineering, mining & manufacturing incubation; Green economy programme, Enterprise Development Support Programme.<br><br>Support of the informal trading sector in |

| STRATEGIC GOAL AND FOCUS AREA   | PLANNED TARGETS  | PROGRESS TO DATE  |
|---|--|---|
|   |  | <p>partnership with stakeholders.</p> <p>Business licencing and tuckshop registration.</p>  |
| To facilitate the creation of jobs through SMME & Cooperatives development, tourism, agriculture, industrial, and infrastructure projects | Sustainable jobs to be created. To reduce unemployment.              | Job opportunities have been created through the Municipality' LED and capital projects including private sector investments projects.   |
| Agriculture and Agro processing   | Ensure participation in Agri-Parks/FPSU and launch Marikana Agri-Hub | <p>Agriculture Development Support Programme implemented with following flagship projects developed and currently attracted various stakeholders to support the local agriculture sector:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Sunflower Production</li> <li>- Farmer Support Production Unit</li> <li>- Amaranths Research and Commercialisation</li> <li>- Animal Production</li> </ul> |
| Housing   | Land acquisition / availability and investment promotion             | Council has identified and approved land to be developed for housing.   |
| Alternative Energy Production   | Land acquisition / availability and investment promotion             | To identify land and to promote Rustenburg as an Investment Destination for alternative energy.   |

| STRATEGIC GOAL AND FOCUS AREA | PLANNED TARGETS                                    | PROGRESS TO DATE  |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| Financing/ capital raising    | Raising external financing                         | To request for proposals  |
| Investment Promotion          | Promotion Rustenburg as an Investment destination. | Marketing and promotions<br>Trade Exhibitions<br>Investment packaging<br>Inbound and outbound marketing |

### **Investment Attraction, Retention and Facilitation**

As part of the Municipalities long term plans for the development of the local economy. The Municipality is facilitating the implementation of Catalytic Investment projects.

#### **Key sectors targeted:**

- ❖ Agriculture & Agro-processing
- ❖ Mining & Mineral Beneficiation
- ❖ Manufacturing
- ❖ Transport & Logistics
- ❖ Tourism, Hospitality & Recreation
- ❖ Aerospace & Aviation
- ❖ Green Economy
- ❖ Retail, Construction & Property Development
- ❖ Education & Training
  
- ❖ CBD Regeneration
- ❖ Revenue enhancement and protection

#### **Business Retention and expansion programme**

The Municipality will be embarking on a Business Retention and Expansion programme which will give an opening to the market analysis findings and through the market analysis process the Municipality will have the opportunity to identify individual business needs. This also has the benefits of fostering

mutual understanding and good relations between the Municipality and businesses, enhancing the reputation of the Municipality. The Municipality, through this exercise, will get an opportunity to manage the way it interacts with its corporate stakeholders. Providing the business sector, a platform for business to raise service delivery related concerns, which can stimulate the development of innovative municipal programmes in responding to the raised concerns therefore allowing for cordial relations between the public and the private sector.

### **LED Sector Plan**

The LED Strategy was reviewed in 2011 and to date no other sector plans have been developed.

During this term, the Directorate will be developing Strategic Sector Programmes including Implementation Plans for the key economic sectors which will drive the local economic growth, development and diversification. The sector programmes will provide the new local economic trajectory for Rustenburg in line with the Municipality's development goals. The LED strategy and the sector plans will be developed in partnership with key stakeholders.

The Municipality has started implementing the Ease-of-doing-business programme as supported by the Department of Cooperative Governance and Tradition Affairs. The programme will assist the Municipality to simplify regulatory processes and requirements, and speed up the permitting compliance process. This would include areas such as land use rights, heritage management, building regulations, licensing and more. This initiative will identify key areas of reform, set benchmarks and targets, and then track progress. The Municipality will advocate strongly for other spheres of government also to reform overly burdensome regulations and promote the ease of doing business in the Municipality by reducing red tapes. The Municipality will start by analysis its processes and systems and also implement automation across different business functions.

### **DIRECTORATE STRATEGIC PRIORITY AREAS**

- 1) Knowledge management of the local economy through strategic sector programmes development and implementation, Policy Development and Coordination, and Strategic Business Relations
- 2) Development of the local economy capability through sector-specific enterprise development programmes
- 3) Catalytic Projects implementation through direct investment promotion and facilitation
- 4) Industrial Development – Bojanala SEZ / Rustenburg Industrial Parks
- 5) Promoting township and rural economy development through tourism, arts & culture, and agriculture development
- 6) Facilitate creation of job opportunities through LED programmes including private sector investment

The Directorate has developed a strategic approach that will take advantage of interdependencies to drive the much-needed **Local Economic Reconstruction and Transformation**. This strategic approach which also represents the Municipality’ **Economic Recovery Plan** is developed into a **9-Pillar Programme**.

| PILLAR   | RLM INTERVENTION  | TARGETED OUTCOME   |
|--|---|--|
| <b>Enabling Technology Development</b>   | Develop & Approve Municipal Policy / By-Laws to enable and regulate the roll-out of fibre infrastructure and related technology   | Private sector internet connectivity infrastructure roll-out to enable local economic development inclusive of technology advancement                                  |
| <b>Advancing Technology, Education and Technical Skills Development</b>              | Effectively enable (land and infrastructure provision) and promote Rustenburg as an Education Hub and identify centres of excellence to develop technological knowhow and technical skills needed for the new economy   | University Precinct development and facilitation.  |
| <b>Unlocking Key Municipal Assets to Leverage Funding and Opening up Industries</b>  | Collaborate with Private Sector and Government Entities to unlock municipal assets’ potential to attract investment in affected economic sectors (i.e. Tourism, energy, Sports, Arts & Culture, etc.). Exploring partnerships with government and private sector. | Local tourism development and promotion.   |
| <b>Leverage Government Funding Towards Socio-Economic Infrastructure Development</b> | Approve Municipality’s and Government capital budget and other budgetary resources to support targeted areas for investment   | Increased capital expenditure to support implementation of catalytic projects and other strategic projects   |
| <b>Broad-based Economic Participation for All-inclusive Growth and Job Creation</b>  | Implement Government Broad-Based Empowerment and related legislation to broaden economic participation and increase job creation. Private sector engagements of the transformation agenda.  | Increased local procurement expenditure through RLM procurement spent. Facilitating access to procurement spent in the private sector for local businesses e.g. mining |
| <b>Township and Rural Economic Development</b>                                       | Develop programmes aimed at developing local township and rural economies in line with priority sectors of the Municipality and other Government programmes   | Key sector specific programmes to develop and capacitate SMMEs and cooperatives to participate in the mainstream economy.  |

| <b>PILLAR</b>  | <b>RLM INTERVENTION</b>  | <b>TARGETED OUTCOME</b>   |
|--|--|---|
| <b>Fast-Track Investment in Economic Sectors with Greater Growth and Development Potential</b> | Develop and implement an aggressive investment promotion and attraction programme for identified catalytic projects.                                 | Increased direct investment in implementing catalytic projects  |
| <b>Stakeholder Management</b>  | Develop targeted meaningful public and private partnerships to support local economic development programmes and to attract investment in Rustenburg | Strong partnership with Mining, Education, National and Provincial Government; and Formalised Local Business formations |
| <b>Local and International Market Development to Support Growing Industries</b>                | Utilise Government programmes and partnerships developed to promote and facilitate access to local and international markets by local companies      | Market development in support of local industries.  |
| <b>Revenue Protection and support</b>  | Maximising Municipal assets and employing new innovative solutions to generate revenue.  | Municipal Revenue generation.   |

The programmes under the Directorate Local Economic Development are implemented Sustainable Development Goals 1, 2, 4, 5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 13, 15 and 17.

#### **HUMAN RESOURCES IMPLICATIONS**

Currently the Directorate has four units being Rural Development; Enterprise Development, Industrial Development and Investment Promotion and Research and Policy. The units are not fully capacitated to implement the Directorate mandate effectively and efficiently. The Municipality is in the process of reviewing the organisational structure.

#### **RISK ANALYSIS**

The Directorate business plan for the current financial year and the medium term relies on budgetary and personnel resources in the main for successful implementation. However, there are other factors some of which represents risks to the Directorate not achieving some of its objectives.

## **2.6.5 KPA 1: BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT**

### **Goal 7. Ensure access to affordable, reliable, sustainable, and modern energy for all**

7.1 by 2030 ensure universal access to affordable, reliable, and modern energy services

7.2 increase substantially the share of renewable energy in the global energy mix by 2030

7.3 double the global rate of improvement in energy efficiency by 2030

7.a by 2030 enhance international cooperation to facilitate access to clean energy research and technologies, including renewable energy, energy efficiency, and advanced and cleaner fossil fuel technologies, and promote investment in energy infrastructure and clean energy technologies

7.b by 2030 expand infrastructure and upgrade technology for supplying modern and sustainable energy services for all in developing countries, particularly LDCs and SIDS

### **SDG 11: Make cities and human settlements inclusive, safe, resilient and sustainable**

**TARGET 11.5** by 2030 significantly reduce the number of deaths and the number of affected people and decrease by  $\gamma\%$  the economic losses relative to GDP caused by disasters, including water-related disasters, with the focus on protecting the poor and people in vulnerable situations

Functions performed under this KPA are led by the Directorate of Technical Services and Infrastructure (DTIS), but collaborate with DRT, DCD and DPS internally and other Social Partners of the Municipality externally.

In general, it should be stated that the following four Strategies need to be put in place to facilitate continued provision of water, sanitation, and electricity in the RLM area.

#### **i) Lifecycle Management**

Further work is required in this area to finalize a definitive inventory of Infrastructure Assets.

#### **ii) Operation and Maintenance Strategy**

The operating and management strategy are to provide the service of the highest quality on a cost-effective basis. The municipality has developed the service delivery programme termed #redirelasechaba which feeds into the preventative maintenance plans for repetitive work to ensure that unexpected infrastructure failures are kept to a minimum. The necessary resource structure and manpower is considered at all times.

#### **iii) Renewal and Replacement Strategy**

Condition monitoring techniques and strategic risk profiles are considered to determine when to replace aged infrastructure. The aged mini substations are identified for replacement. There are various capital projects for replacement of asbestos cement for water and sewer reticulation networks.

#### **iv) New, Upgrade and Disposal Strategy (Capital Investment)**

The council does not have a current documented Operation and Maintenance Strategy. This Strategy will need to be developed as part of future revisions of the services Master Plans.

## **2.6.5 TECHNICAL AND INFRASTRUCTURE SERVICES**

### **2.6.5.1 Water Services**

#### **SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL 6: Ensure availability and sustainable management of water and sanitation for all**

6.1 by 2030, achieve universal and equitable access to safe and affordable drinking water for all

6.2 by 2030, achieve access to adequate and equitable sanitation and hygiene for all, and end open defecation, paying special attention to the needs of women and girls and those in vulnerable situations

6.3 by 2030, improve water quality by reducing pollution, eliminating dumping and minimizing release of hazardous chemicals and materials, halving the proportion of untreated wastewater, and increasing recycling and safe reuse by x% globally

6.4 by 2030, substantially increase water-use efficiency across all sectors and ensure sustainable withdrawals and supply of freshwater to address water scarcity, and substantially reduce the number of people suffering from water scarcity

6.5 by 2030 implement integrated water resources management at all levels, including through transboundary cooperation as appropriate

6.6 by 2020 protect and restore water-related ecosystems, including mountains, forests, wetlands, rivers, aquifers and lakes

6.a by 2030, expand international cooperation and capacity-building support to developing countries in water and sanitation related activities and programmes, including water harvesting, desalination, water efficiency, wastewater treatment, recycling and reuse technologies

6.b support and strengthen the participation of local communities for improving water and sanitation management

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (RSA) states that access to safe drinking water is a basic human right and is essential to public health. To give effect to this right, Parliament enacted the Water Services Act (WSA) 108 of 1997, which provides that “everyone has a right of access to basic water supply and sanitation services; every water services institution must take steps to realise these rights; and every municipality must plan in its water services development plan to realise these rights”.

As a designated Water Services Authority (WSA), the Rustenburg Local Municipality (RLM) is mandated to comply with the provisions of the Water Services Act 108 of 1997 and also adhere to prescribed compulsory national norms and standards in accordance with Section 9 and 10 of the Act. To uphold its mandate and commitment to ensuring safe and reliable water services, the Directorate of Infrastructure and Technical Services (DTIS) within RLM is tasked with implementing a comprehensive water quality monitoring programme. This programme, guided by the municipality’s water safety plan, focuses on safeguarding the quality of drinking water to all communities within the jurisdiction of the

Rustenburg. Safe drinking water, as defined by the South African National Standard (SANS) 241 for Drinking Water, poses no significant health risk over a lifetime of consumption.

With an estimated population of approximately 700 000, Rustenburg is qualified as one of the fastest growing cities in South Africa. The Rustenburg LM has a water master plan in place that makes provision for the envisaged population growth and industrial development. The greatest advantage that enables RLM to provide sustainable water provision of good quality to approximately 700 000 residents including the mining industry and other commercial industries is the highly skilled technical team that works tirelessly and diligently to ensure. Furthermore, the Municipality prioritises water conservation and water demand management (WC/WDM) initiatives, ensuring that the set strategies outlined in the annual budget, the Integrated Development Plan (IDP), and the Water Services Development Plan (WSDP) are implemented.

### Household Infrastructure

Household infrastructure data is essential for effective economic planning and social development, focusing on key indicators such as access to safe running water, sanitation, refuse removal, and electricity. A household is considered "serviced" if it has access to all four services, while those lacking any are part of the infrastructure backlog. Accurately measuring this access is challenging, prompting the development of a specialised model by IHS to assess and track households' service levels. This model provides valuable insights into community needs, guiding targeted improvements in service delivery.

### Households By Access To Water

A household is categorised according to its main access to water, as follows: regional/local water scheme, borehole, water tanker, dam/river/stream water, and other alternative water sources. According to StatsSA (2022), 53.0% of households in Rustenburg have access to piped water, with 4% without access to piped water.

Table 1: Total number of households per category

| Description                              | Number of households |
|--|----------------------|
| Piped (tap) water inside the dwelling    | 108 002              |
| Piped (tap) water inside the yard        | 77 516               |
| Piped (tap) water on the community stand | 9 691                |
| No access to piped water                 | 8 449                |

Source: Census 2022 by StatsSA

The chart below (see Figure 1) illustrates the percentage distribution of households across various categories related to access to water, based on the data presented in the table above.

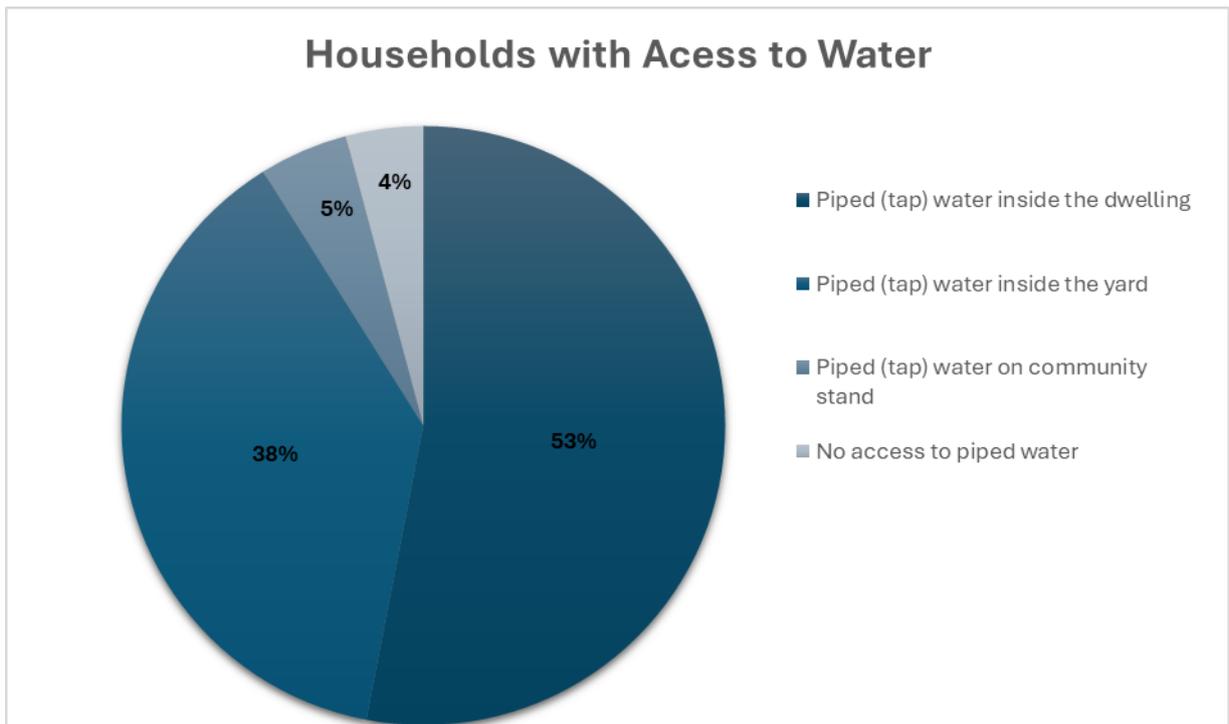


Figure 1: A pie chart illustrating the percentage distribution of households with access to water.

When analysing the water backlog, which refers to the number of households falling below the Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) level, there were 8 449 households within the Rustenburg LM that did not meet the RDP standard. Of the total number of households, only 13 811 households were being billed for water services. This discrepancy indicates a significant challenge in revenue collection, which is a key contributor to non-revenue water (NRW).

## WATER PROVISION SCHEMES

Rustenburg LM receives an average of 135 ML/day of water from Rand Water and Magalies Water, with additional supply from the Bospoort and Kloof Water Treatment Works (WTW). Both WTW are owned by the Rustenburg LM, administered under the Rustenburg Water Services Trust (RWST), and operated and maintained under contract by Water Solutions South Africa (WSSA). Remote communities rely on boreholes for their water supply.

## MAGALIES WATER BOARD (MWB)

Magalies Water supplies Rustenburg Local Municipality from their Vaalkop Water Treatment Works, where raw water is abstracted from the Vaalkop Dam.

### Vaalkop Lapatrie Scheme

Phatsima, Monakato and Boschoek are supplied through this scheme.

### Vaalkop Kortbegrip Scheme

Magalies Water pumps to the Kortbegrip command reservoir which in turn gravity feeds to the Lethabong, Modikwe, Bethanie and Barseba Villages in Rustenburg. Magalies Water is currently

implementing the Bethanie, Modikwe, Barseba and Makolokwe upgrade project which aims to increase the current water supply capacity of this scheme from 12ML/day to 24ML/day.

### **Vaalkop South scheme (Plant 2)**

A 250mm diameter pipeline branching off the M1 Vaalkop (1000 diameter) pipeline from Vaalkop WTW supplies Mabitse, Rankelenyane, Tlapa and Leloreng. West of the Bospoort reservoirs is a 160mm diameter pipeline which branches off the V1 (1100 diameter) pipeline, supplying Lesung. With Kanana, Mafika, Serutube, Tsitsing, Maile, Tlaseng, Mogajane, Motsitle and Tantanana supplied via a 355mm diameter pipeline branching off the V1 supply.

Magalies Water has commenced Phase 2 of the Pilanesberg Scheme for the Mafenya/Phokeng western limb from the Pilanesberg South Bulk Water Supply (BWS). This project will provide 70 ML/day to the Tlhabane Reservoir, which will subsequently supply both the Tlhabane and Phokeng settlements once the Magalies Water Vaalkop Plant has been upgraded.

### **Rand Water Board (RWB)**

The Rand Water Board supplies Rustenburg with water via two systems, the Barnardsvlei system and Vaalkop system in conjunction with Magalies Water from the Bospoort Reservoirs. Approximately 90ML/day of water is supplied by the Rand Water Board through both systems and about 51ML/day is through purchasing from the Magalies Water Board’s Vaalkop system.

### **The Rand Water-Magalies Water Point Of Sale**

This is located at the southwestern boundary of Kanana settlement. Thereafter, the V1 (1100mm diameter) pipeline forks into the V1 (900mm diameter) pipeline and V2 (700mm diameter) pipeline. The V2 pipeline was reduced from 500mm diameter to 400mm diameter to supply Ga-Luka and Impala Platinum Mine. Boitekong and Meriting are supplied via the V1 and V2 pipeline take-off. The V1 (700 diameter) pipeline supplies the Tlhabane upper reservoir, from which water is pumped via a 400mm diameter pipeline to supply areas in the vicinity of Royal Bafokeng Nation.

### **WSSA Bospoort WTW System**

The Bospoort supply system currently pumps 12 ML/day to the Industrial Reservoirs, with plans in place to increase capacity by an additional 12 ML/day, bringing the total supply to 24 ML/day. All civil construction work has been completed, and the remaining mechanical and electrical components are yet to commence.

*Table 2: Bospoort Plant Details*

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <b>WATER SERVICE AUTHORITY</b>  | Rustenburg Local Municipality   |
| <b>WATER SERVICE PROVIDER</b>   | Rustenburg water service trust (WSSA)   |
| <b>DESIGN CAPACITY OF WORKS</b> | 12 ML/DAY   |
| <b>AREAS SERVED</b>             | Industrial Reservoirs (Karlienpark, Zinniaville, Rustenburg Noord and Zinniaville Industrial Area), |

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
|                                | Geelhoutpark Reservoirs and Belleview Reservoir    |
| <b>GPS LOCATION</b>            | Latitude -25 33 41.58 S<br>Longitude 27 20 58.07 E |
| <b>CLASSIFICATION OF WORKS</b> | Class B  |
| <b>ABSTRACTION CATCHMENT</b>   | Bospoort Dam (Hex River)                           |

### Kloof Water Treatment Works

Raw water is abstracted from the Kloof Dam through submersible pumps, and enters the plant through an orifice that feeds into the bottom of the sump. Two inlet control valves regulate the inflow of treated water to the reservoir, where a water meter has been installed on the inflow line. The plant supplies approximately 2% of the total water demand and is manually operated by RLM bulk personnel. A roving inspector performs backwash and operational functions, ensuring smooth operation of the plant. Additionally, a preventative maintenance schedule is strictly followed to maintain efficient plant performance and reliable water supply.

Table 3: Kloof Plant Details

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <b>WATER SERVICE AUTHORITY</b>  | Rustenburg Local Municipality                      |
| <b>WATER SERVICE PROVIDER</b>   | Rustenburg water service trust (WSSA)              |
| <b>DESIGN CAPACITY OF WORKS</b> | 2.5 ML/DAY   |
| <b>OPERATIONAL CAPACITY</b>     | 1.5 ML/DAY   |
| <b>GPS LOCATION</b>             | Latitude -25 42 20.26 S<br>Longitude 27 14 43.50 E |
| <b>PLANT TECHNOLOGY</b>         | Pumping Pre-Oxidation                              |
| <b>GPS LOCATION</b>             | Latitude -25 33 41.58 S<br>Longitude 27 20 58.07 E |
| <b>CLASSIFICATION OF WORKS</b>  | Class D  |
| <b>ABSTRACTION CATCHMENT</b>    | Bospoort Dam (Hex River)                           |

## Borehole Water Schemes

Boreholes extract water from local aquifers and are regulated by the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) under the National Water Act to ensure sustainable use and the protection of groundwater resources. The municipality operates borehole water schemes in Syferbult, Molote City, Mathopestaad, Dinie Estate, Modikwe, Bethanie, Barseba, Phoane, and Seraleng, where potable water supply relies primarily on groundwater sources.

## Existing Water Services Infrastructure

Established in 1851, the Rustenburg LM has a total pipeline network of 1,477 km, of which 778 km consists of aged Asbestos Cement (AC) pipes. High water demand and the aging infrastructure has contributed to the persistent water supply challenges in the City. To address this issue, the municipality has implemented ongoing AC pipeline replacement projects. To date, approximately 70 km of AC pipes have been replaced with uPVC pipes, improving the reliability and efficiency of the RLM's water supply system.

The greater part of the Rustenburg area is supplied with surface water from the Elands and Crocodile Rivers via the Vaalkop Dam, and the Hex River from the Vaal River. Pipelines from these water sources are owned and managed by Magalies Water and Rand Water Boards. The Municipality connects to the Water Board's system through metered bulk water connections that feed into the Municipality's reservoirs, and eventually gets distributed through the pipeline network to supply the broader Rustenburg area.

## Blue Drop Certification

Rustenburg Local Municipality is committed to ensuring the highest standards of drinking water quality in line with the Blue Drop Certification Programme. This is an incentive-based regulatory tool introduced by the Department of Water and Sanitation to evaluate Water Service Authorities on their performance in water safety, risk management, and compliance with SANS 241 drinking water quality standards.

The municipality receives treated water from Rand Water, Magalies Water, and Rustenburg Water Services Trust (RWST), which are responsible for bulk water treatment and supply. The Municipality conducts water quality monitoring at various points in the supply system to ensure that the water supplied to the residents of Rustenburg meets the national standards for drinking water and is safe for human consumption.

## Blue Drop Status

As outlined in the Blue Drop Report (DWS, 2023), The Rustenburg Local Municipality is the third-highest scoring Water Services Authority (WSA) in the North-West Province, achieving a score of 78.31%. The bar chart below (*see Figure 2*) compares the 2014 and 2023 BD scores, ranked from highest to lowest performing WSA in 2023.

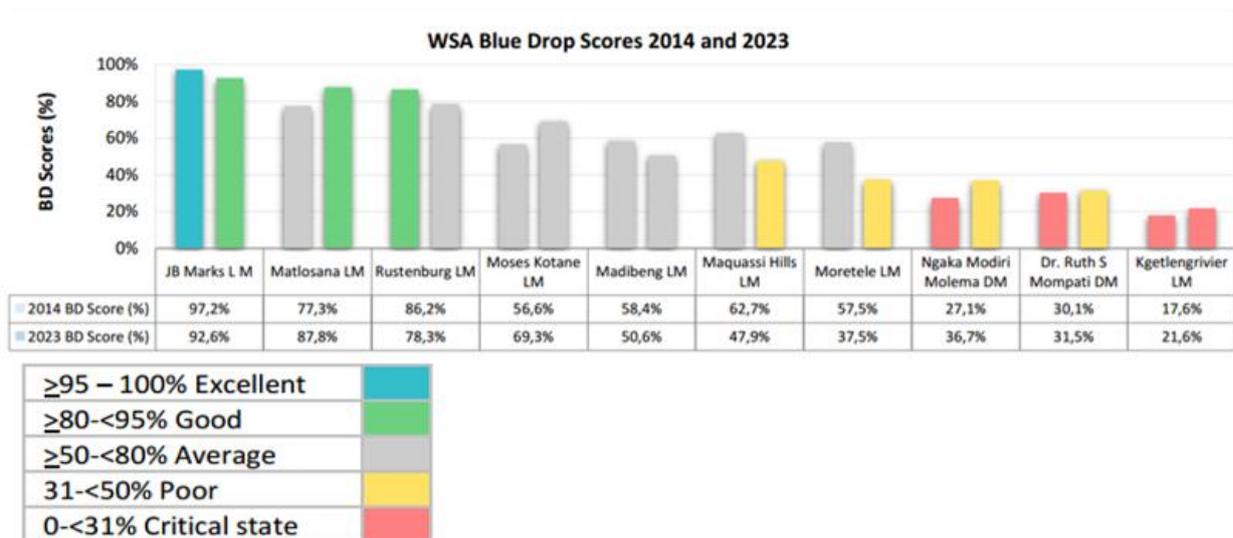


Figure 2: Blue Drop Score Results

### Blue Drop Remedial Actions

An Incident Management Protocol (IMP) which the Municipality adheres to has been put in place for effective responses to water quality failures, ensuring compliance with SANS 241 drinking water standards. To improve monitoring, an Implementation Plan for the Distribution and Boreholes Monitoring Programme has been set up to ensure consistent monitoring in the reticulation network.

Educational awareness campaigns are regularly held to educate the residents of Rustenburg more about water conservation, acceptable standards of drinking water, the negative impacts of vandalism and theft on the Rustenburg infrastructure, illegal connections, etc. Water quality results are uploaded regularly on the Integrated Regulatory Information System (IRIS) to ensure transparency and comply with regulatory standards set by DWS. These results are also shared through the municipal’s website, social media pages, local newspaper, and ward councillors, so that residents are well informed and regularly updated. Furthermore, Boil Water advisory notices are issued out whenever the drinking water quality fails to meet the standards.

The municipality holds monthly water quality technical meetings with relevant stakeholders. These meetings provide a platform for discussing emerging water quality risks, agreeing on corrective actions, and continuously improving water quality management. By taking these steps, Rustenburg Local Municipality is dedicated to ensuring that the water provided to its residents is safe, clean, and reliable at all times.

### Backlog

RLM has a water services backlog. Strategies to eradicate the backlogs ensure the effective rollout of the programme as the millennium targets were set by the National Government for access to safe drinking water. The drive for the millennium goals will continue to eradicate all backlogs. The provision of water to individual households (i.e. yard connections) will dominate in the future. The increase in

the level of service for existing consumers as well as normal population growth and influx into the area will increase water demand and related services.

## Water Demand

As a rapidly growing municipality, Rustenburg LM continues to experience a significant increase in water demand. Table 4 below illustrates that the current average daily water supply consumption across RLM is 134.68 ML/day, while the average daily demand stands at 223.08 ML/day, resulting in a daily shortfall of approximately 88.4 ML/day. To address this deficit, the municipality is set to implement new projects aimed at enhancing water supply capacity. These initiatives will be undertaken in collaboration with water boards and other key stakeholders operating within the municipality to ensure sustainable water provision and long-term water security for the growing population. The Annual Average Daily Demand (AADD) for Rustenburg is estimated as outlined in the *Guidelines for Human Settlement Planning and Design* (Red Book) by CSIR Building and Construction Technology.

Table 4: RLM Average Daily Demand and Water Consumption

| Water Schemes       | Average Supply Consumption per Scheme (ML/Day) | Water Demand Per Capita Per Scheme (ML/DAY) | Deficit Demand per Capita per Scheme (ML/Day) |
|---------------------|--|---|---|
| KORTBEGRIP SCHEME   | 15.77  | 29.16                                       | 13.39   |
| BARNARDSVLEI SCHEME | 44.55  | 71.09                                       | 26.54   |
| LAPARTRIE SCHEME    | 8.02   | 19.28                                       | 11.26   |
| BOSPOORT SCHEME     | 66.34  | 103.55                                      | 37.21   |
| TOTAL               | 134.68   | 223.08                                      | 88.4  |

The bar graph below (see Figure 3) illustrates the water demand per scheme within the Rustenburg LM, which highlights the significant disparity between the average daily water demand and the actual supply received from the water boards. This emphasises the ongoing challenge of meeting the municipality's growing water demand needs. To address this gap, the municipality is implementing upgrade projects aimed at enhancing water supply infrastructure and ensuring sustainable water distribution across all schemes.

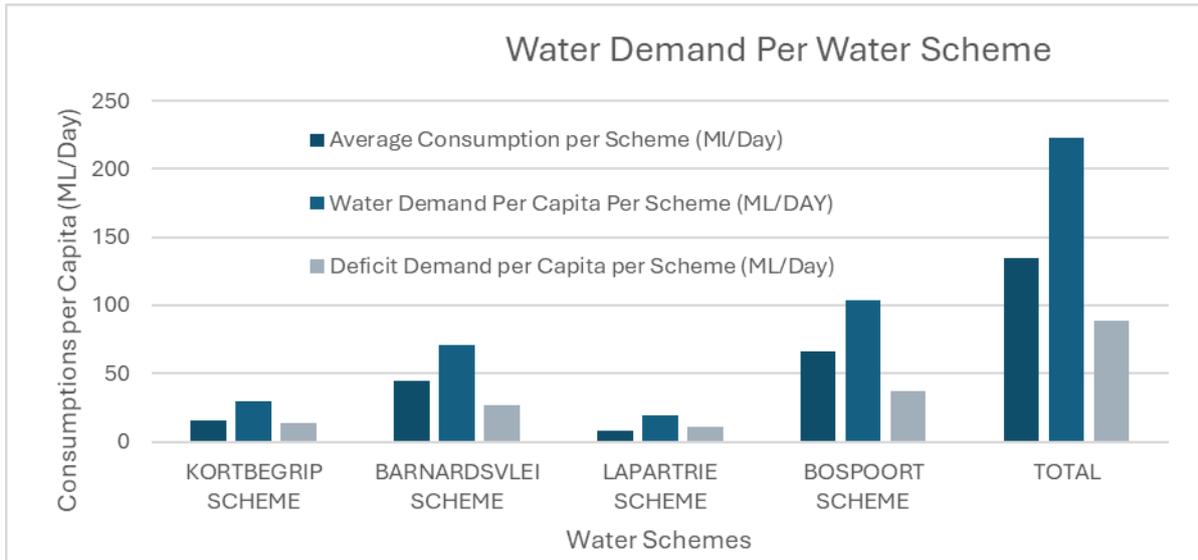


Figure 3: RLM ADD per scheme Comparison

### IWA Water Balance 2024

An annual International Water Association (IWA) Water Balance is commonly utilised to assess Non-Revenue Water (NRW), water losses, and their associated components. This tool provides a comprehensive analysis of water production, storage, and distribution processes, enabling the identification of inefficiencies and prioritisation of corrective measures. The IWA Water Balance quantifies the total water supplied and determines the percentage attributed to NRW, offering valuable insights into the municipality’s water loss patterns. Furthermore, this structured approach categorises the various types of losses experienced by the Rustenburg LM.

The Components of the IWA Water Balance are illustrated in Figure 2 indicating a comprehensive water consumption across the entire system, categorising it into Billed, Unbilled, and water losses, distinguishing between Non-Revenue and Revenue consumption. Notably, the chart highlights a significant portion, 44%, being accurately billed and metered, showing that the system is operating efficiently.

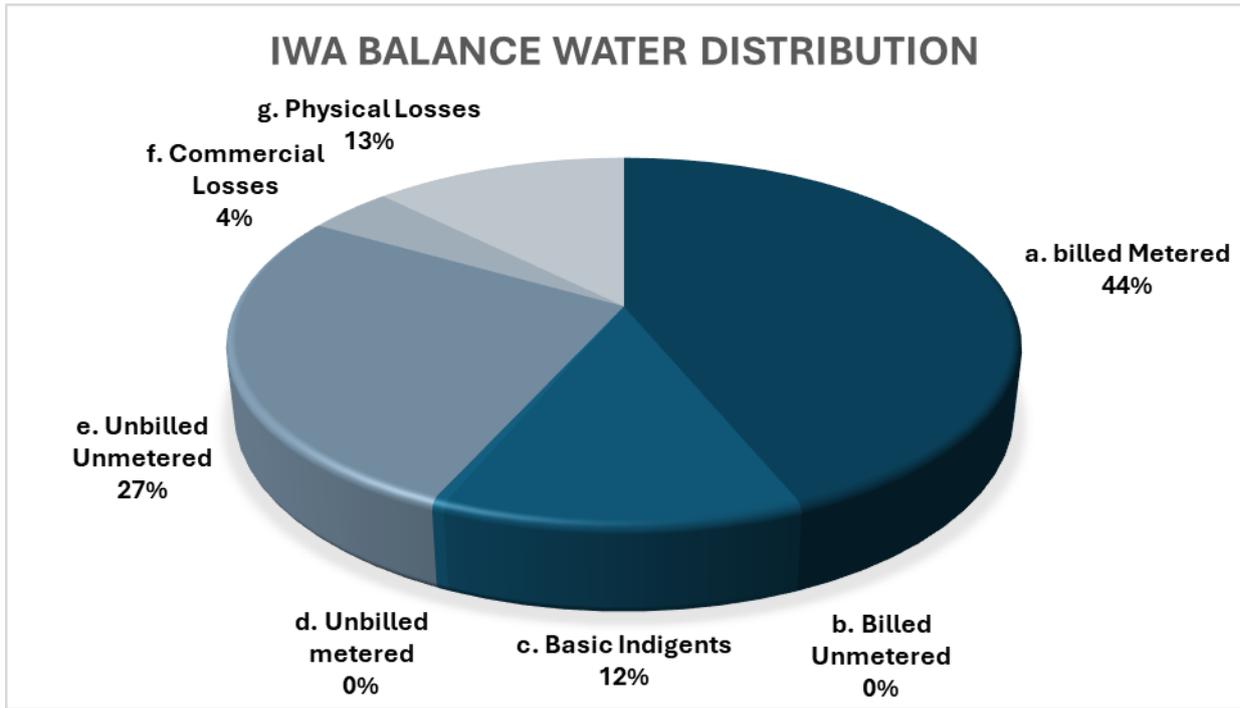


Figure 4: IWA Balance Components Distribution for RLM JAN 2024 - DEC 2024

The 2024 water data analysis (January–December) provides critical insights into Rustenburg LM’s water management challenges and performance. The municipality received an average daily system input volume of 123.4 ML/day, with Non-Revenue Water (NRW) accounting for 54.0 ML/day (43.7%) and total water losses reaching 20.5 ML/day (16.6%). These figures highlight the pressing need to address inefficiencies in water distribution. The primary contributors to NRW include physical leaks, commercial inefficiencies, and unbilled authorised consumption, which collectively account for 34 ML/day (28.2%). Table 5 below illustrates the water balance for the municipality, providing a detailed breakdown of these losses.

Table 5: RLM IWA Water Balance

| Rustenburg Local Municipality IWA Water Balance JANUARY - DECEMBER 2024 |      |                                      |       |  |       |   |       |                            |       |
|---|------|--------------------------------------|-------|--|-------|---|-------|----------------------------|-------|
| System Input Volume<br>123.4 ML/d                                       | 100% | Authorised Consumption<br>102.9 ML/d | 83.4% | Billed Authorised Consumption<br>54.1 ML/d | 43.8% | Billed Metered Consumption<br>54.1 ML/d | 43.8% | Revenue Water<br>69.4 ML/d | 56.3% |
|   |      |                                      |       |  |       | Billed Unmetered Consumption<br>0 ML/d  | 0%    |                            |       |

|  |  |                           |  |   |       |  |       |  |  |                           |       |
|--|--|---------------------------|--|---|-------|--|-------|--|--|---------------------------|-------|
|  |  |                           |  | Free Authorised Consumption 15.3 MI/d     | 12.4% | Free basic Water 15.3 MI/d   | 12.4% |  |  |                           |       |
|  |  |                           |  | Unbilled Authorised Consumption 33.5 MI/d | 27.1% | Unbilled Metered Consumption 0.6 MI/d  | 0.5%  |  |  | Non Revenue Water 54 MI/d | 43.7% |
|  |  |                           |  |   |       | Unbilled Unmetered Consumption 32.9 MI/d   | 26.7% |  |  |                           |       |
|  |  |                           |  | Water Losses 20.5 MI/d                    | 16.6% | Commercial Losses: Customer meter inaccuracies/Data Handling errors/Illegal Connections 5.1 MI/d |       |  |  |                           |       |
|  |  | Physical Losses 15.4 MI/d |  | 12.5%                                     |       |  |       |  |  |                           |       |

Addressing these NRW challenges is essential for sustainable water resource management and efficient service delivery. Proactive measures are being implemented such as regular infrastructure maintenance, enhanced metering systems, and consumer awareness programs that are playing an important role in reducing water losses.

### Water Conservation and Water Demand Management

The Water Conservation and Water Demand Management Strategy is a fundamental step in promoting water use efficiency and is consistent with the National Water Act (Act 36 of 1998) which emphasises effective management of our water resources. With increased population comes greater demand and pressure on the existing water infrastructure and services. One of the key responsibilities of the Water Services Authority is to integrate WC/WDM into the WSDP and ensure its implementation by Water Services Providers (WSPs). In line with this mandate, the RLM Water Services Unit has initiated various projects focused on reducing water losses. A major component of these efforts is the replacement of aging Asbestos Cement (AC) pipes, which has significantly contributed to lowering water loss margins and improving overall water efficiency.

The rapid growth of population, backyard dwellers and informal settlements has drastically increased the demand for water and the current supply system is overstretched.

## **RLM ACTION PLAN FOR REDUCING WATER LOSSES**

### **Billing Data**

The Rustenburg Local Municipality (RLM), through its Budget and Treasury Office (BTO), has implemented a program to monitor and reduce the number of unbilled customers. A consultant has been appointed to collect meter readings within the Rustenburg jurisdiction, ensuring accurate billing data and assisting in the identification of illegal connections that contribute to non-revenue water losses. To further enhance water loss reduction efforts, RLM has a dedicated maintenance team responsible for repairing and replacing faulty and leaking meters. Following a structured maintenance plan, the team ensures that all meter related complaints are addressed within a 48-hour turn-around time, thereby minimising water losses.

Collaboration between the Finance Department (BTO) and the Water Services Unit has significantly improved water loss management. This includes regular analysis of billing records to identify unusual consumption patterns and missing meter readings, as mitigating factors of water losses and revenue inefficiencies. Additionally, the Finance Department is actively enhancing customer account management by identifying irregularities in water consumption patterns to ensure accurate billing.

### **Real-Time Monitoring**

Through the integration of IMQS and Telemetry systems, Water Services Unit has significantly contributed to reducing water losses by enabling real-time monitoring of water from the distribution networks. These systems play a crucial role in tracking water consumption, flow rates, and pressure while pinpointing the location of losses and high-demand areas. They also contribute in identifying and managing altitude control valves at reservoirs, preventing overflow and ensuring optimised water distribution.

### **Maintenance and Quality of Repairs**

The Water Services Unit is committed to ensuring reliable water services by focusing on the maintenance and repair of water infrastructure. As part of its comprehensive maintenance plan, RLM has dedicated teams working 24/7 in shifts to replace, and repair pipe and meter leaks, which are reported through the municipality's call centre.

Maps and diagrams with detailed information about the location and specifications of the infrastructure, help the maintenance teams to accurately identify pipes, valves and meters that require maintenance or repair. This ensures effective planning and timely execution of repairs.

### **AC Replacement Projects**

The Water Services Unit is implementing pipeline replacement projects, specifically Asbestos Cement (AC) pipe replacements, to address excessive water losses caused by aging infrastructure. Through the Water Conservation and Water Demand Management (WC/WDM) program, these projects have significantly reduced water losses, leading to substantial cost savings and improved revenue generation. RLM actively promotes pipeline replacement and rehabilitation to minimise the frequency of leaks in the distribution network. It is important to note that infrastructure replacement remains

the most effective long-term solution for reducing real water losses and ensuring a more sustainable and efficient water supply system.

The Rustenburg Local Municipality (RLM) Water Unit is actively implementing pipeline replacement projects, including the replacement of aging asbestos cement (AC) pipes, to address excessive water losses caused by deteriorating infrastructure. These leaks have resulted in significant financial losses for the municipality. Through the Water Conservation and Water Demand Management (WCWDM) program, the AC replacement project has substantially reduced water losses, leading to notable cost savings and improved revenue generation. RLM remains committed to promoting pipeline replacement and rehabilitation as a strategic approach to minimising the frequency of leaks within the network.

Infrastructure replacement is one of the most effective solutions for reducing real water losses, as it enhances the overall reliability and efficiency of the water supply system. RLM continues to prioritize the identification of high-failure areas within the network, ensuring that pipes with frequent leaks and structural weaknesses are replaced first. To support these efforts, RLM has appointed service providers to assist with the replacement of aging infrastructure, including AC pipes, as well as to provide support for major pipeline repairs, particularly on bulk water pipelines.

### **War on Leaks**

The Unit has been actively engaging in a 'War on Leaks' initiative across various communities, including Greater Boitekong, Lethabong, Meriting, Tlhabane, and other areas severely affected by pipe bursts, leaks, stolen meters, and faulty meters, with the primary aim of reducing water losses. Greater Boitekong, in particular, has been identified as the most impacted area due to a high prevalence of illegal connections, vandalism, and theft.

Through this program, RLM has successfully identified and addressed illegal connections, which involved unauthorised physical installations to the water distribution pipelines without the municipality's knowledge or approval. This initiative has significantly contributed to the reduction of both apparent and real water losses.

The program focuses on promoting the installation of meters for all customers, tackling issues such as meter bypassing, training meter readers, and conducting site visits to identify and replace faulty or outdated meters. These efforts have proven instrumental in improving the efficiency of the water distribution network while reducing water losses within affected communities.

### **Water Services Infrastructure Profile**

The Rustenburg LM has a well-established bulk water supply network, supported by several key infrastructure projects outlined in the municipality's Water Services Master Plan. These initiatives are important in ensuring sustainable and reliable water delivery as the City's population and economy continues to grow.

A significant challenge RLM faces is the rising demand for water, which is increasing more quickly than the available resources. As both the population and industrial activities expand, pressure on the

municipality's water supply systems intensifies. By 2030, water demand in Rustenburg is expected to increase from the current 135 ML/day to 200 ML/day. This substantial rise underscores the need for urgent planning and intervention to ensure a sustainable and secure water supply.

### **Customer Service Profile**

The Rustenburg LM has established a dedicated call centre to effectively address and manage community complaints. This initiative has proven highly efficient in tracking and resolving water-related issues, such as pipe bursts, leaks, and meter maintenance. The call centre serves as a vital communication channel for residents to report water-related complaints, ensuring timely responses and swift resolutions.

In addition to the call centre, the Water Unit operates a control centre that works closely with the call centre. This control room is responsible for monitoring reservoir levels, which is essential in preventing overflows and ensuring optimal water distribution. The control centre also coordinates the dispatch of maintenance teams to address complaints promptly and communicates any water interruptions to the public through notices.

## Water Services Projects

| PROJECT NAME  | SCOPE OF WORK  | AFFECTED AREA/WARD   | FUNDER                                 | IMPLEMENTING AGENT                     | IMPLEMENTATION YEAR                      | ESTIMATED BUDGET | COMMENTS   |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|------------------|--|
| Pilanesberg Water Scheme  | Bulk augmentation; Construction of 30ML bulk reservoir and construction of a 1meter diameter pipeline feeding the greater Rustenburg.                  | Tlhabane; Ward 8,9,10,11 and Royal Bafokeng Administration | RBIG                                   | Magalies Water                         | 2021/22, 2022/23, 2023/24 & 2024/25 FY's | R 100 000 000,00 | On Construction, 99% complete  |
|   | Pump Station and a 28km bulk pipeline from the Pump Station to the new 30 ML bulk reservoir  | Ward 1, 4, 5, 6, 11 and Royal Bafokeng Administration      | RBIG                                   | Magalies Water                         | 2021/22, 2022/23, 2023/24, 2024/25 FY's  | R 800 000 000,00 | On Construction, 99% complete  |
| Modikwe, Barseba, Bethanie & Makolokwe- Bulk Water Supply Scheme (Kort Begrip Water Scheme Upgrade) | Construction of a new bulk gravity main supplying the local storage reservoirs located at Modikwe and Bethanie from the KortBegrip Reservoir - Phase 1 | Modikwe & Barseba  | Rhovan PSV (Glencore) & Magalies Water | Magalies Water & Rhovan PSV (Glencore) | 2022/23, 2023/24 & 2024/25 FY's          | R 100 000 000,00 | On Construction, 85% complete  |
|   | Construction of a new pump station, rising main from Bethanie to Makolokwe - Phase 2   | Bethanie & Makolokwe                                       | Rhovan PSV (Glencore) & Magalies Water | Magalies Water & Rhovan PSV (Glencore) | 2024/25 & 2025/26 FY's                   | R 150 000 000,00 | To be implemented after completion of phase 1, anticipated to be advertised for construction in January 2025 |
|   | Construction of 1,55ML concrete reservoir in Makolokwe – Phase 3A  | Makolokwe  | Rhovan PSV (Glencore)                  | RLM & Rhovan PSV (Glencore)            | 2025/26 FY                               | R 10 000 000,00  | The tender was advertised by Rhovan (Glencore), and it closed in December 2024                               |

| PROJECT NAME   | SCOPE OF WORK  | AFFECTED AREA/WARD         | FUNDER   | IMPLEMENTING AGENT | IMPLEMENTATION YEAR    | ESTIMATED BUDGET | COMMENTS   |
|--|--|----------------------------|----------|--------------------|------------------------|------------------|--|
| Tlhabane Bulk AC Water Replacement – Phase 1                                       | - 450mm Diameter x 3km uPVC Class 16 Bulk Line<br>- 250mm Diameter x 3km uPVC Class 16 Bulk Line<br>- 200mm Diameter x 3km uPVC Class 16 Bulk Line   | Tlhabane Ward 9, 10 and 11 | MIG      | RLM                | 2023/24 & 2024/25 FY's | R 93 100 000,00  | 40% complete, on construction  |
| Tlhabane Bulk AC Water Replacement – Phase 2                                       | - 160mm/32mm Diameter x 12,5km uPVC/HDPE Class 16 Reticulation network   | Tlhabane Ward 9, 10 and 11 | MIG      | RLM                | 2024/25 & 2025/26 FY's | R 39 900 000,00  | To be implemented after completion of phase 1  |
| Water Storages and Replacement of 3km Bulk Water Pipeline in the Greater Boitekong | The project will comprise of the construction of Storage to augment the existing water supply and Replacement of 3km Bulk Water Pipeline in the area | Greater Boitekong          | MIG/WSIG | RLM                | TBC                    | R50 000 000,00   | PSP to revise the business Plan/ Technical Report according to terms of reference of the appointment |
| Replacement of AC Bulk and Reticulation Water Pipeline in Phatsima                 | The project will comprise of the replacement of old AC bulk and reticulation pipeline with uPVC pipe   | Phatsima                   | WSIG     | RLM                | 2024/25 & 2025/26 FY's | R30 000 000,00   | The tender for the procurement of a contractor closed on 23/10/2024, now it's at BEC                 |
| Water Storage and Pump Station in Monnakato  | The project will comprise of the construction of Storage to augment the existing water supply  | Monnakato                  | WSIG     | RLM                | 2024/25 & 2025/26 FY's | R25 000 000,00   | The tender for the procurement of a contractor closed on 22/10/2024, now it's at BEC                 |

| PROJECT NAME  | SCOPE OF WORK  | AFFECTED AREA/WARD                           | FUNDER     | IMPLEMENTING AGENT | IMPLEMENTATION YEAR    | ESTIMATED BUDGET   | COMMENTS  |
|---|--|--|------------|--------------------|------------------------|--|---|
| Replacement of Bulk and Reticulation Water Pipeline in Meriting 4 & 5 | The project will comprise of the replacement of old low class UPVC bulk and reticulation pipeline with a new uPVC pipe       | Meriting 4 & 5                               | WSIG       | RLM                | 2024/25 & 2025/26 FY's | R 25 000 000,00  | The tender for the procurement of a contractor closed on 22/10/2024, now it's at BEC  |
| Upgrade and Extension of Bospoort WTW Scheme                          | Construction Bospoort Water Treatment Plant capacity from 12ML/Day to 24 ML/Day. Completion of M&E scope of works            | Kanana, Tlhabane West, Geelhout, Zinniaville | MIG & RWST | RLM & RWST         | 2024/25 & 2025/26 FY's | R 235 000 000,00<br>Initial allocation was R100m, currently we have a shortfall of R135m to complete the project | The tender for the procurement of a contractor closed on 23/10/2024, now it's at BEC  |
|   | Construction of a new 35ML reservoir. Upgrading of a highlift pump station. Construction of new access road to the reservoir | Kanana, Tlhabane West, Geelhout, Zinniaville | MIG & RWST | RLM & RWST         | 2024/25 & 2025/26 FY's |  |   |
|   | new rising main pipeline of 500mm diameter 1.6km and a new gravity main pipeline of 800mm diameter for 8.5km                 | Kanana, Tlhabane West, Geelhout, Zinniaville | MIG & RWST | RLM & RWST         | 2024/25 & 2025/26 FY's | R 359 000 000,00<br>Initial allocation was R100m, currently we have a shortfall of R259m to complete the project | The tender for the procurement of a contractor closed on 23/10/2024, currently at BEC |

### 2.6.5.2 SANITATION SERVICES

#### a) Waste Water Treatment Works

The directorate is responsible for the provision of wastewater and sanitation services to all customers in the municipality. The Municipality through the Rustenburg Water Services Trust operate with 4 Wastewater Treatment Works (WWTW):

| No. | FACILITY        | CAPACITY   |
|-----|-----------------|------------|
| 1   | Rustenburg WWTW | 42 ML/day  |
| 2   | Boitekong WWTW  | 24 ML/day  |
| 3   | Monakato WWTW   | 0.9 ML/day |
| 4   | Lethabong WWTW  | 2 ML/day   |

The Rustenburg WWTW, Monakato WWTW and Lethabong WWTW are due for upgrades to cater for advanced treatment systems and increased demand. The upgrades are under planning stage and council approved the Rustenburg WWTW for upgrading as it has institutional arrangement implications. Whereas the Lethabong WWTW is currently under construction under the MIG capital project programme of the municipality.

#### b) Sewer Network

The municipality has sewer network of approximately 1400 km of pipelines with 6 pump stations within the network.

| Savanna Falls            | Waterkloof               | Hex River                | Marikana                 | Freedom Park        | Boitekong  |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|------------|
| -<br>25.732431717209586S | -<br>25.754254911673254S | -<br>25.725587079609685S | 25.776213991490316S      | 25.721796158484242S | 25.60042S  |
| 27.262509793151516E      | 27.214702062195812E      | 27.301667566125772E      | -<br>27.220160611699026E | 27.220160611699026E | 27.30608 E |

The network still has old clay and asbestos pipes which results into a high volume of sewer blockages. Networks within the low-cost housing developments are strained due to high number of backyard dwellings and illegal connections. Projects are underway to upgrade the sewer lines as they have sections with inadequate capacity due to higher demands.

Major blockages on bulk sewer outfalls have adverse effects on the efficiency of the Wastewater Treatment Works due to inconsistency inflows and this situation directly affect the industrial water supply which also serve as revenue base for the Municipality and mostly a high risk on the quality of raw water sources. To circumvent the situation roving inspectors conduct inspections for accelerated unblocking actions to be taken. Informal partnerships are also employed with private entities such as the Flight Club that keep an eye on hot spots during their flight sessions. This enables unblocking to take place at an accelerated pace. Furthermore, council approved that the

Rustenburg Water Services Trust maintain the 200 mm diameter outfall sewer lines so that a dedicated team or service provider that can handle the preventative maintenance and general maintenance. The mandate is however currently unfunded, and the maintenance teams are undertaking the function until there are sufficient funds.

Internal conditional inspections are undertaken on the network and pump stations and recently and independent condition inspection was conducted. The inspections are means of preparation for the finalization of the annual technical reports, Wastewater Risk Abatement Plan reports and Process Audits report that are used to aid budgeting for maintenance and resolving issued picked up with relevant directorates. The Wastewater Risk Abatement Plan is at an advanced stage as it is already approved by the accounting officer.

For additional revenue the effluent monitoring programme is in place that includes the managing of night soil dumpers/ honey suckers operating in the Rustenburg Local Municipality jurisdiction as well as industries disposing effluent into the sewer system. This is coupled with the permit system for food outlets and small industries to limit disposal of fats as well as effluent not compliant with the Water Services bylaws to reduce blockages and treatment costs at the Rustenburg WWTW.

For the social aspect of limiting the misuse of the sewer network the awareness and educational drives are employed to curb sewer spillages that are frequent due to misuse of the waterborne sewer system by inserting foreign substances that also contribute negatively to the environment. However, for impact to be realised with these awareness and educational initiatives a few issues must be taken care of, such as resources. The quick wins being tools of trade procurement that can enable a bigger reach. The use of constant communication means such as the bills and municipal website is to be resuscitated for customers to be informed of sanitation issues and how to use the system efficiently once the resources are fortified.

**c) Septic Tanks**

There are areas which are still using septic tanks within the municipality jurisdiction including villages that fall under the Royal Bafokeng Nation and on the outskirts of the CBDs that do not have bulk sewer services such as Donkerhoek, Reitvlei, Olifantsnek, Kroondal and other areas. Through township establishment processes this is being dealt with by the municipality with the directorate planning and human settlement.

**d) Pit Toilets**

Services provided in the rural areas and informal settlement are pit latrines. The Pit latrines pose a high health risk as they allow seepage and when they get full they are merely rotated in the household. Since these privately built pit toilets are not properly constructed with lining the environment is negatively affected as ground water is at risk of contamination especially that some areas also rely on underground water for human consumption. Socially, even lined VIP toilets are not appreciated as members of the community prefer waterborne systems in general. The municipality is therefore exploring innovative means of providing on site sanitation services that are sustainable and consider water scarcity in the region. Condition audits of toilets are currently on going and the following areas have been conducted so far:

Ikageng; Tsitsing; Tlaseng; Maumong; Lekgalong; Bethanie; Mosethal; Modikwe; Lefaragahle; Lethabong

More audits are required for the municipality to have tangible data that is required for backlog eradication as well as other initiatives.

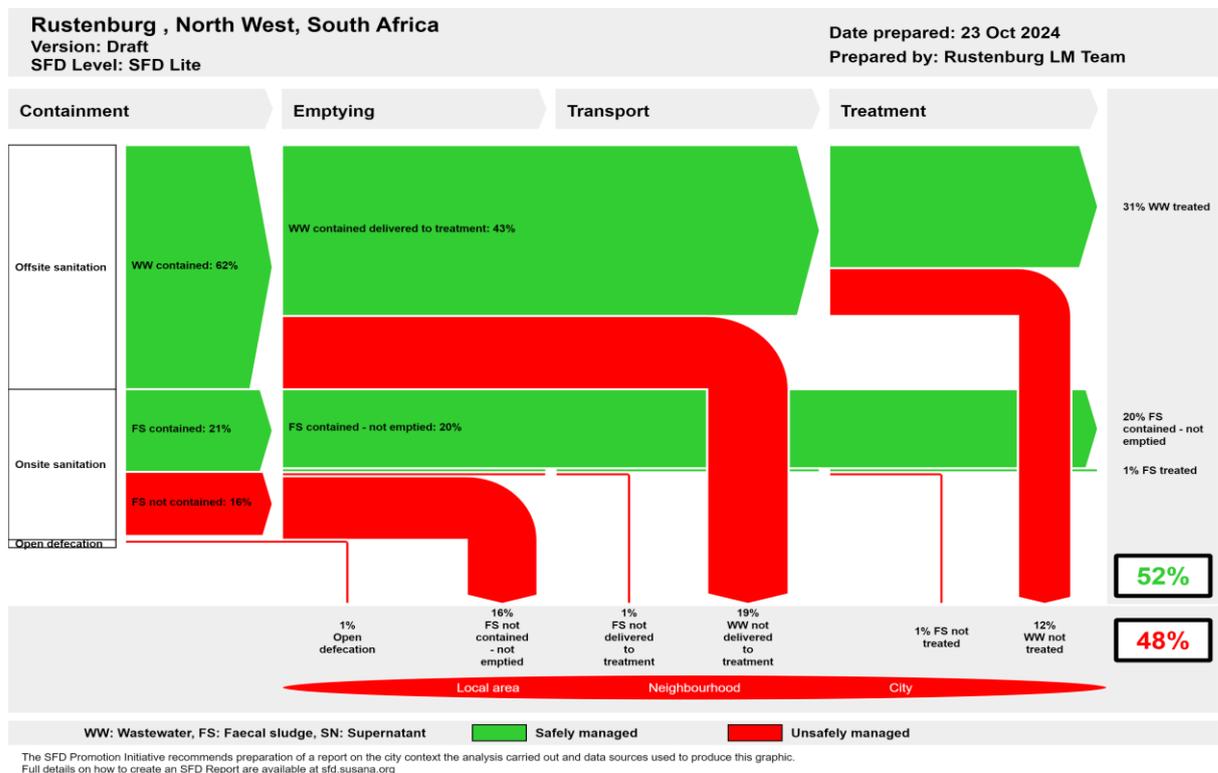
**e) Excreta/Shit Flow Diagram (SFD)**

The purpose of the programme is to develop and implement SFD capacity building programme with Department of Water and Sanitation and Water Services Authorities to improve sanitation and hygiene for all.

SFD is a tool to understand, visualize and communicate how excreta is generated in an area safely as it moves through the entire sanitation service chain from sanitation facility to disposal or end-use. Thirty-six municipalities nationally were nominated and out of the four from the North West province, Rustenburg Local Municipality is one of the nominee of the initial stages of the programme.

Nominated Municipalities were required to commit to availing resources for the programme, gather relevant information and attend provincial working sessions as guided by the Department of Water and Sanitation. For the North West province the last session was held in October 2024. Wherein at the session all four municipalities developed and finalised their first SFD drafts. The Rustenburg Local Municipality's one can be seen below:

see attached building programme. Only relevant Stakeholders need to attend the session.



Follow up sessions were conducted with the programme team in January 2025. With resolutions to undertake extensive data collection and audits on all toilet types. The main outcome of the

programme is to develop a municipal SFD that has a higher status than the draft status. All to be finalised in during the 2024/25 financial year.

**f) Green Drop Certification**

The Department introduced the Blue and Green Drop Certification as an incentive-based regulation programme to encourage the Water Services Institutions (WSIs) to achieve excellent drinking water and wastewater quality management. The last Green Drop and Blue Drop reports were done in 2013 and 2014 respectively. The Department resuscitated the Green Drop and Blue Drop certification programme and rolled out a full Green Drop audit and Blue Drop PAT assessment in 2021, with the aim of alternating. Rustenburg Local Municipality participated in an online national symposium on the 29th June 2021 as per the above notification for resuscitating its incentive based programmes. At the national symposium the official announcement of resuscitation, programme plan, new criterion, bonuses and penalties. The provincial symposium was further held on the 29 July 2021 where the agenda of the national symposium were emphasized and programme plan for the 2021 cycle shared. An official assessment was conducted on the 20th and 21st of September 2022. The assessment included the audit of information provided to the department via uploading on Integrated Regulation Information System (IRIS) and hard copies of required documents for all four wastewater systems namely the Rustenburg, Boitekong, Lethabong and Monakato sewer drainage areas. The assessment was then followed by a Technical Site Assessment to verify the information loaded on the IRIS and information provided during the assessment, this was conducted at the Boitekong Wastewater Treatment Works. Furthermore, the confirmation session was held virtually on the 6th of December 2021. On the 1st of April 2022, an official launch by Minister Mchunu of the Green Drop 2022 report was held and the report was officially published.

The table below is the summary of the municipality’s performance for the 2021 Green Drop Cycle assessment:

|                                   |   |  |
|-----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>Water Service Institution</b>  | <b>Rustenburg Local Municipality</b>              |  |
| <b>Water Service Provider</b>     | Water and Sanitation Services South Africa (WSSA) |  |
| <b>Municipal Green Drop Score</b> |   | <b>VROOM Impression (Towards restoring functionality):</b><br>1. Refurbish BNR mixers<br><br><b>VROOM Estimate:</b><br>- R55,809,000 |
| <b>2021 Green Drop Score</b>      | <b>69%↓</b>                                       |  |
| <b>2011 Green Drop Score</b>      | <b>76%</b>  |  |
| <b>2013 Green</b>                 | <b>63%</b>  |  |

|   |             |                  |                   |                  |                 |
|---|-------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <b>Drop Score</b>   |             |                  |                   |                  |                 |
| <b>2009 Green Drop Score</b>                              |             | <b>69%</b>       |                   |                  |                 |
| <b>Key Performance Area</b>                               | <b>Unit</b> | <b>Boitekong</b> | <b>Rustenburg</b> | <b>Lethabong</b> | <b>Monakato</b> |
| <b>Green Drop Score (2021)</b>                            |             | <b>73%</b>       | <b>68%</b>        | <b>49%</b>       | <b>56%</b>      |
| <b>2013 Green Drop Score</b>                              |             | <b>75%</b>       | <b>61%</b>        | <b>47%</b>       | <b>48%</b>      |
| <b>2011 Green Drop Score</b>                              |             | <b>70%</b>       | <b>79%</b>        | <b>48%</b>       | <b>45%</b>      |
| <b>2009 Green Drop Score</b>                              |             | <b>41%</b>       | <b>74%</b>        | <b>30%</b>       | <b>30%</b>      |
| <b>Design Capacity</b>                                    | MI/d        | 24               | 42                | 2                | 0.9             |
| <b>Design Capacity Utilisation (%)</b>                    |             | 44%              | 110%              | 20%              | 200%            |
| <b>Resource Discharged into</b>                           |             | Hex River        | Hex River         | Hex River        | Hex River       |
| <b>Wastewater Risk Rating (CRR% of CRR<sub>max</sub>)</b> |             | <b>Boitekong</b> | <b>Rustenburg</b> | <b>Lethabong</b> | <b>Monakato</b> |
| <b>CRR (2011)</b>   | %           | 37.0%            | 26.8%             | 48.2%            | 40.7%           |
| <b>CRR (2013)</b>   | %           | 68.2%            | 59.3%             | 58.8%            | 70.6%           |
| <b>CRR (2021)</b>   | %           | 37.0%            | 74.1%             | 52.9%            | 64.7%           |

The performance trend of the municipality as outlined in the Green Drop Certification report shows the impact of initiatives taken by the municipality dating back as far as 2009. The decline is noted to be linked to the rate of attending to infrastructure upgrade and allocated resources. As it stands the municipality was not awarded the Green Drop Certificate. However, an improvement is noted on three out of the four systems.

As a way forward the municipality must critically take note of the comments issued by the Regulator as outlined below:

“The Rustenburg Local Municipality impressed with a positive approach towards Green Drop conformance and achieved a Green Drop Score of 69%. Despite the decline from the 2013 baseline score of 76%, the municipality has processes and people in place to drive performance going forward to the 2023 audit round.

The WSA is commended for committed process monitoring and a strong operation and maintenance team. It is encouraging to note that compliance monitoring data are uploaded on IRIS. It is evident that the municipality is embracing the Wastewater Risk Abatement process by the development of a W2RAP which includes both wastewater treatment plants and sewer networks. Well, done.

Implementation of this risk-based approach will further assist the municipality in improving the quality and management of municipal wastewater services. The upgraded Boitekong WWTW (commissioned 2020) should also be included in the next revision of the W2RAP.

The Municipality is commended for uploading 12 months' compliance data on IRIS. Unfortunately, poor effluent compliance has set back the Green Drop score which, together with the exceedance of design capacity at the Rustenburg and Monakato WWTWs, are the biggest detractors to a higher score. The reasons for this poor performance need to be investigated at each plant and urgently addressed via the W2RAP process. A detailed process audit and modelling would be helpful in this regard.

The financial arrangement of a split budget between Rustenburg Water Trust (responsible for the WWTWs) and the Rustenburg Local Municipality who is responsible for the sewer network and bulk conveyance will require strong management to ensure that both WWTWs and sewers systems remains financially viable. Rustenburg Municipality is encouraged to maintain its momentum and continue in its endeavour to regain the Green Drop Certification status within the next assessment cycle. An exceptional foundation has been prepared by the municipality to steer performance in that direction."

As per the initial assessment outcome above mentioned under performance was highlighted under the following major findings:

1. W2RAP to be updated and fully implemented
2. Budget does not address all cost drivers
3. Energy efficiency management should be implemented
4. One plant is in the high-risk position

#### **Sanitation Challenge**

- Dilapidated and failing bulk water and sanitation infrastructure;
- Inadequate fleet
- Insufficient funding allocation for O&M
- Vandalism of the infrastructure
- Reactive maintenance approach instead of preventative
- Misuse of sewer system by introduction of foreign substances

The identified challenges are outlined in the Waste Water Risk Abatement Plan, Green Drop Improvement Plan with the mitigations of all the risks identified. Through these initiatives improvement has been realised in the following areas:

- Infrastructure improvement
- Provision of fleet
- Green Drop Certification Risk Rating

The next full audit will be done by DWS for the 2023/24 cycle during the month of February to March 2025. The 2025 cycle assessment was announced in the Provincial Green Drop Symposia that was on the 9<sup>th</sup> of December 2024 wherein all relevant municipal officials were invited to attend. The major changes to the criterion were also outlined as well as the schedule leading to the full audit. The table below indicate the detailed new Green Drop Certification criteria.

### **DWS GREEN DROP CRITERIA 2023-2024**

| A | Capacity Management – 15% |  |
|---|---------------------------|--|
|   | <b>A 1</b>                | <b>Registration of Wastewater Treatment Plant</b>  |
|   | a)                        | The wastewater treatment facility is registered as per the Requirements of Regulation 3630   |
|   | <b>A 2</b>                | <b>Registration of Process Controllers and Supervisor</b>  |
|   | a)                        | Copies of Registration Certificates of Process Controllers and Supervisor(s)   |
|   | b)                        | Copies of the <b>classification certificates</b> of all process controllers/operators and supervisors / superintendents must be uploaded on the IRIS<br><br><b>Upload proof of competence</b>  |
|   | c)                        | Compliance with Regulation 3630 / 2834 (at least 50% per shift); WSI must indicate <b>shift patterns</b> or measures in place when a shift does not comply with regulatory Process Control requirements<br><br><b>Operations organograms</b> |
|   | d)                        | WSI must indicate Process Controllers and / or Supervisors that are “shared” across different plants / sites.  |
|   | <b>A 3</b>                | <b>Maintenance Capacity</b>  |
|   | a)                        | Evidence of Maintenance team used for general maintenance work at the plant & pump stations (both mechanical and electrical) – (Internal or evidence of outsourced term contract)  |
|   | b)                        | Information on in-house staff (or <b>organogram</b> ) or external contractor/s   |
|   | c)                        | Provide additional <b>proof of competency</b> of team (e.g. <b>Qualifications &amp; Experience &amp; Trade test</b> )  |
|   | d)                        | Provide a site-specific <b>operation and maintenance schedule (routine / scheduled)</b>  |
|   | e)                        | Contract or <b>logbook with maintenance entries</b> to serve as evidence of above aspects  |
|   | <b>A 4</b>                | <b>Engineering Management Capacity</b>   |
|   |                           | Number of Engineering staff available in Municipality taking responsibility for Maintenance Planning and general asset management  |

| <b>A</b> |            | <b>Capacity Management – 15%</b>   |
|----------|------------|--|
|          | a)         | 1 x Engineering Technician   |
|          | b)         | 1 x Engineering Technologist   |
|          | c)         | 1 x Engineer, or   |
|          | d)         | More than one of the above   |
|          | <b>A 5</b> | <b>Scientific Capacity (Sampling and laboratory information management)</b>  |
|          |            | Number of Scientific staff appointed for the management of wastewater treatment plant, incl. sampling and analysis |
|          | a)         | 1 x Candidate Scientist  |
|          | b)         | 1 x Professional Scientist, or   |
|          | c)         | < More than one of the above   |
|          |            | <b>IRIS ADDITIONAL FIELDS</b>  |
|          | a)         | <b>O &amp; M Manual and SOP's</b>  |
|          | b)         | <b>Training and skills</b>   |
|          | c)         | <b>Greendrop history</b>   |

| <b>B</b> |            | <b>Environmental Management – 15%</b>   |
|----------|------------|---|
|          | <b>B 1</b> | <b>Wastewater Risk Management</b>   |
|          | a)         | <p>A <b>Risk Register</b> available on all risks posed by the wastewater collection and treatment processes to the immediate environment</p> <p>The register must include risks and measures pertaining to unlocking green/brown field developments where bulk infrastructure shortcomings is unable to support development and investment through water efficient or dry sanitation, i.e. off-grit, water efficient sanitation solutions (WESS) and related concepts</p> <p>The plan must not be older than 3 years, and dated &amp; signed before end February 2025</p> |
|          | b)         | <p>A Wastewater Risk Abatement Plan; is the more advanced standard, but will only be accepted if not older than 3 years, and approved by Management.</p> <p>- A practical and site specific (<b>W2RAP</b>) is in place which identify and prioritise risks, with measures to mitigate inefficiencies/inadequacies that result in non-compliance. The W2RAP MUST include risks &amp; measures pertaining to the entrenchment of WESS concepts as outlined above, to receive a full score.</p>  |

| B  | Environmental Management – 15%  |
|----|---|
|    | - Implementation evidence and proof of management commitment  |
| c) | <b>Implementation evidence and proof</b> of management commitment. Providing evidence of risk mitigation (identified during the audit period)                 |
|    | <b>B 2 Operational Monitoring</b>   |
|    | Details of Operational Monitoring:  |
| a) | <b>Proof of Operational Monitoring sites</b> , determinants and frequency;  |
| b) | Samples must include:<br>i) inflow, ii) outflow, iii) process flows, iv) sludge;  |
| c) | Determinants monitored;   |
| d) | As per Authorisation / as per best practice per technology type;  |
| e) | Frequency: as per Authorisation /as per best practice.  |
|    | <b>B 3 Compliance Monitoring (Effluent)</b>   |
|    | <b>Details of Compliance Monitoring</b> (For ALL Effluent Discharges)   |
| a) | Sampling Sites as per Authorisation;  |
| b) | Determinands as per Authorisation (This would include determinands not categorised as Microbiological, Chemical or Physical, eg SAR, <b>biomonitoring</b> ) ; |
| c) | Sampling frequency occurs as per Authorisation Requirements   |
| d) | Environmental monitoring  |
|    | <b>B 4 Sludge Classification and Monitoring</b>   |
| a) | Proof of Sludge Classification  |
| b) | Provide Sludge Treatment Monitoring Programme;  |
| c) | Provide <b>Sludge Monitoring</b> Results  |
| d) | <b>Sludge Handling and Management Plan.</b> of Intra-and Inter-laboratory proficiency (quality assurance as prescribed in Standard Methods)                   |
|    | <b>B 5 Laboratory Credibility</b>   |
| a) | <b>Name of Lab(s) for operational analysis</b> (in-house or on-site) and lab for compliance analysis/checks (in-house or external)                            |
| b) | Certificate of <b>Accreditation</b> for applicable methods,   |
| c) | Or <b>Z-scores</b> results following participation a recognised Proficiency Testing Scheme ( $-2 \geq z\text{-score} \geq$                                    |

| <b>B Environmental Management – 15%</b> |   |
|---|---|
|   | 2 are unacceptable)   |
| d)                                      | Or Proof of Intra- and Inter-laboratory proficiency (quality assurance as prescribed in Standard Methods) |
| e)                                      | <b>Proof Turn Around time</b> allows for proper process control (less than 5 days)                        |
| <b>B 6</b>                              | <b>Compliance audit reports</b>   |
| <b>B 7</b>                              | <b>Stormwater reports</b>   |
| <b>B 8</b>                              | <b>Water loss and a demand management</b>   |
| <b>B 9</b>                              | <b>Resource recovery &amp; CO2 mitigation</b>   |

| <b>C Financial Management – 20%</b> |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <b>C 1</b>                          | <b>Wastewater Operations cost Determination</b>   |
| a)                                  | WSI must provide evidence of a proper Operations cost determination for the entire wastewater system (incl. pump stations) This must at least include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i) Energy consumption</li> <li>ii) Compensation of employees</li> <li>iii) Chemical cost</li> <li>iv) Maintenance cost, etc.</li> </ul> |
| b)                                  | Provide an operational cost determination per m <sup>3</sup> treated<br><br><b>Budget / cost should exclude interest and redemption on capital</b>  |
| <b>C 2</b>                          | <b>Energy Demand</b>  |
|                                     | WSI is able to provide DWS with proof of energy efficiency management:  |
| a)                                  | <b>Energy demand figures:</b> Current and 3-year projections (Energy Efficiency Management), based upon Specific Power Consumption (SPC, kWh/m <sup>3</sup> ), and  |
| b)                                  | Energy unit cost (R/kWh) and energy consumption figures for the specific WWTW (R/m <sup>3</sup> )   |
| <b>C 3</b>                          | <b>Operations &amp; Maintenance budget</b>  |
|                                     | WSI to provide proof of the wastewater system <b>O&amp;M budget</b> per annum (amended budget)  |
| <b>C 4</b>                          | <b>Operations &amp; Maintenance Expenditure</b>   |
|                                     | WSI to provide proof of the wastewater system <b>O&amp;M expenditure</b> per annum<br><br><b>Budget / cost should exclude interest and redemption on capital</b><br><br>Calculation: Comparing expenditure / m <sup>3</sup> vs Cost Determination / m <sup>3</sup>  |

|          |                                   |  |
|----------|-----------------------------------|--|
| <b>C</b> | <b>Financial Management – 20%</b> |  |
|          | <b>C 5</b>                        | <b>Supply Chain Management of Services and Treatment Products</b>  |
|          | a)                                | WSI must provide <b>proof of approved contracts</b> for Outsourced services (i.e. Maintenance) and Treatment Chemical Supplies |
|          | <b>C 6</b>                        | <b>Business plans&amp; feasibility studies</b>   |
|          | <b>C 7</b>                        | <b>Performance agreements</b>  |

|          |                                   |  |
|----------|-----------------------------------|--|
| <b>D</b> | <b>Technical Management – 20%</b> |  |
|          | <b>D 1</b>                        | <b>Wastewater Treatment Works Design &amp; Drawings</b>  |
|          | a)                                | Documented <b>design capacity</b> (hydraulic and organic) of the wastewater treatment facility<br>i) Design capacity as Average Dry Weather Flow (ADWF)and COD load to the plant and:  |
|          | b)                                | Documented <b>daily receiving flows</b> over the 12months of assessed period (ideally $\leq$ than design capacity)<br>i) Evidence of daily flows and subsequent calculated averages. Measurement method to be explained<br>ii) Evidence of peak wet weather flow to plant during rain events (record rain event and flow to plant)<br>iii) Evidence of minimum night flow (minimum monitoring: monthly)<br>iv) Water services institution is required to provide motivation/proof of accuracy of meter readings. |
|          | c)                                | Monitoring of outflow volumes (available records).   |
|          | <b>D 2</b>                        | <b>Process Audit</b>   |
|          |                                   | i) Condition <b>Assessment report</b> (conducted by a technically/scientifically qualified municipal official); evidence required of audit findings and recommendations on treatment facility status. (Previous Audit year up until Feb '25) OR<br>ii) The Process Audit (conducted by a duly qualified independent professional person) to include the (design) capability of the plant to meet compliance standards, as well as actual performance of plant. (Period: Oct '22 up until Feb '25)).              |
|          | <b>D 3</b>                        | <b>Sewer Main Inspection – design and drawings</b>   |
|          |                                   | Site inspection of sewer reticulation <b>network and pump station/s</b> .<br><br>Provide evidence in form of capacity and conditional assessment / audit and recommendations of system. Report to include <b>flow balance</b> that provides evidence which % of total sewage is received at treatment plant.<br><br><i>Note: both the process audit/conditional assessment and sewer network report could serve as</i>   |

| <b>D Technical Management – 20%</b> |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
|                                     | <p><i>baseline to the W2RAP (may run concurrently with “system description and risk identification/rating”)</i></p> <p>NB! Must report on functionality of pump stations in the sewer collector system</p>  |
| <b>D 4</b>                          | <b>Wastewater Asset Register</b>  |
|                                     | <p>Updated sanitation / wastewater Infrastructure Asset Register</p> <p>1. Proof of <b>Asset Register</b>, evidence to be submitted. Asset register to include movable equipment and immovable infrastructure / assets with matching detail.</p>  |
|                                     | The asset register must detail :  |
| a)                                  | Relevant equipment and infrastructure   |
| b)                                  | Indicate asset description  |
| c)                                  | Location  |
| d)                                  | Condition (remaining useful life)   |
| e)                                  | Replacement value   |
|                                     | 2. Proof that Asset Register is used to inform Maintenance Plan.  |
|                                     | 3. Equipment calibration  |
| <b>D 5</b>                          | <b>Bylaws and Enforcement (Local Regulation) – Advanced systems only</b>  |
|                                     | Proof of the:   |
| a)                                  | <b>Bylaws</b> and   |
| b)                                  | <p><b>Enforcement</b> providing for the regulation of the municipal sewer system, incl the following elements:</p> <p>i) industrial (trade) influent (volumes &amp; quality) discharged into municipal system,</p> <p>ii) package plants,</p> <p>iii) decentralized systems,</p> <p>iv) vacuum tank discharges,</p> <p>v) Spillages into the environment, and</p> <p>vi) Storm-water connections to sewer system.</p> <p>vii) Off-grit water efficient or dry sanitation, i.e. water efficient sanitation solutions (WESS)*</p> <p>*vii Will make up 50% of (a) score. Proof will be council documents and/or agreements with developers – with alternative solutions (WESS) approved or implemented</p> <p>For DPW and Private Plants: copy of municipal bylaws and evidence of compliance to relevant</p> |

|          |                                   |  |
|----------|-----------------------------------|--|
| <b>D</b> | <b>Technical Management – 20%</b> |  |
|          |                                   | sections                               |
|          | <b>D 6</b>                        | <b>Incident protocol and registers</b> |

|          |                         |  |
|----------|-------------------------|--|
| <b>E</b> | <b>Compliance – 30%</b> |  |
|          | <b>E 1</b>              | <b>Monitoring Data Submission to DWS</b>   |
|          |                         | i) 12 Months of compliance monitoring data submitted to DWS on the IRIS<br>ii) Frequency: Monthly submission (or as per authorisation)<br>iii) WSA must ensure that 12 months sets of results are submitted and recorded on the IRIS prior to the assessment. Note: All compliance results data required |
|          | <b>E 2</b>              | <b>Water Use Authorisation</b>   |
|          | a)                      | <b>Copy of authorisation</b> , detailing Effluent Quality Standards. NOTE: List Standards to comply with. (GA or License Conditions)   |
|          | <b>E 3</b>              | <b>Effluent Quality Compliance</b>   |
|          | a)                      | 90% Microbiological Compliance;<br><br>(e.g. E Coli; Faecal Coliforms)   |
|          | b)                      | 90% Chemical Compliance;<br><br>(e.g. COD, Ammonia, Nitrogen, Nitrate, Nitrite, Chlorine, Ortho-Phosphates, Fluoride, Arsenic, Cadmium, Copper, Manganese, Iron, Selenium, Zinc, Boron, etc.)  |
|          | c)                      | 90% Physical Compliance<br><br>(e.g. pH, Suspended Solids, Electrical Conductivity, Soap, Oil or Grease, etc)  |
|          | <b>E 4</b>              | <b>Sludge Quality Compliance</b>   |
|          | a)                      | Sludge treatment managed / monitored. (Monitoring records must be produced);   |
|          | b)                      | In case of ponds systems, provide schedule for desludging of system.   |
|          | c)                      | Sludge (Bio-solids handling)   |
|          | <b>E 5</b>              | <b>Analytical quality control</b>  |
|          | <b>E 6</b>              | <b>Non-compliance directives and response plans</b>  |

|          |                           |                                 |
|----------|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>F</b> | <b>Green Drop Bonuses</b> |                                 |
|          | <b>F 1</b>                | <b>Process Control Training</b> |

| <b>F Green Drop Bonuses</b>  |  |
|--|--|
| a)   | Proof of Process Controller staff being subjected to relevant training the past 24 months – weighting will be shared if training is in line with Reg. 3630   |
| b)   | PrPC will be recognised under this incentive   |
| c)   | Technical or Process Control related to OHS will be recognised, but OSH only will not receive full score   |
| <b>F 2 Storm Water Management</b>  |  |
| a)   | Proof of a storm-water management plan detailing how storm-water ( or other extraneous flow, eg. Groundwater) entry is quantified, managed and monitored to prevent entry to sewer systems.  |
| b)   | Plan should also include measures to prevent sewage from entering storm water systems. Evidence of implementation required.  |
| <b>F 3 Water Demand Management</b>   |  |
| a)   | Water Demand Management Plan which provide a strategy and/or work plan that identify, quantify, monitor and manage leakages and water losses of any kind that (may) create an artificial water demand due to higher hydraulic loading of wastewater collection and treatment infrastructure. |
| b)   | The bonus will be maximised should a wastewater flow balance be provided (No Drop)   |
| <b>F 4 Capital Projects planned for upgrades or refurbishment of wastewater treatment and collector system</b> |  |
| a)   | Proof of approved business plans for utilising MIG, WSIG, etc. or Municipal Capital Budget for upgrades of refurbishment   |
| <b>F 5 Sludge Reuse</b>  |  |
| a)   | Provide proof of plant-specific initiatives that contribute to wastewater resource and climate resilience objectives: energy efficiency, energy generation, beneficial use of sludge, nutrients, etc.  |
| b)   | A full score will be awarded if the reduced footprint can be demonstrated (projected CO <sub>2</sub> equivalents improved by the initiatives)  |
| <b>F 6 Additional impact monitoring</b>  |  |
| a)   | Including groundwater, upstream / downstream monitoring and biomonitoring  |
| <b>F 7 Water efficient or dry sanitation solutions</b>   |  |
| a)   | Proof of council documents that relate to unlocking green/brown field developments through alternative water efficient or dry sanitation, i.e. water efficient sanitation solutions (WESS)   |
| b)   | Proof of number of households planned/implemented with WESS, and type of technologies/methods accepted.  |

| <b>G Penalties (-15%)</b> |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| <b>G 1</b>                | <b>Wastewater Treatment Works operating beyond hydraulic design capacity</b>                                 |
| a)                        | Design capacity as Average Dry Weather Flow (ADWF) and COD load to the plant                                 |
| b)                        | Documented daily receiving flows over the 12 months of assessed period (ideally $\leq$ than design capacity) |
|                           | Based on information provided in D1 (Calculation)  |
| <b>G 2</b>                | <b>Any sewer collector pump station dysfunctionality causing long term spillage</b>                          |
| a)                        | Based on information provided in D3  |

| <b>H Disqualifier</b> |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <b>H 1</b>            | <b>Withholding information</b>   |
| a)                    | Disqualifying penalty will apply should the Department find proof during / post assessment that the WSI is guilty of an offence as per Section 82 of the Water Services Act, by only submitting partial information in order to present a false impression of WWQ performance and / or compliance. |
| <b>H 2</b>            | <b>Directive status</b>  |
| a)                    | If any Directive was issued over the GD assessment period by the Department or Delegated Authority to the WSI for this specific WWTW and / or system, then the WSI should present proof of attempts made to adhere to Directive Requirements.  |

The unit has already started with the compilation of the required documentation and loading of same on IRIS. While the indicative timelines are as follows:

- February 2025 – March 2025: Preliminary engagements with municipalities
- March 2025 – May 2025: Main audit
- June 2025- : **ConfIRISrmation** Audit
- September 2025: Draft Green Drop Final Report issue
- End 2025: Minister release Green Drop Final Report

DWS has set the 2025 cycle as a full Green Drop Certification audit year. Since the certification is merely an initiative to assess the day-to-day management of the wastewater system, the municipality must continue to document activities and put systems in place to effectively optimise best practices. It is therefore imperative that the municipality through its different disciplines, directorates and external stakeholders work towards the reflection of work done for the assessment to yield positive results.

**g) Green Projects**

The projects below were identified projects with grafted business plans that were tabled at different platforms to align the municipality with changes technologies and working towards achieving the year 2030 Sustainable Development Goals targets:

| Project 1   |  |   | Project 2  |
|---|--|---|--|
| <b>Decentralised sanitation sewer systems</b>   | <b>Sludge Reuse</b>  | <b>Sewer flow monitoring systems</b>  | <b>Service Backlog system</b> <b>Delivery monitoring</b> |
| High of cost of construction, operations and maintenance of convention wastewater treatment works challenges. | Environmental compliance standards (Air, soil and ground water pollution). | Undetected sewer spillages and introduction of foreign objects into the sewer system. | Lack of accurate data on service provision               |

The projects remain unfunded as only the Department of Cooperative Governance and Municipal Infrastructure Support Agent (MISA)'s Viability and Validation of Innovation for Service Delivery Programme indicated its negative response of non- approval of the projects for funding. Since green projects are supposed to be prioritized for meeting the United Nations' set goals, the municipality will continue pursuing other means for funding.

**h) National Sanitation Integrated Plan**

The municipality also participated in the National Sanitation Integrated Plan survey in 2024. DWS release the results of the survey in October 2024 during the provincial SFD working session. The outcomes of the survey are taken as a baseline of the status WSA's as identified focus areas of improvement. Currently the municipality has dealt with one major component which is the SFD development. Most of the actions are also linked to the recently developed W2RAP for actioning of remedial actions of risks identified. Incorporation of other initiatives is crucial for an improved performance in various aspects of wastewater management.

Municipal Status Report  
**Rustenburg**  
North West

**Municipal Status**  
**Poor**



**Context**

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| Population (DWS WSKS) (April 2023)           | 701853    |
| Number of households (DWS WSKS) (April 2023) | 308482 HH |
| Number of wastewater treatment works         | 4         |
| Number of sewer pump stations                | 3         |
| Length of sewer pipelines                    | 1003 km   |

**Containment**

**Poor**

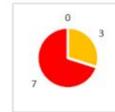
|  |          |         |
|--|----------|---------|
| 1.1 No sanitation (backlog) (DWS WSKS) (April 2023)            | 3 % HH   | Average |
| 1.2 Inappropriate sanitation (backlog) (DWS WSKS) (April 2023) | 25 % HH  | Poor    |
| 1.3 Rate of sanitation delivery (years to eradicate backlog)   | 40 years | Poor    |



**Emptying and Transport**

**Poor**

|  |          |      |
|--|----------|------|
| 2.1 Sewer network condition              | NI       |      |
| 2.2 Pit toilet emptying                  | No       | Poor |
| 2.3 Vacuum truck / honeysucker needs     | 2 trucks | Poor |
| 2.4 Vacuum truck / honeysucker condition | Poor     | Poor |



**Treatment**

**Average**

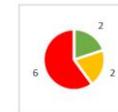
|  |                 |         |
|--|-----------------|---------|
| 3.1 % of wastewater treatment works design capacity utilised | 85 %            | Average |
| 3.1.1 Design capacity  | 68.9 Ml/d       |         |
| 3.1.2 Available capacity                                     | 68.9 Ml/d       |         |
| 3.1.3 Operational capacity                                   | 58.7 Ml/d       |         |
| 3.2 Wastewater treatment works effluent quality              | 72 % compliance | Average |
| 3.2.1 Microbiological compliance                             | 84 %            |         |
| 3.2.2 Chemical compliance                                    | 49 %            |         |
| 3.2.3 Physical compliance                                    | 82 %            |         |
| 3.3 Wastewater treatment works staffing shortfall            | 26 %            | Average |
| 3.3.1 Number of supervisor(s): Compliant                     | 4               |         |
| 3.3.2 Number of supervisor(s): Shortfall                     | 0               |         |
| 3.3.3 Number of PC(s): Compliant                             | 10              |         |
| 3.3.4 Number of PC(s): Shortfall                             | 5               |         |



**Disposal and Reuse**

**Good**

|  |                      |         |
|--|----------------------|---------|
| 4.1 Analysis and classification of wastewater sludge | Yes                  | Good    |
| 4.2 Wastewater sludge management                     | Beneficial use       | Good    |
| 4.3 Analysis and classification of faecal sludge     | No                   | Average |
| 4.4 Faecal sludge management                         | Co-treatment at WWTW | Good    |
| 4.5 Treated wastewater effluent reuse                | Yes                  | Good    |



**Institutional Aspects**

**Poor**

|   |         |         |
|---|---------|---------|
| 5.1 Green Drop performance (2021)   | 69 %    | Average |
| 5.2 Sanitation staff vacancies  | NI %    | Poor    |
| 5.3 Sanitation business financial status                                    | Deficit | Poor    |
| 5.4 Growing informal settlements  | Yes     |         |
| 5.5 Shit-flow diagrams developed for sanitation systems                     | No      |         |
| 5.6 Alternative/innovative sanitation processes or technologies implemented | Single  |         |
| 5.6.1 Toilets   | No      |         |
| 5.6.2 Emptying  | No      |         |
| 5.6.3 Transport   | No      |         |
| 5.6.4 Treatment   | No      |         |
| 5.6.5 Disposal/benefication   | Yes     |         |
| 5.6.6 New business models   | No      |         |



**i) National Faecal Sludge Management Strategy 2023**

The WAS's role in the implementation of the newly effected strategy are outlined in brief as follows:

**Containment**

Planning and implementation of sanitation services in the entire wastewater value chain; promote approved non sewered sanitation systems appropriate for all settlement types and adherence to the requirements of a protocol to manage the potential of groundwater contamination from on-site sanitation.

**Emptying**

Empty faecal sludge, monitor and regulate.

**Transport**

Transport faecal sludge, monitor and regulate.

**Treatment**

Operation of faecal sludge treatment works.

**Re-use**

Beneficiate and sell waste or enter in partnerships.

**Disposal**

Dispose of faecal sludge.

Since most municipalities indicated the non-readiness for the implementation of the strategy in the various working sessions held before the signing by the Minister. The strategy is rather overreaching in setting of goals for new technologies to handle faecal sludge whereas for example in the North West there is no WSA that is performing well in managing the sewer management through conventional methods. This is evident as outlined in the latest Green Drop Assessment report.

**j) Objectives**

| No | Priority Issue  | Problem Statement   | Goals  | Strategies   |
|----|---|---|--|--|
| 1  | <p><b>Sanitation Services</b></p> <p><i>'Sanitation is dignity'</i></p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Low rating of the Green Drop Status</li> <li>○ Over capacitated sewer network</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ To have a steady decrease on the Green Drop status rating.</li> <li>○ Operate the sewer system at optimal capacity</li> <li>○ Improve on the turn-</li> </ul> | <p><b>Strategy A:</b> Ensure operations are done in line with compliance to Green Drop Assessment Systems. Prepare for participation for the next assessment to comply.</p> <p><b>Strategy B:</b> Upgrade &amp; Refurbish.</p> |

| No | Priority Issue | Problem Statement  | Goals  | Strategies   |
|----|----------------|--|--|--|
|    |                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Prolonged turnaround time to address sewer problems from the network</li> <li>○ Backlogs in household connections</li> <li>○ Full Pit latrines at informal settlements</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ around time for responding to sewer blockages and reduce outstanding complaints.</li> <li>○ Connect new households</li> <li>○ To have ventilated pit latrine</li> </ul> | <p><b>Strategy C:</b> Monitor the minimum stock quantities for critical material and tools and focus on availability of the yellow fleet through provision of adequate funds. Re-zone areas of operation and have each with dedicated team to respond and reduce long travelling trips. As well as implementation of sustainable working regimes to ensure provision of services 24 hours a day.</p> <p><b>Strategy D:</b> Ensure that all township establishment when are approved before settlement they have all basic services connections. Upgrade water borne sewerage systems as adequate bulk water becomes available</p> <p><b>Strategy E:</b> Deploy use of biological eco-friendly chemicals to treat the toilet an also carryout awareness campaigns to the community about the use of pit latrines.</p> |

#### k) Initiatives

The municipality is engaging in several initiatives to deal with various challenges particularly asset management and new technologies. With the Asset Care Programme in partnership with Development Bank of South Africa the municipality has managed to develop strategies, policies and action plans in dealing with forward planning for current infrastructure and for future. Meanwhile the partnership with the Department of Science and Innovation projects for dealing with backlog monitoring and sewer system projects that are suitable for water scare environments are being explored.

#### 2.6.5.3 ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING SERVICES

The Unit Electrical Engineering Services is one of seven interdependent and interacting units that comprise the Directorate of Infrastructure Development and Management of the Rustenburg Local Municipality. The Unit Electrical Engineering Services is operating as the organ of the RLM and of the Directorate of Infrastructure Development and Management for the supply and distribution of electricity in the demarcated area. Although Eskom have infrastructure and existing clients it does not have a license to distribute electricity and therefore, they are being used by the RLM to act as an agent to supply clients and do electrification projects under the license of the Rustenburg Local Municipality.

### Households by Type of Electricity

Households are distributed into 3 electricity usage categories: Households using electricity for cooking, Households using electricity for heating, households using electricity for lighting. Household using solar power are included as part of households with an electrical connection. This time series categorises households in a region according to their access to electricity (electrical connection).

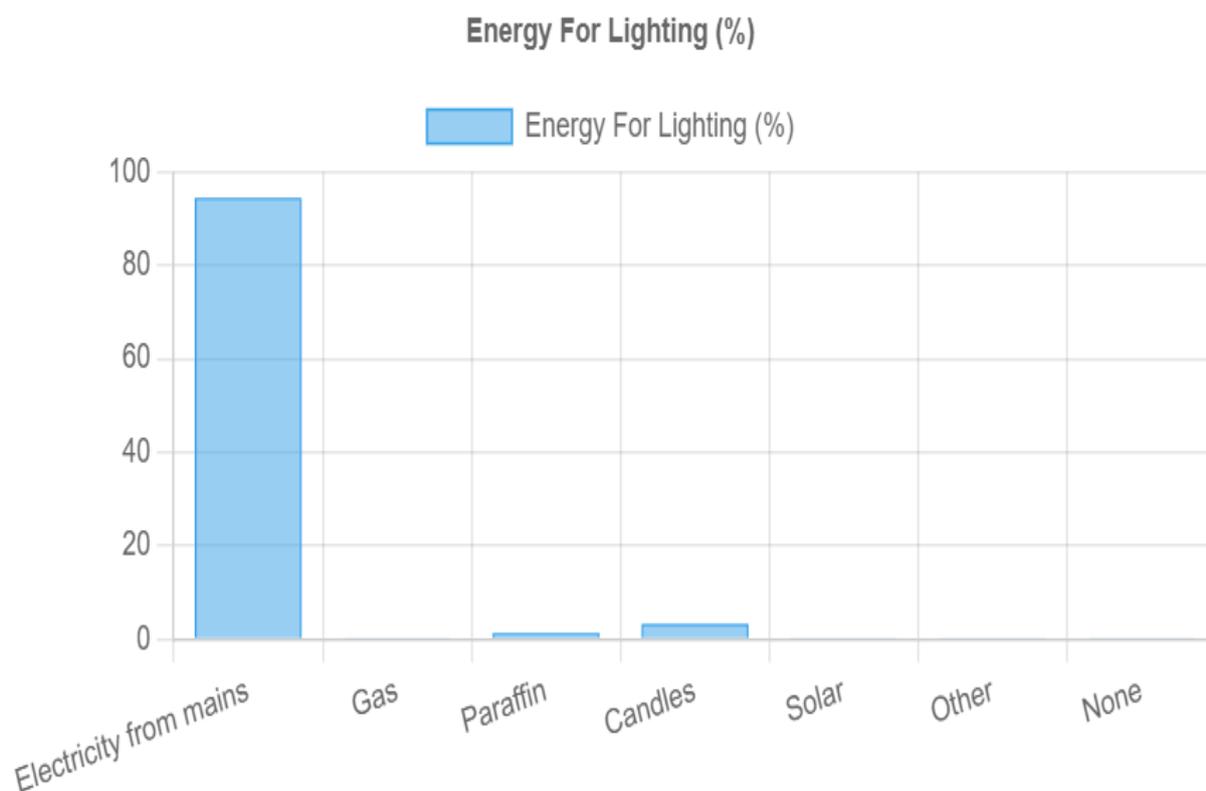
The Rustenburg Local Municipality provided Electricity for lighting to 94,5% Household in 2022, whilst in 2011 83,0% had access to electricity for lighting.

The table below gives an indication of distribution of electricity to households across the municipality.

| Name                   | Frequency | %     |
|------------------------|-----------|-------|
| Electricity from mains | 192 384   | 94,5% |
| Gas                    | 505       | 0,2%  |
| Paraffin               | 2 806     | 1,4%  |
| Candles                | 7 017     | 3,4%  |
| Solar                  | 329       | 0,2%  |
| Other                  | 306       | 0,2%  |
| None                   | 311       | 0,2%  |

Source: StatsSA – Census 2022

The graph below explains the detail in the table above.

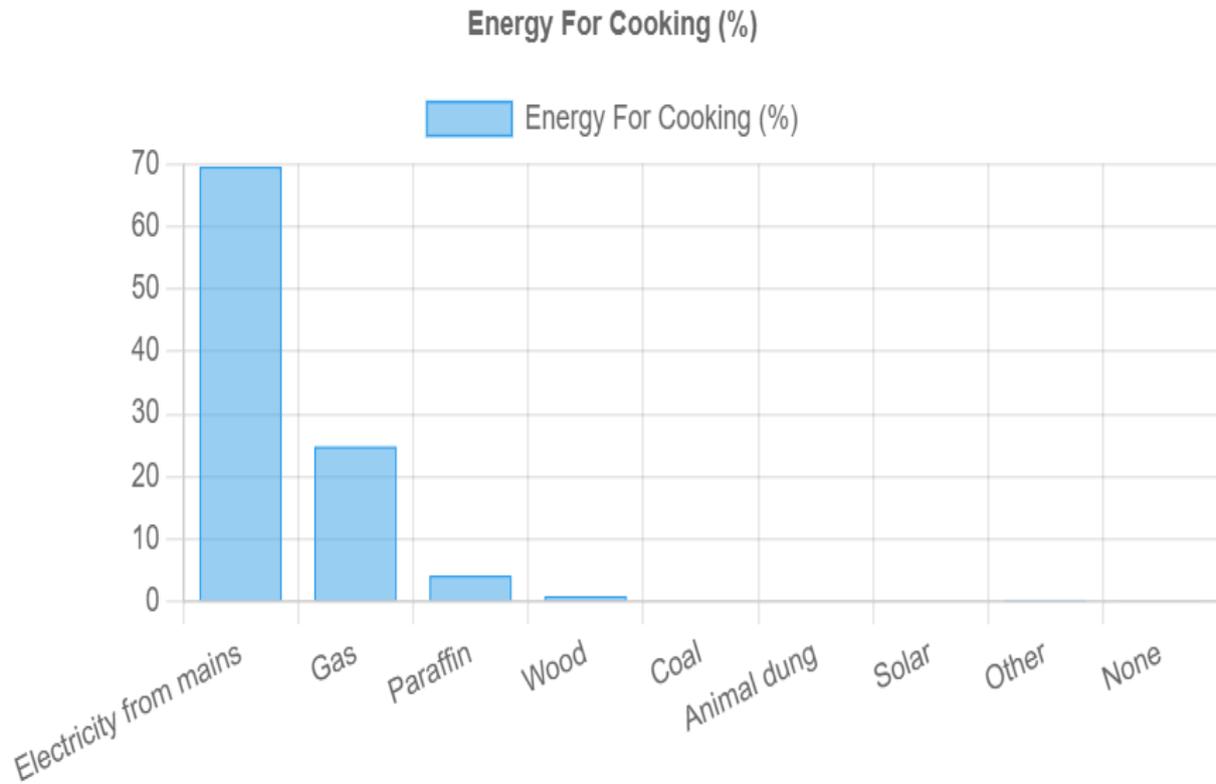


Source: StatsSA – Census 2022

Other households use electricity for cooking only and the table below gives the number of households using electricity mainly for cooking.

| Name                   | Frequency | %     |
|------------------------|-----------|-------|
| Electricity from mains | 141 827   | 69,6% |
| Gas                    | 50 620    | 24,9% |
| Paraffin               | 8 505     | 4,2%  |
| Wood                   | 1 877     | 0,9%  |
| Coal                   | 34        | 0,0%  |
| Animal dung            | 13        | 0,0%  |
| Solar                  | 74        | 0,0%  |
| Other                  | 246       | 0,1%  |
| None                   | 462       | 0,2%  |

Source: StatsSA – Census 2022



#### The Existing Network

The current maximum demand, safe transformer capacity and installed transformer capacity at the different supply-points of Rustenburg are summarized in the table below.

Table 1: High level substation capacities

| No. | Description  | Firm Capacity (MVA)         | Installed Capacity (MVA)    | Current Loading (MVA)        | Estimated 2028 Loading (MVA)  | Summary of Works Required  |
|-----|--|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|---|--|
| 1   | Voltaire Substation                                      | 20 MVA                      | 40 MVA                      | 25,4 MVA                     | 35MVA   | Upgrade & Refurbishment  |
| 2   | Boitekong Substation (New) and Associated Infrastructure | 40 MVA (once constructed)   | 60 MVA (In future)          | 0                            | 20 MVA  | Turnkey Project for the construction of a New 40MVA 88/11kV Substation in Boitekong as funds becomes available contracted for a period of three years. |
| 3   | Industries Substation                                    | 30 @ 11KV and 120MVA @ 33KV | 40 @ 11KV and 160MVA @ 33KV | 28MVA@ 11KV and 77MVA @ 33KV | 35 @ 11KV and 110 @ 33KV Pending utilization of Diversity from Glencore | Normalisation, Rehabilitation & Upgrade.   |
| 4   | Waterkloof Substation                                    | 120 @33KV and 60 @11KV      | 160 @ 33KV and 80 @11KV     | 15 @11KV and ZERO @ 33KV     | 60 @ 11KV and 10MVA @ 33KV  | Load Reallocation & Load Control and 33kV Line to the new Modderfontein.   |
| 5   | Motor City Substation                                    | 20 MVA                      | 40 MVA                      | 0                            | 20 MVA  | Vandalised Budget, Normalisation, Rehabilitation, Upgrade & Commissioning  |
| 6   | Kroondal   | -                           | -                           | 17 MVA                       | 12MVA   | Kroondal marble line now dedicated to Glencore operations, Construction of Modderfontein 33/11kV Substation  |

| No. | Description      | Firm Capacity (MVA) | Installed Capacity (MVA) | Current Loading (MVA) | Estimated 2028 Loading (MVA) | Summary of Works Required   |
|-----|------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|---|
|     |                  |                     |                          |                       |                              | completed. Arnoldstad 11kV Substation.  |
| 7   | Waterkloof Hills | 20 MVA              | 40 MVA                   | 4 MVA                 | 10MVA                        | New feeders to R24 cable installed. Phase 2 of the project in 2023/24 financial year. |
| 8   | Modderfontein    | 20 MVA              | 40 MVA                   | 0 MVA                 | 8MVA                         | Construct and link existing rural feeders to the Farming areas.                       |

Client-base of the Rustenburg Local Municipality

| CONSUMER                 | QUANTITY   |
|--------------------------|--|
| Chrome furnaces          | 1 – shutdown pending NPA   |
| Residential Conventional | 6 285  |
| Government               | 11   |
| Departmental             | 83 – Municipal buildings, Facilities, pumpstations, sportsgrounds, High Mast and streetlights in jurisdiction of supply license. |
| Industrial               | 264  |
| Commercial               | 3940   |
| Mines                    | 8  |
| Agricultural             | 2574   |
| Residential pre-paid     | 61 173   |
|                          | 74 339   |

APPROVED TARIFF BREAKDOWN 2023-2024

| Tariff Name                                |
|--|
| Residential Rural Conventional             |
| Residential Town Conventional              |
| Residential Town Prepaid                   |
| 11 kV Bulk supply Time-of-use              |
| 33 kV Bulk supply Time-of-use NMD < 150MVA |
| Bulk Supply Town and Rural 400 V           |
| Bulk Supply Town and Rural 11kV            |
| Non-domestic (Conventional) - Town + Rural |
| Non-Domestic (Prepaid) - Town + Rural      |
| Residential Rural Prepaid                  |
| Glencore 150+kVA                           |

Ongoing installations are performed through the prepaid section and registered with the BTO Billing System. The LV meters installed as of 31 December 2023 is follow:

Total Domestic + Businesses = 67 371

Total AMR meters 455

Main Eskom/RLM Sub-stations

#### Industries substation

At present this sub-station is the one of the main intakes from Eskom, feeding the industrial area, the City of Rustenburg and portions of the rural and farming area including some of the chrome mines and ancillary plants. The electrical demand at Industries sub-station was de-loaded and does not exceed the safe transformer capacity during peak demand periods. Glencore 33kV supply of their furnaces is fed from Smelter sub-station at 190MVA.

A 33kV, 34MVA diversity overhead line exists between Industries and Glencore which can be made available should it be required. Glencore still pays for the NMD of 34MVA monthly, whether they use the feeder or not. This line is the asset of Glencore.

Within the supply area of Industries sub-station Ferro Chrome Furnaces has closed down for maintenance purposes in the interim.

The tender for the upgrading of Industries, which includes the upgrading of the current Transformers was advertised but not adjudicated due to funding. A request for funding was submitted to the IDP.

#### New 88kV Interconnection Line between Waterkloof substation and the New Eskom switching Substation.

This project was coordinated with Eskom. A 2.1 km new 88kV Interconnection link Line between the new Eskom substation and Waterkloof substation was Constructed and commissioned in 2018. This resulted in the de-loading of +\_ 55MVA on Industries.

The New Eskom switching Substation was however vandalised beyond repair and the Waterkloof Substation was connected to Marang substation some 15km away.

#### Kroondal substation (Marble Lime)

Kroondal sub-station previously supply the bulk of the rural clients in the area to the Southwest of the City of Rustenburg. The bulk of the chrome mines and ancillary plants are also fed from this sub-station.

Due to the electricity interruptions in the rural area having a huge influence on the mining operations it was decided to move the rural area away from the mining operations.

Based on a MOA between the Rustenburg Local Municipality and Glencore Kroondal it was decided to Build an alternative 33/11kV substation closer to the rural area to minimize the long spans and feeder lines. A new supply line was built to feed the new substation from Waterkloof substation.

This also resulted in the Kroondal substation to be fully dedicated to the mining operations and reducing any nuisance trips to the plant.

The MOA was entered into in July 2020. The new 33/11kV substation is called Modderfontein substation and the new 33kV supply line was constructed and was successfully commissioned in October 2023.

As per the MOA concluded the Assets will be the Municipality's but Glencore will be solely responsible for the maintenance and operation of the Kroondal substation. A supply agreement will now be entered into where all parties' responsibilities will be clearly stated.

#### Voltaire substation

Voltaire sub-station was designed to supply the Paardekraal area to the north-east of the city (Boitekong, Meriting, commercial and industrial areas associated with these townships). As the industrial sector planned for Paardekraal has not yet materialized the demand consists of mainly residential clients as well as street and area lighting. A new Mall, Sunrise Mall was constructed which is supplied from Voltaire sub-station. The load growth of the sub-station was constantly monitored by the Rustenburg Local Municipality. The Mall has installed an 8MVA supply cable and built and equip a new 11kV Substation on request from the RLM. The mall will utilise at most 1MVA and the remaining 7MVA is available and will be utilised for the supply from Sunrise Mall to the new Popo Molefe and Mbeki Sun which is in proclamation. The substation has at one stage in 2017 reached a demand of 30.1MVA and it was found it was necessary for the upgrading of the sub-station and/or the greater Paardekraal network.

Rustenburg Local Municipality is currently constructing a new 88/11kV substation which will be known as Boitekong substation on the corner of R510 and Bophuthatswana Road to relief the current loading at Voltaire Substation 11kV supply side. The Capacity of Voltaire substation is 40MVA and the Demand to be fed is currently estimated between 25 and 27MVA due to the ongoing control of illegal connections.

The following operational status, however, has an influence. The demarcated supply area has been decreased from the Quarries on the eastern side of Bospoort dam back to the Boitekong Thabazimbi intersection (R510 and Bophuthatswana Road, the police station and Boitekong Sewerage works in the vicinity where this new substation is earmarked to be built.

#### Boitekong Substation (Under construction)

Phase three of the project is in progress. The new 88/11kV Boitekong substation is currently under construction. Civil works are completed, and most long lead material has been delivered and installed. The substations will provide capacity for the newly formalized informal settlements and reducing load at Voltaire 11kV supply side to provide capacity for new developments around the Greater Boitekong area. This will be followed by upgrading the 11 KV feeder line to Mogwase substation as well as the existing 88/11kV Voltaire substation and associated lines and feeders.

#### Upgrading of Existing Substations in Rustenburg

Total of 4 x 33/11kV substations in Rustenburg namely (Munic, Boschdal, Noord and Donkerhoek) was totally upgraded. New 33 and 11kV substation breakers and equipment have been replaced.

Geelhoutpark 33kV switchgear was repaired and the 11kV switchgear is replaced.

1) Munic 33/11KV Substation.

Earthing of the substation completed, vandalized or stolen earth bars were replaced.

2) Noord 33/11kV Substation.

Noord substation is currently in good condition and reliable as it was recently upgraded.

3) Donkerhoek 33/11kV Substation.

Substation fully functional and reliable as it was recently upgraded.

4) Boschdal 33/11kV Substation.

Substation fully functional and reliable as it was recently upgraded.

5) Geelhout Park 33/11kV Substation

The substation and associated infrastructure were repaired with the Electrical Engineering Contributions from Rustenburg x 30 Mall.

Total following 33/11kV substations in Rustenburg namely (Industries and Park sub needs urgent upgrading.

6) Industries 33/11KV Intake Substation

These breakers are worn, and the protection schemes are not in line with current requirements. This contributes to uncontrolled upstream tripping and unsafe conditions to electrical officials to operate. Lack of preventative maintenance a problem mainly due to skilled personnel shortages in this field of operation and financial constraints. Theft of copper cables and earthing systems in substations were problematic. Switchgear and transformer failures were more common with occurrence of frequent equipment, panel, and transformer failure.

Estimated total budget cost in 2024 is R 105 million. This 33/11KV Intake Substation will be prioritised to enable the upgrading of the substation to ensure the Industrial area and all other customers have a reliable supply. Implementation can be done in phases as and when funding becomes available.

7) Park 33/11kV Substation

This substation is in a bad condition due to Vandalism and requires immediate attention. 33 KV cables vandalised, and copper arms of switchgear is stolen. An urgent upgrade is required, and funding be made available. The estimated cost is R 30 million. An interim measure is to repair these breakers to safeguard officials and to enable switching during fault conditions.

CONSTRUCTION OF NEW SUBSTATIONS IN RUSTENBURG

Waterkloof Hills 33/11kV Substation

Substation fully functional and reliable as it was recently upgraded.

Motor City 33/11kV Substation

The Substation situated at the South-Eastern side of Rustenburg CBD near Magalies View. This substation will mainly be utilized to feed all developments in the (Waterkloof East) and will eliminate extensive outages to the area.

The Construction was 95% complete and should have been energised. External factors led to non-completion and RLM must reconstruct the Substation. The required budget allocation is estimated to R 25 million.

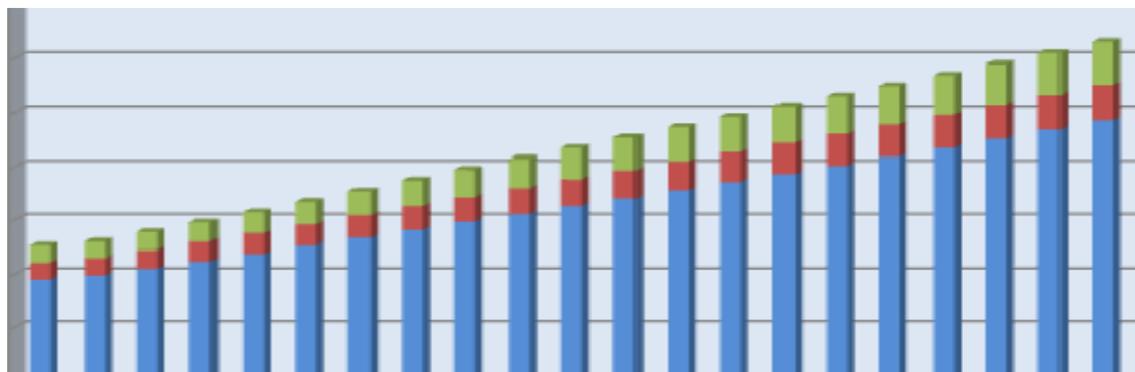
#### Waterkloof 88/33/11kV Substation

Substation fully functional and reliable.

Forecast system load for Rustenburg.

The forecasted 15-year system Masterplan which load profile comprises of the following intake sub-stations Industries, Voltaire, Kroondal and can be seen in the graph below. The smelter furnace that is currently supplied from Smelters sub-station is excluded from the industry's sub-load. The forecasted 15-year system load was never realized because of reasons worldwide known events which hampered the growth of Rustenburg. The load forecast (masterplan) is still effective due to the limited growth of Rustenburg after 2014.

The masterplan was theoretically calculated until 2028 on available Township development data.



2009

2016

2022

2028

Blue Part - Bottom – Industries 33kV

Red Part – Middle - Kroondal 33kV

Green Part Top - Voltaire 33kV

#### Electricity Infrastructure

From the above growth trend, several projects will have to be implemented within the next 5 financial years to meet the new demand in the Rustenburg area of supply. Fortunately, the current economic downturn has given Rustenburg breathing space and eased the timeframe for the implementation of the bigger projects. Outstanding projects will be completed in due course.

The cost estimates are based on the requirements for:

Expansion

Strengthening

Maintenance improvement projects.

Rustenburg invested previously significantly in the electricity distribution infrastructure to meet the growing demand for electricity and to replace ageing equipment/plant.

Continued investment is required to ensure that quality and reliability of supply, as required by The National Electricity Regulator, is achieved. An ageing plant not only poses a significant risk to the reliability of the supply, but it also poses a high risk to the residents of Rustenburg and to the staff that operate this ageing equipment.

To align Electrical and Budget and Treasury in their operations, the following will be re-initiated:

Updated Cost of Supply Study for every current Account type.

Alignment of Tariff codes to each tariff component approved by Nersa for implementation.

Electricity Bulk Engineering Contribution Study and tariffs for alternative energy initiatives- SSEG

Prioritize applications for IPP investments (Independent Power Producers)

Electricity Tariff and revenue enhancement implementation - Nersa D Form Studies.

SAIDI and SAIFI principles will be done more intensely.

This will be an ongoing exercise and operation to ensure the best information is available to the Council.

The masterplan is updated yearly internally to cope with unexpected changes in electricity demand.

The following projects must be implemented:

| Planned Year | Sub-station   | Project Name   | Project description  | Estimated budget Cost   |
|--------------|---|--|--|-------------------------|
| 2024 - 2029  | Industries  | Industries 33/11kV, Substation                         | Upgrade 33/11kV, Substation – Upgrading and refurbishment is expected to be done in this 5-year period   | R 105 M                 |
| 2024 - 2029  | Motor City Substation                                 | Motor City 88/11kV 2x20MVA substation (New Substation) | Build 88/11kV 2x20MVA substation. Substation was 95 % complete. The substation was vandalized. Upgrading is expected to be done in this 5-year period                              | R 25 M                  |
| 2024 - 2029  | Waterkloof  | Waterkloof Load Control                                | Install Load Control   | R 20 M                  |
| 2024 - 2029  | Park Substation                                       | Park 33/11 kV  | Upgrade 33/11kV, Substation – Reinstall vandalised earthing and upgrading of vandalised Switchgear and protection systems. Repair faulty 20mVA Power Transformer                   | R 25 M                  |
| 2024 - 2029  | Boitekong Substation 40MVA - (Minimum) with extra bay | Build 88/11kV Sub (New Substation)                     | Build 88/11kV 2x20MVA (Minimum) substation with extra bay and all associated infrastructure to make it fully functional and ensure new developments can be accommodated in future. | R 77 M<br>65% Completed |
| 2024 - 2029  | Voltaire Substation                                   | Voltaire 88/11kV Substation                            | Add “1x88/bay” to ensure the energizing of the new Boitekong Substation 40MVA and extra bay. Cater for the   | R15 M                   |

| Planned Year | Sub-station  | Project Name   | Project description  | Estimated budget Cost                                   |
|--------------|--|--|--|---|
|              |  |  | proposed new Safari developments.  |   |
| 2024 - 2029  | Motor City Substation  | Motor City 33 and 11kV ring feeders                                  | Install and complete 11kV ring feeders to surrounding areas after substation is refurbished. | R 10 M  |
| 2024 - 2029  | Zinniaville  | Feedback from Noord  | Complete ring feed   | R 1,5 M   |
| 2024 - 2029  | MV & HV networks   | Re-install vandalized Supply to Seraleng                             | Build HV line in servitude from Voltaire 2.2km Hare conductor                                | R 2 M   |
| 2024 - 2029  | Rebuild Arnoldistad substation   | Upgrading and refurbishment  |  | 100% Completed  |
| 2024 - 2029  | Build Modderfontein 33/11KV substation   | Upgrading of rural and farming area South of Rustenburg              |  | 100% Completed  |
| 2024 - 2029  | Build 33kV line from Waterkloof to new Modderfontein 33/11KV substation                            | Upgrading of rural and farming area South of Rustenburg              |  | 100% Completed (SLP – and MOA Between RLM and Glencore) |
| 2024 - 2029  | 11kV Substations in old Cashan - Replace problematic LV bare overhead lines with Bundle Conductor. | Upgrading of open structures within the developed area of Rustenburg |  | R 3 M.<br>In progress                                   |
| 2024 - 2029  | 11kV Substation in Zinniaville - Replace problematic LV bare overhead lines with Bundle Conductor. | Upgrading of open structures within the developed area of Rustenburg |  | R 3 M.  |
| 2024 - 2029  | Waterkloof Hills and Waterval Mall Substations – Link  | Linking of radial and very long feeders to ensure stability and      |  | R 5 M<br>95%  |

| Planned Year | Sub-station  | Project Name   | Project description | Estimated budget Cost |
|--------------|--|--|---------------------|-----------------------|
|              | the substations and the Dinie Estate as well as Arnoldistad Line | switching options within this new development area of Rustenburg |                     | completed             |

Upgrading of Existing Electrical Networks.

Electrical Medium and Low Voltage Distribution Networks  
Underground Network

The project is ongoing and consists of the upgrading of the old main 11kV distribution feeders to cater for the increased load requirements in both residential and commercial loads due to rezoning and densification etc.

Old overhead lines were replaced with a bundle conductor system. Areas of focus was Old Cashan (Hendrik v.d. Merwe and surrounding areas), Rustenburg East End, Zinniaville, Rustenburg North and some areas in the Bo-Dorp.

The Municipality has invested approximately R 33 million on the projects over the years to date.

It is important to notice that to upgrade the system are contractor, material and plant based.

Minimum Capital Funds as requested on the IDP – next 5 years (2024 - 2029).

Rustenburg East and associated areas (Integrated with Zinniaville, Karlienpark etc.) – minimum R 5 million per year – and dedicated contractor.

Rustenburg North and associated areas (Integrated with Zinniaville, Karlienpark etc.) – minimum R 2,5

Rustenburg CBD and associated areas (Integrated with Residential areas etc.) – minimum R 2 million per year.

Rustenburg – Boitekong and associated areas (Integrated with Sunrise Park, Ramochana etc.) – minimum R 1 million per year excluding new electrification areas which will be bulk projects.

Cashan 28

Cashan 28 was completely electrified. The stands were never sold within the identified period and the network was vandalized.

Currently the stand owners build houses, and the network is to be re-installed where electricity connections are needed. This is an ongoing process to prevent the vandalism after installation until such time that the whole network is completed and energised. Final outstanding cost estimate to upgrade as and when houses are built is R 3.5 million over the 5-year period

### Rural Overhead Network

The project entails the following and is ongoing:

Upgrading of 480 km of overhead lines (MV and LV) by replacing insufficient conductors with bare conductors able to handle the new demand in capacity as well as to enable ring feeding during fault conditions. This will ultimately reduce power outage timeframes.

This includes the replacement of decayed wooden poles with new concrete poles and the old Porcelain insulators with new insulators or to upgrade to Silicon Rubber insulators, all necessitated by age, climate wear and tear as well as soil conditions – Ongoing project.

Old leaking transformers are refurbished and the low voltage lines feeding from the transformers where applicable. The Municipality has invested approximately R 10 million on the projects and replacement of vandalised infrastructure until 2020.

The sudden sabotage and vandalism of networks cost the Municipality tens of millions of rand in the last year. Vandalism depleted all material and stock that was required to upgrade and expand the electrical network.

Minimum Capital Funds as Requested on IDP – next 5 years (2024 - 2029).

Vegetation - Rural areas and associated areas (Integrated with Northern rural areas such as Rietvlei, Southern Rural Areas such as Boschfontein, Waterval, Zuurplaat, Modderfontein Kroondal etc.) – minimum R 2,5 million per year.

Budget for uncontrolled Vandalism a minimum of R15 million per year on this trend.

Replacement of Old Metering Equipment.

### Metering Online software

An AMR server was installed and cater for CT (Current Transforming) and Maximum Demand Meters for Departmental, Business, Industrial and Bulk Consumers were implemented to enhance better control on revenue by ensuring correct metering and billing information. Each meter installation is also audited and verified as correct on installation.

All installations are monitored, and vandalism and theft of sim cards and modems are monitored daily. The cost per year to maintain the basic installations is approximately R500 000.00 per year. This excludes any new installation.

AMR meters installed amounts to +\_455 in the following categories.

Time of Use Customers = 30

Departmental, Business, Industrial and Bulk Consumers = 425

Some of the Bulk meters are used as check meters when Prepaid meters for energy consumptions are installed, but the Service Charges per Legal stand is still paid.

Minimum Capital Funds for Metering Equipment as requested on the IDP – next 5 years (2024 – 2029) is R200 000.00 per year. The total project will over the IDP period is estimated at R 1000 000.00.

This might change significantly if RLM can manage to attract Businesses, and in turn giving work to residents.

#### LV Metering (Prepaid and Conventional)

Ongoing installations are performed through the prepaid and metering section and registered with the BTO Billing System.

#### Capitalized Maintenance Program

To address the backlog on maintenance with regard to the medium voltage network, the following program of refurbishment was adopted by the Unit: Electrical Engineering Services and will be referred to future MTEF capital budgets within the five-year IDP timeframe.

The program will be scheduled over the 5 years as budgets becomes available.

#### Program of 11kV Refurbishment

The below substations will be completed but the scope is not limited to the mentioned subs.

| Substation    | Project Description - Replacement of:             | 2022 Prices   |
|---------------|---|---------------|
| Ou Waterwerke | Replace 12 Panels (1973) with New 11kV Switchgear | R3 484 000.00 |
| Swembad       | Replace 10 Panels (1971) with New 11kV Switchgear | R2 613 000.00 |
| Middelstraat  | Replace 4 Panels (1968) with New 11kV Switchgear  | R1 139 000.00 |
| Boomstraat    | Replace 5 Panels (1953) with New 11kV Switchgear  | R1 273 000.00 |
| Poskantoor    | Replace 5 Panels (1960) with New 11kV Switchgear  | R1 273 000.00 |
| Booster       | Replace 4 Panels (1957) with New 11kV Switchgear  | R1 005 000.00 |
| MKTV          | Replace 4 Panels (1964) with New 11kV Switchgear  | R696 800.00   |
| Christie      | Replace Megnafix (19xx) with New 11kV Switchgear  | R294 800.00   |
| Tamboti       | Replace Megnafix (19xx) with New 11kV Switchgear  | R294 800.00   |
| Unicorn       | Replace Megnafix (19xx) with New 11kV Switchgear  | R294 800.00   |
| Moepel        | Replace 6 Panels (1972) with New 11kV Switchgear  | R1 581 200.00 |
| Kloof         | Replace 7 Panels (1974) with New 11kV Switchgear  | R1 742 000.00 |
| Lilac         | Replace 8 Panels (1975) with New 11kV Switchgear  | R2 077 000.00 |

|          |   |                |
|----------|---|----------------|
| Wisteria | Replace 11 Panels (1975) with New 11kV Switchgear | R2 948 000.00  |
| Total    |   | R23 785 000.00 |

Budget for uncontrolled Vandalism approximately R20 plus million per year on this trend if it has to be replaced directly.

### Electricity Distribution

In general, from the complaints received from the community, the provision of electricity can be seen as satisfactory. A few setbacks are experienced due to timeframes to finalize projects.

The affordability of the already high electricity rate is however a concern to the customers.

### Public Lighting

#### Street and High mast lighting

The provision of street lighting in Rustenburg can be described as in a bad state due to ongoing excavations, which damage supply cables, vigorous and uncontrolled vandalism and theft of streetlight poles and associated equipment, vehicles knocking down streetlight poles and lack of manpower.

Lack of proper lighting may result in more criminal activities and therefore the proper functioning of streetlights is of utmost importance for the residents. The street light maintenance of is currently maintained by internal staff and contracted service providers to address the backlog on the maintenance programme.

The municipality has also appointed a consultant to implement energy Efficient streetlights and service providers for supply and delivery of streetlights equipment.

#### EEDSM Project Plan for Financial Year 2022 - 2027 (IDP)

Rustenburg Local Municipality has built on the strategic focus areas it has identified as the cornerstones of a successful and thriving council within the developed Master Plan 2040, and which form the foundation of its Five-year Integrated Development Plan. The approved master plan has five (5) goals, among them sustainable resource management focusing on water management, waste and environmental management, and smart energy management.

Over the next five years, Rustenburg Local Municipality is expected to improve energy efficiency of public street lighting, buildings, and water service plants. In addition, the target over the next five years is projects on waste-to-energy harvesting Biogas from most of the Wastewater Treatment Plants to generate electricity. Our focus will be on making our public street and high mast lights more efficient, whilst smart meters and energy management systems will be installed to support our measurement and monitoring of electricity consumption. In addition, technical feasibility studies will be carried out to assess the viability of biogas cogeneration and other clean energy solutions in buildings and water services plants.

The following projects to be implemented in the following 5 years as and when funds become available.:

| AREA OF FOCUS                             | PROJECT DESCRIPTION  | BUDGET FOR<br>2024/2025 | BUDGET FOR<br>2025/2026 | BUDGET FOR<br>2026/2027 | BUDGET FOR<br>2027/2028 | BUDGET FOR<br>2028/2029 |
|---|--|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Public Street Lights and High Mast Lights | Retrofitting of old Street Lights and High Mast Lights with new energy saving LED lights   | R 5 m                   | R 5 m                   | R 8 m                   | R 8 m                   | R 10 m                  |
| Municipal Buildings                       | Retrofitting of old fluorescent Lights with new energy saving LED fluorescent lights, including energy performance certification (EPC) of buildings that qualify |                         |                         | R3 m                    | R 2 m                   | R 7 m                   |
| Waste Water Treatment Plants              | Replacement of IE1 Motors with IE3 Motors for efficiency in operation  |                         |                         | R 6 m                   | R 5 m                   | R2 m                    |
| TOTAL                                     |  | R 5 m                   | R 5 m                   | R17 m                   | R15 m                   | R19 m                   |

#### ELECTRICAL NETWORK INFRASTRUCTURE VANDALISM

The electrical infrastructure of the Rustenburg Local Municipality has become an area of attention for various criminal elements in recent times. Critical electrical equipment has repeatedly been vandalised and/or stolen. This has resulted in serious implications to the ability of the electrical team to properly operate the network and ensure uninterrupted supply of electricity. The consequences of these acts of criminality are prolonged outage times for consumers, compromised electrical network infrastructure, financial losses to the Municipality.

Several cases were recorded by the unit: Electrical Engineering Services and reported to the South African Police Services for further handling. Below is a list of cases reported and case numbers, together with estimated financial implications for all the damages and theft to the electrical network infrastructure. The cases were reported between March 2021 and June 2023. Over 70 cases of vandalism were previously reported without success in prosecutions. The total damage amounts to over R 50 million ranging from Mini-sub, Pole mounted transformers, cables, 11 and 33kV switchgears and protection equipment, Substation buildings etc.

The observed trends, together with general trends around the country regarding vandalism of municipal infrastructure, are to be used to estimate capital requirements for repairs and replacement of all vandalised electrical network infrastructure. As part of planning, an assumption is made that the observed trends will have small variations over the next 5 years.

Is it necessary that the Municipality budget for the repairs of all vandalised and stolen infrastructure over the next 5-year period. Approximately R 50 million per financial year, for the next 5 years should be budgeted and allocated to repairs and replacement of all stolen and vandalised electrical network infrastructure.

#### DMRE ROLLING PLAN – EEDSM

The following is extracted from Rustenburg Local Municipality letters and responses on names of villages furnished to form part of the different rolling plans for basic electricity services.

#### ELECTRIFICATION PROJECT PLAN FOR FINANCIAL YEAR 2023 /2024 ONWARDS (IDP)

##### Electrification Program

##### Subsidised electricity connections

Electricity availability is primarily a problem in informal settlements.

Through the Electrification program funded by the Department of Mineral and Energy for proclaimed areas it is important that the formalization be prioritized.

This is currently being addressed by the Directorate Planning and Human Settlement and the Electricity Department of Rustenburg.

##### Electrification of New Townships and Villages.

Popo Molefe – +- 5500 new connections

Mbeki Sun – approximately 2100 new connections

Designs are finalized in-house, and the tender will be submitted for advertisement once SCM is convinced that proper funding is available from DMRE. The project is expected to be finalized in this IDP period.

The electrification will be rolled out in phase as funds becomes available.

##### Eskom Rolling Plan

The following is extracted from Rustenburg Local Municipality letters and responses on names of villages furnished to form part of the different rolling plans for basic electricity services.

ELECTRIFICATION PROJECT PLAN FOR FINANCIAL YEAR 2023 /2024 ONWARDS (IDP)

| Project Name            | Ward | Village Name Different from Project Name | Project Type                         | Number Stands or Households |
|-------------------------|------|--|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Madubu park             | 27   | Lethabong 2                              | Special Project<br>House Connections | 4                           |
| Lethabong 2             | 27   | Lethabong 2                              | House Connections                    | 1500                        |
| Lethabong 3             | 27   | Lethabong 3                              | House Connections                    | 1500                        |
| Makolokwe               | 29   | Makolokwe                                | House Connections                    | 100                         |
| Bethanie (Extra Stands) | 30   | Bethanie (Extra Stands)                  | House Connections                    | 30                          |
| Maumong                 | 29   | Maumong                                  | House Connections                    | 100                         |
| Tlhaseng                | 26   | Tlaseng                                  | House Connections                    | 11 of 15                    |
| Monnakato Ext 4 and 5   | 25   | Monnakato Ext 4 and 5                    | House Connections                    | 500                         |
| Meriting Ext 4          | 12   | Meriting Ext 4                           | House Connections                    | 349                         |
| Marikana x 13           | 44   | Marikana x 13                            | House Connections                    | 2000                        |
| Lekgalong               | 44   | Lekgalong (new section)                  | House Connections                    | 50                          |
| Bokamoso                | 34   | Bokamoso                                 | House Connections                    | 1500                        |
| Phatsima Ext 3          | 1    | Phatsima Ext 3                           | House Connections                    | 300                         |
| Rankelenyane            |      | Rankelenyane                             | House Connections                    | 30                          |
| Luka                    |      | Luka                                     | House Connections                    | 15                          |
| Berseba                 |      | Berseba                                  | House Connections                    | 15                          |
| Ledig                   |      | Ledig                                    | House Connections                    | 750                         |
| Modikwe                 |      | Modikwe                                  | House Connections                    | 65                          |
| Makolokwe               |      | Makolokwe                                | House Connections                    | 45                          |
| Mabitse                 |      | Mabitse                                  | House Connections                    | 50                          |
| Lekgalong Phase 2       |      | Lekgalong Phase 2                        | House Connections                    | 50                          |

| Project Name                   | Ward | Village Name Different from Project Name | Project Type      | Number Stands or Households |
|--------------------------------|------|--|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| Syferbuilt                     |      | Syferbuilt                               | House Connections | 61                          |
| Mathopestadt                   |      | Mathopestadt                             | House Connections | 25                          |
| Tsienyane                      |      | Tsienyane                                | House Connections |                             |
| Malapane                       |      | Malapane                                 | House Connections | 278                         |
| Meriting Ext 2                 |      | Meriting Ext 2                           | House Connections | 68                          |
| Maile Ext                      | 25   | Maile Ext                                | House Connections | 50 (33 legal)               |
| Bokamoso                       | 34   | Bokamoso – Infill submission MMC         | Infills           | 321                         |
| Mosenthal                      |      | Mosenthal                                | House Connections | 10                          |
| Ikageng                        |      | Ikageng                                  | House Connections | 10                          |
| Monakato Ext 3                 |      | Monakato Ext 3                           | House Connections | 10                          |
| Tantanyana,Diepkuil Mamerotse. | 26   | Ward 26                                  | House Connections | 10                          |

The following

Informal Settlement within the Eskom supply area is not electrified but the formalization process is in progress.

|                   |    |  |                   |     |
|-------------------|----|--|-------------------|-----|
| Molote City Ext 1 | 31 | Portion 28 of the Farm Elandsfontein No. 21-IQ | House Connections | 147 |
|-------------------|----|--|-------------------|-----|

Rapid Land Release areas: - 3 Year rolling plan (2023 /2024 Onwards)

| Project Name | Ward | Village Name Different from Project Name | Project Type      | Number Stands or Households |
|--------------|------|--|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| Monnakato    |      | Monnakato                                | House Connections | 535                         |
| Phatsima     |      | Phatsima                                 | House Connections | 291                         |
| Lethabong    |      | Lethabong 3                              | House Connections | 200                         |

| Project Name | Ward | Village Name Different from Project Name | Project Type      | Number Stands or Households |
|--------------|------|--|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| Boshoek      |      | Boshoek                                  | House Connections | 300                         |
| Rietvlei     |      | Rietvlei                                 | House Connections | 250                         |
| Mmaditlhokwa |      | Mmaditlhokwa 21/22                       | House Connections | 2000                        |

Other areas for electrification in RBA

| VILLAGES          | LOCATION DESCRIPTION                     | ESTIMATED CONNECTIONS |
|-------------------|--|-----------------------|
| North Region      |  |                       |
| Luka              | Rankuyana Section                        | 5                     |
|                   | Photsaneng Section                       | 4                     |
| Mogono            | Ralesobesobe Section (Luka/Mogono)       | 20                    |
| South East Region |  |                       |
| Photsaneng        | Tshukudu Gardens                         | 25                    |
| North East Region |  |                       |
| Tsitshing         | Tstitsing New Stands - Old cultural area | 12                    |

Areas Outstanding – part of previous Electrification requests.

|                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| Capital Region    |                 |
| Phokeng           | Madubu Park     |
| North East Region |                 |
| Maile Extension   | New Stands      |
| Tlhaseng          | Behind Cemetery |

The following Informal Settlements are identified for relocation to Marikana x 13

|                                 |    |                                 |                   |            |
|---------------------------------|----|---------------------------------|-------------------|------------|
| Sporong North and Sporong South | 31 | Sporong North and Sporong South | House Connections | 1000       |
| Storm Huise                     | 31 | Storm Huise                     | House Connections | 305        |
| Braampie                        | 31 | Braampie                        | House Connections | 195        |
| Bennie                          | 31 | Bennie                          | House Connections | 257        |
| Group 5                         | 31 | Group 5                         | House Connections | 150        |
| Skierlek                        | 31 | Skierlek                        | House Connections | 120        |
| Big House                       | 31 | Big House                       | House Connections | 400        |
| Leagajang                       | 31 | Leagajang section phase 2       | House Connections | To confirm |

Please note that the following Informal Settlements within the Eskom supply area are not yet electrified and was submitted for the Bojanala District Development Model to DMRE

| INFORMAL SETTLEMENT  | LAND DESCRIPTION                         | AREA IN HECTARES | LAND OWNERSHIP                                    | NUMBER OF STRUCTURES | ELECTRICITY PROVIDER |
|----------------------|--|------------------|---|----------------------|----------------------|
| Yizo Yizo (Tlhabane) | Industrial Area of Tlhabane              | 12.0863          | Some portions privately owned and others by RLM   | 1357                 | Eskom                |
| Zakhele              | Klipgat 281 JQ                           | 47.4597          | Royal Bafokeng Administration                     | 1532                 | Eskom                |
| Mmaditlhokwa         | Kafferskraal 342 JQ                      | 30.6569          | Various private owners                            | 790                  | Eskom                |
| Nkaneng              | Portion 2 of the Farm Klipfontein 300 JQ | 124.4986         | Royal Bafokeng Administration and Makgatlhe Tribe | 4000                 | Eskom                |
| Ikageng              | Boschpoort 284 JQ                        | 25.1403          | State owned and Royal Bafokeng Administration     | 1594                 | Eskom                |

| INFORMAL SETTLEMENT     | LAND DESCRIPTION                         | AREA IN HECTARES | LAND OWNERSHIP                                    | NUMBER OF STRUCTURES    | ELECTRICITY PROVIDER |
|-------------------------|--|------------------|---|-------------------------|----------------------|
| Yizo-yizo (Boitekong 8) | Portion 13 of the Farm Paardekraal 279JQ | 12.7302          | RLM   | 2800                    | Eskom                |
| Freedom Park            | Rienkoyalskraal 278JQ                    | 116.7681         | Impala Platinum and Royal Bafokeng Administration | 2000                    | Eskom                |
| Stormhuise              | Rooikoppies 279JQ                        | 8.1494           | Privately owned                                   | 300                     | Eskom                |
| Sporong South           | Rooikoppies 279JQ                        | 2.0652           | Privately owned                                   | 100                     | Eskom                |
| Sporong North           | Rooikoppies 279JQ                        | 3.3693           | Privately owned                                   | 100                     | Eskom                |
| Chachalaza-Motlhabeng   | Reinkoyalskraal 278JQ                    | 18.154           | Royal Bafokeng Administration                     | Fall under Boitekong 14 | Eskom                |
| Mshenguville            | Reinkoyalskraal 278JQ                    | 6.1673           | Royal Bafokeng Administration                     | 310                     | Eskom                |
| Phoane                  | Kroondal 304JQ                           | 9.464            | Aquarius  | Audit still to be done  | Eskom                |
| Group Five              | Rooikoppies 279JQ                        | 9.9363           | Privately owned                                   | 700                     | Eskom                |
| Braampies               | Rooikoppies 279JQ                        | 11.1171          | Privately owned                                   | 2000                    | Eskom                |
| Skierlik                | Rooikoppies 279JQ                        | 12.5162          | Privately owned                                   | 360                     | Eskom                |
| Tshilong                | Kafferskraal 342JQ                       | 3.9493           | Incorporated into Mmaditlhokwa                    | 50                      | Eskom                |
| Mahumapelo 1&2          | Marikana                                 |                  |   | Not yet audited         | Eskom                |

INFORMAL SETTLEMENTS AND CURRENT STATUS - RLM LICENSED AREA OF SUPPLY

| No | INFORMAL SETTLEMENT        | LAND DESCRIPTION                                    | LAND OWNERSHIP                                  | NUMBER OF STRUCTURES | ESTIMATED COSTS | IDP STATUS UPDATE   |
|----|----------------------------|---|---|----------------------|-----------------|---|
| 1  | Ramochana (Rustenburg X13) | Town and Townlands of Rustenburg (272 JQ) 18.8198HA | RLM   | 1107                 | R 19 926 000    | Airport next to settlement. Tender not adjudicated yet for planners to start the Formalising process. Studies to be done  |
| 2  | Mbeki Sun                  | Portion 45 of Paardekraal 279JQ 30.4239HA           | Some portions privately owned and others by RLM | 2000                 | R 36 000 000    | Contracts signed between HDA and family trusts. Planners appointed for Township development processes. Await last contract to be signed by Government.<br><br>The signed contract will be handed back to HDA.<br><br>Thereafter it will be handed over to attorneys to effect transfers. Consultant have indicated they can start pegging and placing residents in line with draft layout<br><br>Electrical designs in progress |
| 3  | Popo Molefe                | Paardekraal 279JQ 55.8807HA                         | RLM   | 1264                 | R 20 232 000    | Contracts signed between HDA and family trusts. Planners appointed for Township development processes. Await last contract to be signed by Government.  |

|   |              |  |                                |                       |                 |   |
|---|--------------|--|--------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---|
|   |              |  |                                |                       |                 | <p>The signed contract will be handed back to HDA.</p> <p>Thereafter it will be handed over to attorneys to effect transfers. Township establishment studies done. Consultant have indicated they can start pegging and placing residents in line with draft layout.</p> <p>Electrical designs finalised inhouse.</p> |
| 4 | Damoye view  | Boitekong  | Municipal land                 | 3209                  | R 57 762 000    | Feasibility studies have not been done to confirm if the land is habitable  |
| 5 | Abudabi      | Boitekong  | Partly Municipal land          | Not yet audited       | 0               | Feasibility studies have not been done to confirm if the land is habitable  |
| 6 | Reutlwile    | Zinniaville  |                                | Not yet audited       | 0               | Feasibility studies have not been done to confirm if the land is habitable  |
| 7 | Plastic city | Geelhoutpark/<br>Bellevue                          | Private / RLM                  | 98                    | Relocation cost | There is an agreement that the stands be transferred back to private owners after proclamation. The process is however in research. Process to be moved to new Rietvlei Township is in progress   |
| 8 | Plot 14      | Portion 71 of the Farm Paardekraal 279JQ 15.9009HA | Privately owned                | 780                   | Relocation cost | To be relocated to Pot 50 Paardekraal   |
| 9 | Ikemeleng    | Kroondal 304JQ 131.912HA                           | Aquarius / Sibanye / Glencore? | 4000 Partially formed | R 72 000 000    | Contracts signed by private owners and the Mines and RLM. It is in the process to be transferred to RLM whereafter the formalization process can start.   |

|    |                          |  |   |      |              |   |
|----|--------------------------|--|---|------|--------------|---|
|    |                          |  |   |      |              | Formalization can take up to 2 (TWO) Years  |
| 10 | Boitekong 14<br>Informal | Portion 3 of the<br>Farm<br>Reinkoyalskraal<br>278JQ 16.9167HA | Royal Bafokeng<br>Administration<br>and Bafokeng<br>Tribe | 1055 | R 18 990 000 | The RBA has no current project of formalization<br>informal settlements within the RBN. |
| 11 | Jabula & Dunusa          | Town and<br>Townlands of<br>Rustenburg 272JQ<br>5.1647HA       | Jabula Mine   | 2000 | R 36 000 000 |   |

### **Free Basic Electricity - Background**

There was confusion surrounding the definition of 'indigent/poor' electricity customers particularly around the issue of Free Basic Electricity [FBE] allocations and the application of 'poverty tariffs. Each authority appears to have a different methodology of identifying the customers they are attempting to target. The AMEU Tariffs Committee has been attempting to find a nationally acceptable definition. Correspondence from the Electricity Regulator (NERSA) highlighted the fact that one of the challenges, which may have delayed finalization of a national indigent policy, was the constitutional rights of municipalities to fulfil their mandate within their own decision-making processes and local constraints. It is understood that all municipalities are now required to establish an indigent register with the qualification criteria locally determined.

From the point of view of tariff determination, it is a generally accepted although not specifically stated approach that the "indigent" would be those residential customers, usually on the single energy rate (prepaid) tariff, who are generally using less than about 500kWh/month. This level of consumption may not, however, indicate indigence in all cases and other factors such as household size and income levels are also important but relative

### **Indigent Households**

Rustenburg Local Municipality adopted an Indigent Policy, and indigents need to register accordingly. The Directorate: Finance can be contacted in this regard.

### **Informal/ Formal Settlements (Short term vision) 2350804409**

Current municipal backlog supplying electrical services (Basics) is mainly in informal settlement.

Municipality is investigating electrifying the following settlement as per DoE conditions which all of some of the below mentioned settlements currently do not meet completely.

| Settlement Name             | Electricity supply license | Estimated Number of future Structures to be electrified | Estimated future funds @ R 18 000 cost per connection, excluding Bulk Supply Network |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|---|--|
| RLM                         |                            |   |  |
| Ramochana                   | RLM                        | 1107  | R 19 926 000   |
| New Popo Molefe layout      | RLM                        | 5700  | R 102 600 000  |
| Yizo-Yizo (Boitekong Ext 8) | RLM                        | 2800  | R 50 400 000   |
| Plot 50                     | RLM                        | 710   | R 12 780 000   |
| Ikemeleng                   | RLM                        | 4000  | 72 000 000   |
| Boitekong 13                | RLM                        | 1346  | R 24 228 000   |

**Other future proposed Projects – Electrical Comments**

| No | PROPOSED PROJECT                              | LAND DESCRIPTION   | BULK ELECTRICITY  |
|----|---|--|---|
| 1  | Industrial Parks Development                  | Remainder of Portion 1, Portions 9,8,7,3 and Remainder of Portion 10 of the Farm Waterval 307JQ. (123.17 Ha) | <p>Bulk Electricity is available from Waterkloof substation to supply the proposed new Development. As this will be seen as a Leapfrog Development External Bulk Electrical Services needs to be installed. A 33/11kV substation needs to be built in the vicinity. A 33kV ringfeed cable needs to be installed to the Development</p> <p>The developer will be responsible for the cost of the Engineering Contributions, the Electricity link supply cable and the internal network of the development.</p>   |
| 2  | Rustenburg Aerodrome/Airfield                 | A portion of Remainder of Portion 1 of Town and Townlands of Rustenburg 272 JQ.                              | Rustenburg Aerodrome/Airfield is situated within the greater Boitekong area, which is supplied from a single source substation, namely, Voltaire substation.  |
| 3  | Boitekong Extension 35 Township Establishment | Portion 175 of the Farm Paardekraal 279 JQ (+/-35 Ha)  | <p>Boitekong ext. 35 is situated within the greater Boitekong/Paardekraal area, which is supplied from a single source substation namely, Voltaire substation.</p> <p>The DMRE has made funding available to Rustenburg Local Municipality in the next 3 financial years to Construct Boitekong 40MVA 88/11kV substation in the Boitekong area which will service the future new Township developments. An additional bay will be constructed to cater for this Development.</p> <p>The new 2 X 20 MVA – 88/11kV Substation with sufficient capacity is expected to be operational in 2024.</p> |

|   |  |  |   |
|---|--|--|---|
| 4 | Rustenburg Extension 31 (Safari Investment) Township Establishment | A portion of the remaining extent of portion 1 and the remaining extent of portion 118 (a portion of portion 16) of the farm Rustenburg Town and Townlands 272 JQ. (80.0244ha)   | <p>Bulk Electricity is available from Voltaire substation to supply the proposed new Development. As this development will be seen as a Leapfrog Development External Bulk Electrical Services needs to be installed.</p> <p>A 33kV overhead/underground feeder needs to be installed to the Development from the IM line. A 33/11kV substation also needs to be built in the vicinity.</p> <p>The developer will be responsible for the cost of the Engineering Contributions, the Electricity link supply and the internal network of the development.</p>  |
| 5 | Popo Molefe and Mbeki Sun  | Portions 39, Remainder of Portion 26, Portion 109, Remainder of Portion 16 . Portion 106, Remaining Extent of Portion 25, Portion 84 (a portion of Portion 25), Portion 85 (a portion of Portion 25), a portion of Portion 86 (a portion of Portion 25) and a portion of Portion 87 (a portion of Portion 25) of the farm Paardekraal 279. | <p>Popo Molefe and Mbeki Sun is situated between the greater Boitekong/Paardekraal area and the Voltaire supply area which is currently supplied from a single source substation namely Voltaire substation and formalization is in progress.</p> <p>At present limited supply capacity is available within the Popo Molefe and Mbeki Sun area but will be fed in future from both Voltaire and the new Boitekong substation. Old unsafe and poor illegal infrastructure removal will be a challenge when the link and Internal Construction begins. Electrical designs are finalized, and a bill of Quantity specifications and a tender document is in compilation. DMRE will be requested to Fund the project once Boitekong Substation is functional.</p> <p>11kV Link lines will be constructed from both Voltaire and Boitekong Substation to a new proposed Switching substation which will feed internal rings.</p> |
| 7 | Social Housing: Tlhabane West                                      | Erf 4122 and Erf 1712 - Tlhabane West  | <p>Bulk Electricity is available to the proposed development. The developer will be responsible for Electrical Engineering Contributions, 2 by 11kV Switches with bulk metering, a Ring-main with summated check metering, He will also be responsible for his own internal HV and LV installation and maintenance. RLM will not take over the internal services.</p>   |

|   |   |  |   |
|---|---|--|---|
| 8 | University Precinct                           | A portion of Erf 2243 Geelhoutpark Extension 6 and a portion of Remainder of Portion 1 of the farm Town and Townlands of Rustenburg 272 JQ. (+/- 46 ha). Other possibilities are still investigated. | Sufficient Bulk Electricity supply is available from Both Noord 33/11kV Substation, Geelhoutpark 33/11kV Substation and Donkerhoek33/11kV Substation which was upgraded recently in 2017/2018.<br><br>A service/supply agreement will have to be entered into between RLM and the Developer to clearly indicate the responsibility of each party. |
| 9 | Geelhoutpark Extension 10 Neighborhood Centre | Erf 5706 Geelhoutpark Extension 10, Erven 5707 to 5732 of Geelhoutpark Extension 10. (11Ha)  | Sufficient Bulk Electricity supply is available from Donkerhoek 33/11kV Substation which was upgraded recently.<br><br>A service/supply agreement will have to be entered into between RLM and the Developer to clearly indicate the responsibility of each party.  |

**Challenges with regards to Formal /Informal settlements and other new developments.**

- Available Budgets
- Available Bulk networks
- Available staff and skills
- Available plant
- Available Material
- Long procurement processes
- Limited budget for electrification projects and refurbishment
- Expansion of informal settlement / Areas isolated
- Community demands/protest and interfering with contractors and officials on site.
- Informal settlements do not meet DoE conditions for electrification projects to be initiated and Electrical awaits progress on formalization.

**Other Existing challenges faced by the Electrical Engineering Services Unit:**

There is a need to finalize the staff establishment process for the unit to operate effectively and efficiently, taking into consideration the shift system and the growth rate of the municipality in the past 10 years. The current asset register in existence is not accurate and should be constantly updated after the necessary data is captured.

The QoS (Quality of Supply) monitoring equipment is only partly installed by the municipality. The Unit: Electrical Engineering Services will address the issue when funds become available.

No preventative maintenance is being undertaken by the municipality and the network is not at all in an acceptable condition. A comprehensive maintenance plan should be drafted and implemented by the municipality as a matter of urgency once all vacant positions are filled. It should be noted that the implementation of the maintenance is heavily reliant on filling of all vacancies.

Backlog on the implementation of the approved and still relevant Electricity Master Plan resulted from insufficient Capital Funding available (CRR Funding). Masterplan forecast was done for 15-year period until at least 2024. The Calculations were done till 2028.

To ensure an overall good performance of the electricity network at all times, plants such as back actors, cherry pickers, crane trucks etc. need to be procured to enable work to be executed.

### **2.6.6 Roads and Transport Directorate**

The development of the vision, goals and strategies for the Rustenburg Local Municipality's Roads and Transport took into account current transport policies and legislation, but also the Rustenburg Integrated Development Plan as well as other city development strategies to inform the city's transport vision, mission, goals and strategies.

The vision statement for Directorate Roads and Transport is "A Sustainable Integrated Transport System that enhances the quality of life for all."

The mission statement for Directorate is "To effectively mobilise and allocate resources to implement and manage an accessible, affordable, safe, reliable, efficient and effective integrated transportation system."

#### **1. Situational Analysis**

Rustenburg has a total road network distance of **1,911.732 km** of which **1340 km** are tarred (paved) and **859.134 km** are gravel (unpaved). The road network distance excludes the Provincial and National roads. The municipality is developing the Comprehensive Integrated Transport Plan together with the roads and stormwater master plans which would guide the expansion and development of the said infrastructure. The majority of the paved roads range from good to fair surface conditions implying that these roads had fair condition. The gravel or earth roads range from fair to poor gravel quality and quantity implying that these roads had poor condition.

The need for re-gravelling was therefore found to be very high. Roads with poor profiles were found to be without Camber and this resulted in water ponding.

According to the Visual Condition Assessment conducted, the average Visual Gravel Index (VGI) for RLM unpaved roads was calculated to be forty one percent (41%) which implied that most of the roads were in poor state. The average Visual Condition Index (VCI) and Reseal Condition Index (RCI) for paved roads were calculated to be 69% and 61% respectively which implies that the road network was in the fair condition.

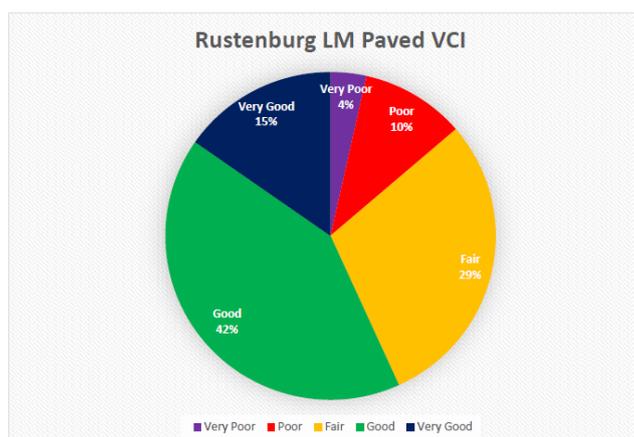
A Visual Condition Assessments of paved roads in Rustenburg local municipality shows Approximately 965,55 Km assessed, and this comprises of approximately 750 km of flexible paved roads, approximately 0,75 km of concrete paved roads, and approximately 214,8 km of block paved roads. Regarding the block paved roads assessed, approximately 109,33 KM are S-A block type and 105,55 KM are S-B block type.

The majority of the paved roads range from good to fair surface conditions implying that these roads had fair motorable condition. The gravel or earth roads range from fair to poor gravel quality and quantity implying that these roads had poor motorable condition.

The need for Re-gravelling was therefore found to be very high as stated and received in the latest data from the Rural roads asset management systems (RRMAS). These indicators provide the municipality with key road condition information, cost of maintenance and re-gravelling. Roads with poor profiles were found to be without Camber and this resulted in water ponding. RRAMS data provided in conjunction with Bojanala District municipality has provided the following data:

- Approximately 4 % are in very poor condition, which may mean assets are in imminent danger of structural failure.
- Approximately 10 % are in poor condition,
- Approximately 29% kilometres are in fair condition,
- Approximately 42% kilometres are in good condition, and
- Approximately 15% kilometres are in very good condition.

**The average VCI of paved roads in Rustenburg LM is approximately 72.**



#### OBSERVATIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

- The paved roads are reasonably well maintained and therefore routine maintenance is required to keep them in a good condition.
- For the unpaved, the roads are not quite well maintained and therefore, there is a need for regravelling and improvement of storm water drainage.
- More attention should be given to the maintenance of storm water drains;
- In order to effectively improve the road network, a Stormwater Master Plan is a necessity.
- Rustenburg Local Municipality being a fast growing municipality, with an annual compound economic growth rate of 6%, traffic into the CBD has increased and therefore the main road into the CBD, Nelson Mandela is stressed and cannot be widened to accommodate the growing traffic. A need to develop alternative(s) route(s) into the CBD is a necessity.

Large portions of land within the RLM consist of rural residential, agriculture and Mining related uses. Urban development is concentrated around Rustenburg CBD with mining land and associated residential areas to the north-east of Rustenburg CBD and the Magalies Mountain Range located to the south of the CBD. Increased mining activity in the area resulted in increased demand for housing, retail developments and support services which require office space. These new developments generate additional trips on the road network, putting further pressure on the road network which is already operating at capacity in certain areas. Also, mining products are transported within and across the RLM mainly by road.

The N4 traverses the Municipality in an east west direction passing Rustenburg to the south connecting RLM with Gauteng and the North West province.

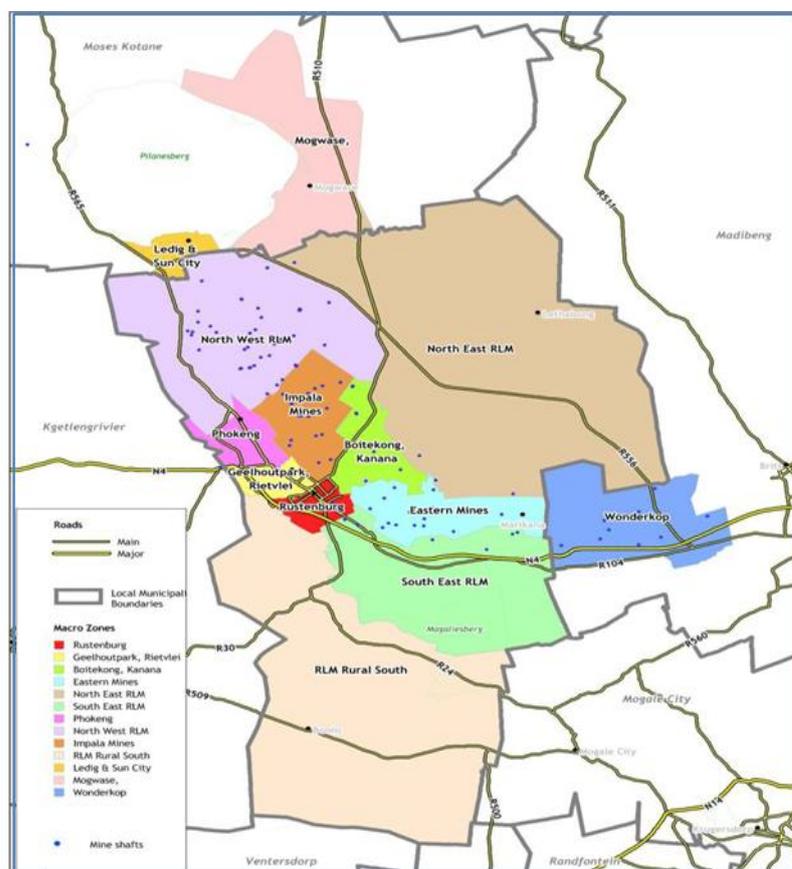
Roads are determining factors in the location of development as they provide access, ensure connectivity and provide ease of movement through an area. The main roads that link Rustenburg with the greater region and influence the growth direction of settlements in the area are the N4, R565, R510, R104, and R24.

The RLM commissioned a study to conduct a household travel survey. The purpose of the survey was to:

- Provide information for an understanding of transport patterns & demand in the area; and

- Inform the planning process of the integrated Rapid Public Transport Network.

Figure below shows the description of the boundary of RLM, macro zones and traffic zones.



**Figure : RLM, Macro Zones and Traffic Geographic Information (Source: Rustenburg CIP, Feb 2018)**

The RLM has a total of up to 35 public transport facilities. These are mainly for taxis and buses. The Infrastructure surveys conducted in 2014 at these facilities have shown that a lot of these facilities are informal, with a few being semi-formal or formal. The majority of the facilities (78%) are informal, while formal and semi- formal facilities are only 22%.

The studies conducted show that public transport in the RLM is mainly provided by buses and taxis. Taxi and bus travel account for more than 51% of total travel for all purposes and walking 17%. There are no commuter rail services. Metered taxi services provide very limited services, usually around big malls and big taxi/bus facilities. Due to the intensity of mining, company transport also exist, although not all companies provide such a service to its employees.

There are 22 taxi associations operating in RLM with a total estimated fleet of 3 212. These are either local or long distance operations. Bojanala Bus service is one of the two dominating bus companies in RLM. It has only one Tlhabane depot in RLM. It has a fleet of 222 commuter buses (mainly 63 seater) serving the North West province. Of the total fleet, approximately 134 buses operate in the RLM. The second dominating bus company in RLM is the Thari Bus services. Although not as big as the Bojanala Bus services, Thari operates a small number of routes. The bus company is contracted by the North West Province Department of Transport to provide commuter services in the BPDM municipal area.

There are currently metered taxi services operating in RLM. These services are mainly found in the CBD, the Waterval and Boitekong Mall. The current fleet is estimated to be approximately 110 with the average age being 10 years. An implementation plan to use 2000 model year cars is anticipated to be initiated in the near future.

No commuter rail services exists in the RLM as indicated by PRASA. The CITP does not contain any commuter transport provisions due to the lack of current services therefore an intermodal planning community dealing with commuter rail transportation is also not required. However, this should be revised once commuter rail services are re-established in the region.

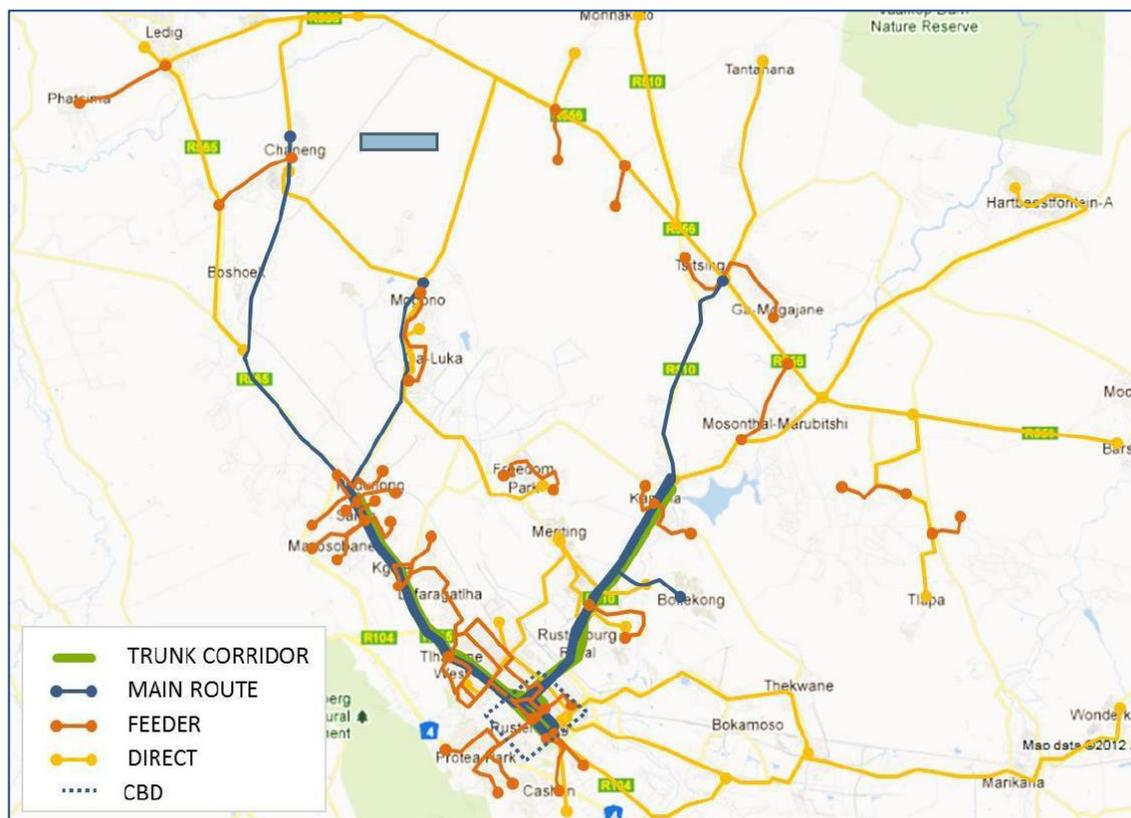
There is only one airfield in Rustenburg which is owned by RLM and complies with the South African Aviation Authority (SACAA) regulations. Below shows the location of the airport in RLM.



### **Rustenburg Rapid Transport (RRT) Network**

The Rustenburg Integrated Public Transport Network (IPTN) was proposed and approved in 2007. In 2012, the first phase of the project IPTN began construction which concentrated in Rustenburg and later extend to surrounding areas along R104 and R510 and in Rustenburg CBD.

A fully implemented RRT system is shown below. This system is a mixture of direct services and the traditional trunk-feeder type system to provide the best mix of operational performance for the user with operational efficiency for the operator.



**Figure : Rustenburg IRPTN Full Network, Source: RRT Operational Plan, June 2018)**

**Phase 1** covers the areas of Tlhabane, South of CBD (including Protea Park, Cashion, Safari Tuine and Waterval Mall), Sunrise Park, Boitekong and Meriting to Freedom Park. Phase 1 is further divided into **Phase 1A, 1B and 1C**

**Phase 2** extends the RRT service to the north along the R510

**Phase 3** extends to the west towards Phokeng along the R565.

**Phase 4** of the project will be the final phase of the project, implementing the bus service to complete the RRT network.

The following will be key features once the system is complete:

- Bus Rapid Transit on the identified 33.3 kilometres of Trunk Corridors with segregated median located lanes, closed median located stations, level boarding and pre-payment prior to boarding, electronic fare collection, fare integration and associated security, universal access, comfort and real-time information at stations and vehicles.
- Low entry vehicles to be in three (3) sizes – 18 meter articulated, 12 meter and 9 meter. All vehicles with doors on sides, universal access and on-board electronic fare collection equipment to allow for closed transfers at median stations on the trunk route, full system integration and maximum operational flexibility.
- Level boarding at all stations (trunk and feeder) with low platform heights (about 30cm). Closed system and stations on trunk route. Open stations outside trunk route with on- board fare verification.
- Zone based fare system integrated across entire IRPTN system with AFC.

- Traffic Management Centre to control the IRPTN system and integrate with emergency services and traffic control
- ITS that includes a broad range of services for the management of transportation systems enabled by the use of information and communication technologies to make the system safe, efficient and reliable without necessarily physically altering the existing transport infrastructure.

To date the following progress has been made in this regard:

- All 22 taxi associations in Rustenburg, operating around the RLM and outside the municipal boundary were engaged during project initiation stages between 2009-2011.
- 10 buses and 35 minibus taxis are operating Phase1A service in the Greater Tlhabane Area using 80 bus stops and 10 routes. A bus depot and fare collection system have been implemented.
- 9 Taxi Associations have been identified as affected by the RRT routes and have formed a representative Structure - The Taxi Negotiating Forum and have full time experts who provide technical support to them and 2 taxi associations have removed about 459 vehicles to make way for Phase 1A & 1C of the system.
- To date the Yarona system is operational on 18 routes on Phase 1A & 1C, with a mix fleet consisting of vehicles fitted with Automated Fare Collection devices (Busses, MBT) and Mop-up vehicles which is a cash-based service.
- Bojanala Bus as an affected operator has been engaged is forming part of the Negotiation Structure
- MoUs have been entered into with both the Taxi and Bus Operator structures.
- It is envisaged that the affected and eligible operators will cease their current taxi operations in favour of equity within the Bus Operating Companies that will run bus operations in areas and routes planned to be served by the RRT.
- Rather than embark on additional infrastructure, it is felt that a better approach would be to transform the public transport strategy in stages, through empowering and restructuring existing public transport operators while developing and improving efficiencies of existing systems and improving existing infrastructure.

## **2.6.7 COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT**

**SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL 3. Ensure healthy lives and promote well-being for all at all ages**

**Goal 11. Make cities and human settlements inclusive, safe, resilient and sustainable**

**Target:** 11.4 strengthen efforts to protect and safeguard the world's cultural and natural heritage

11.6 by 2030, reduce the adverse per capita environmental impact of cities, including by paying special attention to air quality, municipal and other waste management

11.7 by 2030, provide universal access to safe, inclusive and accessible, green and public spaces, particularly for women and children, older persons and persons with disabilities

11.b by 2020, increase by x% the number of cities and human settlements adopting and implementing integrated policies and plans towards inclusion, resource efficiency, mitigation and adaptation to climate change, resilience to disasters, develop and implement in line with the forthcoming Hyogo Framework holistic disaster risk management at all levels

**Goal 13. Take urgent action to combat climate change and its impacts \***

13.1 strengthen resilience and adaptive capacity to climate related hazards and natural disasters in all countries

13.2 integrate climate change measures into national policies, strategies, and planning

13.3 improve education, awareness raising and human and institutional capacity on climate change mitigation, adaptation, impact reduction, and early warning

**Goal 15. Protect, restore and promote sustainable use of terrestrial ecosystems, sustainably manage forests, combat desertification, and halt and reverse land degradation and halt biodiversity loss**

15.9 by 2020, integrate ecosystems and biodiversity values into national and local planning, development processes and poverty reduction strategies, and accounts

The work of the Directorate is affected by the need to provide a service to:

14 libraries, 24 Community halls (16 under community halls section, 4 still to be transferred & 4 under Sports section)

617 Municipal Buildings (incl. flat, rental stocks, substations, public toilets etc.)

78 Sports facilities (developed & rudimentary), 5 Swimming pools.

17 Parks, 14 Cemeteries

More than 100 000 Waste Collection points

Support the Municipality with Environmental Management Services

These services serve the estimated + 650 000 residents and 1800 employees of the municipality.

Civil and Facilities Management unit

The Unit: Civil and Facilities Management is responsible for the maintenance and upgrading of all municipal buildings and facilities and ensuring that these adhere to high standards and that these facilities are well-kept at all times. Municipal properties/buildings are becoming dilapidated because of insufficient budget and vandalism and burglary caused by the lack of security, and generally the ageing condition of the property/building.

There are five different types of maintenance namely:

Planned maintenance,

Conditioned-based maintenance,

Preventative maintenance,

Day to day maintenance and

Reactive maintenance

Directorate Community Development will also through partnerships increase its capacity to maintain facilities.

There's a need for condition assessment to be conducted at least every three years in order to determine the true value of all assets of the Rustenburg Local Municipality. Below are the future projects that the Council has to consider in order for the improvement of service delivery.

| FUTURE RENOVATION PROJECTS WITH ESTIMATES TO BE CONSIDERED IN ORDER FOR THE MUNICIPAL BUILDINGS TO MEET THE SERVICE DELIVERY OBJECTIVES – UNFUNDED PROJECTS |  |  |                |
|---|--|--|----------------|
| Building Name   | Site Description   | Status   | Amount         |
| Mpheni House Missionary Building  | Mpheni House Missionary Building which is the head office of the Rustenburg Local Municipality. The site where this building is located has approximately 2 Ha and is composed by three buildings, Mpheni is the main with up to the 8 floors for from natural ground level, it is adjacent to the single storey building on the northwest side. | Mpheni building is in a good condition and need major maintenance for it to operate normal. All windows at Mpheni need to be replaced and that process has started of which 30% new windows have been installed already. The chiller plant which works as a centralised air conditioning system need to be revamped. The electrical components of the building need to be re-wired in order to accommodate the energy saving concept. The 8th Floor has been revamped, however continuous maintenance of the waterproofing need to be prioritise at least once in a every 2 years. | R30,000,000.00 |
| Bojanala House  | Bojanala House is the building, which is accommodating Bojanala District Municipality officials, it is adjacent to Mpheni House Missionary Building on the south side. This is a double-story building which is very close to Old Town Hall Building on the west side.   | Bojanala House is in a good condition; however, the building need to be renovated due to backlog maintenance that was not attended to due to financial constraint. The roof must be waterproofed, and some ceiling boards must be replaced. The roofing at the entrance of the building must be replaced. There is a need for new air-conditioning system to be installed, which has to be serviced at least once every 18 months. The building has few windows that are broken and must be replaced.  | R8,000,000.00  |
| Old Town Hall Building  | The Old Town Hall Building is the heritage building which is accommodating officials from the IEC. This building is very close to the Bojanala Building on the east side.  | The building is in a fair condition. Since this building is heritage, whenever one replaces any item within the building, it is required that no alteration must be done to change its shape or form. The roof of the Old Town Hall Building must be waterproofed, the ceiling need to be renovated, the building structure must be repainted and there is a need for electrical wiring.   | R7,000,000.00  |

**FUTURE RENOVATION PROJECTS WITH ESTIMATES TO BE CONSIDERED IN ORDER FOR THE MUNICIPAL BUILDINGS TO MEET THE SERVICE DELIVERY OBJECTIVES – UNFUNDED PROJECTS**

| Building Name         | Site Description   | Status   | Amount         |
|-----------------------|--|--|----------------|
| Civic Centre Building | The building consists of ground and first floor with secured parking bays located at the ground floor of the building. It is constantly being used by political leaders for meetings and other matters related to community development. | Civic Centre is in a fair condition and need to be revamped. Asbestos must be removed and be replaced with an environmentally friendly beautification material. The fountain needs to be fixed. There is a need for security to be beefed up in order to minimise vandalism of the facility. The chiller plant must be refurbished as a matter of urgency.<br><br>Rustenburg is growing at a very rapid rate, therefore there is a need for a new Council Chamber to be built to accommodate the community members and additional Councillors  | R20,000,000.00 |
| Olympia Park Stadium  | Building has 3 floors and a basement. Building consists of 6 halls, 15 suites, 7 toilets, 8 change rooms, 8 storerooms and 2 first aid rooms. It has three steel stand structures for spectators.  | The official capacity of the facility is 18000. The facility is a fair condition, and it is mostly used by Orbit Football Club. The pavilion steel structure has since been ruled out for usage by engineers as it is considered a risk. The four high mass lights are not in good condition and cannot be used for professional night games. The pitch is well maintained but requires new grass. There whole stadium is guarded by one security personnel day and night which poses a risk of vandalism. There is a need to put a clear-view fence or brickwork fencing around the stadium yard. Day-to-day maintenance is being carried out on request from the clients. The athletic track is redundant and need urgent attention. The carports are damaged and need to be replaced. | R50,000,000.00 |

**FUTURE RENOVATION PROJECTS WITH ESTIMATES TO BE CONSIDERED IN ORDER FOR THE MUNICIPAL BUILDINGS TO MEET THE SERVICE DELIVERY OBJECTIVES – UNFUNDED PROJECTS**

| Building Name            | Site Description  | Status   | Amount        |
|--------------------------|---|--|---------------|
| Electrical Building      | The building structure is that of the face-brick consisting of a one floor. There is a new structure that was built next to the existing building for administration purposes | The building is in fair condition and will need to be renovated as the roof need to be waterproofed.   | R450,000.00   |
| Waste Building           | The facility consists of two floors and is utilised by Waste Management, RRT and Environmental Units  | The building needs to be renovated and a new fence is needed for security reasons. Additional armed security personnel to be considered as the vandalism to the building are increasing at an alarming rate. Back-up water supply including solar lights to be prioritised | R1,700,000.00 |
| Olympia Park Sports Hall | Building consists of 2 floors, exit door, windows, toilets, kitchen, change rooms, burglars, roof, ceiling and storeroom, no stage  | The facility is in user friendly condition, and it is leased to Mmabana Arts and Culture Foundation. They have their own security personnel.   | R200,000.00   |
| Olympia Park Hockey Club | Building consists of windows, exit door, toilets, kitchen, change rooms, burglars, roof, ceiling and no storeroom and no stage  | The facility is vandalised, the pitch is now over-used by soccer players and has no more grass.  | R1,500,000.00 |
| Rustenburg Main Library  | The facility consists of two floors, with a face-brick finishes which is in a good operational condition  | The facility needs continuous building maintenance   | R190,000.00   |
| Olympia Park Tennis Club | Building consists of windows, exit door, toilets, kitchen, no change rooms, burglars, roof, ceiling and storeroom and no stage  | The facility is vandalised, the fence for the six tennis courts is falling due to rusted fence poles and need total revamp.  | R2,500,000.00 |

**FUTURE RENOVATION PROJECTS WITH ESTIMATES TO BE CONSIDERED IN ORDER FOR THE MUNICIPAL BUILDINGS TO MEET THE SERVICE DELIVERY OBJECTIVES – UNFUNDED PROJECTS**

| Building Name                 | Site Description  | Status  | Amount        |
|-------------------------------|---|---|---------------|
| Booster Facility (Sanitation) | The facility which consists of a one floor building structures and mobile offices. The fence has been vandalised and this led to vandalism of the assets                        | The building needs to be maintained and the fence be installed with a new gate. The ablution blocks and the change room to be renovated. The tennis court and netball ground need to be reinstated.   | R1,400,000.00 |
| Olympia Park Squash Club      | Building consists of 2 floors, windows, exit door, toilets, kitchen, change rooms, burglars, roof, ceiling and storeroom and no stage   | The facility is managed by the Rustenburg squash club and is in good condition.   | R200,000.00   |
| Olympia Park Korfbal Club     | Building consists of windows, exit door, toilets, kitchen, no change rooms, burglars, roof, ceiling, stage, and no storeroom  | The facility needs continuous planned maintenance to keep it on good state. Additional security personnel are needed to reduce vandalism.   | R150,000.00   |
| East End Library              | This is a building with a face-brick and corrugated finishes. The structure is operational and is in fair condition   | The building needs to be waterproofed, and that ceiling need to be replaced, the fence and the gate need some maintenance   | R200,000.00   |
| Karlienspark Sports Facility  | No buildings, only grandstand for spectators. Soccer pitch with no fence and no grass. Ablution block was constructed but inside the swimming pools fence for security reasons. | The facility has been vandalised with no soccer poles, no grass, and no fence due to vandalism. The high mass lights are not functional due to vandalism. The tennis courts and basketball courts are no longer user friendly due to vandalism. | R7,800,000.00 |
| Zinniaville Sports Facility   | Ablution block for ladies & gents with showers & toilets, grandstand for spectators. Well maintained soccer pitch with tennis courts. Sports Facility is                        | The facility is in good condition. There are some security personnel on site. The facility needs minor repairs that can be done through quotations, thereafter routine maintenance must be implemented.   | R450,000.00   |

| FUTURE RENOVATION PROJECTS WITH ESTIMATES TO BE CONSIDERED IN ORDER FOR THE MUNICIPAL BUILDINGS TO MEET THE SERVICE DELIVERY OBJECTIVES – UNFUNDED PROJECTS |  |  |               |
|---|--|--|---------------|
| Building Name   | Site Description   | Status   | Amount        |
|   | fenced with barbed wire fence.   |  |               |
| Marikana Precinct   | This facility housed Traffic Department, Library and Halls. The building structures are that of a face-brick and are in good condition                         | This facility needs a new fence and regular building maintenance. The fence is badly vandalised and compromise the security of our facilities.                           | R1,200,000.00 |
| Meriting Sports Facility  | Ablution block with no windows and no doors and no burglars.   | The facility has been vandalised. There is no fence, no soccer poles, no high mass lights, and only vandalised building structure. There is no security on site.         | R3,300,000.00 |
| Paardekraal Sports Facility   | Ablution Block for both male and female. Concrete Roof, windows, and doors.  | The building is vandalised and only structure left. The facility is fenced with palisade, but criminals are steeling it at a fast rate. There is no security on site.    | R3,100,000.00 |
| Boitekong Library   | The facility is in good condition which is of the face-brick finish with a corrugated roof. There is a new structure that has been added to the old structure. | Waterproofing and continuous building maintenance need to be prioritised.  | R200,000.00   |
| Mathopestad Sports Facility   | Caretaker’s house and toilets on premises with proper high fence.  | The facility is not well maintained and not in good condition. The toilet roof has since been blown off by wind in more than one occasion. There is no security on site. | R700,000.00   |
| Phatsima Sports Facility  | Ablution Block for both male and female. Concrete Roof, windows, and doors, properly fenced.   | The facility is in a fair condition although the grass no-more as the pitch was over usage and without irrigation. There is no security on site                          | R600,000.00   |

| FUTURE RENOVATION PROJECTS WITH ESTIMATES TO BE CONSIDERED IN ORDER FOR THE MUNICIPAL BUILDINGS TO MEET THE SERVICE DELIVERY OBJECTIVES – UNFUNDED PROJECTS |   |   |                |
|---|---|---|----------------|
| Building Name   | Site Description  | Status  | Amount         |
| Tlhabane Traffic  | The facility which is utilised by Public Safety is that one of a face-brick finish. The facility is in good condition   | There is a need for a new fence (Palisade) and the building structure need continuous building maintenance  | R450,000.00    |
| Tlhabane Sports Facility  | Facility has an ablution block with toilets and showers. There is also a kitchen. The facility is properly fenced with wall on the other side and palisade on the other side. | There is no longer soccer pitch due to the aborted astro-turf project sponsored by department of sports arts and culture to the tune of R6 million. Only crusher sand is left where the pitch was supposed to be constructed. The buildings were revamped during 14/15 financial year, but they have since been vandalised again. There is no security on site. | R93,000,000.00 |
| East End Sports Facility  | The facility has maintained rugby field, ablution block, rugby club house, tennis club house, tennis courts basketball courts.  | The facility was once sourced out to Bobbies rugby club but is now under the care of the municipality. The rugby club house is vandalised, the tennis clubhouse roof was blown off by a recent storm, the netball courts are vandalised. The outside toilets are vandalised.  | R2,000,000.00  |
| Tlaseng Sports Facility   | There is ablution block, combi courts and soccer pitch.   | The facility is not in user friendly condition due to lack of proper maintenance and security.  | R800,000.00    |
| Robega Sports Facility  | The facility is fenced with barbed wire fence and has ablution block, soccer pitch and combi courts.  | The grass on the soccer pitch is eroded due to over usage. The irrigation system is vandalised. The ablution block badly vandalised.  | R1,500,000.00  |
| Bester Sports Facility  | Ablution block roofed with concrete, properly fenced with barbed wire fence, tennis courts and combi courts.  | The grass on the soccer pitch is eroded due over usage, the ablution block is badly vandalised, and the facility is no longer user friendly, the tennis court need to be revamped.  | R17,000,000.00 |

**FUTURE RENOVATION PROJECTS WITH ESTIMATES TO BE CONSIDERED IN ORDER FOR THE MUNICIPAL BUILDINGS TO MEET THE SERVICE DELIVERY OBJECTIVES – UNFUNDED PROJECTS**

| Building Name               | Site Description   | Status   | Amount        |
|-----------------------------|--|--|---------------|
| Monakato sports facility    | The facility is properly fenced with high prefabricated wall, two soccer fields, two combi courts, ablution block with change rooms for ladies and gents, storeroom, and high mass lights. | The facility is in a friendly condition. Repairs needed on the irrigation system, ceiling, and minor plumbing. The lights on the pitch are also not working.   | R190,000.00   |
| Lethabong Sports Ground     | The facility is fenced with palisade fence. It has one soccer field, ablution block and four high mass lights.   | The facility is well maintained and in good condition.   | R100,000.00   |
| Boitekong Stadium           | The facility is properly fenced with a brick wall, soccer field, combi courts, ablution block with change rooms for ladies and gents, storeroom, caretakers house and security guard house | The pitch is well maintained and in good condition, however the building structure is being vandalised. New toilets need to be installed, wiring for lights and plugs need to be attended, damaged windows and doors need to be replaced.                  | R300,000.00   |
| Rankelenyane Sports Grounds | The facility is fenced with 70% concrete wall and 30% stop nonsense fence. It has one soccer field, ablution block, storeroom, and security room.  | The facility is in bad condition due to theft and vandalism. The brickwork fence is being stolen and the pitch is no longer in good condition. There is a need for total revamping, including new pavilion and placement of the security personnel onsite. | R7,500,000.00 |
| Rankelenyane RCC            | The facility is one floor building structure which has the finishing of the face-brick. Not operating  | The building needs continuous maintenance and prioritisation of back-up water supply. There is one security guard during the day and night.  | R200,000.00   |
| Phatsima RCC                | The facility consist of a single floor with a face-brick finishes and it is operating.   | The building needs continuous maintenance including floodlights to increase security measures onsite. Banck-up water supply including solar lights must be prioritised for this facility. There is a need for installations                                | R250,000.00   |

**FUTURE RENOVATION PROJECTS WITH ESTIMATES TO BE CONSIDERED IN ORDER FOR THE MUNICIPAL BUILDINGS TO MEET THE SERVICE DELIVERY OBJECTIVES – UNFUNDED PROJECTS**

| Building Name    | Site Description   | Status   | Amount      |
|------------------|--|--|-------------|
|                  |  | of covered carports.   |             |
| Lethabong RCC    | The facility is operational, and it consist of a single floor building structure which is of a face-brick finish | The facility needs continuous building maintenance, and all air-conditioners need urgent maintenance, new doors are also needed.   | R400,000.00 |
| Monnakato RCC    | The building is in fair condition, and it is of a face-brick finish which is a single floor.                     | The facility needs continuous building maintenance; it is required that waterproofing be implemented. Most air-conditioners need continuous maintenance.   | R300,000.00 |
| Marikana RCC     | The facility is of a face-brick finish which is operational  | There is a need for fencing due to security reasons. It is required that waterproofing be implement. Continuous building maintenance is needed. Due to continuous vandalism, there is a need for solar lights to assist security during the night to perform their duties. | R400,000.00 |
| Tlhabane RCC     | This is a single floor building structure which is currently operation and is in a fair condition.               | There is a need for the replacement of the air-conditioner and that waterproofing of the roof be prioritise. The ceiling needs some maintenance. Prioritisation of back-up water supply is required.   | R250,000.00 |
| Chaneng Traffic  | The building is single floor with corrugated roofing which is currently functioning                              | The building structure need urgent maintenance, the roof must be waterproofed, and the building structure need to be painted and that continuous maintenance be prioritised  | R400,000.00 |
| Marikana Traffic | The facility is operational, and this is a face-brick building structure which has corrugated roofing.           | Burglar doors must be installed, the structure need to be painted and that the facility need palisade fence for security reason. All damaged doors need to be replaced and that continuous building maintenance be   | R260,000.00 |

| FUTURE RENOVATION PROJECTS WITH ESTIMATES TO BE CONSIDERED IN ORDER FOR THE MUNICIPAL BUILDINGS TO MEET THE SERVICE DELIVERY OBJECTIVES – UNFUNDED PROJECTS |  |   |             |
|---|--|---|-------------|
| Building Name   | Site Description   | Status  | Amount      |
|   |  | prioritised.  |             |
| Tlhabane Public Safety  | The facility is in good condition which has multiple buildings, and the main building structure has two floors. The building has face-brick finishes and the roof is that of corrugated and concrete slab. | There is an urgent need in repairing of the fence. The facility needs addition parking bays. Due to water-crisis and the important service provided in this facility, back-up water supply needs to be implemented. The building needs to be waterproofed. Some of the ceilings need to be replaced and the same applies to the carpet which is damaged. The building need paintwork and continuous maintenance | R800,000.00 |
| Marikana Hall   | The building structure is that one of a corrugated roof with a face-brick finishes   | The doors need to be replaced, the facility requires paintwork and there is a need for burglar doors to be installed. Continuous building maintenance to be prioritised. Palisade fences need to be installed for security reasons.   | R340,000.00 |
| Ikageng RCC   | This is a single floor building structure which is in a good condition consisting of a corrugated roof and face-brick finish   | The facility needs a new carport, and the burglar doors, new gate and the air-conditioners are not working.   | R290,000.00 |
| Boitekong RCC   | The facility is one floor building structure which has the finishing of the face-brick   | The facility needs new brick-wall fence including electric gate. Continuous maintenance will be required. Back-up water supply must be prioritised  | R600,000.00 |
| Emergency and Disaster Building   | The facility is having multiple building structures and one consist of two floors and the rest are single floors building structures   | The facility's palisade fence needs urgent attention. The air-conditioners need maintenance and most need to be replaced. The building needs to be waterproofed, the ceiling need some maintenance, both gates need new motors. Prioritisation of back-up water supply is needed.   | R420,000.00 |

**FUTURE RENOVATION PROJECTS WITH ESTIMATES TO BE CONSIDERED IN ORDER FOR THE MUNICIPAL BUILDINGS TO MEET THE SERVICE DELIVERY OBJECTIVES – UNFUNDED PROJECTS**

| Building Name   | Site Description  | Status  | Amount          |
|-----------------|---|---|-----------------|
| Meriting Hall   | This is a face-brick structure with corrugated roof. The hall has separate ablution sections to accommodate both male and female occupants. | The ablution blocks are badly vandalised. The building needs continuous maintenance. There is a ne for prioritisation of back-up water supply and solar lights.   | R400,000.00     |
| WA Van Zyl Hall | The finishing of this facility is face-brick with corrugated roofing with tiled floor.  | There is a need for new tiling to comply with all building regulations. Continuous building maintenance must carry one, back-up water supply must be prioritised. | R350,000.00     |
| TOTAL           |   |   | R268,780,000.00 |

It is estimated that an amount R268m is required for maintaining all immovable assets under the custodianship of Rustenburg Local Municipality. As the custodian of all municipal buildings, it is the responsibility of Civil & Facilities Management Unit to ensure that all activities that are associated with common law ownership are executed, including—

Managing buildings throughout its life cycle.

Assessing the performance of all buildings.

Assessing the condition of each building at least every fifth year.

Identifying the effect of the condition of each building on service delivery ability.

Determining the maintenance required to return the building to the state in which it would provide the most effective service.

Estimating the cost of the maintenance activities identified.

Civil & Facilities Management Unit does take note its responsibility which is to support people by ensuring the functionality, comfort, safety, sustainability, and efficiency of the built environment this include the surrounding infrastructure. This Unit is mandated to manage the maintenance, repair and replacement of a building's equipment and infrastructure, including the physical building structure, HVAC equipment, as well as other physical assets.

#### UNIT COMMUNITY FACILITIES

The Unit is responsible for Community services provisions in the form of the Civic Centre & Community Halls, Sports Facilities, Swimming Pools, Parks, Cemeteries and Open space management (grass cutting & tree pruning). The Unit is experiencing high levels of theft and vandalism of its facilities and is continuously trying to buy community partnerships to take care of these facilities.

#### IDP UPDATES ON:

##### Parks and Cemeteries

The Municipality is responsible for grass cutting & tree pruning in all Municipal Open spaces, sidewalks, Cemeteries, and the Green Belt. As and when required as part of the Safe City programme, the Municipality assists SAPS and the Municipality's Public Safety Department with clearing open spaces due to safety considerations.

As part of the efforts of the municipality to fast-track service delivery in partnership with the Communities, A Programme termed 'Re Direla Sechaba' meaning "We are working for the Nation" was launched by the previous Administration (2016-2021). This programme was composed of internal reengineering through interventions such as new fleet and stakeholder relations for municipal operations as well as partnership with communities through an EPWP/ Cooperatives partnership model. This model resulted in each ward having a brigade of local community members responsible for assisting the municipality with grass cutting, tree pruning, cleaning and maintenance activities.

The municipality, depending on the budget availability, is planning to continue with this programme in the next financial year in partnership with other Directorates of the municipality to expand overall service delivery within wards.

#### LIST OF PARKS, GARDENS AND OPEN SPACES

##### Cemeteries

| Ward | Description                      | Status   |
|------|----------------------------------|--|
| 01   | Phatsima cemetery                | Needs proper fencing   |
| 14   | Donkerhoek cemetery              | Active for reserved, booked graves and reopening. Needs proper fencing (current one partially vandalised), upgrading of ablution facilities, storerooms, and office. Cemetery has no physical security             |
| 11   | Moraka cemetery                  | Inactive. Needs proper fencing and removal of illegal dumping  |
| 07   | Motsatsi cemetery                | Active for reserved and re-opening. Needs proper fencing and upgrading of ablution facilities  |
| 16   | Rietvlei cemetery                | Well-developed cemetery. Expansion programme is ongoing since 22/23 financial year. Unfortunately, the cemetery is targeted by criminals as the newly renovated building has been vandalized and new fence stolen. |
| 14   | Pioneer cemetery                 | Old church building is burned down. Needs to be restored   |
| 43   | Zinniville /Karlienpark cemetery | Needs ablution facilities  |
| 20   | Boitekong cemetery – Old         | Inactive due to near water table. Needs proper fencing   |
| 25   | Monakato cemetery                | Needs replacement of fence y-standards.  |
| 25   | Monakato cemetery                | Inactive due to close water table  |
| 27   | Lethabong cemetery 01            | Needs proper fencing and repair of ablution facilities   |
| 27   | Lethabong cemetery 02            | Needs proper fencing and repair of ablution facilities   |
| 28   | Lethabong cemetery – Old         | Needs proper fencing and construction of ablution facility   |
| 19   | Sunrisepark cemetery             | Has reached its capacity and is inactive. Needs proper fencing and repairing of toilets  |
| 31   | Marikana cemetery                | Needs proper fencing and repair of ablution facilities and office  |

##### Parks and Gardens

| Ward | Description | Status |
|------|-------------|--------|
|------|-------------|--------|

|    |                                      |   |
|----|--------------------------------------|---|
| 11 | Pule street Park (Tlhabane)          | Needs overall development i.e. irrigation, lawn, planting of new trees  |
| 11 | Tlhabane Active Park GG              | Needs proper fencing, repair of ablution facilities, upgrading, repair of irrigation system, repair of braai area                   |
| 09 | Bester Park                          | Partly developed. No fencing, swings, fencing, ablution facilities and braai area(s)  |
| 13 | Noord / Kloofspruit Park             | Needs repair of fence, ablution facilities, Repair of kiosk, installation of play equipment and electrical components.              |
| 14 | Paul Bodenstein Park                 | Needs proper fencing, repair of ablution facilities, dams, irrigation system, electricity, replace play equipment and water feature |
| 14 | Joubert / Burgers Ford Park          | Fenced with bollards. Needs new playing equipment   |
| 18 | Dawes street Park                    | Needs to be fenced with bollards. Needs play equipment  |
| 16 | Kruisbessie Park                     | Well fenced. Needs proper maintenance   |
| 01 | Phatsima hall and fire station       | Both needs garden development   |
| 14 | Library garden                       | Well developed  |
| 15 | Civic Centre                         | Well developed  |
| 14 | Fire Department                      | Well developed  |
| 08 | Traffic Department                   | Well developed. Needs repair of irrigation system   |
| 15 | Information centre garden            | Needs upgrading of irrigation system  |
| 14 | Mpheni house and surroundings garden | Well developed  |
| 16 | Kremetart old age home garden        | Well developed  |
| 31 | Marikana RCC                         | Grass cutting done as and when needed   |

Open spaces

| Description   | Area / Location   |
|---|---|
| Open space in front of the hall, and side walks   | Phatsima -01  |
| Open spaces at Boitekong – Behind the school  | Boitekong behind Primary school (Old park) 20   |
| Open space at Sunrise   | Sunrise next to the river (Old park) 19   |
| Open space behind called Telkom<br>Open spaces at Moye crescent<br>Open spaces in front of Traffic, roads depot and Telkom depot<br>Reservoir<br>Roads and Storm Water Unit attend storm water channels. Community Facilities only attend to outside areas. | Geelhoutpark ext. 09 – 08<br><br>Tlhabane West Primary School fenced off the entire open spaces |
| Open space at Rooibessie  |   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Open space at Raasblaar<br>Open space at Hedeira<br>Kruisbessie open space<br>Greenbelt  | Geelhout ext. 06 – 14   |
| Open space at Cantua<br>Open space at Green belt<br>Open space at Cycad<br>Open space at Kremetart<br>Open space at Santolina<br>Open space at Klopper<br>Open space at corner Kremetart and<br>Watsonia<br>Open space at Shepperdtree ( Along N4)<br>Open space at Fiddlewood | Old Geelhoutpark – 16   |
| Open spaces at Assegai<br>Open spaces Matshwane<br>Open spaces at Motswere<br>Open space at Tirisano and Kgomotso<br>Strumosa<br>Segale  | Tlhabane West 08<br>Development of Sports facility at Assegai open space during<br>22/23 financial year |
| Bester open space – along the R104 road  | Bester - 09   |
| GG Tlhabane open space   | Tlhabane – 11   |
| Open space at Matsatsi street  | Tlhabane – 10   |
| Open spaces at Dr Moroka – Between Fox<br>Lake and RTB North   | Between Rtb North and Foxlake 13  |
| Open space at corners at Fox Lake  | Fox Lake -  |
| Open space at Matshwane  | Tlhabane West   |
| Assegai open space   | Tlhabane West   |
| Open space at Motswere   | Tlhabane West   |
| Open space at Tirisano and Kgomotso<br>street  | Tlhabane West   |
|  |   |
| Open space at Boven and Waterbessie<br>Open space at Bult,Kerk and Unie<br>Open space at Betelhem<br>Open space next to Waste depot<br>Open space at Fontein<br>Open space at Boven  | Middle town – 14  |
|  |   |
| Open space at Witstinkhout<br>Open space at Kruger and Kremetart<br>Open space at Mopani and Maroela<br>Open space at Kruger   | Protea – 16   |

|   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| Open space at Wildevy<br>Open space at Tamarisk<br>Open space at Buffeldoring and Flamboyand  |                             |
| Open spaces at TUIN street  | East End – 18               |
| Open space at Arendweg<br>Open space at Vink<br>Open space at Azalea<br>Open space at Leeurick<br>Open space at Kwartel                 | Safarituin – 15             |
| Open space at Krokodilerivier<br>Open space at Timbatierivier<br>Open space at Caledonrivier<br>Open space at Nylrivier                 | Cashan Ext. 04 – 17         |
| Open spaces at Kloofroad  | Cashan Ext. 01 -            |
| Helen Joseph Drive  | Helen Joseph Drive          |
| Open spaces at Middel street<br>Open spaces at Scheiding street<br>Open spaces at Benoni<br>Open space at Napoleon<br>Oxford open space | RTB North – 13              |
| Open spaces at Orchards<br>Open space at Petunia and Molen Street   | Zinniavile/Karlienkamp – 43 |

#### SPORTS AND RECREATION

The Section is responsible for maintaining Municipal Sports Facilities, assisting communities with maintenance of non-municipal rudimentary sports facilities as well as the management of Municipal Swimming Pools.

Outline of status of sporting facilities per ward.

| Ward | Area   | Site Description  | Current Status  | Greenified                      | Rudimentary  |
|------|--|---|---|---------------------------------|--|
| 01   | Phatsima Sports Facility   | Facility is vandalized  | Facility is vandalized                                | None                            | 01 x ground<br>Maintenance done brush cutters and a grader       |
| 01   | Phatsima ((Slovo Section x1, Bothibello Primary x1)  | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities   | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | None                            | 02 x grounds. Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters   |
| 02   | Robega Sports Facility   | The facility was fenced with barbed wire fence and has ablution block, soccer pitch and combi courts. | Facility is vandalized                                | 01 x soccer pitch with no grass | Maintenance done brush cutters and a grader                      |
| 02   | Chaneng  | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities   | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | None                            | 01 x ground<br>Maintenance done with a grader                    |
| 03   | Luka   | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities   | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | None                            | 01 x ground<br>Maintenance done with a grader                    |
| 04   | Luka (Rathibedi, grounds near Thete High School, grounds near Mogono Primary, Ground 1 and ground 2 near Bakwena Tavern) | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities   | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | None                            | 05 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters |

| Ward | Area   | Site Description  | Current Status  | Greenified  | Rudimentary  |
|------|--|---|---|---|--|
| 05   | Phokeng<br>(Lenatong & Rietvlei)   | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities   | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities   | None  | 02 x grounds<br>Netball court<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters  |
| 06   | Phokeng (Rafrede, Kgale, Masosobane)   | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities   | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities   | None  | 03 x grounds<br>Netball court<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters  |
| 07   | Lefaragatlhe<br>(grounds near Primary School, Bubuanja & ground near Lekwakwa Primary) | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities   | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities   | None  | 03 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters   |
| 14   | Olympia Park Stadium   | Building has 3 floors and a basement. Building consists of 6 halls, 15 suites, 7 toilets, 8 change rooms, 8 storerooms and 2 first aid rooms. It has three steel stand structures for spectators. | The official capacity of the facility is 18000. The facility is not in good condition due to lack of proper maintenance<br>The steel structure has since been ruled out for usage by engineers as it is considered a risk<br>Usable capacity is 7300<br>The four high mass lights are not in good condition and cannot be used for professional night games | 01 x pitch inside the stadium<br>Automated irrigation system<br>Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and brush cutters | 04 x grounds outside the stadium<br>No grass no irrigation<br>Maintenance done with a grader, tractor, and brush cutters |

| Ward | Area                      | Site Description  | Current Status  | Greenified | Rudimentary |
|------|---------------------------|---|---|------------|-------------|
|      |                           |   | <p>The electrical system needs to be upgraded</p> <p>The pitch is maintained and in good condition</p> <p>The whole stadium is guarded by one security personnel day and night.</p> <p>There is a need to put a clear view fence around the entire stadium and improve on physical security</p> <p>The outside venue where we host festivals need a new gate and the ablution facilities needs to be repaired (vandalized and not in use)</p> |            |             |
| 14   | Olympia Park Hockey Club  | Facility is vandalized  | Building has been vandalized  | None       | None        |
| 14   | Olympia Park Tennis Club  | Facility is vandalized  | Building has been vandalized  | None       | None        |
| 14   | Olympia Park Squash Club  | Building consists of 2 floors, windows, exit door, toilets, kitchen, change rooms, burglars, roof, ceiling and storeroom and no stage | Building requires revamping, Squash Club keeps the building maintained and attend to the necessary repairs  | None       | None        |
| 14   | Olympia Park Korfbal Club | Structure still intact but vandalized on the inside   | Structure still intact but vandalized on the inside   | None       | None        |

| Ward  | Area  | Site Description   | Current Status  | Greenified  | Rudimentary  |
|-------|---|--|---|---|--|
| 14    | Impala Cricket Club                         | Facility is vandalized   | Building has been vandalized  | Yes, but deteriorating due to not being operational   | None   |
| 09    | Bester Sports Facility                      | Facility is vandalized   | Facility is vandalized  | 01 x soccer pitch with no grass<br>Netball court<br>Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and brush cutters | None   |
| 09/10 | Tlhabane Sports Facility                    | Facility is vandalized   | Facility is vandalized  | None  | 03 x rudimentary soccer ground<br>Netball courts<br>Maintenance done brush cutters and tractor |
| 11    | Tlhabane (ground near Rampa School)         | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities                                    | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities                                       | None  | 03 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader   |
| 12    | Meriting Sports Facility<br>Ext 4 and Ext 5 | Facility is vandalized   | Facility is vandalized  | None  | 03 x ground<br>Netball court x2<br>Maintenance done brush cutters and a grader                 |
| 18    | East End Sports Facility                    | The rugby club house, tennis courts, basketball courts and ablution block are vandalized | The rugby field is maintained<br>The rugby club house, tennis courts, basketball courts and | 01 x pitch inside the stadium<br>Maintenance done with  | None   |

| Ward | Area  | Site Description                                      | Current Status   | Greenified                              | Rudimentary   |
|------|---|---|--|---|---|
|      |   |   | outside ablution block are vandalized<br>The Tennis Club House is still intact and used by clients for Judo. | ride on mower/tractor and brush cutters |   |
| 19   | Paardekraal Sports Facility                       | Facility is vandalized                                | Facility is vandalized   | None                                    | 01 x ground<br>Netball court<br>Maintenance done brush cutters and a grader |
| 20   | Boitekong Ext 2 & Ext 4                           | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | None                                    | 02 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader                              |
| 21   | Boitekong Ext 4, 5, 6 near Library/Police Station | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | None                                    | 03 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters            |
| 22   | Sunrisepark (Popo Molefe, & Dikhibidung)          | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | None                                    | 03 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters            |
| 23   | Kanana /Letlapeng                                 | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | None                                    | 01 x ground<br>Maintenance done with a grader                               |
| 24   | Freedompark                                       | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | None                                    | 03 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader                              |
| 25   | Monakato Sports                                   | The facility is properly fenced with                  | Facility is vandalized   | 01 x pitch inside the                   | 01 x ground   |

| Ward | Area                         | Site Description   | Current Status   | Greenified  | Rudimentary  |
|------|------------------------------|--|--|---|--|
|      | Facility                     | prefab wall, two soccer fields, two combi courts, and high mass lights. Ablution block vandalized; facility has no electricity cables stolen |  | stadium<br>Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and slasher, brush cutters                         | Maintenance done with a tractor and brush cutters                                    |
| 26   | Tlaseng Sports Facility      | Facility is vandalized   | Facility is vandalized   | 01 x soccer pitch with no grass<br>Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and slasher, brush cutters | None   |
| 27   | Lethabong Sports Ground      | The facility is fenced with palisade fence. It has one soccer field, ablution block and four high mass lights.                               | The facility is fenced with palisade fence.<br>It has one soccer field, ablution block and four high mass lights.<br>Well maintained | 01 x pitch inside the stadium<br>Maintenance done with ride on mower/brush cutters                        | 01 x soccer ground with no grass<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters |
| 28   | Lethabong near RCC           | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | None  | 01 x ground<br>Maintenance done with a grader  |
| 29   | Rankelenyane Sports Facility | Facility is vandalized   | Facility is vandalized   | None  | 01 x ground<br>Maintenance done with a grader  |
| 30   | Modikwe Bethanie             | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | None  | 02 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader                                       |
| 31   | Marikana/Tlapa               | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | None  | 02 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters                     |

| Ward | Area   | Site Description                                      | Current Status   | Greenified | Rudimentary  |
|------|--|---|--|------------|--|
| 32   | Marikana Primary /Maditlokoa   | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities            | None       | 03 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters |
| 33   | Nkaneng  | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | Soccer pitch with no grass, no ablution facilities, and no fence | None       | 1 x ground<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters   |
| 34   | Mfidikwe   | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | Soccer pitch with no grass, no ablution facilities, and no fence | None       | 1 x ground<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters   |
| 36   | Mathopestad Sports Facility  | Facility is vandalized                                | Facility is vandalized   | None       | 01 x ground<br>Maintenance done brush cutters and a grader       |
| 36   | Boons, Dinie Estate, Molote City   | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities            | None       | 03 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader                   |
| 37   | Sondela<br>Boitekong Ext 1<br>Paardekraal Ext 1                                    | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities            | None       | 03 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader                   |
| 39   | Ramochana (near Primary School)  | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities            | None       | 01 x ground<br>Maintenance done with a grader                    |
| 40   | Paardekraal Ext 23, Damoyi View and Dhubai View<br>Chachalaza<br>Boitekong Ext 2 & | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities            | None       | 06 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters |

| Ward | Area                          | Site Description   | Current Status  | Greenified   | Rudimentary  |
|------|-------------------------------|--|---|--|--|
|      | 3                             |  |   |  |  |
| 40   | New Boitekong Sports Facility | The facility is properly fenced with a wall, soccer field, two combi courts, ablution block with change rooms for ladies and gents, automated irrigation system, a boardroom, storerooms, security office, caretakers house. | All the ablution blocks are vandalized and also the automated irrigation system.<br>The facility was never supplied with physical security    | 01 x pitch inside the stadium<br>Maintenance done with ride on mower, tractor and slasher, brush cutters                 | None   |
| 41   | Boitekong Ext 8 and 13        | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities   | None   | 03 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters |
| 42   | Old Sports Grounds            | Greenified soccer pitch in good condition. Fenced with palisade fence and barbed wire fence.<br>Ablution facility vandalized   | Greenified soccer pitch with automated irrigation system<br>Fenced with palisade fence and barbed wire fence.<br>Ablution facility vandalized | 01 x pitch inside the facility<br>Automated irrigation system<br>Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and slasher | None   |
| 42   | Impala Rugby Club             | The facility has two well-maintained rugby fields, a number of buildings, grandstand, ablution blocks and an indoor gym  | The facility is very well maintained  | 02 x pitch inside the stadium<br>Automated irrigation system<br>Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and slasher  | None   |
| 42   | Bowling Club                  | Buildings and bowling green are  | Buildings and bowling green are   | None   | None   |

| Ward | Area                         | Site Description   | Current Status   | Greenified   | Rudimentary  |
|------|------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
|      |                              | 100% functional and well maintained  | 100% functional and well maintained  |  |  |
| 42   | Rustenburg Tennis Club       | Managed by Rustenburg Tennis Club and Ringball Club Well maintained tennis courts and club house | The facility is well maintained  | None   | None   |
| 43   | Karlienspark Sports Facility | Facility is vandalized   | Facility is vandalized   | None   | 01 x ground<br>Maintenance done with brush cutters and a grader  |
| 43   | Zinniaville Sports Facility  | Ablution block vandalized; irrigation system vandalized. Fence is still intact                   | Ablution block vandalized; irrigation system vandalized. Fence is still intact | 01 x pitch inside the stadium<br>Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and slasher | None   |
| 43   | Seraleng/<br>Nkandla         | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities                          | None   | 04 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters |
| 44   | Ikageng/<br>Mosenthal        | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities                          | None   | 02 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters |
| 45   | Nkaneng 2<br>Photsaneng      | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities  | Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities                          | None   | 02 x grounds<br>Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters |

LIST OF MUNICIPAL COMMUNITY HALLS

DIRECTORATE: COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT

UNIT: COMMUNITY FACILITIES

| HALL NAME             | ADDRESS   |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1. OLD TOWN HALL      | : Stand No: 1911<br>Cnr Bayers Naude & Fatima Bayat<br>Rustenburg<br>0300 |
| 2. WA VAN ZYL HALL    | : Stand No: 326<br>Cnr Kremetart & Kloof Road<br>Rustenburg<br>0300       |
| 3. ZINNIIVILLE HALL   | : Stand No: 2370<br>Cnr Sonneblom & Sackville<br>Zinniaviile              |
| 4. BEN MARAIS HALL    | : Stand No: 103<br>Bethlehem Drive<br>Rustenburg                          |
| 5. CIVIC CENTRE HALLS | : No. 1 Kloof Road<br>Ext 1 Cashan<br>Rustenburg                          |
| 6. TLHABANE HALL      | : STAND No: 2884<br>Molao Street<br>Tlhabane                              |
| 7. SUNRISE HALL       | : Stand No: 116<br>Sunrisepark Ext 1                                      |
| 8. BOITEKONG HALL     | : Stand No: 1714<br>Boitekong   |
| 9. PAARDEKRAAL HALL   | : Stand No: 279<br>Boitekong Ext 23                                       |
| 10. MERITING HALL     | : Stand No: 127<br>Meriting Ext 1   |
| 11. B. TAUSE HALL     | : Stand No: 228<br>Lethabong  |
| 12. MONAKATO HALL     | : Stand No: 1266<br>Monakato  |
| 13. PHATSIMA HALL     | : Phatsima  |
| 14. MARIKANA HALL     | Marikana RCC  |
| 15. HARRY WULFSE HALL | Marais street<br>Rustenburg   |

### Greening, Beautification and Alien Species Management in the Municipality

The Parks and Environmental Units has an intensified programme to encourage wards in the greening and cleaning of their wards. Some of the interventions in this regard will include the provision of fruit and shade trees to developing areas of the city and schools. The Municipality's annual targets include beautification of at least two Open Spaces annually.

The RLM engaged the Department of Environment Affairs on clearing of some Invasive Alien Plants in the areas of the upper ridges of the Rustenburg Kloof, grave sites as well as rivers passing through the city. This request was approved but the programme could not be finalized as planned during the 2020/2021 financial year due to administrative issues with the province. The Municipality engaged the Provincial department during 2021/2022 to resuscitate the programme. The programme was implemented but could not reach its completion due to contractual disputes between the Provincial Department and the Contractor. The Bojanala Platinum District Municipality provided EPWP beneficiaries during 2021/2022 financial year to help the local municipality with the eradication of Alien Invasive plants. The municipality's aim is to develop its own alien invasive plants eradication programme that will be sustained throughout the year.

By-laws updated and implementation.

The Community Facilities By-Laws on Public Cemeteries, Swimming Pools and hiring of community facilities was gazette on 31 August 2021, Gazette nr. 8264. The by-law on street trees management was withdrawn by Council on 13 August 2019 but will be presented again during the 2024/2025 financial year. These by-laws will assist with the management of community facilities such as community halls and improve the management of trees in the municipal area. The by-laws are subject to be reviewed as would be guided by Council resolutions or as would be required by key developments affecting the rendering of the services. These by-laws will assist with the management of Community Facilities.

### Library and Information Services

The function of the Unit is to provide, in co-operation with the relevant governing bodies at local, provincial level and national levels, a dynamic library and information service that meets the educational, informational, cultural, economic, technological, and recreational needs of the community at large. This Provincial function is currently rendered by the Municipality on an agency basis with the provincial Department for Sport, Arts, Culture and Recreation with a formalized agreement pending conclusion. The municipality and the province held engagements in June 2023 to consider the function in terms of assignment to the municipality or provincialization.

The Member of Executive Council (MEC) in the North West Provincial Department for Sport, Arts and Culture, Honourable MEC, Ms K Mosenogi in her policy statement on 23rd May 2023 indicated that "the insufficient funding for the library function can no longer be an excuse for the Department to take its full responsibility for the mandate. Section 5, Part A of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa 1996 (Act 106 of 1996)" Libraries other than national are a provincial competency. She concluded by stating that "the support by local municipalities remain essential to ensure that service

to the community continues while the department engages Provincial Treasury to motivate that the library function is adequately funded to allow the department to take full responsibility.”

Each resident must have access to basic library and information resources and facilities for information, life-long learning, culture, and recreation.

Rustenburg Local Municipality has nine (9) community libraries and five (5) info hubs as listed below:

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| Community Libraries | Rustenburg, Tlhabane, Boitekong, Karlienpark, Marikana, Monnakato, Phatsima, East-End, Phokeng and Lethabong |
| Info Hubs           | Barseba, Mamerotse, Mathopestad, Charora.  |

In the 2020/21 financial year Boitekong Library extension was concluded whilst construction of a new library Lethabong funded by the Department of Arts, Culture, Sports, and Recreation was completed in 2022/23 with the library officially opened on the 29 September 2022 and operational to date.

E-books service which was previously rolled out to communities during the 2021/22 and 2022/23 financial years in partnership with the Department of Arts, Culture, Sports, and Recreation was at halt following the expiry of the tender with continuation of the service still pending from the Department . Marketing, creating awareness and commemoration of key calendar dates in the library space such as International Book Day in April, International World Play in May, South African Library Week in March, National Literacy Month, National Book Week as well as other national calendar months programmes such as Human Rights day, Freedom Day, Youth Day, Women’s month, Heritage month, World Aids Day and other relevant dates were rolled out at various communities within Rustenburg Local Municipality jurisdiction.

Phokeng library services are rendered within the space of Phokeng Mall as a free service sponsored by Bafokeng Civil Works (with the municipality paying for electricity and water). The service agreed period is from July 2015 and is to expire on 31 May 2025 requiring engagements with the Royal Bafokeng on possible extension of the same arrangement, consideration of alternative means if any with the Royal Bafokeng and other partners. The municipality will continue to work on means to address this matter during the current financial year 2022/23 before the lapse of the agreement in place.

By-laws updated and implementation.

The revised Library and Information by-law comes into force on the 29th of January 2022 following promulgation on the 29 June 2021. The by-law has been workshopped internally and the information is made available at the various 14 libraries and other strategic municipal areas. The by-law is subject to review as would be guided by Council resolutions or as would be required by key developments affecting the rendering of the services. These by-laws will assist with the management of Library and Information Services.

## **Integrated Environmental Management**

### **ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT (EIA)**

The Municipality is responsible for the development of relevant local by-laws to ensure that all the relevant environmental aspects are governed within a legislative framework that is in line with national and provincial principles. Municipalities have the power to influence development activities through planning tools such as EMF, SDF and LUMS, as well as through the drafting of bylaws. In commenting on an application, municipal officials should ensure that these planning tools and laws are considered in the application.

Rustenburg Local Municipality is a commenting authority in terms of Section 7(2)(3)(5) of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) EIA Regulations. The Provincial North West Department of Economic Development Environment and Tourism (DEDECT) is the competent authority that issues environmental authorisation. The NWDEDECT depends on the municipal comments in order to make informed decision before issuing the EIA authorisations or rejecting the applications.

The functions of the EIA are as follows:

Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) ensures that all development projects within the Rustenburg municipality comply with all environmental legislation, National strategies, RLM Spatial Development Framework (SDF) and Environmental Management Framework.

EIA also ensures that the activities of the municipality are as environmentally sustainable as possible, by advising the departments on possible implications that development activities may have on the environment.

EIA provides technical inputs leading to decisions on issues related to Environmental Management (Land use, Air and Water Quality and Waste Management within the Rustenburg Local Municipality).

The Bojanala Platinum District Municipality Environmental Management Framework (BPDM-EMF) was approved by Council on the 25th of September 2018, and it was finally gazetted on 16th June 2020 for implementation forthwith by the Minister of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) and ensures sustainable development in securing environmental protection of natural resources and promoting cooperative Environmental governance.

The BPDM-EMF was developed from the three EMF's that were already developed for different parts of the BPDM area, i.e for the Magaliesberg Protected Environment EMF, Rustenburg Local Municipality EMF, and Madibeng Local Municipality EMF. The Rustenburg Local Municipality EMF was older than 5 year EMF review cycle recommended in the EMF regulations, or close to that. The review of these EMFs on an individual basis, proved to be financially unviable for NWREAD. The BPDM EMF replaces and incorporates RLM-EMF and also create a single EMF that will encompass the whole Bojanala Platinum District Municipality area. The Rustenburg Local Municipality has to review the Environmental Management Framework which was budgeted for the financial year 2025/2026. The reason being the non-functionality of the BPDM-EMF

The EMF is used for the evaluation and monitoring of all EIA applications received from RLM Directorates and external applications received by the Directorate: Community Development, so as to ensure a balance between developments and protection of environmental resources.

The reviewed Environmental Management Framework (EMF) is comprised of the bio- physical environment (i.e. geology, topography and climate, biodiversity and conservation, hydrology and water resources, air quality and agricultural potential) and socio-economic issues (i.e. socio-economic profile, infrastructure development, land use, heritage resources, tourism, and mining). These features are classified under the Environmental Management Zones.

N.B The BPDM-EMF document is available: Contact: Integrated Environmental Management Unit.

OTHER TOOLS THAT ARE FUNCTIONAL AND IN PLACE THAT NEED TO BE REVIEWED ARE THE FOLLOWING:

- The Rustenburg open space and heritage management plan (ROSHMAP) of 2014, as approved by the Council, is in place, but it also needs to be reviewed.

ROSHMAP is utilised as a decision-making tool on land availability for development, and in the promotion of sustainable management of open space within RLM.

- Climate Change Management Plan as approved in 2013, that also needs to be reviewed. The impact of climate change is a cross-cutting issue affecting a number of sectors. This framework will therefore result in an integrated approach by the RLM in dealing with adaptation to climate change. The report reviews the direct impact on natural resources, as well as the secondary impacts on the socio-economic environment and the livelihood of communities, and references specific strategies in response to these impacts.
- The 2013 Wetland Inventory also needs to be reviewed. The protection of wetlands is considered fundamental to the sustainable management of water resources and biodiversity. Wetland inventory encourages the wise use and proper management of the wetland in the RLM.

#### ENVIRONMENTAL INTERNAL AUDITS CONDUCTED ON MUNICIPAL FACILITIES

The Unit Integrated Environmental Management conducts internal environmental compliance audits in the municipal facilities to ensure that:

processes are in place and followed by the relevant Directorates in accordance with the legislative requirements for sewer management and treatment as well as minimum requirements for waste disposal by the landfill.

there is enough co-operative environmental management between the relevant Directorates to ensure that all environmental legislation and related requirements are implemented or adhered to.

action plans are in place to effectively address internal control deficiencies relating to the environment and sustainability thereof, and to improve overall environmental performance of the facilities.

The environmental audits are conducted on the following Municipal facilities:

Waterval landfill site

RLM Wastewater Treatment Plants (i.e. Rustenburg, Boitekong, Monakato, Lethabong)

Strumosa Waste drop off site.

RLM stores

3X Quarterly Internal Environmental Compliance Audits will be conducted on Municipal facilities to ensure compliance with the conditions of the facilities licenses.

The Directorates responsible for the audited facilities should ensure that the audit findings are addressed by putting in place an action plan and adhering to it to enable the municipality to comply with environmental legislation.

#### ENVIRONMENTAL EDUCATION AND AWARENESS.

Integrated Environment Management Unit has Environmental Education and Awareness Section.

The Section's awareness drive is embedded under the overarching National Environmental Management Principle that states: "community wellbeing and empowerment must be promoted through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and experience and other appropriate means through:

Creating and promoting the culture of learning IN, FOR and ABOUT the Environment to enable the effective participation of the community and increase public's awareness of the environmental issues.

Training and encouraging RLM communities to establish structures such as Environmental Forums and Community Environmental groups.

Raise environmental Awareness on issues such as conservation of wetlands, waste management, impacts of climate change on the municipality through initiatives such as

: (a) workshops, Awareness talks, Eco-camps, Green Marches, Implementation of Environmental projects e.g. Biogas, Recycling, Upcycling, composting, Greening, Food Gardens and renewable energy.

Conduct campaigns and other environmental programs according to the environmental diary such as Wetlands month, Arbor month, Energy month, Recycling week.

The municipality experiences a challenge of environmental pollution in the form of illegal dumping sites, burning of waste, emissions caused by illegal spray painting, oil spillages from illegal motor mechanics. The environmental challenges as stated above violates the human rights as enshrined in the constitution of the Republic of South Africa, Act 108 of 1996. The National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998, section 4(h) indicates that the community well-being and empowerment must be promoted through environmental education, raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and experience and other appropriate means. To address these problems Environmental Education and Awareness is key. Environmental Education is a

process that allows individuals to explore environmental issues, engage in problem solving and act to improve the environment. Waste Education is also key and is driven through:

Workshops

Awareness sessions

Clean-up campaigns

Exhibitions

Eco-camps

Observation of environmental calendar days relevant to waste management

Recycling and upcycling

Composting

Waste separation at source

Support on any other waste management programmes ongoing at schools and community.

The Rustenburg Local Municipality has a program that covers all the 45 wards guided by the national calendar of environmental days focusing on, amongst others: The annual target of environmental education and awareness are 40 activities. There are also climate change initiatives (Biogas) implemented and the annual target is four (4) activities.

The Environmental advocacy/empowerment/education and awareness addressing Air Quality Management, biodiversity and conservation, climate change is conducted with limited budget.

#### BY-LAWS

Enforcement of By-laws (Rustenburg Air Pollution and Integrated Waste Management by Laws)

Rustenburg Local Municipality has promulgated the Rustenburg Local Municipality Air Pollution By-Law gazette No 7383 of 2014 and the Rustenburg Municipality Integrated Waste Management By-Law Provincial Notice 105 of 2016 gazette No 7653 respectively as measures to comply with the constitution of RSA and to be climate change resilient. Environmental Education and Awareness are conducted to the schools, communities, and other institutions to make them aware of these By-laws and their implications. The above-mentioned By laws are in the process of review as both have passed a 5-year cycle review period. Enforcement of these By-laws follows the education and awareness, and it is done in the form of issuing abatement notices and admission of guilt fines with the assistance of the Directorate: Public Safety. The enforcement is conducted weekly and as and when complaints are reported.

The Rustenburg Noise Pollution by law was also developed and awaiting the Public Participation Process.

N.B Both Rustenburg Local Municipality Air Pollution and Integrated Waste Management By-Laws are available. Contact: Integrated Environmental Management Unit.

Both Air Pollution and Waste Management by laws were reviewed, public participation conducted and completed. By laws awaiting Council approval for gazetting.

The gazetting of the Rustenburg Noise pollution is underway.

#### ILLEGAL DISPOSAL OF MEDICAL WASTE

The Rustenburg Local Municipality realised that there is an ongoing illegal disposal of medical waste within its jurisdiction. The measures that the municipality has put in place include quarterly meetings with the medical facilities to share knowledge and experience on the Environmental Legislation governing medical waste and their implications. The medical facilities are obliged to submit their medical waste disposal slips on monthly basis to monitor compliance with legislation. The municipality through the Directorate: Community Development, in collaboration with stake holders such as Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, RLM Public Safety and SAPS conduct quarterly loco inspections in medical facilities like Hospitals, Clinics, Drs Surgeries, hospice, old age homes to ensure compliance.

#### GREEN HOUSE GASSES AND CLIMATE CHANGE

##### RLM Directorates Response to Climate Change

The overwhelming consensus of scientific opinion as reflected in the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) is that climate change in the form of Global Warming is real and driven by emissions of greenhouse gasses caused by human activity. Rustenburg Local Municipality has a Climate Change Management Plan and the Greenhouse Gas Inventory of 2013 (to be revised). It is through this plans and other recent climate change information platforms that Education and Awareness initiatives to the RLM Directorates will be driven from. Climate Change is not yet mainstreamed in the sector and strategic plans. There is no budget allocation as yet for climate change. The Directorate: Community development: Unit: Integrated Environmental Management is implementing Biogas project as climate change response initiative. There will be quarterly information sharing in the form of articles to individual Directorates on emissions of greenhouse gasses caused by their day-to-day activities. The initiatives will include but not limited to:

Decarbonization of Electricity –transition from coal powered electricity to renewable energy (DTIS-Electrical)

Decarbonization of Transport- transition to low emissions vehicles- Electric vehicles (RRT)

Decarbonisation of Economy-transition to Green Economy projects (LED)

Decarbonisation of Planning-transition to a lower Greenhouse Gas emissions and climate resilient development/building/housing (DPHS)

Initiatives such as Biogas projects, upcycling projects (wonder bags) Greening of the City through tree planting, flowers and food gardens, solar energy projects will be conducted through workshops and other awareness activities to the entire RLM Communities.

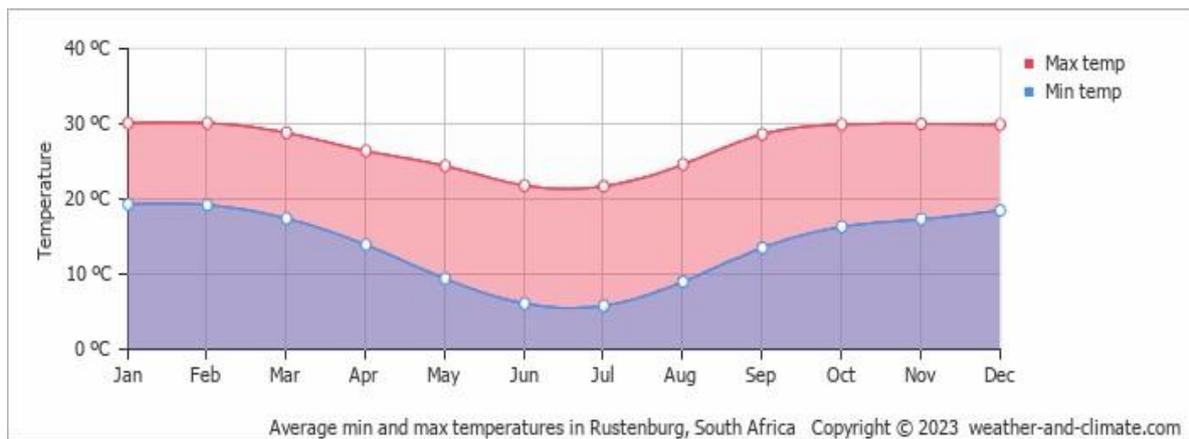
NB: The Rustenburg Climate Change Management Plan and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Inventory is available: Unit to contact- Integrated Environmental management

#### Rustenburg Local Municipality Climatic Conditions.

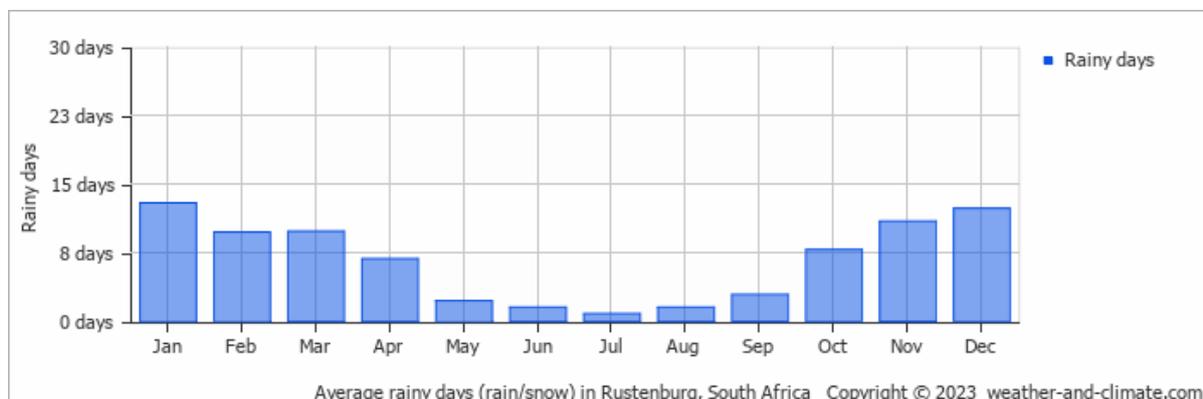
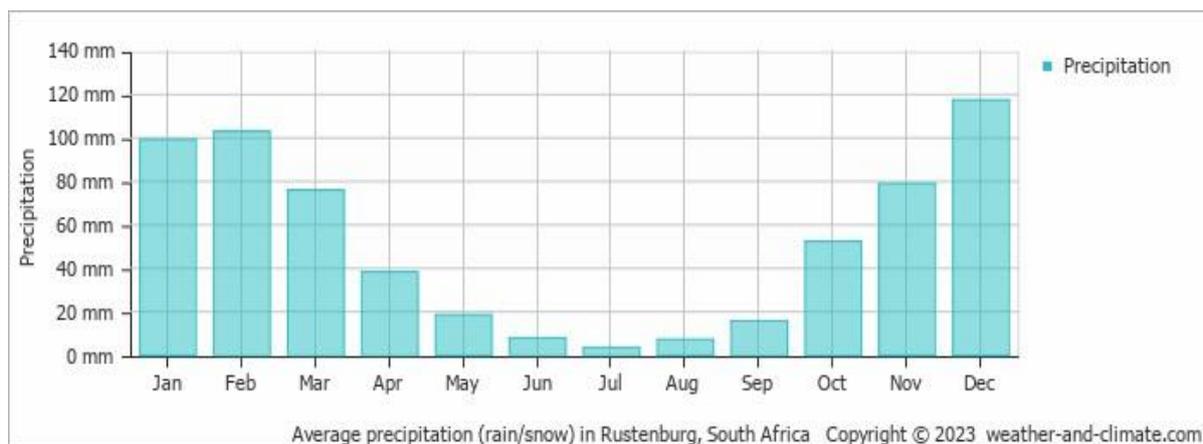
Rustenburg receives an average rainfall of about 605mm of rain per year, with most rainfall occurring mainly during mid-summer and an average temperature of 18°C. The City normally receives the lowest rainfall (6.5mm) in June and the highest (178.37mm) in January. The monthly distribution of average daily maximum temperatures (charts below) shows that the average midday temperatures for Rustenburg range from 20°C in June to 30°C in January. The region is the coldest during July when the mercury drops to 1.7°C on average during the night.

#### Temperature and Rainfall

##### Average Rustenburg temperatures



Rainfall



AIR QUALITY MONITORING

In terms of Section 24 of the Constitution, as well as the National Environmental Air Quality Act (AQA, 2004), government is enjoined to ensure that South Africans are breathing air that is not harmful to their health and wellbeing. Section 8 of the AQA provides for national monitoring and information management standards and stipulates that the Minister must, in the National Framework, establish national standards for Municipalities and Provinces to monitor ambient air quality and to report compliance with ambient air quality standards as requirements.

Rustenburg Local Municipality is one of the nine Local Municipalities (LM) included in the Waterberg–Bojanala Priority Area (WBPA) which was declared by the Minister on the 15th of June 2012 as the third National Priority Area (DEA, 2012a), crossing the Northwest and Limpopo provincial borders. The WBPA is located in the North West of South Africa and covers an area of 67 837 km<sup>2</sup>. The development of the Waterberg -Bojanala Priority Area Air Quality Management Plan (AQMP) and the Rustenburg Air Quality Management Plan which is under review have contributed much to the improvement of the Rustenburg Ambient status.

The Rustenburg Local Municipality has three Air Monitoring Stations that are situated at Boitekong Community Library, Tlhabane Community Library and Marikana at Regional Community Centre. The following pollutants and meteorological parameters are monitored on a continuous basis:

Pollutants: Sulphur dioxide (SO<sub>2</sub>), Nitric oxide (NO), Nitrogen dioxide (NO<sub>2</sub>), Nitrogen oxides (NO<sub>x</sub>), Carbon monoxide (CO), Ozone (O<sub>3</sub>), Particulate matter (PM<sub>10</sub>) and Particulate matter (PM<sub>2.5</sub>)

Meteorological parameters: Wind speed and direction, ambient temperature, relative humidity, atmospheric pressure, and global radiation

Due to vandalism the Air Quality Monitoring Station that used to be at Reatile Educational Centre was moved to Tlhabane Community Library and the Unit is in the process of recommissioning the station. Currently Boitekong and Marikana Air Quality Monitoring Stations are operational.

#### RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AIR QUALITY INFORMATION DISSEMINATION.

The RLM communities have a right to ambient air quality monitoring information monitored at all of the stations commissioned by the Municipality. The information from these stations is disseminated to the communities through a number of platforms. The following are the ways currently being used to take the information to the people:

The South African Air Quality Information System (SAAQIS) is an internet-based platform, a partnership between the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and Environment (DFFE), the South African Weather Service (SAWS) and government departments. SAAQIS is a 'one-stop-shop' for all air quality information, from monitoring to legislation, as well as notices, guidelines, and contact information of air quality officials in different jurisdictions across the country. DEA has developed a country-specific Air Quality Index (AQI) in line with best international practices in order to simplify the reporting of air quality to the general public. The index has five bands indicating 'Low', 'Moderate', 'High' and 'Very High' and 'Hazardous' levels of air pollution.

The Rustenburg Air quality information is also disseminated through Multi-Stakeholder Reference Groups (MSRGs) and Implementation Task Teams (ITTs) established by the National Department of Forestry, Fisheries and Environment (DFFE) The meetings are held quarterly and the stakeholders:

Relevant National and Provincial Departments; District and Local Municipalities,

Non-Governmental and Community Based Organisations

Industries,

Academia,

Interested and affected parties identified during the implementation of the Air Quality Management Plan.

Monthly Air Quality Management Reports

N.B Rustenburg Local Municipality Monthly Air Quality Management reports are available. Contact: Integrated Environmental Management Unit.

The Municipality has an Air Quality Management Plan that was developed and adopted by Council in 2005 currently, RLM is using the Baseline that was developed in 2014 and has plans to review the AQMP.

Rustenburg Local Municipality submits the AQO Annual Report & report on implementation of air quality management plan to DEDECT and National Department of Environment

RLM has three Air quality monitoring stations located at Tlhabane Library, Marikana Community Centre and Boitekong Library. Each of the three stations measures the following pollutants;

- Ozone,
- Sulphur Dioxide(SO<sub>2</sub>),
- Nitrogen Oxide(NO),
- Nitrogen Dioxide(NO<sub>2</sub>),
- Nitrogen Oxides(NO<sub>x</sub>),
- Carbon Monoxide(CO) and
- PM<sub>10</sub> and PM<sub>2.5</sub> (Boitekong and Marikana)

In addition to these pollutants the following meteorological parameters are also measured:

- wind speed and direction,
- ambient temperature,
- relative humidity,
- ambient pressure and
- solar radiation.

RLM has a Designated Air Quality Management Officer. The Council designated an official as the Air Quality Officer in terms of National Environmental Management Air Quality Act 39 of 2004 on the 17<sup>th</sup> July 2018.

The Municipality conducts industry inspections (Joint Inspections with District and DEDECOT) Compliance, Monitoring and Enforcement. There are two EMIs Grade 2 within the Municipality. There is Budget Allocation and available for Air Quality Management related work.

## **WASTE MANAGEMENT SERVICES UNIT**

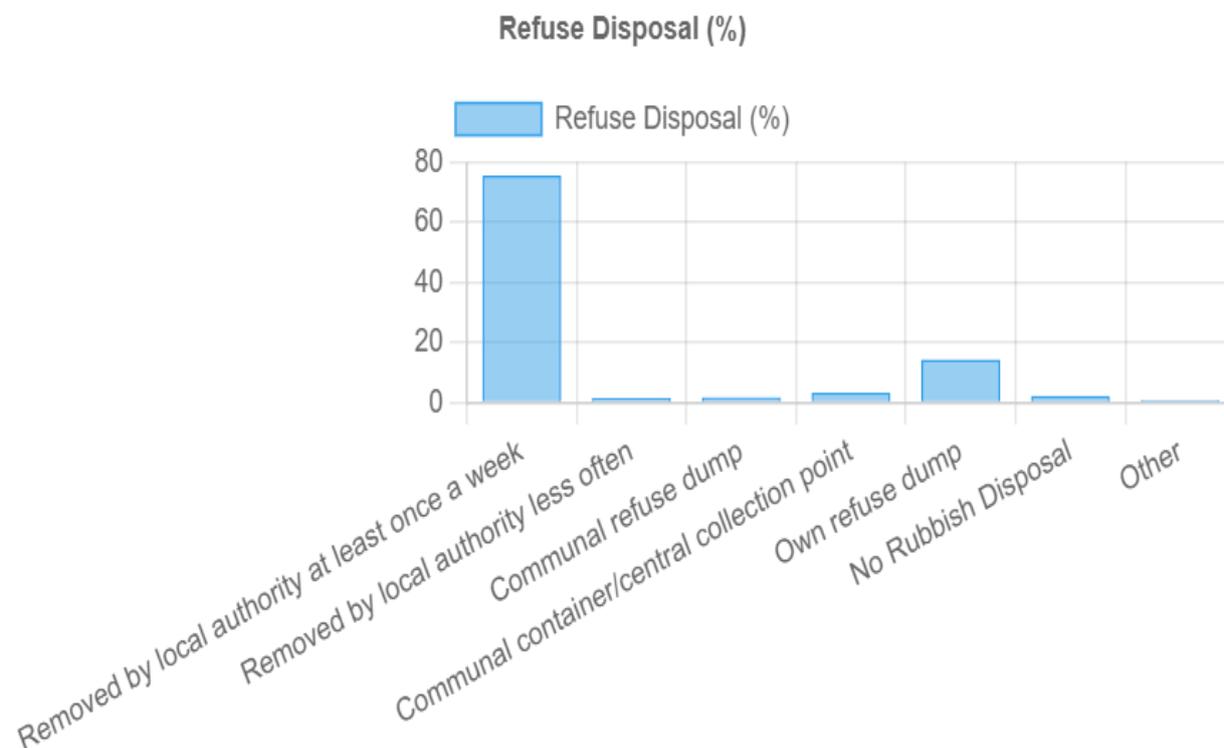
The RLM is committed to providing an equitable, efficient, and effective integrated solid waste management service within its jurisdictional area, which is sustainable and is in accordance with the internationally accepted waste hierarchy principle. Through this, the municipality will ensure that waste is minimised, recycled, re-used, and treated in accordance with national statutory requirements and policy, and that appropriate mechanisms and technologies are in place for the environmentally acceptable and cost-effective collection, transport and disposal of waste. Oversee and preside over the maintenance of all facilities/properties in the municipality and ensuring that they adhere to set high standards and compatibility and also that are well kept at all times.

The municipality gives their assurance that waste facilities operated or used by the municipality will be permitted and operated according to the DWAF Minimum Requirements and that they will constantly strive for the best standards in waste management. RLM currently renders the following waste management services:

- Domestic waste removal
- Business/Industrial waste removal
- Street cleansing and litter picking service
- Garden refuse removal services
- Waste Transfer
- Waste Treatment
- Landfill operation services
- Contracted services.
- Education and Awareness

| Name  | Frequency | %     |
|---|-----------|-------|
| Removed by local authority at least once a week | 154 028   | 75,6% |
| Removed by local authority less often           | 3 193     | 1,6%  |
| Communal refuse dump                            | 3 588     | 1,8%  |
| Communal container/central collection point     | 7 025     | 3,4%  |
| Own refuse dump                                 | 29 246    | 14,4% |
| No Rubbish Disposal                             | 4 726     | 2,3%  |
| Other   | 1 852     | 0,9%  |

Source: StatsSA – Census 2022



Source: StatsSA – Census 2022

### Waste Transportation

Waste transportation is the major challenge within the collection and transportation of waste, to improve the availability of vehicles the following needs to be undertaken:

- Purchase new fleet
- Improved maintenance
- Acquire mechanics for waste vehicles
- Replacement of heavy waste management vehicles every five years
- Appropriately choose and utilize vehicles
- Train drivers
- Manage and control Fleet.

The Municipality established its status quo regarding the number of clients that do not pay for collection service received. This was also an Audit finding and it is receiving a serious attention. There is waste service verification team established to ensure that all customers receiving waste services pay accurate bills for the services provided to them. Furthermore, the procurement of three waste collection compactor trucks, two tipper trucks, one front end loader has done through the Municipal Infrastructure Grant. There is however second phase of procuring waste specialised fleet through MIG and the project is awaiting appraisal.

### Alternative service delivery mechanism in terms of Section 78 of Local Government Municipal Systems Act (Act 32 of 2000)

In 2004, the Waste Management Unit of the Rustenburg Local Municipality (RLM) embarked on a process to develop an Integrated Waste Management Plan / Strategy (IWMP). The fourth phase of the IWMP required Council to embark on a Section 78 study in terms of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 32 of 2000 ("the Systems Act") to evaluate alternative internal and external service delivery mechanisms. The Section 78(1) study, as the required legislative process to analyse the status quo of waste services in the RLM and the possibility of delivering these services internally, was completed in April 2006. The Section 78(1) Report served before Council on 27 June 2006 and it was decided to proceed with the Section 78(3) Feasibility study (Phase 2 Study) as the required legislative process to investigate external service delivery mechanisms before taking a final decision on the most feasible service delivery option/s to be implemented by the Council in respect of its waste services. In the process of improving services, the Rustenburg Local Municipality has considered alternative service delivery mechanisms through the appointment of external service provider to provide both wet waste and landfill management. Street cleaning is done internally by permanent and Expanded Public Works Programme beneficiaries. The current service providers for wet refuse collection, Katlego Baphiring Trading Enterprise CC and Sethanye Trading and Projects are contracted from 01 May 2021 to 30 April 2024. Mphele Engineers and Project Management is appointed for the operation and management of the Waterval Landfill site from 01 May 2021 to 30 April 2024.

### Waste Management Governance

#### The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996)

The waste management mandate is derived from Section 24 (Environment) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996) which states:

"Everyone has the right –

- (a) to an environment that is not harmful to their health or wellbeing; and
- (b) to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that –
  - (i) prevent pollution and other degradation.
  - (ii) promote conservation; and
  - (iii) secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development."

#### Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP)

The final IWMP was approved by Council on the 29th of May 2018. Subsequent to the approval, Council resolved that the IWMP be submitted to the Member of Executive Council for the North West Department of Rural, Environment and Agricultural Development. RLM submitted an approved

IWMP to the MEC for READ and it was endorsed on the 01st August 2019. The Municipality submits an annual report to the provincial Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism, as required by section 13 of the National Environmental Management Waste Act (Act 59 of 2008).

#### Waste Management By-Laws

The RLM's Integrated Waste Management By-law was approved and subsequently promulgated on 07 June 2016. The larger portion of enforcing the By-law is done by the Law Enforcement Officers from the Directorate Public Safety. There are portions that Waste Management Unit are obliged to enforce jointly with the Directorate Public Safety. For the purpose of generating income through By-law enforcement, Waste Management Unit is implementing Chapter 7, section 45 of the Rustenburg Integrated Waste Management By-law of 2016,

- 1) No person may provide commercial services for the collection and transportation of waste in the municipal area, unless such person is registered with the Municipality and obtained a license authorising these waste management activities.
- 2) An application for a licence must be submitted in writing in a format or a form prescribed by the Municipality including such information as the Municipality requires and the prescribed fee and, unless subsection (3) applies, the Municipality's prior approval for the collection and transportation of waste.
- 3) Any person already providing these commercial service at the commencement of this by-law, must within ninety days of such commencement date submit an application for accreditation in terms of sub-section (1), failing which the person will as from the date that the said ninety days' period expired no longer be able to render such services in the municipal area.
- 4) The Municipality will consider and grant or reject the application submitted in terms of sub-section (3), within 30 days of its receipt having regard to the health, safety and environmental record of the applicant and the nature of the commercial service to be provided and will furnish written reasons if such application is rejected.
- 5) Registration as a service provider does not entitle the service provider to render a waste removal service without the Municipality's approval for an exemption in terms of section 68 of this by-law.

The RLM's Integrated Waste Management By-law was anticipated to be reviewed in the 2023/2024 financial and Budget for the promulgation was set aside.

#### National Domestic Waste Collection Standards (No.33935 of 11 January 2011)

The National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008) stipulates that standards are required to "give effect to the right to an environment that is not harmful to health and well-being," and that this right have to be applied "uniformly throughout the Republic". It is recognised that South Africa is a developing country and the purpose of the setting of standards is to ensure a service to all while complying with health and safety regulations without unnecessarily

changing current creative collection processes as long as they function well and deliver a service of acceptable standard to all households. These National Domestic Waste Collection Standards are therefore applicable to all domestic waste collection services throughout the country.

The setting of National Domestic Waste Collection Standards was informed by the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008), the General Waste Collection Standards of Gauteng Province, the current international waste management standards and good practices in both developed and developing countries, the current waste collection practices in South African municipalities as well as stakeholder consultations. The standards are set based on the following principles agreed upon during the consultation process:

- Equity.
- Affordability and availability of resources within municipalities.
- Clarity and ease at which the standards can be implemented.
- Practicality; and
- Community participation in design of applicable and appropriate collection systems.

#### Level of Service

It is recognised that service levels may differ between areas depending on the practicality and cost efficiency of delivering the service. However, the standards for domestic waste collection as outlined below will be equally relevant to all different levels of domestic waste collection services. Service levels may vary between:

- a. On-site appropriate and regularly supervised disposal (applicable mainly to remote rural areas with low density settlements and farms supervised by a waste management officer).
- b. Community transfer to central collection point (medium density settlements).
- c. Organised transfer to central collection points and/or kerbside collection (high density settlements); or
- d. Mixture of b and c above for the medium to high density settlements.

#### National Waste Management Strategy (NWMS) 2020

The management of waste in South Africa falls within the mandate of the Department of Fisheries, Forestry, and the Environment (DFFE).

To give effect to this mandate, the DFFE has developed and promulgated policies, legislation, strategies, and programmes. Key amongst these is the National Environmental Management: Waste Act 59, 2008 (hereinafter referred to as “the Waste Act”) and the NWMS of 2011. The NWMS is a statutory requirement of the Waste Act. The NWMS provides a coherent framework and strategy for the implementation of the Waste Act and outlines government’s policy and strategic approach to waste management within the South African government’s context and agenda of socio-economic

development that is “equitable, inclusive, sustainable and environmentally sound.” The current NWMS 2020, which revises and updates the 2011 strategy, also achieves the following:

Assimilates our strategic approach to waste management with the commitments and directives of the Sustainable Development Goals 2030 (hereinafter referred to as “the SDG’s”) and South Africa’s National Development Plan: Vision 2030 (hereinafter referred to as “the NDP”).

Unequivocally locates waste management as one of the key underpinnings of South Africa’s economy and social fabric; and

Integrates and provides an enabling environment for the DFFE’s 2017 Chemicals and Waste Economy Phakisa and government’s 2019 Good Green Deeds Programme.

The NWMS 2020 takes into account applicable and relevant feedback provided during public consultation processes held on the draft version. It also takes into account progress, challenges and lessons learnt from the implementation of the 2011 NWMS and as stated above, the political, social, environmental, and economic context within which the waste sector operates and impacts on.

#### Refuse removal services

The greater Rustenburg area has approximately 120 000 service points of which approximately 100 000 points are serviced by the appointed waste collection contractors. Areas not receiving basic waste Management services include:

RDP houses – Newly developed houses are not yet receiving services and still registered under the RLM.

#### Some Informal Settlements

Rural areas

Farmhouses

Villages serviced by the Royal Bafokeng Administration

The outsourcing of the waste collection services has assisted the Unit in regionalizing the service and reducing the transport and monitoring cost for the municipality. The collection of waste from a bigger part business premises is done through a public- private partnership, whereby service provider registers with the municipality to collect waste from business premises. Private waste collectors are registered with the Municipality in terms of Section 45 of the Rustenburg Local Municipality’s Integrated Waste Management By-law. Private waste collectors are charged disposal fee at the landfill site as per the approved tariffs. Furthermore, the verification of businesses with or without waste storage areas and waste accounts is a process continuously undertaken by the Unit, due to change in ownership and occupation of properties, mainly in the CBD Any discrepancies found are addressed during the verification process for accurate billing to be effected on customers. RLM currently collects only two bags of garden waste per household and as a result, residents resort to disposing waste illegally. Currently garden waste is disposed at the dedicated area at the Waterval

Landfill Site. With the implementation of STRUMOSA drop off area and currently operating from Monday to Sunday, residents can dispose off garden waste ONLY, free of charge. Supplementary to the waste collection services, the Municipality provides alternatives waste service, mostly to areas that are not serviced, through clearing of illegal dumping, partnership with communities by providing and removing of skip bins and community-based projects for various waste management activities. With the procurement of new waste fleet, the service is expected to improve.

#### Waste Disposal

RLM has one operational regional waste disposal facility, Waterval Landfill Site. The Waterval Landfill Site receives domestic municipal waste as well as organic waste. No hazardous waste is accepted at the Waterval Landfill Site. Strumosa Waste Drop Off facility also accepts garden waste for non-commercial community member, free of charge. Generators of non-domestic waste including medical waste have their own service providers that collect and transport hazardous waste to Hazardous waste facilities in Gauteng and Klerksdorp.

#### Key Focus Projects

1. Procurement of specialized waste fleet to extend the service to the poor communities.
2. Completion and Operationalisation of Marikana Waste Transfer Station
3. Beneficiation of closed Townlands Landfill site
4. Development of Material Recovery Facility (MRF) and Composting Facility (CF) at Waterval Landfill site.
5. Development of Waste to Energy (WTE) plant at Waterval Landfill Site.

#### Service Delivery Backlogs

Twenty percent (20 %) of areas are currently not receiving services due to low resources, for rural areas, rapid growth of informal settlement and low-cost recovery. Farmlands and newly developed areas are some of the areas currently not receiving services, a provision has been made in the wet refuse removal bid to allow for extension of scope to cover newly developed areas.

**2.6.8 PUBLIC SAFETY**

**1. CONSTITUTIONAL MANDATE**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Traffic Policing, Licencing and Testing, Fire and Emergency Services and Law Enforcement and Security Services |  |
| The Constitution of South Africa, 1996. Act No. 108 of 1996  | <p>Section 125(1) (d) and (e) of the Constitution provides for amongst others the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To promote a safe and healthy environment; and</li> <li>• To encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matters of local government;</li> </ul> |

The Directorate Public Safety's mandate is to promote community Safety , road safety, Fire Safety and coordinate disaster management interventions through community mobilisation, enforcement of municipal bylaws, traffic policing, licencing and testing thus positively influencing community behaviour through education and awareness campaigns and law enforcement .

**2. LEGISLATIVE AND POLICY MANDATES**

- I. Act 108 of 1996, The Constitution and various Traffic related legislations, Criminal Procedure Act as well as all Fire and Emergency related legislations and associated policies
- ii. Critical Infrastructure Protection Act, Act 8 of 2019
- iii. The Firearms Control Act ,Act 60 of 2000

**PART B: OUR STRATEGIC FOCUS**

Strategic objective:

Maintain clean, green, save and healthy municipal environment

**1. Vision: Safe Communities and effective disaster management system**

**2. Mission**

We are committed to promote community safety in general (road safety, road worthiness and Fire Safety), ensure that both vehicles and drivers are duly registered and licensed, coordinate disaster management services and enforce municipal bylaws through an integrated approach.

**3. Values**

- **Integrity**
- **Innovation**
  - Motivated
  - Accountability
  - Client focused
  - Committed
  - Team work
  - Communication
  - Consultation

**4. SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS**

The five-year strategic plan is informed by the National Development Plan chapters, MTSF priorities, and new council priorities as follows:

| <b>New council priorities</b>                               |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <b>NDP Chapters</b>   | <b>MTSF Priorities</b>                               | <b>RLM Priorities</b>   |
| Chapter 4: Economic infrastructure                          | Priority 1: Capable, ethical and developmental state | <b>Public Safety as an enabler of service delivery and economic development</b>         |
| Chapter 12 Building safer communities                       |  |   |
| Chapter 13 Building a capable developmental state           | Priority 2 Economic transformation & job creation    | <b>Integrated bylaw enforcement that enables social emancipation</b>                    |
| Chapter 14 Promoting accountability and fighting corruption | Priority 6: Social cohesion and safe communities     | <b>Fighting fraud and corruption</b><br>Involvement of communities in matters of safety |

CHARACTERISTICS OF THE RLM POPULANCE AND CRIME ANALYSIS:

In the Rustenburg, what characterises the concrete reality within which we carry the public services are the following factors:

- Migration patterns point to the increase, as communities from other areas follow the mining activities in our city, thereby impacting on resources available to Public Safety services
- Majority of residents are not aware of the provisions of the bylaws, policies and other law
- Low levels of combined income per household impacting on the ability to pay for the basic services they require/receive from the municipality in general
- Households that are led by children which impacts heavily on social behaviour, care and nurturing
- Low levels of opportunities for job seeker both with tertiary qualification and those without primary or no schooling poses danger to the active nature of Rustenburg citizens
- The high levels of unemployment
- Increase in informal settlements leading to illegal connections of water and electricity,
- Increase in illegal dumping — residential and non-residential areas
- The high number of sporadic service delivery protests

The above realities heavily impact on the ability of residents to remain law abiding as the conditions they find themselves propels individuals to find alternative means of survival. This is evident by the degree of illegal street trading and land invasions in our city, and generally the rising non-compliance to municipal bylaws and crime levels throughout all the elements of crimes and bylaws. The diagram below gives statistics relating to crime within the Rustenburg Local Municipality.

| Crimes reported by detailed categories - financial years, 2023/2024 | Rustenburg |
|---|------------|
| Murder  | 2 284      |
| Attempted murder  | 588        |
| Assault with the intent to inflict grievous bodily harm             | 1 782      |
| Common assault  | 1 109      |
| Sexual crimes - Total   | 1 639      |
| Robbery with aggravating circumstances                              | 694        |
| Malicious damage to property  | 613        |
| Burglary at residential premises                                    | 841        |
| Burglary at business premises                                       | 179        |
| Theft of motor vehicle and motorcycle                               | 1 074      |
| Theft out of or from motor vehicle                                  | 1 746      |
| Stock-theft   | 2 284      |
| Drug-related crime  | 588        |
| Commercial crime  | 1 782      |

*METHODOLOGY: NEW AND IMPROVED APPROACH*

The scenario above illustrates a deeper need for a holistic intervention to ensure that communities are and feel safe. An integrated approach to consolidate all efforts by all role players to decrease acts of social ills and through mobilisation of communities.

The Directorate will work towards the incorporation of systems to improve performance of all the officials. The fourth industrial revolution calls for communities and council to embrace new technologies. The need to embrace technology will guarantee effective, timeous and measurable outputs which are critical for analysis and improvement of impact driven performance of the Directorate.

Analysed data and performance directs that, the operational officials are required to spend a considerable amount of time consolidating reports in offices, transferring raw data from one source to the other, which process comes with its own challenges. These leads to continuous audit queries. The Directorate will work towards improved performance by ensuring that:

- Improved integrated systems in the Directorate to enhance impact performance towards the reduction of fatal crashes on the roads, fire incidents, corruption incidents and adverse impact of disasters in communities.
- Engagement with Labour Unions to present new approaches to the conditions of service traffic and law enforcement officers, which will allow for officers to spend more time on the road and in communities than in the office in an affordable, efficient and impact driven manner.
- Re-orientation and de-briefing sessions to ensure a healthy workforce ready to withstand the challenges of public safety services
- Strengthened collaboration with sister departments to enforce discipline on the road thereby leading to behavioural change by road users
- Improved and intensified dialogues, awareness and engagement with communities to improve voluntary bylaw compliance.
- Rehabilitate and strengthen monitoring of traffic infrastructure enabling the component to provide consistent, reliable and quality services. These will include but not limited to calibration of weighbridges, VTS and rehabilitation of infrastructure

The fundamentals guiding the approach of the Directorate in contributing to the NDP pronouncements is resting on the following THEMATIC INTERVENTION PILLARS espoused in the White Paper for safety and Security, President's renewed Commitment in the fight against Gender Based Violence:

1. Lobby for an effective Criminal Justice System ( including Rustenburg Municipal Court effectiveness)
2. Inclusive collaboration in early intervention to prevent crime
3. Strengthen integrated support services for victims
4. Influence for effective and integrated service delivery
5. Cooperate for the realisation of Safety through Environmental design
6. Massify programmes to achieve Active Public and Community participation

These will be realised across all four Units' Outputs and Outcomes impacting on the behaviour of our road users as well as communities, an ingredient critical towards building safer communities.

The Directorate aims at re-establishing integrated multi-disciplinary governance structures which will speak and produce holistic results. This approach will recognise the three tires of measurement:

- a) GOVERNANCE - structures at political and technical levels inclusive of primary and secondary stakeholders on a consistent basis to inform decision making, planning and monitoring. These will include system development, standardization, role clarification linked to the thematic Intentions of the White Paper; shared services where necessary to enhance performance. Data collected will assist in evaluation, analysis as well as inform future planning.
- b) JOINT PLANS/OPERATIONS — community mobilization through joint operations, search and seizures, dialogues and awareness campaigns. These will assist in awakening the consciousness of communities and road users thereby changing behaviour.

*c) IMPLEMENTATION of planned and AGREED DECISIONS TO ENHANCE*

INTERGRATION — areas which needs to be implemented by individual partners will be monitored through the structures that are created.

The overall aim is for the management committee (MANCO) and other bodies, where reports and analysis will be tabled, to prioritise Safety and Security to be at the CENTER of all development, use same as an indicator in all frameworks of every project, and programme development prior to implementation. The Municipality should also use outputs to measure the cost of crime thereby reviewing our approach to fire prevention, crime prevention and accident reduction as well as fraud and corruption awareness. At the centre of all these efforts is to ensure that communities become custodians of protecting property and being patriot to developments in their name, and this can only be achieved once communities are and feel safe.

The Directorate has decentralised some of its services to Marikana, Robega and Phatsima. More work will have done to improve on the decentralised services and further extend services to other areas to be identified. Decentralisation approach is informed by Key missions of the Directorate:

1. Improve Public Safety Directorate Proximity and Accessibility. Improve visibility, accessibility and increased engagement with communities
2. Prevent, address and Repress safety related social ills. Implement measures to integrate bylaw enforcement and improve on response time during complaints and other emergencies.
3. Integrate bylaw enforcement services. Integrate and build relations; Improve processes and policies; work towards establishment of a single command and control
4. Coordinate safety and security related stakeholders: cooperate with local and district stakeholders; share best practices, share information and jointly manage crisis

These missions are entrenched in daily work of the Directorate and will be supported, monitored and evaluated to enhance relations with communities, institutions as well as individuals. This also includes the commitment to support statutory community structures which is the Community Policing Forums (CPFs).

IDP REVIEW 2025 - 2026

The Directorate strives to strengthen support and oversight, training and development of the members of the CPFs as part of community mobilisation in our city.

The Directorate commit to deepen the work already undertaken SAPS, to ensure the institutionalisation of the White Paper using these structures. This will be strengthened by the display of commitment to resuscitate CSF and CPFs that have collapsed, provide strategic support to ensure institutionalisation and recognition of the CSF as an important tool for integration at the level of a municipality' as well as at a District level, giving expression to the District Model of the President. At the end of the MTEF, we aspire for CSFs that are institutionalised and at the centre of development in each municipality, having Municipal Safety Plans properly costed and performing to detect, prevent crimes and instability in each ward, be it in an area, business sight - wherever safety is compromised.

*PART C: Measuring Our Performance*

1. Directorate Performance Information

**2. Measuring the impact**

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Impact Statement</b> | Safer communities and integrated law enforcement services that is effective, humane, consistent and fair to all |
|-------------------------|---|

**3. Measuring our Outcomes**

| Outcome  | Outcome Indicator                      | Baseline   | Five year Target   |
|--|--|--|--|
| 1. Society that works together in respecting and abiding by the law                      | Level of safety                        | 2 Community safety satisfaction survey conducted   | Community safety satisfaction survey conducted every 2 years     |
|  | Percentage of awareness campaigns      | 600 awareness campaigns (road safety, fire safety, crime prevention, fraud and corruption) | 5% annual increase in road safety campaigns by 2027              |
| 2. Improved access to Public Safety services that enable voluntary compliance to the law | Percentage of areas accessing services | 50% of wards in the city with access to public safety services                             | 55% of wards in the city with access to public transport by 2027 |

3.1 Explanation of planned performance over the Five year planning period

In ensuring safer communities and provision of adequate, effective, affordable, reliable and accessible public safety services to the residents of the city, the Directorate commits to perform with the limited budget to ensure practical impact on communities.

## IDP REVIEW 2025 - 2026

The outcomes and outcome indicators were developed to respond to the reported increase in bylaw contravention trends and patterns, including road accidents and fatalities in the city. Furthermore, they respond to measures of good governance, access to reliable and constant response to demands for services.

The identified outcomes will be implemented through the following:

- Identification of Policy alignment and consistent execution of inter-governmental relations in achieving the Directorate's mandate.
- Provision of adequate budget to enable effective, efficient, consistent implementation of mandate of the Directorate.
- Increase in human and physical resources, including up skilling of human capital with appropriate interventions to embrace the 4<sup>th</sup> Industrial Revolution and enhance visible policing
- Improved implementation mechanisms to enhance general law enforcement.

### 4. Key Risks

| Outcome   | Key Risks   | Risk Mitigation   |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Society that works together in respecting and abiding by the law | Unethical conduct by officials and service providers/ clients of the Department | Monitor implementation of the ethics and anti-corruption strategy of the Municipality. Raise awareness on the relevant legislations and regulations<br>Investigate and reporting all reported unethical conduct to relevant authorities<br>Take necessary corrective steps where applicable |

| Outcome | Key Risks   | Risk Mitigation  |
|---------|---|--|
|         | <p><b>Lack of value for money on infrastructure or equipment's the Directorate invested in.</b></p>               | <p>Review the specification template to intergrate provision for performance of needs analysis and market research for all infrastructure and equipments before purchasing. Link maintenance for long term agreements/contracts to the life span of equipments. Regular maintenance and utilisation of the existing resources,<br/>Perform impact analysis and report on the impact derived from the infrastructures/installed equipments.</p> |
|         | <p>Inadequate provision of office accommodation and lack of maintenance of existing buildings and facilities.</p> | <p>Perform needs analysis for office space and submit to civil facilities for procurement<br/>Invoke penalty clauses where deviation exist from the maintenance plan.</p>  |

| Outcome | Key Risks | Risk Mitigation   |
|---------|-----------|---|
|         |           | <p>recommendations by Occupational Health and Safety on compliance inspections and report progress to MANCO of the Directorate.</p> |

| Outcome | Key Risks  | Risk Mitigation  |
|---------|--|--|
|         | <p>Inadequate records management system</p>  | <p>Establishment of the Committee responsible for Office accommodation</p> <p>Disposal of old records as per the provisions of records management policy (disposal authority from Provincial Archives)</p>   |
|         | <p>Under collection of Revenue (due to the Department v/s Targeted Revenue Collection)</p>   | <p>Establish the Revenue Forum that sits quarterly (include Justice.</p> <p>Develop revenue collection strategy.</p>   |
|         | <p>Under utilisation of available human resources and infrastructure to execute law enforcement duties due to shortage of complimentary resources.</p> | <p>Provision and maintenance of resources:</p> <p>Re-introduction of subsidised vehicles</p> <p>Procurement of pool vehicles.</p> <p>Procurement of Uniform</p> <p>Procurement and regular maintenance of speed machines.</p> <p>Procurement of fire arms etc.</p> <p>Training of law enforcement officials.</p> |

| Outcome | Key Risks   | Risk Mitigation  |
|---------|---|--|
|         | <p>Non compliance to road traffic regulations by road users could lead to high road accidents and fatalities.</p> | <p>Implementation of road safety programmes.</p> <p>Intensify law enforcement programmes. (Visibility of officers on all roads, inspectorate of VTS and DLTCs etc.)</p> <p>Engagement with relevant stakeholder at Inter Governmental Structures to address issue of quality of our roads.</p> |

**ANNEXURES**

- A. TRAFFIC SERVICES
- B. FIRE AND EMERGENCY SERVICES
- C. LICENCING AND TESTING
- D. LAW ENFORCEMENT AND SECURITY SERVICES
- E. PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS

## **EMERGENCY AND DISASTER MANAGEMENT SERVICES**

### **1. CONSTITUTIONAL MANDATE**

The Constitution of South Africa, 1996. Act No. 108 of 1996

- Section 152(1) (d) and (e) of the Constitution provides for amongst others the following:
  - To promote a safe and healthy environment and;
  - To encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matters of local government;
- Schedule 4 (b) of the Constitution requires the Local Spheres of Government to provide firefighting functions
- Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2000) section 26(g), compels each municipality to develop a Disaster Management Plan as part of an Integrated Development Plan.
- Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002 section 52 and 53): Also compels the municipality to develop its own plan, and stipulates the requirements of the Disaster Management Plan.

### **1. RUSTENBURG EMERGENCY AND DISASTER MANAGEMENT MANDATE:**

To promote a safe and healthy environment through fire and disaster management awareness campaigns, enforcement of fire safety building compliance, mitigating the effects of disasters, respond and recovery.

### **2. LEGISLATIVE AND POLICY MANDATES**

Fire Brigade Services Act 99 of 1987

Disaster Management Act 57 of 2002

Veld and Forest Fire Act 101 of 1998

National Building Regulation and Building Standard Act 103 of 1977

Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000

Municipal Structures Act 117 of 1998

Municipal Finance Management Act 56 of 2003

Criminal Procedures Act 51 of 1977

Explosives Act 15 of 2003

Health and Safety Act 85 of 1993

Hazardous Substance Act 15 of 1973

Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998

South African National Standard:10090 Community protection against fires

South African National Standard:10400

### **3. DISASTER MANAGEMENT PLAN**

**Introduction:**

Rustenburg Local Municipality have developed a disaster management plan, implemented and co-ordinate to ensure that an emergency and disaster management service is rendered to victims in the shortest space of time and in the most cost – effective manner. This emergency and disaster management planning is aimed at the protection of life and property, the continuation of essential service and the continuation of important administrative function.

**Some definitions of concepts related to disasters**

**hazards**

Hazards are threats to life, well-being, material goods and the environment. Extreme natural processes or technology causes them. When a hazard results in great suffering or collapse, it is usually termed a disaster.

**Risk and vulnerability assessment**

Risk may be defined as the expected damage or loss caused by any hazard. Risk usually depends on a combination of two factors:

How often and severe the hazard (e.g. floods and drought)

Vulnerability of the people exposed to these hazards.

Risk perceptions are very complex as they are rooted in history, politics and economy

**Vulnerability**

No matter where one is located, whether in an urban or rural environment, one’s chances of experiencing a disaster are usually strongly linked to one’s vulnerability to the event. The more vulnerable a community, the greater the physical, economic and emotional costs of a disaster. Vulnerability, then is the degree to which an individual, family, community or region is at risk of experiencing misfortune following extreme events.

**Purpose of the Disaster Management Plan**

The purpose of the RLM Disaster Management Plan is:

- To document the institutional arrangements for Disaster Risk Management Planning
- To assign primary and secondary responsibilities for priority disaster risks posing a threat in the Rustenburg Local Municipality
- To establish operational procedures for disaster risk reduction planning as well as the emergency procedure in the event of a disaster occurring or threatening to occur in council’s area
- To facilitate an integrated and coordinated approach to disaster risk management
- To establish risk reduction, resilience building
- Develop adequate capabilities for readiness, and effective and rapid response and recovery.

**Key Performance Areas/Aims:**

- Institutional capacity
- Disaster Risk Identification and Assessment
- Disaster Risk Reduction
- Knowledge management
- Response, recovery, rehabilitation and reconstruction.

Enablers/Programmes:

- Information Management and Communication
- Education, Training, Public Awareness and Research
- Funding Arrangements for Disaster Risk Management.

**The Disaster Management Function**

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Disaster Intervention and Support | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support the identification and assessment of disaster risk, hazards and community capacities at all levels;</li> <li>• Coordinate and provide guidance for disaster-stricken areas before, during and after disaster incidents;</li> <li>• Manage and update the implementation of contingency plans in relation to disaster incidents; and</li> <li>• Operationalization of people-centric early warning systems and community awareness activities.</li> </ul>   |
| Information Technology            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Gather Disaster Risk Management information and disseminate to vulnerable communities</li> <li>• Establish Early Warning Systems as well as Satellites supported by Municipal Geographic Information System (GIS) capability</li> <li>• Maintain a database of institutional role-players</li> </ul>   |
| Capacity Building and Research    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To co-ordinate the development of comprehensive disaster risk management training and capacity building programmes</li> <li>• Promote disaster management capacity building, training and education</li> <li>• Promote the recruitment, training and participation of volunteers in Disaster Risk Management</li> <li>• Co-ordinate Disaster Risk Management Research and strategic knowledge services</li> <li>• Provide on-going advisory services on disaster risk management / reduction including on development programmes and implementation plans</li> </ul> |

| <b>The following principles must serve as a standard universal frame of reference within the Rustenburg Local Municipality:</b> |  |
|---|--|
| Reporting   | <p>This principle is of the utmost importance as the management of any emergency situation starts here. In this regard, the following recommendations are made:</p> <p>That reporting in rural areas be decentralised to nearest SAPS will inform the closest Emergency and Disaster Management Services and that in the case of urban areas, reports are submitted directly to Emergency and Disaster Management Services. That Emergency and Disaster Management Services distribute information to all role- players, that all emergency telephone numbers, and any other effective means of communication, access to the Disaster Management Centre be made available to all wards, That the facilities at Rustenburg Emergency and Disaster Management Services be referred as the nodal point.</p>   |
| Evaluation / Risk Analysis  | <p>The timely identification of potential emergency and disaster and the possible impact thereof will lead to the effective mustering of resources and personnel. In this regard, the following recommendations are made:</p> <p>That the Disaster Management Sections of the Bojanala Platinum District of the North-West Province be responsible to evaluate any report and to determine the possible risk, That the evaluation and risk analysis be done in conjunction with the relevant department(s) and role- players, That the results of such investigation be made available to Emergency and Disaster Management for coordination.</p>  |
| Establishment of a Joint Operation Centre: (JOC)  | <p>The effective co-ordination of all role-players determines the degree of success that will be achieved. Mistakes made here will lead to conflict between officials and adversely affect the rendering of relief services. In this regard, the following recommendations are made:</p> <p>That the establishment of the JOC be multidisciplinary. Those decisions will be taken through a process of joint consultation, That the Head of Disaster Management Centre is in command and every functionary to be in control of his or her own personnel and equipment, that all activities are centralised at and in the JOC. (Nodal point for the operational activities), That the JOC be responsible for the utilisation, allocation and distribution of resources, That the JOC be at a safe and easily identifiable place, That the JOC will prioritise tasks, That the JOC will handle all administration and resource management.</p> |
| Communication   | <p>Without communication, ground to ground to air, the effectiveness of any relief will be severely restricted. As already indicated poor communication in</p>   |

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
|                             | <p>(remote) rural areas is a restricting factor. In this regard, the following recommendations are made:</p> <p>That a dedicated channel for radio communication be implemented between all Units pending available effective relevant resources, that a standard ground to air frequency be identified for disaster management purposes, That the communication work group draws up a communication grid, with frequencies for disaster management purposes.</p>                   |
| Public Relations            | <p>The public should at all times be informed about pending dangers and immediate dangers as well as what is being done in order to prevent mass hysteria. In this regard, the following recommendations are made:</p> <p>That the main functionary prepares press releases with other functionaries supporting. That VIPs be briefed by the JOC at regular intervals.</p>  |
| Cordon off the scene        | <p>The safety of relief personnel is of the utmost importance as well as the securing of any scene for investigation purposes. The scene has to be declared safe by emergency personnel and /or the SAPS. In this regard, the following recommendations are made:</p> <p>That the person / functionary first on the scene cordon off the scene.</p> <p>That the scene be secured by the emergency service and / the SAPS in co-operation with any other functionary if need be.</p> |
| Administrative Control      | <p>This principle ensures that in case a disaster situation is declared there will be documentation that will support the application. Members of the JOC will also be able to make informed decisions. This documentation will also be of great value when a specific situation(s) is reviewed.</p>  |
| Resource Management         | <p>Each functionary will be in control of his own resources, but a central resource list must be kept. This will bring about that all resources will be managed centrally. Each functionary will be responsible for the maintenance of equipment and support personnel. The main principal here being that all resources are centrally co –ordinate but managed decentralised.</p>  |
| Emergency Medical Post      | <p>In all disasters, there are people in need of medical assistance. Lives are lost because of uncoordinated and slow reaction. This service must be rendered according to the norms and principles as laid down by the SA Medical and Dental Council.</p>  |
| Recovery and Rehabilitation | <p>The normalisation of a community and /or affected area is of the utmost importance. Rehabilitation should be aimed at the prevention of the reoccurrence of the specific disaster or emergency or to minimise the impact thereof in the case that it should occur again. If no attention is paid to recovery and rehabilitation, the long-term impact of any disaster will</p>   |

|   |   |
|---|---|
|   | adversely affect the community, the economy, development, production, welfare, health matters etc.  |
| Prevention  | The old saying “prevention is better than cure” applies here. It is therefore important that emergency and disaster management officials be involved in all development projects. If no active mitigation measures are implemented, the risk to vulnerability of communities will be increased. Prevention not only refers to pre-disaster mitigation measures but also to post-disaster mitigation measures. This principle will always reduce risk because of the mere fact that preventive measures lead to the early identifying of other risks. Even secondary risk will be identified |
| <b>Summary on principles</b>  |   |
| <p>The implementation of these principles will lead to a co-ordinated approach by all stakeholders with regards to any emergency or disaster situation. This co-ordinated approach will raise the success factor in the handling of any possible emergency or disaster situation.</p> <p>A unilateral approach will amplify the impact of a disaster. All the role players are interdependent and therefore a uniform approach should and must be adopted.</p> <p>The simplicity of these principles will ensure the effective implementation by all role players. Even with the absence of any specific plan for a specific emergency the implementation of these principles will lead to succeed.</p> |   |

**COLLABORATION WITH DIFFERENT STAKE HOLDERS (Primary Internal structures)**

- Required Collaboration:
- On receipt of early warning or significant event or incident:
- Immediately notify Disaster Management Centre
- Establish Joint Operational Centre
- Inform the Executive Mayor and the Municipal Manager
- Inform the Directors relevant to the incidents
- Ensure prompt information and effective communication to various stakeholders
- Ensure representation in the JOC of key Directorate or agencies such as:
- BPDM Disaster Management Centre and Satellite Centres
- Fire Services
- Emergency Medical Rescue Services
- Traffic Services
- South African Police Service (SAPS).
- Social Development:
- Electrical, roads, water, sanitation, storm water drainage services (Technical Infrastructure)
- Housing services
- Community development
- South African Police Service (SAPS)

## IDP REVIEW 2025 - 2026

- South African National Defence Force (SANDF)
- Nature conservation
- National parks
- Ward Disaster Management Forum/Committee
- Farmers and Farm Associations
- The agent representing the affected Disaster Management Centre of neighbouring authorities
- Specialist and experts in dealing with specific hazard.

### **Municipal Manager:**

- On receipt of the alert from Director Public Safety or Head of Emergency Services and Disaster Management, Municipal Manager must activate key personnel of the Directorates and proceed directly to the Disaster Management Centre
- Convene emergency council meeting and other committee meeting as may be required  
Issue instructions to ensure continuation of municipal services.

### **Director: Technical and Infrastructure:**

- Activate key personnel of the Directorate and proceed directly to the Disaster Management Centre
- Coordinate all function of the Directorate during a disaster
- Enlist the assistance of trained volunteers if necessary, in consultation with Head of the Disaster Management
- Identify additional equipment and supplies for the provision of services
- Organise professional and technical personnel and resources of the Directorate: to repair and maintain critical infrastructure and essential services including roads, bridges, waste, water, electrical service supplies during a disaster, to make provision for delivery of emergency supplies necessary to conduct any repairs (vehicle and mechanical workshops), to arrange for emergency water and electrical supplies as required.
- Assist with the provision and delivery of emergency shelter/accommodation.

### **Director: Community Development:**

- Activate key personnel of the Directorate
- Coordinate all functions of the Directorate during a disaster
- Organise and control the professional and technical resources to ensure the provision of adequate health and social services. This includes even liaison with the relevant provincial and district municipal departments.
- Organize and control all activities and requirement associated with the provision of:
  - Food
  - Clothing
  - Blankets
- Liaise with welfare and relief NGO's business undertaking.

**Director: Public Safety:**

- Activate key personnel:
- Coordinate all functions of the Directorate during a disaster
- Organise and control professional and technical resources of the directorate to ensure the provision of fire services, disaster management, traffic and security services
- Identify sources and additional equipment and supplies for the provision of protection services and place of safety in consultation with other Directorates i.e. Community Development and Planning and Human Settlement
- Activate security services to ensure access control to the Disaster Management Centre
- Ensure that Joint Operation Centre is established
- Enlist the assistance of trained disaster management teams and volunteers as required
- Enlist the assistance of other Directorates, neighbouring fire services
- Ensure that the traffic officer on site report to JOC, traffic services is represented at the JOC.

**Director: Finance:**

- Coordinate all functions of the Directorate during a disaster
- Identify sources of additional equipment and supplies for provision of financial services
- Arrange for all emergency funding requirement
- Ensure the safety of all financial records and archives.
- Delegate the following duties to Directorate staff:
  - The procurement of all goods and services required throughout the duration of the disaster
  - The maintenance of a complete record of all cost incurred throughout the duration of the disaster (wages, hire of plant and transport, etc.).

**Director: Corporate Support Services:**

- Activate key personnel and proceed directly to the disaster management centre
- Coordinate all functions of the Directorate during a disaster
- Ensure the safekeeping of all council records
- Provide secretarial and administrative services
- Ensure that accurate records of dead, injured and missing persons are kept.

**Director: Planning and Human Settlement:**

- Activate key personnel
- Organise and control all professional and supportive personnel
- Deploy personnel to the disaster site
- Identify sources of additional equipment and supplies for the provision of emergency accommodation:
  - Shelter
  - surveys and assess availability

**SUMMARY OF CHALLENGES**

| #  | MAJOR CHALLENGES                            | ROOT CAUSES (NOT MORE THAN 2)          | EFFECTS  | PRACTICAL INTERVENTION OR SOLUTIONS  |
|----|---|--|--|--|
| 1. | Protests                                    | Poor service delivery                  | Instability and destruction of properties  | Improved communication<br>Timeous response   |
| 2. | High rate of crime                          | Unemployment and high influx of people | Impact negatively on the investor confidence and instil a sense of insecurity                            | Enhancement of integrated approach through Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED)       |
| 3. | Land invasion                               | Urbanization<br>Political influence    | Civil conflict<br>Disrupt spatial development  | Intensify villages, small dorpiess programme<br>Integrated approach                                    |
| 4. | Moral degeneration or delay                 | Disregard good values and Botho.       | General disrespect of the law, property and fellow human beings (conflict, violence, damages and losses) | Intensification of moral regeneration programmes.  |
| 5. | Theft and vandalism of municipal properties | Inadequate provision of security       | The municipality lose money<br>Affect service delivery   | changing of security personnel which is not a solution.<br>Allocation of adequate budget for security. |

**EMERGENCY AND DISASTER MANAGEMENT ANALYSIS AND ANTICIPATED SERVICES**

The Rustenburg Local Municipality have established three fire stations located in the areas of Rustenburg CBD, Marikana (Ward 32) and Phatsima (Ward 1). The Municipality has a control room servicing the entire community in its jurisdiction on a 24 hours’ basis. The establishment of Fire Stations bring services closer to communities resulting in reduced response times. The Rustenburg Local Municipality is in the process of refurbishment of Phatsima Fire Station.

The Greater Rustenburg Fire Protection Association (FPA) is actively operating in the areas of Rustenburg Local Municipality. The Fire Protection Association is in possession of specialised fire equipment’s and machineries. The existing Fire Protection Associations engaged in fire prevention activities resulting in increased capacity and reduced fire incidents.

Section 51(1) and (2) of the Disaster Management Act 57 of 2002 provides for the establishment of a municipal disaster management advisory forum, a body in which a municipality and relevant role-players consult one another, coordinate their actions on matters relating to disaster

management. Rustenburg Local Municipality convene a disaster management forum on quarterly basis or when the needs arise.

Inadequate manning level of the Emergency and Disaster Management Services results in poor rating from non-compliant with section 5 of the South African National Standard 10090. This also results in non-implementation of by-laws and less effective Emergency and Disaster Management Services. Aging Fire Service 's vehicles; renders the services less efficient, staff and assets vulnerable; Climate changes continue to pose threats to lives and properties as water sources are depleted leading to water shortage for human consumption and for firefighting; Bad roads conditions cause inaccessibility to areas affected by disasters/ fire incidents.

Fire and Disaster awareness campaigns continue to be intensified in the communities and other organisations to reduce disasters, fires and motor vehicle accidents occurrences, and reports about activities performed by Emergency and Disaster Management Services are sent quarterly to apprise the provincial disaster centre of such activities as per the requirement of section 50 (2) an of the disaster management act 57 of 2002.

**THE TABLE DEPICTING VULNERABLE AREAS DUE TO DISASTER SITUATION**

| AREAS CATEGORISED (Indicate most affected) | WARD NUMBER                         | AREAS AFFECTED   | PRE-DOMINANT HAZARD | CAUSES  |
|--|-------------------------------------|--|---------------------|---|
| Villages                                   | 1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8, 23,25,29, 30,44,36 | Phatsima<br>Monnakato,<br>Ikageng,<br>Lekgalong<br>Kanana<br>Luka,<br>Phokeng,<br>Lefaragatlhe,<br>Maumong,<br>Barseba,<br>Modikwe,<br>Lekgalong,<br>Bethany,<br>Lekgalong,<br>Mathopestad | Floods              | Most residential dwellings built on 15 - 20 years flood plain |
|  |                                     |  | storms              | Settlement in flat areas                                      |
| Informal settlements                       | 19,20,21,22,27, 28,31,32,           | Ramochana<br>Freedom park  | Floods              | No drainage systems   |
|  | 33,34,35, 37,38,39,40,41            | Lethabong<br>Sondela   | Fires               | Negligence', illegal power                                    |

| AREAS CATEGORISED<br>(Indicate most affected) | WARD NUMBER   | AREAS AFFECTED   | PRE-DOMINANT HAZARD | CAUSES  |
|---|---|--|---------------------|---|
|   |   | Popo Molefe<br>Sunrise Park  |                     | connection  |
| RDP-houses                                    | 12,19,20,21,24,<br>25,27,28,<br><br>31,32,33,<br>34,36,<br>37,38,39,40,41 | Meriting Ext 4&5<br>Mathopestad<br>Freedom park  | storms              | Roof of houses not strong to stand the strong storms  |
|   |   | Freedom Park<br>Seraleng<br>Marikana phase 4<br>Boitekong Extension 23                           | Floods              | No proper infrastructure (drainage and roads)   |
| Urban areas                                   | 8,9,10,11,12,13<br>,19,22,37  | Tlhabane Rampa Primary<br>School areas (Rabatjie Street)<br>Paardekraal ext. 3<br>Meriting Ext 2 | Floods              | Drainage system blocked   |
| CBD   | 14,15,16,17,18,<br>43,42  | CBD Roads,   | Floods              | Storm-water Drainage systems are blocked<br><br>Other sections of road do not have drainage systems |
|   |   | Kremetart bridge<br>Middle bridge Dorpspruit bridge  |                     | Bridges-culverts are blocked and small<br><br>Also, very low  |
| Farms   | 1,31,32,35,36   | Marikana Erasmus Plot<br>Boshoek plot 92   | Floods and Storms   | No developments in these areas  |

| GENERIC TYPE AND LEVEL OF SERVICES   |  |   |  |  |  |
|--|--|---|--|--|--|
| PREVENTION AND MITIGATION  |  | PREPAREDNESS  |  | RESPONSE AND RECOVERY  |  |
| Integration of Disaster Management Issues into sectoral and local development policies, plans, and budget<br><br>Conducting Community Base Risk Assessment<br><br>Early warning systems are to be improved<br><br>Increase disaster resiliency of infrastructure systems |  | Enhance level of awareness and capacity of communities to the impacts of hazards<br><br>Communities are equipped with necessary skills and capability to cope with the impact of disasters<br><br>Strengthened partnership and coordination among all key role players and stakeholders (Local Disaster Advisory Forum, Inter – Departmental Technical Advisory Forum, Disaster Ward Forum) |  | Adequate and prompt assessment of needs and damages<br><br>Integrated and coordinated search and rescue capacity<br><br>Temporary shelter needs are adequately addressed<br><br>Basic social provided to affected communities (Social Relief of distress)<br><br>Psychological needs of affected communities addressed |  |
| TYPE AND LEVEL OF SERVICE  |  |   |  |  |  |
| WARD NO:   | Type of incidents  | Integrated Institution Capacity   | Risk Assessment  | Disaster Risk Reduction  | Response & Recovery  |
|  | Fire<br><br>Floods<br><br>Storms<br><br>Epidemic out break<br><br>Climate Change | All stakeholders coordinated to implement Policy and Legislation  | Coordinate risk assessment with other role players to inform plans | To develop and implement Disaster risk management Plans and Programmes   | Implementing all rehabilitation and reconstruction strategies following disaster in an integrated development manner |

Table: Disaster Management Plan

| ANALYSIS OF THE SECTOR PLAN  | AIM OF THE SECTOR PLAN  | PROJECT/ PROGRAMMES   | WHAT THE DIRECTORATE WILL BE ABLE TO IMPLEMENT IN 5 YEARS  | CHALLENGES  |
|--|---|---|--|---|
| Disaster Management Plan Adopted and approved in 2017. Fire Risk Management Plan Adopted and Approved in 2018. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Build institutional capacity</li> <li>-Disaster risk identification and analysis</li> <li>-Disaster Risk deduction</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Capacitating the Disaster Risk Management Centre</li> <li>- Intensifying community forums</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Effective staffing of the Centre</li> <li>- Provision of resources for effective performance</li> <li>- Volunteer Brigade</li> <li>- Revitalise the Disaster Management Forums</li> </ul>   | <p>No funding for equipment and materials.</p> <p>Inadequate funding for stipend</p>  |
| Municipal Systems Act compels Municipalities to develop Disaster Management Plan as part of IDP.               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Knowledge Management</li> <li>-Response, recovery, rehabilitation and reconciliation.</li> </ul>                              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Establishment of a volunteer programme for Disaster Risk identification and Knowledge Management.</li> <li>- Disaster Bus and Trucks</li> <li>- Emergency Precinct</li> </ul> <p>(Decentralisation)</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Improve the pro-active, monitoring and responsive capability of the Disaster Management Centre,</li> <li>- Updated Volunteer database</li> <li>- Effective Disaster Risk Register</li> <li>- Recorded Disaster Risk assessment for all municipal wards</li> <li>- Provision of both human and financial resources</li> <li>- Provision of fleet and effective required equipment's</li> </ul> | <p>Unable to fulfil this project due to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Funding</li> <li>- Skilled personnel to address legislations KPA's and Enablers</li> <li>- Required resources</li> </ul> |

**EDUCATION AND AWARENESS CAMPAIGNS CONDUCTED**

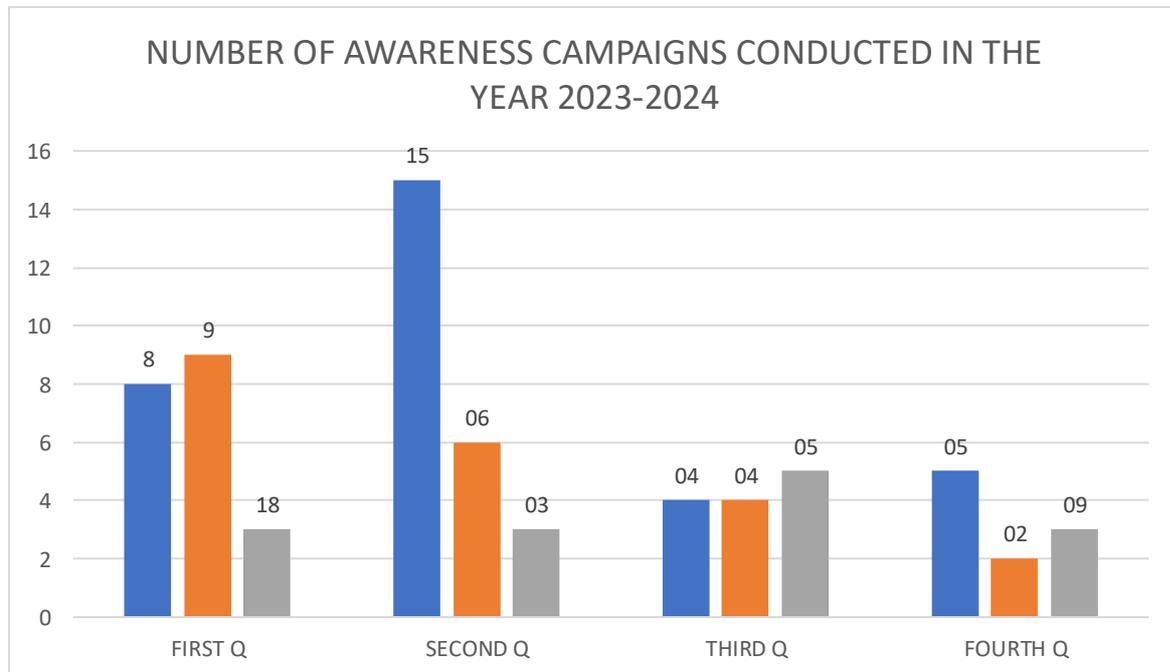
The following categories of fires and disaster are in the programme of Emergency and Disaster Management Service's Awareness Campaigns. Awareness campaigns are conducted at primary schools, high schools, institutions of higher learning, mines, hospitals, old age homes, fuel garages and other

## IDP REVIEW 2025 - 2026

business premises. These awareness programs include the following classes of fire and disaster related aspects:

- Class A is ordinary combustible material, such as wood, rubber, grass, cloth and papers
- Class B is flammable and combustible liquid and gas like, gasoline, oil, paint, mineral spirit and alcohol.
- Class C includes energised electrical equipment such as electrical motor, computers, and transformers.
- Avoiding establishment of structures under electrical power supply line and low lying areas
- Avoiding construction of buildings with materials capable of igniting easily due to fires.

### **Graph Highlighting Number Of Fire Education And Awareness Campaigns Conducted**



- A total number of sixty four (88) awareness campaigns was conducted during 2023/24 financial year by Emergency and Disaster Management Services.
- Public education and awareness campaigns is critical more especially in business trading with petroleum liquid, schools and in the mining sector to prevent fire occurrence and other disastrous situations.

### FIRE SAFETY COMPLAINT INSPECTIONS

Fire safety inspections are conducted in business premises to prevent the phenomenon of fires and disasters within the jurisdiction of Rustenburg LM. Inspections are conducted in the following categories: Building Plans, Flammables Permits, Transport Permits, Hydrant Inspections, Inspections on request, Information release and Fire by-law enforcement.

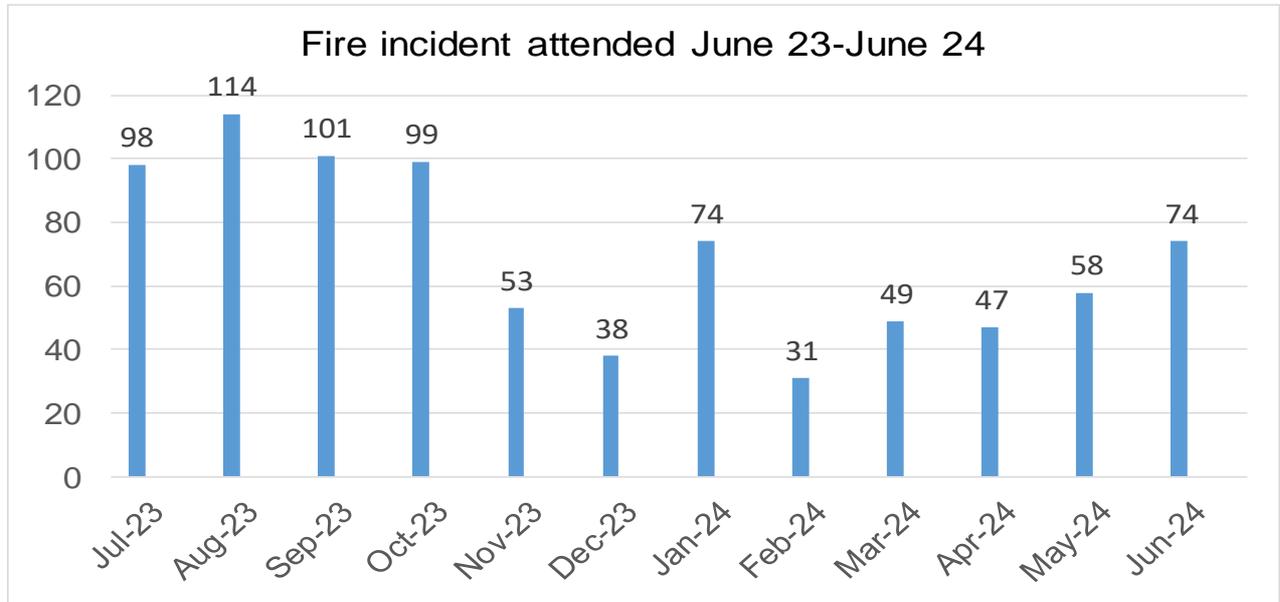


- Fire safety compliance inspections conducted during July – June 2023/24 calculated at One thousand five hundred and fifty-three (1 553) July – June 2024
- Enforcement of compliance through inspections play a significant role in the reduction of the phenomenon of fires, that may escalate to disastrous situation.

### TYPE OF INCIDENTS

The following types of incidents are responded by emergency and disaster services buildings (high rise, mines, malls, hospitals etc.) dwellings (formal - brick & mortar), informal dwellings (Shacks/mud/hut etc.), electrical, rubbish, vegetation, transport (Cars/busses/trains/aircraft/ship), ancillary services: provision of potable water, ancillary services: locked premises and rescue (people/animals trapped/lost from machinery or water etc.), spillages (oil, diesel on road services), hazmat spillages (chemicals etc..) and any other types of humanitarian services.

**The graph below depicts the stats per months in fire incident attended.**



**Trend of annual fire calls**

| Year      | July | Aug | Sep | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | April | May | Jun |
|-----------|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|
| 2023/2024 | 98   | 114 | 101 | 99  | 53  | 38  | 74  | 31  | 49  | 47    | 58  | 74  |
| 2022/2023 | 53   | 46  | 96  | 62  | 34  | 65  | 51  | 39  | 34  | 38    | 47  | 82  |
| 2021/2022 | 53   | 55  | 73  | 38  | 41  | 42  | 36  | 28  | 32  | 39    | 36  | 60  |
| 2020/2021 | 110  | 87  | 67  | 40  | 44  | 30  | 30  | 16  | 44  | 61    | 72  | 72  |

The sum of calls responded calculated to eight hundred and thirty-six (836) during 2023/24 as compared to six hundred and seventy-two (647) of 2022/23 financial year. An increase to the phenomenon of fire calls during 2023/24 can be associated with vegetation fires during month of July – October 2023. High rate of calls were attended to, during August at 13.6%, followed by July at 12%. The low rate of calls attended was during the month of February at 3.7%. High rate of calls during August is associated to winter vegetation.

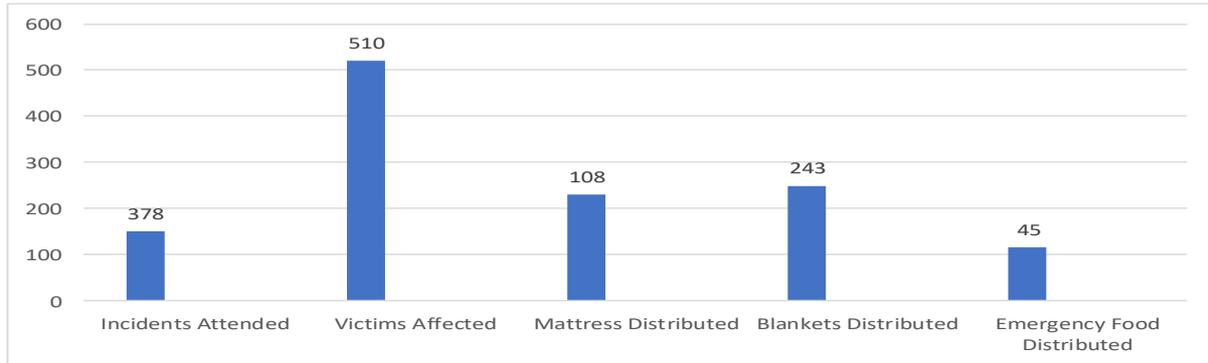
**Disaster incidents statistics and relief material**

Implement the legislative requirements of the DM Act – Provide a co-ordinating, monitoring and supporting authority, that is to ensure the creation and maintenance of a safe municipality which will provide to all it’s residents an integrated and co-ordinated approach to disaster management with the focus on:

- Vulnerability reduction in disaster prone areas, communities and households with the emphasis on disaster prevention and mitigation (risk reduction activities).

**IDP REVIEW 2025 - 2026**

-Efficient and effective disaster management preparedness, response and recovery activities through the necessary structures, systems and mechanisms.



**Table depicting disaster incidents statistics and relief material issued of Jul-June 2023/24**

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Number Risk Assessments Conducted | 32  |
| Rapid Incidents Assessment        | 378 |
| Education & Awareness Campaigns   | 43  |
| Evacuation Drills                 | 15  |
| Ad-Hoc Meetings                   | 23  |
| Advisory Forums                   | 15  |

**7.1 FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (FPA)**

Greater Rustenburg Fire Protection Association is actively operating with a total number of two hundred and thirty-five (235) members. Fire Protection Association are established to develop strategies and plans for combating fires in their jurisdictions. Applications for burning permit are submitted to the Municipality for approval, and fines issued to non-compliance.

**CHALLENGES**

| ISSUE   | INTERVENTION REQUIRED                     |
|---|---|
| Fire Stations not meeting the minimum requirement standard of 10090 (Matopestad and Lethabong Fire Stations outstanding); | Establishment of additional Fire Stations |
| Aging of fire hydrants;   | Replacement of old fire hydrants          |
| A current twenty-seven (27%) of manning Level does not meet the minimum requirement standard of 10090;                    | Increase manning level                    |
| Unavailability of water tankers for relay pumping and hydraulic platform for rescue in high rise buildings;               | Prioritise water tankers and platform     |
| Bad road conditions;  | Rehabilitation of roads                   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Community erecting structure in low laying areas with adverse effect to coping capacity; | Education, awareness campaigns and policing |
| Increase land invasion and failure to adhere to building code in informal settlements;   | Enforcement of Policing strategies          |

The RLM Emergency plan was approved by the council on 29 November 2011 as per item 317 and reviewed in April 2017. Disaster Management Contingency Plan was approved by Council on 29 November 2011 per item 318 and reviewed in April 2017.

TRAFFIC SERVICES

| <b>1. CONSTITUTIONAL MANDATE</b>                            |  |
|---|--|
| The Constitution of South Africa, 1996. Act No. 108 of 1996 | Section 25(1) (d) and (e) of the Constitution provides for amongst others the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To promote a safe and healthy environment; and</li> <li>• To encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matters of local government;</li> </ul> |

**2. RUSTENBURG MUNICIPAL TRAFFIC DEPARTMENT'S MANDATE:**

The mandate of the unit is to promote community and road safety through road safety education, positively influencing road user behaviour through road safety awareness, traffic law enforcement and promote the rule of law through tracing and arresting offenders with warrants of arrest.

**3. LEGISLATIVE AND POLICY MANDATES**

- *Act 108 of 1996, the Constitution*
- *Critical Infrastructure Protection Act, Act 8 of 2019*
- *Cross Border Transport Act, Act 4 of 1998*
- *Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences Act, Act 46 of 1998 as amended by Act 4 of 2019*
- *The Firearms Control Act, Act 60 of 2000*
- *National Land Transition Act, Act 5 of 2009 as amended*
- *National Road Traffic Amendment Act, Act 64 of 2008*
- *National Road Traffic Act, Act 93 of 1996*
- *Criminal Procedure Act 51 of 1977 as amended*
- *White Paper on National Transport Policy, 1996*
- *Transport Appeal Tribunal Act, Act 39 of 1998*
- *White Paper on Safety & Security of 1998*

## IDP REVIEW 2025 - 2026

- *Road Traffic Management Corporation Act, Act 20 of 1999*
- *National Road Safety Strategy, 2016-2030*

### **RELEVANT COURT RULINGS**

Landmark Court Ruling on private roads: Enforcement of road traffic law on mining and private estate roads

In the matter of Niemesh Singh // Mount Edgcombe Country Club Estate: The learned Judge V. Ponnar ordered that the enforcement of the Road Traffic Act within the private estate may only be carried out by a peace officer, meaning a traffic official. The challenge is in most instances, it is almost impossible to enter a private dwelling as a peace officer and enforce the provisions of the Traffic Act.

Dragger: impacts on the machinery/ equipment usage

In the high court of South Africa Gauteng Division, Pretoria case no: 32097/2020 in the matter between: Organisation Undoing Tax abuse applicant and Minister of Transport wherein court declares **AARTO unconstitutional and invalid**

AARTO: affects administration of traffic fines

### **RUSTENBURG MUNICIPAL TRAFFIC STRATEGIC FOCUS**

#### **RUSTENBURG DEPARTMENT PERSONNEL**

The Department has lost a lot of Traffic Officers since 2005. No replacement of officers has taken place and no new entrants into the Department. Budgeted positions are not filled thus impacting negatively on visibility of traffic officers on the roads, traffic congestions and delayed responses to incidents reported.

Council has resolved per resolution 5.2 dated 20 March 2014 that a two-shift system be implemented from June 2014. Traffic Department is operating on a 24/7 shift system and the available limited personnel is thinly spread amongst eight different shifts. Various shifts have a total number of between five (5) and seven (7) operational members. This means that on every given day, the Department ideally has a total number of four shifts on duty with a maximum of 20 uniformed personnel.

There are about forty (40) critical intersections around the CBD, R510, R24 and other internal roads which need traffic control or point duty during peak hours or when traffic lights (robots) are off. With less than twenty officers attending various accidents in various locations, scheduled escorts and other duties such as road closures during service delivery protests etc, it is almost impossible to maintain traffic police visibility and address the issue of traffic congestion in various areas within the municipality. Accidents and other traffic service demands that take place in far-flung wards take time to attend because of limited personnel. Traffic services is largely centralised and this affects response time.

The Unit Manager provides strategic leadership while Section Managers lead Administration and Operations. The Unit's mandate is achieved through the high-level Unit structure. There are four main programmes; these are managed by three Section Managers for core programmes supported by Senior Superintendents:

The programmes or sections in this regard are:

- Traffic Support Services – Administration
- Traffic Operations – Traffic Policing – National Road Traffic Act
- Public Transport Law Enforcement – National Land Transport Act
- Road Safety and Training
- Municipal Court Services ((Traffic Court Services)

#### **METHODOLOGY: NEW AND IMPROVED APPROACH**

The scenario above illustrates a deeper need for a holistic intervention to ensure that communities are and feel safe in our roads. An integrated approach to consolidate all efforts by all role players to decrease accidents and through road safety education, traffic engineering , law enforcement and community mobilisation.

The Unit will work towards the incorporation of systems to improve performance of the Traffic officials and support staff alike. The fourth industrial revolution calls for communities and the State to embrace new technologies. The need to embrace technology will guarantee effective, timeous and measurable outputs which are critical for analysis and improvement of impact driven performance of the Unit.

Analysed data and performance directs that, the traffic managers are required to spend a considerable amount of time consolidating reports in offices, transferring raw data from one source to the other for purposes of span of control and planning, which process comes with its own challenges. These leads to continuous audit queries. The Unit will work towards improved performance by ensuring that:

- Improved Integrated systems in traffic services to enhance impact performance towards the reduction of fatal crashes on the roads
- Engagement with Labour Unions to present new approaches to the conditions of service to traffic officials and support staff, which will allow for officers to spend more time on the road than in the office in an affordable, efficient and impact driven manner.
- Re-orientation and de-briefing sessions to ensure a healthy workforce ready to withstand the challenges on the roads
- Strengthened collaboration with sister departments to enforce discipline on the road thereby leading to behavioural change by road users
- Improved and intensified dialogues, awareness and engagement with communities to improve road safety

## IDP REVIEW 2025 - 2026

- Rehabilitate and strengthen monitoring of traffic infrastructure enabling the component to provide consistent, reliable and quality services. These will include but not limited to calibration of weighbridges, speed machines and rehabilitation of infrastructure

In keeping up with the integrated approach, the Unit aims at re-establishing integrated multi-disciplinary governance structures, which will speak and produce holistic results. This approach will recognise the three tiers of measurement:

- a) **GOVERNANCE** - structures at managerial and technical levels inclusive of primary and secondary stakeholders on a consistent basis to inform decision making, planning and monitoring. These will include system development, standardization, role clarification linked to various mandates; shared services where necessary to enhance performance. Data collected will assist in evaluation, analysis as well as inform future planning.
- b) **JOINT PLANS/OPERATIONS** — Road Safety through joint operations, stop and search and checkpoints, fines and awareness campaigns as well as targeted patrols. These will assist in awakening the consciousness of communities and road users thereby changing behavior.

### *c) IMPLEMENTATION of planned and AGREED DECISIONS TO ENHANCE*

**INTERGRATION** — areas which needs to be implemented by individual partners will be monitored through the structures that are created.

### **EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT ANALYSIS**

The following are externa/ environmental factors likely to impede the positive plans of the Unit in the quest for attainment of mandate. These factors are largely dependent on other sector departments for implementation/ improvement:

- The poor road infrastructure network
- ✓ Re- Orientation of traffic officers towards a de-militarised approach in service provision
- ✓ The Inter-Security challenges in various Departments which has an impact on relations, leading to low morale on officers, defiance and other lawlessness.
- Societal Expectation against the available resources to meet the expectation and promises
- Poor policy coordination amongst stakeholders towards the attainment of common interests.

### **Internal Environment Analysis**

The Unit commits to perform with the limited budget to ensure practical impact to safer roads.

The following are amongst the many key issues to be lifted and driven from the Department:

- Identify Policy alignment and clearly defined responsibilities by each stakeholder/partner
- Adequate budget to enable effective, efficient, consistent implementation of mandates of the Unit
- Improved conditions of services for officers and managers on level six and level 8a
- Increase in human and physical resources

## IDP REVIEW 2025 - 2026

- Improved implementation mechanisms
- Re- Orientation of traffic officers towards a de-militarised approach in service provision
- Commit to consistent inter-governmental relations in the execution of mandates

The renewed commitment displayed by the workforce in the Unit during the implementation of 24/7 shift system process, as well as in the formalisation of span of control driven outcomes and outputs, indicators linked to the outcomes is unparalleled and bring about a new ray of hope

### LICENSING AND TESTING

| <b>1. Constitutional Mandate</b>                               |  |
|--|--|
| The Constitution of South Africa, 1996.<br>Act No. 108 of 1996 | <p>The Constitution is the supreme law of the Republic of South Africa. Schedule 4 sets out the areas of provincial legislative competence. The functional areas of the concurrent national and provincial competence are listed as</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Road Traffic Regulation</li><li>• Public Transport</li><li>• Vehicle licensing and testing of Drivers.</li></ul> <p>All the legislative mandates of the Road Traffic Management Corporation are enacted in terms of Section 76 (5) of the Constitution</p> |

#### **Licensing and testing Functional areas**

Road Safety – Testing and Licensing of Drivers and

Data Management – Vehicle Registration and licensing/Renewal

Road Traffic Information System (eNatis)

The mandate of the unit is to Promote Road Safety by performing the following:

#### **Core Business / Functions.**

- Collection of Revenue
- Registration and Licensing of motor vehicle
- Testing and licensing of motor vehicles (learners and drivers licences)
- Testing of applicants for their learners and driver's licenses
- Testing of all categories of motor vehicles for roadworthiness.
- Identified community needs:
- Inadequate offices for service delivery
- Long queues and waiting times a due to lack of office space
- Corruption and bribery
- None compliance to the SABS code of Practice

## IDP REVIEW 2025 - 2026

- Poor services.

### **Strategic Objectives:**

- To decentralise services
- To provide an effective, efficient and economic service delivery
- To prevent corruption and fraud
- To enhance financial viability
- To reduce unregistered vehicles on the road
- To register and deregister motor vehicles
- To register motor dealers and corporate clients (Business Registration Number/BRN) on the eNatis
- Issuance of Traffic Register Number Certificates to foreign nationals
- To introduce new/build-up trailer/ motor vehicle
- To enforce compliance of dealers with relevant legislations
- To issue temporary permits, roadworthy certificates, professional driving permits, learners and driving licenses
- To test and examine motor vehicles, for roadworthiness and to determine the competency of a driver of all categories of motor vehicles.

### **Legislative and Policy Mandates**

- Act 108 of 1996, the Constitution
- Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences Act, Act 46 of 1998 as amended by Act 4 of 2019
- National Road Traffic amendment Act, Act 64 of 2008
- National Road Traffic Act, Act 93 of 1996
- Criminal Procedure Act 51 of 1977 as amended
- White Paper on National Transport Policy, 1996
- Transport Appeal Tribunal Act, Act 39 of 1998
- Road Traffic Management Corporation Act, Act 20 of 1999
- National Road Safety Strategy, 2016-2030
- The South African National Bureau of Standard (SANS) 10216 & 10247

### **Decentralisation of Services**

- The Directorate Public Safety is vigorously decentralizing services of Licensing and Testing to Municipal Regional Community Centers (RCC) with main intensions of taking services to communities within municipal borders. The extension of services was introduced to Chaneng and Marikana which were both operationalised.
- The existing Marikana RCC could not accommodate all functions offered by a Registering Authority hence an alternative solution came about.
- A building was identified behind existing RCC which needed structural modification to suite services offered by a Registering Authority. Project Management Unit (P.M.U) subsequently assisted with the drawing of a plan to suite the purpose.

- The North West Provincial Department of Community Safety and Transport Management have also contributed towards the reconfiguration of the said building to qualify it to their operational standards. The building was renovated under the management of PMU of the municipality.

### **Challenges at Satellite Stations**

The capital allocated for the project did not manage to complete the reconfiguration of the building, however, both stations are currently rendering services to its adjacent communities.

The following outstanding work can be earmarked as phase two of the project while the station is operational.

- Erecting of Public toilets for customers at both stations
- Installation of water tankers
- Erecting of Car ports for council vehicles
- Erecting of fencing at Marikana to secure the building.

### **Anti-Corruption Drive**

- After series of unprecedented corruption activities complaints and clients' frustrating experiences at various Licensing and Testing Stations across the country, a more advance technological devises were introduced by managing agent of this services, the Road Traffic Management Corporation. The RTMC interventions has brought the following anti-fraud mechanisms.
  - ❖ **eNatis Biometrics logging system-** installed at all eNatis terminals, including Charora and Marikana stations, to protect individual operators' password. Only authorised registered users are verified through Home Affairs before accessing eNatis system.
  - ❖ **Smart Live Capturing Unit 3X-** "All In One" stop Eye testing equipment for processing and payment on the renewal of Drivers & Public Driving Permit. The client will be tested, issued with eye testing results and pay at the same terminal. Then examiner will now electronically order the Drivers license from printing from DLCA immediately. Those who need temporary driving license will be issued with one.
  - ❖ **Roadworthy Test Sheet (RTS) Mobile Device 1X-** a GPS tablet or mobile device which promptly request examiner to take snapshots/ pictures randomly during the test using a precise location. RTMC send OPT daily to be used only by the testing examiner and cannot be reused for another vehicle. This initiative will eliminate vehicles issuance with roadworthiness certificate without appearing at any registered vehicle testing station.

## LAW ENFORCEMENT AND SECURITY

**CRIME PREVENTION PLAN AND STRATEGY**

Although crime prevention is not a local government function, crime happens within the municipal space thus compelling local government to participate in crime reduction and fighting elements of crime. The table below depicts the types and number of crimes reported/happening within the municipal jurisdiction.

|  | Rustenburg   |
|--|--------------|
| <b>Murder</b>  | <b>2 284</b> |
| <b>Attempted murder</b>  | <b>588</b>   |
| <b>Assault with the intent to inflict grievous bodily harm</b> | <b>1 782</b> |
| <b>Common assault</b>  | <b>1 109</b> |
| <b>Sexual crimes - Total</b>                                   | <b>1 639</b> |
| <b>Robbery with aggravating circumstances</b>                  | <b>694</b>   |
| <b>Malicious damage to property</b>                            | <b>613</b>   |
| <b>Burglary at residential premises</b>                        | <b>841</b>   |
| <b>Burglary at business premises</b>                           | <b>179</b>   |
| <b>Theft of motor vehicle and motorcycle</b>                   | <b>1 074</b> |
| <b>Theft out of or from motor vehicle</b>                      | <b>1 746</b> |
| <b>Stock-theft</b>   | <b>2 284</b> |
| <b>Drug-related crime</b>                                      | <b>588</b>   |
| <b>Commercial crime</b>  | <b>1 782</b> |

The Local Crime Prevention Strategy (LCPS) is developed in line with the Growth and Development Strategy (GDS) of the municipality which seeks to: -

Serve as an overarching planning instrument, articulating the developmental agenda, and Provide strategic direction for the Rustenburg Local Municipality with regard to the fight against crime. Local Crime Prevention Strategy (LCPS) and Growth Development Strategy (GDS) seek to make effective use of scarce resources within the Rustenburg Local Municipality by searching for more cost effective and sustainable solutions, whilst addressing the real causes of crime, poverty and unemployment. It is expected that Rustenburg Local Municipality will constitute one of the integral part of the National Crime Prevention Strategy (NCPS) in terms of its broader agenda of crime prevention and fighting. The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa Act 108 of 1996 obliges municipalities to participate in National and Provincial development programmes.

Moreover, municipalities have a constitutional imperative to give attention to crime fighting. Section 152(d) in chapter 7 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa Act 108 of 1996 stipulates that, one of the objects of local government is “to promote a safe and healthy environment and to

encourage communities to be involved on matters affecting them at local level”. Even the National Crime Prevention Strategy recognizes that Municipalities have a central role to play in crime prevention.

The strategy designates that local government are encouraged to review, refine and customise the NCPS to suit the local environment and implement local crime prevention programmes. Crime prevention strategies could never be a “one size fit all”. The NCPS also emphasizes this aspect in the development of local crime prevention strategies by Municipalities and propagating that the exact strategies and mechanisms that local governments adopt should be based on local crime prevention priorities and should preferably fit within the four-pillar strategy framework which entails the following: -

- The criminal justice process leading to certain and rapid deterrence
- Community values and education leading to community pressure and public participation in crime prevention
- Environmental design leading to limited opportunities for crime and maximizing constraints
- Trans-national crime: Regional cooperation, stability and address cross border crime

The National Development Strategy has identified five priorities to focus on to achieve a crime free South Africa. Amongst these priorities are to build safety using an integrated approach and build community participation in community safety. These two priorities are relevant to the Rustenburg Local Municipality. In building safer communities, requires cooperation between all departments and requires an integrated approach to tackle fundamental causes of criminality by mobilising a wider range of state and non-state capacities and resources at all levels and active community involvement. Civil society organisations and civic participation are critical elements of a safe and secure society. Establishment of community safety centres will enable safe healthy communities.

#### **NATURE AND SCOPE OF THE STRATEGY**

It is recommended that this strategy should dovetail with the provincial and local South African Police Service (SAPS) crime prevention strategy and be incorporated into the Integrated Development Plan of the municipality. This strategy should be consulted and popularised through community participation to ensure inputs / comments from the public, a shared understanding, ownership, common approach, buy-in and active participation of all role-players.

The National Planning Commissions’ Diagnostic Report (2011) underlines the reality that high crime level has slowed social and economic development in this country. The Growth and Development Strategy (GDS) of the municipality acknowledges that many of the crime related problems that are experienced in the Rustenburg Local Municipality are related to higher influence associated with socio-economic conditions and poverty levels. Problematic crimes such as murder, rapes, assaults, robbery aggravating, burglary residential, burglary business, theft of motor vehicles, theft out of motor vehicles, stock theft, crime depending on police actions, carjacking and truck jacking, house robbery, business robbery, theft of copper are so common in the police stations situated in the Rustenburg municipal boundaries. Rustenburg police station, Tlhabane police station, Phokeng police station, Boitekong police station, Marikana police station, Lethabong police station, Boons police station, Sun

City police station (Ward 1) and Bethanie police station are operating within the municipality jurisdiction.

**RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY POLICING CHALLENGES**

| CHALLENGE   | STRATEGIES   |
|---|--|
| <p><b>UNEMPLOYEMENT</b></p> <p>Lack of Shelter (Community Development)</p> <p>Increase of Serious Violent Crimes</p>  | <p><b>JOB CREATION</b></p> <p>Engage Business for the creation of sustainable jobs</p> <p>Business to adopt certain Areas</p> <p>Create an assembly point for casual job seekers</p>   |
| <p><b>STREET BEGGARS &amp; HOMELESS-including Blind Beggars a need to profile them and their circumstances</b></p> <p>(Responsibility SAPS &amp; Community Dev)</p> | <p><b>CREATION OF SHELTERS</b></p> <p>NGO /GOVERNMENT and BUSINESS</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Profiling and interview them.</li> <li>- Create database of NGO’s –crime related</li> <li>- Collaboration with social department.</li> <li>- integrate them to society.</li> </ul>   |
| <p><b>UNORGANISED HAWKERS</b></p> <p>(Responsible: LED &amp; DPS)</p>   | <p>HAWKERS TO BE ALLOCATED STALLS, ISSUED WITH PERMITS, SIGN LEASE AGREEMENT AND THE ENFORCEMENT OF BY-LAWS- involve Hawkers forum.</p> <p>-Removal from street -engage Legal Depart.</p>  |
| <p><b>UNORGANISED CAR-WASHERS</b></p> <p>(Responsible: SAPS &amp; LED, DPS)</p>   | <p><b>REGULATION AND GUIDELINES</b></p> <p><b>REGISTER CO-OPERATIVES</b></p> <p><b>ADDRESS NON-COMPLIANCE AND ENFORCE BY- LAWS</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Interview &amp; Profile them</li> <li>Create a Database and legalise them</li> <li>Review By-Laws related to this –Legal Dep’t.</li> <li>Introduce Rehab program- Correctional services in case they have a criminal record. (including NGO’s)</li> </ul> |
| <p><b>UNORGANISED CAR-GUARDS</b></p>  | <p><b>REGISTER CO-OPERATIVES</b></p> <p><b>ADDRESS NON-COMPLIANCE AND ENFORCE BY-LAWS</b></p>  |

| CHALLENGE  | STRATEGIES  |
|--|---|
| <p>WASTE REMOVAL</p> <p>(Community development &amp; DPS)</p>  | <p>CREATE SAFE LANES/illegal dumping /littering</p> <p>Fatima Bhayat – Bethlehem</p> <p>Outsource Waste Removal</p> <p>education and awareness</p> <p>Enforcement of By-laws</p> <p>Involve Hawkers &amp; Businesses in safe &amp; clean city project</p> |
| <p>NON-COMPLIANCE CPTED</p> <p>Road Signs, Bushes, Lighting, Street Lights, Abandoned Buildings, Illegal Water and Electricity Connections, Unmarked Street Names,</p> | <p>ENHANCE ALL CPTED INITIATIVES</p> <p>An integrated approach needs to be adopted by involving stakeholders inside the Municipality and outside.</p>   |
| <p>RENTAL OF PROPERTIES that are being used for criminal activities (Human Trafficking, Drugs and other activities)</p> <p>DPS</p>                                     | <p>DISCONTINUATION OF SERVICES COMPLEMENTED BY THE ENFORCEMENT OF BY-LAWS</p> <p>-Champion By-law enforcement in the City</p> <p>- Authorization of municipal employee for prosecution</p>  |
| <p>UNREGULATED BUSINESSES</p>  | <p>REGULATION AND ENFORCEMENT OF BY-LAWS/ HEALTH ACT</p>  |
| <p>USAGE OF PUBLIC and OPEN SPACES</p>   | <p>REGULATION AND ENFORCEMENT OF BY-LAWS</p>  |
| <p>CIVIL APATHY: Business, Traditional Leaders and Communities</p>   | <p>EDUCATE AND MOBILISE COMMUNITIES</p> <p>Social Media, Community Imbizo and dialogue, Radio and through partnerships with Business</p>  |
| <p>TAXI VIOLENCE/ ROUTE PROBLEMS</p>   | <p>ENFORCEMENT OF THE LAW AND SPEED UP THE IMPLEMENTATION OF RRT</p> <p>- Platform for stakeholder engagement established through DPS</p>   |
| <p>HIKING SPOTS</p>  | <p>ENFORCEMENT OF THE LAW AND</p> <p>AWARENESS CAMPAIGNS ON THE DANGERS OF HIKING</p>   |
| <p>REACTION TO CCTV</p>  | <p>ENHANCEMENT MANAGEMENT OF CCTV AND UTILISATION OF</p>  |

| CHALLENGE  | STRATEGIES   |
|--|--|
| DPS  | EVIDENCE GATHERED THROUGH CCTV CAMERAS<br><br>_Interaction of intergovernmental department   |
| ABANDONED BUILDINGS  | ENFORCEMENT OF BUILDING REGULATION AND OTHER BY-LAWS   |
| COPPER CABLE THEFT   | FOR THE CITY TO HAVE A MORE INTEGRATED APPROACH IN DEALING WITH THE SCOURGE<br><br>STRENGTHEN EXISITING STRUCTURES WITH SOE’s MCCF and CSF   |
| EVENTS<br><br>Community Development & DPS, SAPS              | CONTINUED EDUCATION OF ORGANISERS ON THE PROCESSES INVOLVED WHEN HOSTING EVENTS AND COMPLIANCE WITH THE REQUIREMENTS<br><br>Major event must be approved through Tripartite (Saps, DPS, DCD.)<br><br>-Participation of DPS & CD to gathering meeting with SAPS)<br><br>-Standard Operating Procedure (SPO) to govern the events- April 2015. |
| LACK OF CCTV BEYOND THE CBD                                  | INSTALLATION OF CCTV IN ALL HOTSPOT AREAS – INVOLVEMENT OF BUSINESS  |
| MANAGEMENT OF SAFE AND CLEAN CITY<br><br>(Municipal Manager) | REGISTRATION OF SECTION 21 COMPANY TO ENHANCE THE MANAGEMENT OF THE PROGRAMME<br><br>-Benchmarking with Cape Town –Item approved/  |

**CHALLENGES**

The increasing challenges and demands facing local governments such as crime and causes of crime has necessitated that relevant systems are put in place to deal with these challenges. Crime and criminals have become a national security issue. The existing government law enforcement agencies find themselves in a situation where they have to position and reposition their strategies to contain the scourge of crime, which causes the communities to often knock on the doors of the government for unapproved service delivery. High levels of crime pose a threat to economic development and undermine investor confidence.

The jurisdiction of the Rustenburg Municipality covers also the rural areas, which are poorly resourced and policed. This policing bias represents a serious obstacle to the implementation of community

policing and even to effective service delivery. Without compromising the cities and towns, municipal police services are in a position to address this urban bias. Generally, the existing government law enforcement agencies are in favour of the urban communities and at the expense of the impoverished communities.

Demands on equality, human rights, accountability, participation as well as meeting the provision of Batho Pele, rapid urbanisation have already started to exert pressure on the RLM and there is a significant increase in unlawful occupation of land and societal conflict. Crime and health hazards are on the increase in the informal settlement. The booming economy in the municipality requires an effective police service, which will be able to make the city an attractive and safe place for tourism and investment.

The establishment of effective Municipal Police Service, in conjunction with other existing Law Enforcement Agencies, will be able to expose corruption even within the Municipality. This may also create a platform for production of harmful banned substance and a turned Rustenburg into a heaven for criminal activities such as the selling of contraband ("fong-kong") goods. Some of the existing by-laws do not cover areas that did not fall under the old Rustenburg Municipality. It presents serious challenges because such by-laws cannot be applied and enforced in their present state in those areas. Therefore, the re-alignment of those by-laws is critically needed to empower the envisaged Municipal Police Services.

Rustenburg has about plus minus 35 Taxi Organisations, some of these organisations are not registered. Taxi conflict and dispute is prevalent at the Rustenburg Taxi Rank and on the routes within Municipal Jurisdiction. The root causes are illegal operations, many taxi organisations, operate without permits or valid documentation and power competition. Management of these conflicts and joint management of the Rustenburg Taxi Rank with members of Taxi Associations or organisations have to be considered, due to unlawful trading and conflicts within the Rank. Maybe through the formulation of Taxi Rank by-laws and establishment of Municipal Police Service in Rustenburg, the situation may be better contained.

White collar criminals and other residential areas which have been turned into business premises to evade the law of the country by not (paying tax).

**SUMMARY OF CHALLENGES**

| #  | MAJOR CHALLENGES   | ROOT CAUSES (NOT MORE THAN 2)          | EFFECTS  | PRACTICAL INTERVENTION OR SOLUTIONS              |
|----|--------------------|--|--|--|
| 1. | Protests           | Poor service delivery                  | Instability and destruction of properties        | Improved communication<br><br>Timeous response   |
| 2. | High rate of crime | Unemployment and high influx of people | Impact negatively on the investor confidence and | Enhancement of integrated approach through Crime |

| #  | MAJOR CHALLENGES                            | ROOT CAUSES (NOT MORE THAN 2)       | EFFECTS  | PRACTICAL INTERVENTION OR SOLUTIONS  |
|----|---|-------------------------------------|--|--|
|    |   |                                     | instil a sense of insecurity   | Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED)  |
| 3. | Land invasion                               | Urbanization<br>Political influence | Civil conflict<br>Disrupt spatial development  | Intensify villages, small dorpies programme<br>Integrated approach   |
| 4. | Moral degeneration or delay                 | Disregard good values and Botho.    | General disrespect of the law, property and fellow human beings (conflict, violence, damages and losses) | Intensification of moral regeneration programmes.  |
| 5. | Theft and vandalism of municipal properties | Lack of security                    | The municipality lose money<br>Affect service delivery   | Cho and changing of security personnel which is not a solution.<br>Allocation of adequate budget for security. |

Crime Prevention Strategy and Plan

Table 0-3: Crime Prevention Strategy and Plan

| Analysis of the sector plan   | Aim of the sector plan   | Project/ Programmes  | What the Directorate will be able to implement in 5 years   | Challenges   |
|---|--|--|---|--|
| -Dovetail with the Provincial and Local SAPS Strategy has been integrated into the Municipal IDP<br>-Put emphasis away from | -Reduce causes of crime and encourage the involvement of the local communities<br>-Promote a safe and secure | -Establishment of Rustenburg Community Safety Forum<br><br>-Establishment and strengthening of the CPF and Street committees.<br><br>-Expansion of the | -Municipality was able to establish the forum.<br><br>-On-going process<br><br>-15 CCTV Cameras installed and R4 000,000 was allocated for. | -Empathy from the community<br><br>-Lack of capacity in the Directorate in terms of resources<br><br>-Community empathy and not interested to be |

|  |   |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|---|--|
| <p>crime control towards crime prevention.</p> <p>-It focuses on social crime prevention, combating of crime, environmental design</p> | <p>environment.</p>   | <p>CCTV Cameras</p> <p>-Establishment of Municipal Police Service</p> <p>-Expand the Peace and Development Programme (Traffic Wardens and Fire Brigade Reservist</p>                   | <p>-Appointed only 50 Traffic Wardens</p>   | <p>involved.</p> <p>-Inadequate funding for this project</p> <p>-Inadequate resources such as buildings and law enforcement equipment</p> <p>-No funding for this project</p> <p>-Inadequate to cover 36 wards.</p> <p>-No funding for Training and resources.</p> |
| <p>Municipal Systems Act compels Municipalities to develop Disaster Management Plan as part of IDP.</p>                                | <p>-Knowledge Management</p> <p>-Response, recovery, rehabilitation and reconciliation.</p> | <p>-Establishment of a volunteer programme for Disaster Risk identification and Knowledge Management.</p> <p>-Disaster Bus and Trucks</p> <p>-Emergency Precinct (Decentralization</p> | <p>-Not effective</p> <p>-Unable to fulfil this project</p> <p>-Unable to fulfil this project</p> | <p>-Funding</p> <p>-Funding</p>  |

**Legislative Framework**

**The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act 108 of 1996)** Places a legal obligation on the government to ensure the health and safety of its citizens;

Section 152(1)(d) of the Constitution requires local government to ensure a safe and healthy environment.

**National Crime Prevention Strategy (1996):**

Primary emphasis is away from crime control towards crime prevention; Crime needs a multi-faceted approach as different types of crime have different root causes.

**Scope**

The existing **municipal strategy and plan** dovetails with the provincial and local SAPS crime prevention strategy;

Should be incorporated in the Integrated Development Plan (IDP) after its review.

**Primary Crime Prevention Measures**

The following primary crime prevention measures are taken:

- Effective program addressing poverty alleviation such as SMME projects
- Job creation project like trolley pushers, car watch and car washers
- Organise sports and recreation
- Organise private community structure to combat crime e.g. street committees
- Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED) e.g. inadequate street lighting, inadequate CCTV cameras, empty stands and houses, bushes, taverns near schools
- Education and awareness through media, pamphlets etc.

**Strategic Focus Areas**

**Focus Area One: Social Crime Prevention**

**Objective 1:** To inform the community on the negative impact that substance abuse has on crime:

- Encourage liquor outlets to regulate alcohol abuse in and around their premises to contribute to the prevention of anti-social behaviour
- Revisit the current policy, regulating locality or liquor outlets
- Improve and expand educational programs regarding prevention of substance abuse
- Mobilise the business sector to fund programs addressing prevention of substance abuse
- Engage NGOs to deliver sufficient rehabilitation service
- Ensure participation of educational institutions in prevention of substance abuse programmes
- Ensure efficiency of Alcohol Rehabilitation programmes as an alternative to imprisonment.

**Objective 2:** To cultivate a culture of zero tolerance to crime:

Launch awareness campaigns to encourage reporting of crime

Inform the community on the process of reporting corruption and inefficiency within the criminal

Programmes to educate the community to persevere in litigation

Create a platform to unit divided portion of the community against crime.

**Objective 3:** To rebuild the moral fabric of society

- Launch awareness campaigns to realistic reporting on women and child abuse
- Awareness campaign to emphasise the importance of safer families within safer communities
- Inform the community in the principles of “ broken window syndrome”
- Inform women with regard to their human rights in relationships
- Raise awareness of family values, morals and human rights
- Inform the community about the consequences of dealing with stolen property
- Cultivate a value system with regards to human rights
- Awareness campaign to promote a code of ethics between employer and employee.

**Objective 4:** To improve the community to fight poverty:

- Guide poverty stricken communities to develop sustainable economic units
- Launch programmes to encourage influential community members to establish active participation in poverty alleviation
- Providing skills developments projects.

**Objective 5:** To avail comprehensive services for victims of crime:

- Training in victim support skills
- The creation of local victim support network
- Ensure sustainability of the existing crisis centres
- Ensure establishment and sustainability of a local child-line
- Satellite Crisis Centres in surrounding areas.

**Objective 6:** To integrate the restitution mechanisms of restorative justice community sentencing and diversion into the community:

## IDP REVIEW 2025 - 2026

- Create public insight into the principles of diversion, restorative justice and community sentencing
- Expansion of community sentencing options through the involvement of the local municipality
- Involving the cadre of volunteers in diversion and monitoring of community sentences.

**Objective 7:** To create a positive attitude within the community that is conducive to safer families, neighbourhoods and communities:

- Promoting community pride through clean-up campaigns
- Cultivate a culture of responsible ownership.

**Objective 8:** To create synergy amongst all stakeholders in a partnership towards Crime Prevention:

- Ensure community participation in crime prevention structures.

### **Focus Area Two: Combating Crime**

**Objective 1:** To expand and sustain the capacity of visible community policing:

- Sustaining and retention of the new cadre of reservists for traffic, fire and disaster management duties
- Skills development of reservists/volunteers to expand their activities
- Create a visible identity for the volunteers/reservists
- Create reporting structures for community police officers.

**Objective 2:** To empower the community to participate in combating crime:

- Mapping of crime information to highlight the area where crimes occur on regular basis
- Training women and youth in basic defence
- Embark on negotiations with security firms to extend patrol routes.

### **Focus Area Three: Environmental Design**

**Objective:** To create a safe community/city/town/rural area:

- Community audit to identify environmental factors that could contribute to crime
- Creation of safer freedom of movement
- Get relevant stakeholders involved in safeguarding of destitute areas
- Improve and or establish street and security lighting at vulnerable spots

## IDP REVIEW 2025 - 2026

- Launch an awareness campaign in cooperation with all relevant stakeholders regarding the safeguarding of animals (Livestock)
- Educate property owners in the sound principles of home security
- Consulting with victims of rape to establish the role of the environment
- Locate sanitary facilities at suitable places
- CCTV monitoring in streets of central business districts.

**CHAPTER 3: ALIGNMENT**

**Table: Alignment of Municipal Strategic Priorities and Objectives to the NDP and Regional Master Plan**

| SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL/S   |  |   |  |  |   |
|--|--|---|--|--|---|
| NDP  | MASTER PLAN GOALS  | STRATEGIC PRIORITY  | OBJECTIVES/STRATEGIC THRUSTS   | KPI/TARGETS  | OUTCOMES  |
| <p>NDP OBJECTIVES: 1. A developmental and transformative municipality.</p> <p>2. A public service immersed in the development agenda</p> <p>3. Staff at all levels have the authority, experience, competence and support they need to do their jobs.</p> <p>4. Intergovernmental Relations improved</p> | <p>Goal 5:<br/>A city of sustainable resource management</p> | <p>1. Ensure a sustainable municipal financial viability and management</p> | <p>1.1 Enhance Revenue/<br/>Promote Financial sustainability</p> <p>1.2 Promote Financial Compliance</p> <p>1.3 Implement integrated capital funding model</p> | <p>1. % implementation of the approved Revenue enhancement strategy.</p> <p>2. % operational expenditure over the approved budget.</p> <p>3. No. of deviations resulting in unauthorized, fruitless, and wasteful expenditure.</p> | <p>9. responsive, accountable, effective, and efficient local government;</p> |

| <p><b>SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL</b></p>   | <p>6. Ensure availability and sustainable management of water and sanitation for all</p> <p>7. Ensure access to affordable, reliable, sustainable, and modern energy for all</p> <p>9. Build resilient infrastructure, promote inclusive and sustainable industrialization and foster innovation</p> <p>11. Make cities and human settlements inclusive, safe, resilient, and sustainable</p> |  |   |  |   |
|--|---|--|---|--|---|
| <p>NDP</p>   | <p>MASTER PLAN GOALS</p>  | <p>STRATEGIC PRIORITY</p>  | <p>OBJECTIVES/STRATEGIC THRUSTS</p>   | <p>KPI/TARGETS</p>   | <p>OUTCOMES</p>   |
| <p>NDP OBJECTIVES:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The proportion of h/h with access to electricity: 90.0% by 2030</li> <li>2. All people have access to clean portable water by 2030</li> <li>3. Increase the proportion of people using better quality public transport.</li> <li>4. Competitively priced and widely available broadband</li> <li>5. Integrated spatial</li> </ol> | <p>GOAL 3:<br/>City of smart livable homes</p>  | <p>2. Efficient Provision of quality Basic Services and Infrastructure within a well-planned Spatial Structure</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2.1 Provide quality, cost effective, reliable services and infrastructure based on Integrated spatial planning</li> <li>2.2 Accelerate infrastructure maintenance and refurbishment.</li> <li>2.3 Promote protection of public assets and the environment through education /awareness programmes</li> </ol> | <p>% of H/H with access to basic levels of services: water; sanitation; electricity and solid waste removal.</p> <p>% of H/H earning less than R3 500 per month with access to FBS</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. An efficient, competitive, and responsive economic infrastructure network</li> <li>8. Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life</li> </ol> |

|   |   |                           |                                     |                    |                 |
|---|---|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <p>SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL</p>   | <p>6. Ensure availability and sustainable management of water and sanitation for all</p> <p>7. Ensure access to affordable, reliable, sustainable, and modern energy for all</p> <p>9. Build resilient infrastructure, promote inclusive and sustainable industrialization and foster innovation</p> <p>11. Make cities and human settlements inclusive, safe, resilient, and sustainable</p> |                           |                                     |                    |                 |
| <p>NDP</p>  | <p>MASTER PLAN GOALS</p>  | <p>STRATEGIC PRIORITY</p> | <p>OBJECTIVES/STRATEGIC THRUSTS</p> | <p>KPI/TARGETS</p> | <p>OUTCOMES</p> |
| <p>planning system, for upgrading all informal settlements by 2030;</p> <p>7. More people living closure their place of work;</p> |   |                           |                                     |                    |                 |

| SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL   |   |   |  |   |  |
|--|---|---|--|---|--|
| 1. Promote sustained, inclusive, and sustainable economic growth, full and productive employment and decent work for all<br>2. Build resilient infrastructure, promote inclusive and sustainable industrialization and foster innovation<br>3. End poverty in all its forms everywhere<br>4. End hunger, achieve food security and improved nutrition and promote sustainable agriculture<br>5. Ensure sustainable consumption and production patterns |   |   |  |   |  |
| NDP  | MASTER PLAN GOALS   | STRATEGIC PRIORITY  | OBJECTIVES/STRATEGIC THRUSTS   | KPI/TARGETS   | OUTCOMES   |
| NDP OBJECTIVES:<br>Reduce unemployment to 6.0% by 2030   | Goal 1:<br>City with vibrant and diversified economy<br><br>Goal 2:<br>City of identity | 3. Drive a diversified economic growth, vibrant rural development, and job creation | 3.1 Promote economic diversification.<br>3.2 Grow the local economy<br>3.3 Drive a diversified and sustainable rural development<br>3.4 Support Enterprises, Cooperative development, and job creation<br>3.5 Attract and retain investments | 1. % of municipality’s capital budget actually spent on capital projects identified in terms of the IDP;<br><br>2. No. of jobs created through local economic development initiatives including capital projects.<br><br>3. % tourism development and marketing of Rustenburg as a world class destination to stimulate sustainable | 4. Decent employment through inclusive growth<br><br>7. Vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities contributing towards food security for all |

| <p>SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Promote sustained, inclusive, and sustainable economic growth, full and productive employment and decent work for all</li> <li>2. Build resilient infrastructure, promote inclusive and sustainable industrialization and foster innovation</li> <li>3. End poverty in all its forms everywhere</li> <li>4. End hunger, achieve food security and improved nutrition and promote sustainable agriculture</li> <li>5. Ensure sustainable consumption and production patterns</li> </ol> |      |                    |                              |   |          |
|-------------------------------------|--|------|--------------------|------------------------------|---|----------|
| NDP                                 | MASTER GOALS   | PLAN | STRATEGIC PRIORITY | OBJECTIVES/STRATEGIC THRUSTS | KPI/TARGETS   | OUTCOMES |
|                                     |  |      |                    |                              | <p>tourism.</p> <p>4. % development and implementation of the turnaround strategy on agricultural development</p> |          |

| <p>SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL/S</p>   | <p>3. Ensure healthy lives and promote well-being for all at all ages</p> <p>13. Take urgent action to combat climate change and its impacts</p> <p>15. Protect, restore, and promote sustainable use of terrestrial ecosystems, sustainably manage forests, combat desertification, and halt and reverse land degradation and halt biodiversity loss</p> <p>16. Promote peaceful and inclusive societies for sustainable development, provide access to justice for all and build effective, accountable, and inclusive institutions at all levels</p> |  |  |   |   |
|---|---|--|--|---|---|
| NDP   | MASTER PLAN GOALS   | STRATEGIC PRIORITY   | OBJECTIVES/STRATEGIC THRUSTS   | KPI/TARGETS   | OUTCOMES  |
| <p>NDP OBJECTIVES:</p> <p>1. Zero emission building standards by 2030</p> <p>Absolute reduction in the waste disposal to landfill sites each year</p> <p>At least 20 000MW of renewable energy should be reached by 2030</p> <p>Improved disaster preparedness for extreme climate events</p> <p>Reduce the levels of</p> | <p>Goal 5:</p> <p>A city of sustainable resource management</p>   | <p>4. Maintain, a green, safe, healthy Environment and social cohesion</p> | <p>4.1 Promote interventions to preserve environmental sustainability</p> <p>4.2 Promote sports, arts, and culture.</p> <p>4.3 Implement an integrated by-law enforcement and community safety and security initiatives.</p> <p>4.4 Promote and implement transversal programmes</p> | <p>% reduction of crime levels within RLM;</p> <p>% reduction in emissions resulting in air pollution</p> | <p>All people in South Africa are and feel safe</p> <p>10. Protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources</p> |

|                                |  |                    |                              |             |          |
|--------------------------------|--|--------------------|------------------------------|-------------|----------|
| SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL/S | 3. Ensure healthy lives and promote well-being for all at all ages<br>13. Take urgent action to combat climate change and its impacts<br>15. Protect, restore, and promote sustainable use of terrestrial ecosystems, sustainably manage forests, combat desertification, and halt and reverse land degradation and halt biodiversity loss<br>16. Promote peaceful and inclusive societies for sustainable development, provide access to justice for all and build effective, accountable, and inclusive institutions at all levels |                    |                              |             |          |
| NDP                            | MASTER PLAN GOALS  | STRATEGIC PRIORITY | OBJECTIVES/STRATEGIC THRUSTS | KPI/TARGETS | OUTCOMES |
| crime by 60% by 2030           |  |                    |                              |             |          |

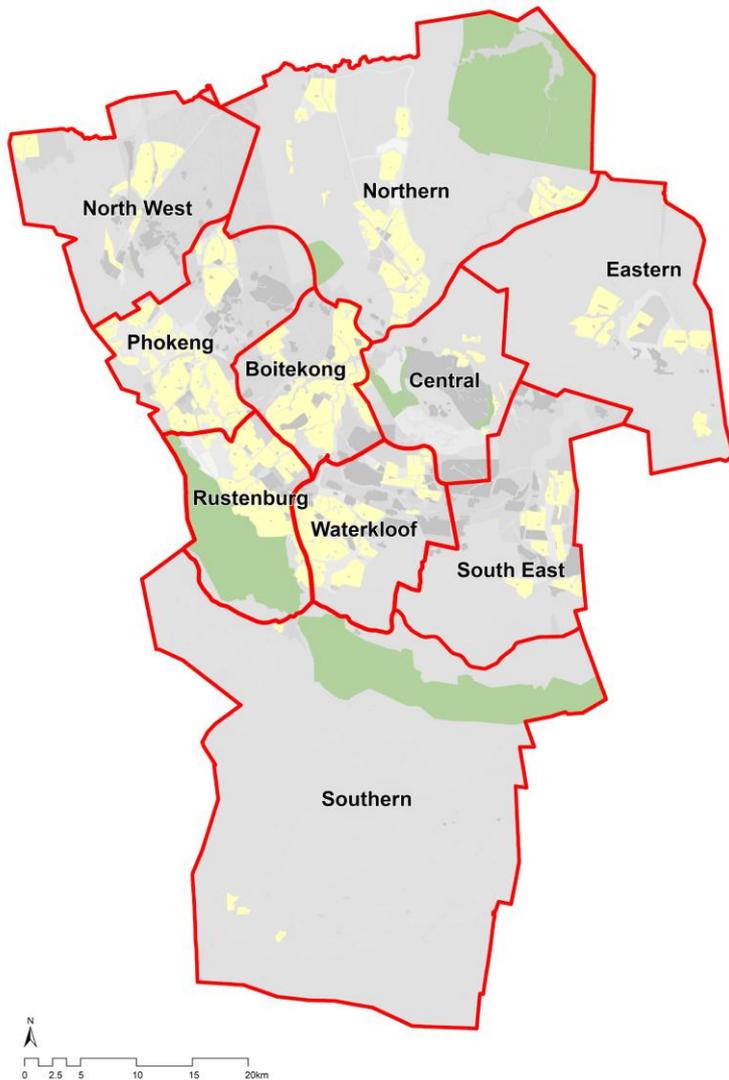
|  |  |   |  |   |   |
|--|--|---|--|---|---|
| SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL/S   | 17. Strengthen the means of implementation and revitalize the global partnership for sustainable development |   |  |   |   |
| NDP  | MASTER PLAN GOALS  | STRATEGIC PRIORITY  | OBJECTIVES/STRATEGIC THRUSTS   | KPI/TARGETS   | OUTCOMES  |
| KPA 5: GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION<br><br>NDP CHAPTER 13: BUILDING A CAPABLE AND DEVELOPMENTAL STATE; | A well-run municipality  | 5. Uphold good governance and public participation principles | 5.1 Promote good governance and public participation<br>5.2 Promote Public Private Partnerships<br>5.3 Promote collaborative solutions | 1. Date of approval of the reviewed/ amended IDP of the municipality;<br>2. Date of approval of the MTREF budget that is aligned to the IDP<br>3. Date of approval of the | 9. Responsive, accountable, effective, and efficient local government |

| SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL/S  | 17. Strengthen the means of implementation and revitalize the global partnership for sustainable development |                    |                              |   |          |
|---|--|--------------------|------------------------------|---|----------|
| NDP   | MASTER PLAN GOALS  | STRATEGIC PRIORITY | OBJECTIVES/STRATEGIC THRUSTS | KPI/TARGETS                             | OUTCOMES |
| <p>CHAPTER 14: FIGHTING CORRUPTION</p> <p>NDP OBJECTIVES: 1. A developmental and transformative municipality;</p> <p>2. A public service immersed in the development agenda</p> <p>3. Staff at all levels have the authority, experience, competence and support they need to do their jobs;</p> <p>4. Intergovernmental Relations improved</p> <p>5. A corruption-free society, and accountable municipality</p> |  |                    |                              | <p>SDBIP that is aligned to the IDP</p> |          |

| SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL/S   | 4. Ensure inclusive and equitable quality education and promote lifelong learning opportunities for all<br>5. Achieve gender equality and empower all women and girls |  |   |  |   |
|--|---|--|---|--|---|
| NDP  | MASTER PLAN GOALS   | STRATEGIC PRIORITY   | OBJECTIVES/STRATEGIC THRUSTS  | KPI/TARGETS  | OUTCOMES  |
| <p>KPA 2: MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT</p> <p>NDP CHAPTER 13: BUILDING A CAPABLE AND DEVELOPMENTAL STATE</p> <p>NDP OBJECTIVES:</p> <p>1. A developmental and transformative municipality;</p> <p>2. A public service immersed in the development agenda</p> <p>3. Staff at all levels have the authority, experience, competence and support they need to</p> | <p>Goal 4:</p> <p>A city of excellence in Education and Sports</p>  | <p>1. Drive optimal municipal institutional development, transformation, and capacity building</p> | <p>6.1 Achieve operational efficiency.</p> <p>6.2 Maintain service delivery standards.</p> <p>6.3 Enhance employee morale.</p> <p>6.4 Enhance Employees skills.</p> <p>6.5 Modernise technology infrastructure.</p> | <p>1. % of people from employment equity target groups employed in the three highest levels of management in compliance with approved employment equity plan.</p> <p>2. % of the municipality's budget actually spent on implementing the workplace skills plan.</p> | <p>5. Skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path</p> |

| SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOAL/S  | 4. Ensure inclusive and equitable quality education and promote lifelong learning opportunities for all<br>5. Achieve gender equality and empower all women and girls |                    |                              |             |          |
|---|---|--------------------|------------------------------|-------------|----------|
| NDP   | MASTER PLAN GOALS   | STRATEGIC PRIORITY | OBJECTIVES/STRATEGIC THRUSTS | KPI/TARGETS | OUTCOMES |
| do their jobs;<br><br>4. Intergovernmental Relations improved<br><br>5. A corruption-free society, and accountable municipality |   |                    |                              |             |          |

PLANNING AREAS FOR THE INTEGRATED MASTER PLAN



Number of Opportunities would cut across a number of game changer and precinct plan projects hence opportunities presented hereunder are not projects specific but general across a number of projects.

We will be looking at direct and indirect opportunities

Direct opportunities

PROFESSIONAL AND FINANCIAL SERVICES

Growing the engagement and levels of professional service provider and financial services and works in professional, managerial, and associate professional jobs.

New business ventures and equity ownership in Tourism and manufacturing products.

INFRASTRUCTURE

Most proposed projects have a common character and requirement for Material supply and construction becomes a cross cutting opportunity. Job creations during construction and upon operation of each completed projects cannot be over emphasized under each project.

Re capitalising in service and economic infrastructure.

Indirect - Transport & Connectivity

Rustenburg links Gauteng; Limpopo and Mpumalanga and the neighbouring Botswana and Zimbabwe, through its network of road.

Growth in industrial activities and tourism will directly influence additional, air routes for passenger and freight movement through the Pilanesburg airport

New opportunity in Transportation and warehousing.

Rustenburg Planning Area (PA):

The central region of the Greater Rustenburg Area that includes:

The Rustenburg City, new and existing CBD,

Waterfall Mall and the Kgaswane Natural Reserve.

As the employment centre for business and services,

The Rustenburg Planning Area is the most densely populated area in the municipality.

PROJECT: RUSTENBURG CLUSTER PRECINCT PLAN AND MASTERPLAN PROJECT

| DIRECTORATES               | PROJECTS  | KEY MILESTONE   | OPPORTUNITIES / BENEFITS   |
|----------------------------|---|---|--|
| LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT | <p>Commercial, Tourism and Service projects.</p> <p>New Rustenburg CBD.<br/>Transport and retail zone</p> <p>(Rustenburg Mall completed and opened)</p> | <p>Agreement on the land use for the Taxi rank precinct.</p> <p>Development proposals.</p> <p>Constructions</p>   | <p>Constructions</p> <p>Retails opportunities.</p> <p>Temporary Job during construction and permanent on operation of the facilities</p>   |
| LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT | Cultural gateway precincts  | <p>Expression of interest</p> <p>Detailed designs</p> <p>Development proposals.</p> <p>Constructions</p>  | <p>Initial construction phase will create job and more sustainable jobs and opportunities of running the different Kiosks and maintenance of the facility</p> <p>Food and beverages industries.</p> <p>Support to public transport systems.</p>  |
| LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT | <p>Urban Agriculture</p> <p>Identification of land in close proximity for the purpose of Urban Agriculture</p>  | <p>Identify a portion of land</p> <p>Survey the area</p> <p>To obtain interested groups</p> <p>Enter into a lease agreement with the identified potential groups</p> <p>To assist in the provision of services(security , water , pipelines for</p> | <p>The proposed shall benefit both Entrepreneurs with market access and resident with additional jobs and shall consist of the following:</p> <p>agricultural hub compiled of a training centre, training garden, market square, repair workshop, fresh produce depot, resource centre and offices</p> <p>land for crops</p> <p>a market square on which produce can be sold</p> |

| DIRECTORATES                         | PROJECTS  | KEY MILESTONE  | OPPORTUNITIES / BENEFITS  |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|---|
|                                      |   | irrigation)  |   |
| DIRECTORATE<br>COMMUNITY<br>SERVICES | Upgrading of recreational facilities                | Identified existing parks that needs to be upgraded.<br><br>Procurement procedure to follow to request interested groups from the community to come forward.   | Opportunities will be made available for cooperative for the management and maintenance of parks and open spaces.   |
| PLANNING AND<br>HUMAN<br>SETTLEMENT  | Mixed land use Development including social housing | Land to be identified<br><br>Development layout and design<br><br>Location of services to be investigated<br>Land to be identified<br><br>Service provider to be appointed.<br><br>Rezoning and consolidations need to be done | The precincts are located within zones earmarked for 60 units per hectare, therefore the precincts can provide a total of 306 units (Rustenburg North = 103 units, Karlienpark = 142 units and Zinniaville = 61units).<br><br>The small industrial precinct within the mixed-use zone will entail the clustering small industries together, to make it more economically viable for the small business owner.<br><br>Including measure such as “Greening-up” or landscaping, providing common-eating area and security measures will better incorporate industrial activities with residential activities and will attract potential investors to the area. |
|                                      | Spin City   | Land to be identified.<br><br>Area to be surveyed<br><br>Interested groups to be identified by way of advertisement.<br><br>Estates to enter into a lease agreement.   | Tourism attractions   |

PROJECT: TLHABANE PRECINCT PLAN AND RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATES

| DIRECTORATES               | PROJECTS   | KEY MILESTONE   | OPPORTUNITIES / BENEFITS   |
|----------------------------|--|---|--|
| LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT | Upgrading of a cultural center (Mmabana Culture Centre)  | <p>Land belongs to provincial government – Northwest and needs to be obtained</p> <p>Rezoning application needs to be conducted to get the land use rights in order</p> | <p>The development of this precinct which will include</p> <p>Open-air amphitheatre</p> <p>Community hall for various functions</p> <p>Arts and cultural Centre (including a training centre and a selling area)</p> <p>will strengthen the community character of Tlhabane and community facilities within Tlhabane will be used, residents will not have to travel to Rustenburg to make use of community facilities.</p> <p>Stimulate movement and grow in the art, culture; film and accommodation industries.</p> <p>Food and beverages industries.</p> <p>Support to public transport.</p> |
|                            | <p>Urban Agriculture</p> <p>Identification of land in close proximity for the purpose of Urban Agriculture</p> | <p>Identify a portion of land</p> <p>To obtain interested groups</p> <p>Enter into a lease agreement with the</p>   | <p>Areas for urban agriculture have been earmarked on the outskirts of Tlhabane on land which cannot be developed, which includes servitudes and floodline areas.</p> <p>land for crops</p> <p>a market square on which produce can be sold</p>  |

| DIRECTORATES                 | PROJECTS  | KEY MILESTONE   | OPPORTUNITIES / BENEFITS   |
|------------------------------|---|---|--|
|                              |   | <p>identified potential groups</p> <p>To assist in the provision of services (security, water, pipelines for irrigation)</p>  |  |
|                              | <p>Provision of Informal Business area</p>  | <p>To obtain land for the development of a flea market</p> <p>To do the necessary legal processes (Street closure, surveying, and rezoning)</p> <p>Looking for interested parties to do the development</p> | <p>The erven to be developed will strengthen the business node. The smaller shops/offices will be supplied in conjunction with retail space for anchor outlets.</p> <p>By providing a greater variety of business space, the sustainability of the development is enhanced.</p> <p>The proposal is to include an open market area where social activities can also occur.</p> <p>The area will be landscaped and equipped with public furniture, such as benches and bicycle stand, etc.</p> |
| <p>ROADS AND STORMWATER</p>  | <p>Street beautification along Malao street</p> <p>Street beautification already conducted along major routes in Tlhabane</p> | <p>To pave the side walks</p> <p>To provide street furniture along Malao Street</p> <p>To do landscaping</p> <p>Sidewalks paved</p>   | <p>In light of these considerations, the mixed land use character of the area can be enhanced</p>  |
| <p>DIRECTORATE COMMUNITY</p> | <p>Provision of Sports Facilities and recreational facility</p>   | <p>Land was identified</p>  | <p>The need exists to provide a greater range of facilities on the site which shall result in resource-sharing and attract</p>   |

| DIRECTORATES                  | PROJECTS  | KEY MILESTONE   | OPPORTUNITIES / BENEFITS   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|--|
| SERVICES                      |   |   | <p>more people and possibly more investment.</p> <p>The rejuvenation of the site will result in high-class sporting facilities which will not only benefit the residents of Tlhabane, but possibly attract sporting clubs, which may help with the maintenance of the facilities.</p>                      |
| PLANNING AND HUMAN SETTLEMENT | Provision of industrial and high density residential (YIZO =YIZO: | <p>Erven to be identified which are affected.</p> <p>Squatters to be removed.</p> <p>Legal processes to continue after people are evacuated which includes rezoning applications.</p> | <p>Tlhabane is strapped for developable land, due to the vast portion of residents residing in informal housing units, social housing and apartment blocks are planned for the area.</p> <p>To eradicate housing problems, related to housing demand within a predominately low-income housing market.</p> |

Phokeng Planning Area (PA):

Includes Phokeng and Luka.

boards Rustenburg to the south via R104.

This planning area also forms the capital region of RBN.

| Directorates                      | Project   | Key Milestones  | Opportunities  |
|-----------------------------------|---|---|--|
|                                   | <p>Commercial, Tourism and Service projects.</p> <p>Phokeng medical Hub</p>   | <p>Securing the land for development</p> <p>Land agreement with interested investors</p> <p>Township design and registration</p> <p>Constructions</p> | <p>The green field site for Medical and Education Hub is located south of Magokgwane in Phokeng.</p> <p>Develop a new tertiary hospital to position Rustenburg as a centre for healthcare and medical tourism. And offers opportunities on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regional Shopping Mall</li> <li>• Hotel</li> <li>• Mixed Use Development</li> <li>• Provincial and Tertiary Hospital</li> <li>• University</li> <li>• Community Centre</li> </ul> |
| <p>LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</p> | <p>Urban Agriculture:</p> <p>Identification of land in close proximity for the purpose Urban Agriculture Initiatives.</p> | <p>Identify land</p> <p>Survey</p> <p>Identify co-operatives</p> <p>Enter into a lease agreement</p>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• land for crops</li> <li>• a market square on which produce can be sold</li> </ul>   |

IDP REVIEW 2025 - 2026

Boitekong Planning Area (PA):

Includes clusters of formal and informal settlements within the Boitekong, Kanana, Meriting.

Freedom Park areas.

This planning area is situated in the mining belt and forms the north-south growth corridor of Rustenburg

PROJECT: BOITEKONG PRECINCT PLAN AND RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATES

| DIRECTORATES                   | PROJECT   | KEY MILESTONES  | OPPORTUNITIES   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|
| LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT     | Urban Agriculture<br>-Identification of a site for Urban Agriculture. | To obtain an interested group<br><br>To assist in the provision of services (security, to provide water pipelines for irrigation purposes)<br><br>To establish SMMEs. | The projects offer an opportunity of addressing a short coming with regard to retail, (formal and informal), recreational activities, sport facilities, community hall, old age homes, orphanage and a need for urban agriculture <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>land for crops</li> <li>a market square on which produce can be sold</li> <li>To renovate the existing clinic building and to provide a garden at the clinic Site.</li> <li>To renovate the police station and to provide a garden at the police station.</li> </ul> |
| DIRECTORATE COMMUNITY SERVICES | Development of a Post office  | *Identify a site.<br><br>Develop a Post office.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide formal sport facilities</li> <li>Upgrade of the existing library</li> </ul>   |

| DIRECTORATES          | PROJECT  | KEY MILESTONES   | OPPORTUNITIES  |
|-----------------------|--|--|--|
| COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT | Formal sporting facility<br><br>Orphanage home | *Identify a site.<br><br>*Survey a portion of the land for O.H<br><br>*Send to Estate for Lease document.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide a retail centre including formal and the informal sector.</li> <li>• To provide a community hall and post office facility</li> <li>• To provide a taxi/bus rank as part of the multi land use node (G)</li> <li>• Urban agriculture (H)</li> <li>• Provide an orphanage (I)</li> <li>• Conserve the natural ridge as part of node (J)</li> </ul> |
| DPHS(ESTATE)          | Shopping centre in Sunrise                     | *Allocation to an interested group.<br><br>*Conduct feasibility study.<br><br>*SG Diagrams, zoning confirmations to Estate<br><br>*Public Advert (Estate). | Sunrise park shopping Complex Completed  |

1.4 Waterkloof PA:

Depicts the urban expansion of Rustenburg towards the “Rapid Growth Area” to the east.

This planning area includes the new regional centre of Waterkloof and the surrounding towns including Photsaneng, Thekwane and Mfidikwe.

| Directorates                  | Project   | Key Milestones  | Opportunities   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|---|
| Planning and Human settlement | Commercial, Tourism and Service projects.<br><br>Waterkloof Education Hub   | Re zoning<br><br>Expression of interest from investors.<br><br>Provision of bulk water and electricity.                           | Skills development.<br><br>Development of rare skills<br><br>Academic and professional advancement.   |
|                               | Industrial Projects<br><br>Rustenburg Logistic Hub<br><br>INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT / MANUFACTURING<br><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mining Input Supply – Capital Equipment, Ball Mill, Ventilation and refrigeration equipment, and Drilling Equipment.</li> <li>• Increased value output in</li> </ul> | Expression of interest from investors.<br><br>Registration of industrial township<br><br>Provision of bulk water and electricity. | INCENTIVES<br><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of incentives will be available particular for SEZs growth, revenue generation, creation of jobs, attraction of Foreign Direct Investment and international competitiveness.</li> <li>• Equity ownership in industrial and retails business ventures.</li> <li>• Preferential 15% + reduced rate of corporate income taxation.</li> </ul> |

| Directorates | Project   | Key Milestones | Opportunities   |
|--------------|---|----------------|---|
|              | areas of manufacturing and assembly of heavy and earth moving machinery, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pharmaceuticals and Chemicals</li> <li>• Catalytic Convertors</li> <li>• Oil and Gas Industry Applications</li> <li>• Fuel Cells (Main Focus for the Platinum Valley SEZ)</li> <li>• Ferrochrome Sector &amp; Platinum Recycling</li> </ul> |                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For industrial development opportunities and SEZ projects; Tax Incentive designed to support Greenfield and brown field investments including the incentive for both capital investment and training.</li> </ul> |
|              | Complimenting Projects<br><br>Waste and water Treatment facilities,   |                |   |

Northern PA:

Includes the Tsitsing New Town, Vaalkop Dam and the rural settlements including Hartbeestfontein, Tantanana, Maile Monnakato and Kopman.

Complimenting Projects: Rapid Rail Transit, Solar farms, Waste and water Treatment facilities, Institutional facilities, Housing and Utility services and Roads.

PROJECT: LETHABONG PRECINCT PLAN AND RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATE

| Directorates                                  | Project   | Key Milestones   | Opportunities   |
|---|---|--|---|
|   | <p>Urban Agriculture</p> <p>Identification of land in close proximity for the purpose of Urban Agriculture.</p> | <p>The development of urban agricultural projects on vacant open spaces within Lethabong (Stands 6300 and 4103)</p> <p>To obtain an interested group</p> <p>Enter into a lease agreement with the identified potential groups</p> <p>To assist in the provision of services (security, to provide water pipelines for irrigation purposes)</p> | <p>Against the background of high unemployment rates, the opportunity exists to establish urban agriculture projects in close proximity to Lethabong or on vacant open spaces within the township.</p> <p>A well established and sustainable urban agricultural project will contribute to food security and jobcreation in the area.</p>   |
| <p>DIRECTORATE<br/>COMMUNITY<br/>SERVICES</p> | <p>Upgrading of the existing Sports Facilities</p> <p>Identified Erf 4477 and 4478 Lethabong</p>                | <p>To provide a sport facility to make provision for indoor/outdoor formal sport facilities</p> <p>To make provision for recreational activities</p> <p>To provide decent seating, water drinking points and ablution facilities</p>   | <p>Opportunities exist in the construction of the following:</p> <p>Covered pavilion with support facilities underneath which may include a sports clubhouse for indoor sports and gym</p> <p>Basketball courts, Tennis Courts, Soccer fields</p> <p>Development of a picnic facility by the provision of braai areas and playground equipment on the adjacent park erf.</p> <p>Landscaping the park area Pedestrian links to other parts of the multi-land use node.</p> |

| Directorates            | Project   | Key Milestones   | Opportunities   |
|-------------------------|---|--|---|
|                         |   |  | The pedestrian link to be shaded, paved with seating, good lighting, public ablution facilities and water drinking points   |
|                         | Allocation of site for orphanage /Old age home  | To identify a site and prepare lease document  | Opportunity existing the constructions, and ultimately running of the old age home.<br><br>The big opportunity will be ultimate beneficiaries of the project, the aged.   |
| WASTE MANAGEMENT CENTRE | Industrial bee-hives identification   | To obtain a site<br><br>To survey the identified site<br><br>To get a list of interested parties | The establishment of a ‘beehive’ industrial development to accommodate and provide alternative location for small and informal industrial activities.   |
| PUBLIC SAFETY           | Relocation of the Taxi Rank & Upgrading of the Existing library<br><br>Renovation and extension of the existing library on Erf 3540 Lethabong |  | The new proposed Taxi – Rank/ Bus Depot will be incorporated as part of the formal / informal retail. Other opportunities in the development include:<br><br>A Post Office should be included as part of the formal retail development.<br><br>As part of the Clinic Site and the existing Town Hall located on Erf 3540 Hartebeestfontein the gardens need to be upgraded as well as to build a library on the property. |

| Directorates                  | Project   | Key Milestones                              | Opportunities  |
|-------------------------------|---|---|--|
|                               |   |   | The parking area should be landscaped.   |
| PLANNING AND HUMAN SETTLEMENT | High residential Development                                      | To develop social housing                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Affordability and quality of housing</li> <li>• Investment potential</li> <li>• Safety and Security</li> <li>• Proximity to the workplace</li> <li>• Accessibility to educational and social facilities</li> <li>• Proximity to retail facilities</li> <li>• Socio-economic clustering</li> </ul>                                 |
|                               | Business Node (Mall)  | Develop a commercial / business node (Mall) | The project proposal is to utilise the available land in this node by creating a partnership with national government and developing an attractive business centre on this property which makes provision for small retail and business space.   |
| LED                           | <p>Tsitsing Green Technology Township.</p> <p>Industrial Park</p> |   | <p>The site is located on 600 hectares' green field in Tsitsing along R556 and R510.</p> <p>Smart Town which includes the development of Town Centre, green housing, and hi-tech industrial park.</p> <p>The 200 hectares industrial park will focus on modern, innovative and knowledge intensive industries such as platinum processing, high-tech farming and Solar</p> |

| Directorates | Project | Key Milestones | Opportunities   |
|--------------|---------|----------------|---|
|              |         |                | <p>Photovoltaic.</p> <p>The housing component comprises over 200 dwelling units with community gardens and green infrastructure.</p> <p>It will become a pilot project for other residential developments focusing on the efficient use of energy, water, and building materials.</p> |

PROJECT: MONNAKATO PRECINCT PLAN AND RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATES

| Directorate                | Project   | Key Milestones   | Opportunities  |
|----------------------------|---|--|--|
| LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT | <p>Development of Market/Community square with Urban Agriculture Activities</p> <p>Identification of land in close proximity for the purpose of Urban Agriculture</p> | To obtain a site and prepare lease document  | <p>It is expected that the community precinct can benefit the community and entrepreneurs alike with opportunities consisting of the following:</p> <p>A small-scale community theatre for young, informal street artists and musicians</p> <p>Urban–agriculture activities where people can grow fresh produce, to sell on the market square and informal markets</p> <p>A market square for community gatherings and get together</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Play areas for children</li> <li>• Informal Market</li> <li>• Public Facilities</li> </ul> <p>A nursery</p> |
| INFRASTRUCUTE              | Upgrade of link Road between entrance from Kopman to R510 Intersection  | Compile Street and Landscape Plan with detail for paving of sidewalks, street furniture and landscaping. | <p>Opportunities exist in the road construction and development of the following:</p> <p>Road widening,</p> <p>Pavement construction,</p>  |

|                                      |   |  |  |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|--|
|                                      |   |  | <p>Tree planting,</p> <p>Lightning,</p> <p>Furnishing, and</p> <p>Waste dustbins.</p>  |
| DIRECTORATE<br>COMMUNITY<br>SERVICES | Upgrading of Existing Park and Sports Facilities  | <p>Designs</p> <p>Constructions</p>  | <p>Opportunities exist in the construction of the following:</p> <p>Sand volleyball court, Change rooms, Additional Swimming Pool, 2 lighted basketball courts, and</p> <p>2 lighted tennis courts, and Offices</p>  |
| PLANNING AND<br>HUMAN SETTLEMENT     | Development of Taxi/Bus Station, filling station and Business Centre at R510 Intersection | Allocation of an interested developer  | <p>The project proposal is to utilise the available land in this node by creating a partnership with national government and developing an attractive business centre on this property which makes provision for small retail and business space. Opportunities exist in the Nodal development includes constructions and operations of the following:</p> <p>2 Business nodes one with Fuel stations.</p> <p>Market squire for local produce</p> <p>Sporting facilities.</p> <p>High density residential units.</p> |
|                                      | Upgrading of Existing Business Node   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Detailed Urban Design and Development Plan with Landscaping and costing for Public Areas including public streets, street scaping and street lighting.</li> <li>• Negotiations and partnerships with landowners for re-development and infill development.</li> </ul> |  |

|  |                                       |   |                                     |
|--|---------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|
|  | Development of Residential Settlement | To develop social housing   | Parks and Government services node. |
|  | Upgrading of Existing Park            | Landscaping, Trees planting, Ablution facilities, Playground equipment, 2 picnic tables and chairs, water fountains, park benches, and Law walls. |                                     |

Northwestern PA:

Located at the north-western part of RLM adjacent to the Sun City, this planning area is centred.

Around the Chaneng New Town.

The surrounding settlements include Boshhoek, Rasimone and Phatsima.

Commercial, Tourism and Service projects.

Platinum Team Park in Chaneng

Complimenting Projects

Rapid Rail Transit,

Solar farms

Waste and water Treatment facilities,

Institutional facilities.

Housing and Utility services and Roads.

PROJECT: PHATSIMA PRECINCT PLAN AND RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATES

| Directorate                          | Project   | Key Milestones  | Opportunities  |
|--------------------------------------|---|---|--|
| LOCAL<br>ECONOMIC<br>DEVELOP<br>MENT | <p>Urban Agriculture:</p> <p>Identification of land in close proximity for the purpose Urban Agriculture Initiatives.</p> | <p>Identify land<br/>(See Council Resolution dated 26th March 2013)</p> <p>Survey</p> <p>Identify co-operatives</p> <p>Enter into a lease agreement</p> | <p>We have embarked on the following Agricultural Support Programme to ensure sustainable supply to the FPM:</p> <p>R 20m Agricultural Project in Phatsima, funded by Anglo as part of their SLP</p> <p>commenced training for Molote Agricultural Project internally funded to the tune of R 5m</p> <p>Off-take Agreements Discussions with Choppies, Fruit &amp; Veg and the mines</p> <p>Against the background of high unemployment rates, the opportunity exists to establish Urban Agricultural project on vacant land south-east of Phatsima</p> <p>A well established and sustainable urban agricultural project will contribute to food security and jobcreation in the area.</p> |
|                                      | <p>Industrial Development</p> <p>Provision of “Bee Hive” industrial Site for SMMEs</p>                                    | <p>Land identified</p> <p>Surveyed</p> <p>Identify co-operatives</p> <p>Enter into a lease agreement</p>  | <p>The establishment of a ‘bee-hive’ industrial development to accommodate and provide alternative location for small and informal industrial activities.</p>  |

|                                      |   |  |  |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|--|
|                                      | Upgrading of Existing clinic                            |  |  |
| DIRECTORATE<br>COMMUNITY<br>SERVICES | Upgrading of the existing Sports Facilities             | <p>To provide a sport facility to make provision for indoor/outdoor formal sport facilities</p> <p>To make provision for recreational activities</p> <p>To provide decent seating, water drinking points and ablution facilities</p> | <p>Opportunities exist in the construction of the following:</p> <p>Covered pavilion with support facilities underneath which may include a sports clubhouse for indoor sports and gym</p> <p>Basketball courts, Tennis Courts, Soccer fields</p> <p>Development of a picnic facility by the provision of braai areas and playground equipment on the adjacent park erf.</p> <p>Landscaping the park area Pedestrian links to other parts of the multi-land use node.</p> <p>The pedestrian link to be shaded, paved with seating, good lighting, public ablution facilities and water drinking points</p> |
|                                      | Street Beautification                                   | <p>Land scaping along corridors and long the multipurpose node</p> <p>Install street lighting, plant trees</p>   | Landscaping, street lighting and street furniture  |
| INFRASTRU.<br>SERVICES               | Upgrading of Roads along social and economic activities | RRT identified feasibility of the project in 2019  | Road's construction and material supply.   |
| PUBLIC<br>SAFETY                     | Upgrading of the Taxi Rank                              |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To upgrade the existing Taxi Rank to make provision for busses/ taxi's, ablution facilities, lightning, and security.</li> </ul>  |

|                      |                           |  |   |
|----------------------|---------------------------|--|---|
|                      |                           |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To interlink the taxi-rank with other land uses in order to strengthen the “Multi-purpose node”.</li> </ul> <p>The existing taxi-rank, Erf 1571 Phatsima Extension 1 upgrade and property integrated into the Rustenburg Rapid Transport System</p>  |
| PLANNING AND ESTATES | Business Node (Mall)      |  | <p>The project proposal is to utilise the available land in this node by creating a partnership with national government and developing an attractive business centre on this property which makes provision for small retail and business space. Opportunities exist in the Nodal development includes constructions and operations of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Business one with Fuel stations.</li> <li>Market squire for local produce</li> <li>Sporting facilities.</li> <li>High density residential units.</li> <li>Parks and</li> <li>Government services node.</li> </ul> |
| PLANNING             | Institutional development | <p>Land Identified.</p> <p>Land Surveyed</p> <p>Land Rezoned for Residential 2 and Institutional</p> |   |
|                      | High density residential  | To develop social housing & social amenities   |   |
|                      | Platinum Theme Park       | <p>Land development agreement with RBA.</p> <p>Request for proposals</p>                             | <p>The Platinum Theme Park is located at the northern boundary of RLM along R556.</p> <p>It aims to capitalize on its proximity to the Sun City and Pilanesberg National Park to boost the tourism sector of RLM and .</p>  |

|  |  |                                    |  |
|--|--|------------------------------------|--|
|  |  | Detailed designs and Construction. | Has High potential for the creation of many jobs |
|--|--|------------------------------------|--|

Eastern PA:

Houses the Bethanie New Town and an area reserved for long term development needs of RLM.

| Directorate | Project  | Key Milestones   | Opportunities  |
|-------------|--|--|--|
|             | Industrial Projects<br>Bethanie Industrial Township.                       | Land development agreement with Bakwena ba Mogopa<br>Request for proposals<br>Feasibility studies.<br>Detailed designs and Construction. | Number of incentives will be available<br>Direct Investment and international competitiveness.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Equity ownership in industrial and retails business ventures.</li> <li>• Preferential 15% + reduced rate of corporate income taxation.</li> </ul> |
| Planning    | Development of fully fledge Precinct plan for Bethanie and Makolokwe areas | Designs<br>Approval by Council.  |  |

Southeastern PA: and Central PA

Home of Marikana New Town and the new industrial hub of RLM.

PROJECT: MARIKANA PRECINCT PLAN AND RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATES

| Directorate       | Project                                       | Key Milestones                                    | Opportunities   |
|-------------------|---|---|---|
| LED               | Urban Agriculture Initiatives                 | Identify land<br><br>Registration of cooperatives | R 30 m Special Presidential Package for Organic Agricultural project in Marikana with 23 Cooperatives already registered<br><br>Against the background of high unemployment rates, the opportunity exists to establish Urban Agricultural project on vacant land<br><br>A well established and sustainable urban agricultural project will contribute to food security and jobcreation in the area.     |
| COMMUNITY<br>Dev. | Upgrading of existing Recreational facilities | Identify land<br><br>Clear site                   | Opportunities exist in the construction of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Covered pavilion with support facilities underneath which may include a sports clubhouse for indoor sports and gym</li> <li>• Basketball courts, Tennis Courts, Soccer fields</li> <li>• Development of a picnic facility by the provision of braai areas and playground equipment on the</li> </ul> |

|                |   |  |   |
|----------------|---|--|---|
|                |   |  | <p>adjacent park erf.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Landscaping the park area</li> <li>Pedestrian links to other parts of the multi-land use node.</li> <li>The pedestrian link to be shaded, paved with seating, good lighting, public ablution facilities and water drinking points</li> </ul> |
| INFRASTRUCTURE | Development and installation of Streets Capes | <p>Land scaping along corridors and long the multipurpose node</p> <p>Install street lighting, plant trees</p>             | Landscaping, street lighting and street furniture   |
| PLANNING       | Upgrading of Existing Business Node           | <p>Land development</p> <p>Request for proposals</p> <p>Feasibility studies.</p> <p>Detailed designs and Construction.</p> | <p>Number of incentives will be available Direct Investment and international competitiveness.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Equity ownership in industrial and retails business ventures.</li> <li>Preferential 15% + reduced rate of corporate income taxation.</li> </ul>                     |
|                | Social housing                                | There is land allocated by Lonmin approx. 50ha   | Transform Marikana into a large township and the manufacturing hub of the Northwest. Additional opportunities may be presentated by implementation of the following:  |

|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  | Industrial Park<br>Health Centre<br>Bus Interchange<br>Regional Library<br>Cultural Centre<br>Institute for Technical<br>Education<br>Old Age Home and Children's Home |
|--|--|--|--|

1.8 Southern PA:

The largest planning area but with the fewest population.

Situated south of the Magaliesburg

Natural Reserve, the Southern Planning Area is a rural region

consists of mostly agricultural and conservation land.

Agricultural projects

| Directorates       | Project                                | Key Milestones  | Opportunities  |
|--------------------|--|---|--|
| Directorate<br>LED | High value-added agricultural<br>Zones | Capacity development<br><br>Facilitation of state lease over a<br>period of 5 years.<br><br>Transfers of farms to the<br>farmers. | The Southern Rustenburg is identified as a potential<br>corridor for agricultural goods to the fresh produce market<br>of Rustenburg and Pretoria.<br><br>Facilitation of land through the department of Land affairs<br>will focus of developing agricultural cooperative to<br>sustainable commercial farmers.<br><br>Storage and agro processing are potential opportunities to<br>improve value chain in the agricultural sector.<br><br>To promote new entrants into the agricultural sector, focus<br>will necessarily be on enabling the marginalized group,<br>such a subsistence and agricultural cooperative to become<br>successful in commercial farming and agribusinesses. |

**CHAPTER 4:  
PROJECTS AND PROGRAMMES**

4.1 The table below reflects the medium-term capital budget over the next three years.

| Vote Description                      | Current Year 2024/25 |                 | 2025/26 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework |                        |                        |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------|---|------------------------|------------------------|
|                                       | Original Budget      | Adjusted Budget | Budget Year 2025/26                                 | Budget Year +1 2026/27 | Budget Year +2 2027/28 |
| <b>R thousand</b>                     |                      |                 |   |                        |                        |
| <b>Funded by:</b>                     |                      |                 |   |                        |                        |
| National Government                   | 402 858              | 458 884         | 380 673   | 389 212                | 422 824                |
| Provincial Government                 | 455                  | 455             | 482   | 498                    | 498                    |
| <b>Transfers recognised - capital</b> | <b>403 313</b>       | <b>459 339</b>  | <b>381 155</b>                                      | <b>389 710</b>         | <b>423 322</b>         |
| <b>Borrowing</b>                      | –                    | –               | –   | –                      | –                      |
| <b>Internally generated funds</b>     | 238 298              | 238 961         | 101 550   | 92 127                 | 93 530                 |
| <b>Total Capital Funding</b>          | <b>641 611</b>       | <b>698 300</b>  | <b>482 704</b>                                      | <b>481 837</b>         | <b>516 852</b>         |

The capital budget for the 2025/26 financial year amounts to **R482 million**. This capital budget is funded by Conditional Grants of **R381 million** and internally generated funds of **R101 million**.

4.2 The grant funding comprises the following:

| Capital Grant                                       | Proposed 2025-2026 | Proposed 2026-2027 | Proposed 2027-2028 |
|---|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Department Sports Arts Culture Grant                | 481 514            | 497 831            | 497 831            |
| Integrated National Electrification Programme Grant | 14 700 000         | 23 000 000         | 24 040 000         |
| Municipal Infrastructure Grant                      | 273 808 050        | 298 698 050        | 313 131 400        |
| Neighbourhood Development Partnership Grant         | 15 379 000         | 6 000 000          | 13 000 000         |
| Public Transport Network Grant                      | 26 786 193         | 21 375 802         | 22 352 813         |
| Water Services Infrastructure Grant                 | 50 000 000         | 40 138 000         | 50 300 000         |
| <b>Grand Total</b>                                  | <b>381 154 757</b> | <b>389 709 683</b> | <b>423 322 044</b> |

Projects that will be implemented through the Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG) are as follows:

IDP REVIEW 2024-2025

| Department Code               | Account Description                                       | Ward         | Funding Source | Proposed 2025-2026 | Proposed 2026-2027 |
|-------------------------------|---|--------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| DCD : Sport Facilities        | Construction of Seraleng Sports Facility                  | 41           | MIG            | 9 000 000          | -                  |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Computer Equipment- Projector and Drone Camera            | all          | MIG            | 75 000             | -                  |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Office Machinery- Shredder Machine                        | all          | MIG            | 60 000             | -                  |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Office Furniture- Microwave and Fridges                   |              | MIG            | 30 000             | -                  |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Tlhabane West Sports Facility                             | 8            | MIG            | 5 000 000          | -                  |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Installation of High Mast Light in Kanana Phase A         | 23           | MIG            | 7 000 000          |                    |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Installation of High Mast Light in Robega Phase 2         | 2            | MIG            | 7 000 000          | -                  |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Installation of High Mast Lights: Kanana Phase C          | 23           | MIG            | 7 000 000          | -                  |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Construction of roads and stomwater in Phatsima - Phase A | 1            | MIG            | 6 000 000          | -                  |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Boitekong Ward 19 Roads And Stormwater Drainage Phase     | 19           | MIG            | 12 000 000         | -                  |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Construction of Tlhabane AC Water Phase A & B             | 9, 10, 11,13 | MIG            | 45 000 000         | 10 000 000         |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Construction of Tlhabane AC Sewer A & B                   | 9,10, 11,13  | MIG            | 45 000 000         | 10 000 000         |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Construction of Bospoort Bulk Water Pipeline              | Various      | MIG/<br>RWST   | 55 000 000         | 66 000 000         |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Construction of Bospoort Reservoir and Access road        | 44           | MIG/<br>RWST   | 80 000 000         | 60 000 000         |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Upgrading of Bospoort Mechanical and Electrical WTW       | 44           | MIG/<br>RWST   | 100 000 000        | 120 000<br>000Pr   |

IDP REVIEW 2024-2025

|                               |  |           |      |                 |            |
|-------------------------------|--|-----------|------|-----------------|------------|
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Lethabong Internal Sewer Reticulation, Toilet Structures and Upgrading of WWTW Phase A,B,C,D,E,F | 27 & 28   | MIG  | 60 000 000      | 50 000 000 |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Construction of Sidewalks from Marikana CBD to Township  | 31 & 32   | NDPG | 20 789 500      | 5 500 000  |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Construction of Sidewalks from Marikana CBD to Township: Road (D1325)                            | 31 & 32   | NDPG | 9 689 500       |            |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Replacement of Bulk and reticulation Pipeline in Meriting 4 & 5                                  | 18        | WSIG | 18 625 000      | 18 875 000 |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Replacement of Bulk and water storages and reticulation Pipeline in Phatsima                     | 1         | WSIG | 20 875 000      | 26 625 000 |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Procurement of Specialised Waste Vehicles  | All wards | MIG  | 25 000 000      | 23 000 000 |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Monakato water storages and Pumpstation  | 25        | WSIG | 18 375 000      | 16 625 000 |
| OMM : Project Management Unit | Ramochana Sewer Network  | 39        | WSIG | 13 000 000<br>- | -          |

### 4.3 INTERNALLY FUNDED PROJECTS

The internally funded budget proposal is R101 million in 2025/26 and reduces to R92 million and R93 million respectively in the outer years. It represents 21%, 19% and 18% respectively over the 2025/26 – 2027/28 MTREF period. The below table is indicative of the proposed Internally funded projects.

IDP REVIEW 2024-2025

| AccountDescription   | Funding Source | Proposed 2025-2026 | Proposed 2026-2027 | Proposed 2027-2028 |
|--|----------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Transport Assets-Acquisition of New Vehicles                                 | CRR            | 8 250 000          | 7 837 500          | 8 033 438          |
| Upgrading of Customer Care Centre  | CRR            | 3 000 000          | -                  | -                  |
| 20MVA Sbstation Power Transformer (Voltaire Substation)                      | CRR            | 5 000 000          | 5 225 000          | 5 355 625          |
| Replacement of 33 kV Cables (Noord Sub, Munic Sub,etc)                       | CRR            | 4 000 000          | 4 180 000          | 4 284 500          |
| Refurbishment of Marikana Pumpstation  | CRR            | 4 000 000          | 4 180 000          | 4 284 500          |
| Software Acquisition: Supervisory Ctrl & Data Acquisition (S.C.A.D.A) System | CRR            | 2 500 000          | 2 750 000          | 3 000 000          |
| Refurbishment of Aged Rural Network  | CRR            | 2 500 000          | 2 750 000          | 3 000 000          |
| Office Furniture - Centralized   | CRR            | 1 750 000          | 1 500 000          | 1 500 000          |
| Replacement of AC Pipes  | CRR            | 2 000 000          | 2 100 000          | 2 250 000          |
| Machinery and Equipment-Chiller Plants Upgrading                             | CRR            | 2 000 000          | 2 100 000          | 2 250 000          |
| Ripple control for Industries and Waterkloof Substations                     | CRR            | 2 000 000          | 2 100 000          | 2 250 000          |
| Refurbishment of vandilized network  | CRR            | 2 000 000          | 2 100 000          | 2 250 000          |
| Capex : P.P.E > Upgrading - Electricity Network                              | CRR            | 2 000 000          | 2 100 000          | 2 250 000          |
| Park Substation - Replacement of 33kV switchgear and cabling                 | CRR            | 2 000 000          | 2 100 000          | 2 250 000          |
| New Mains - Cashan Reservoir to Geelhout and Industrial Reservoirs           | CRR            | 2 000 000          | 2 100 000          | 2 250 000          |
| Refurbishment of Outfall Sewerlines- Boitekong WWTW Drainage areas           | CRR            | 2 000 000          | 2 100 000          | 2 250 000          |
| Refurbishment of Outfall Sewerlines- Rustenburg WWTW Drainage areas          | CRR            | 2 000 000          | 2 100 000          | 2 250 000          |
| Distribution - Refurbishment of 11kV Substation Equipment                    | CRR            | 1 500 000          | 1 650 000          | 1 750 000          |
| HV Substations-Fencing and Guardhouses                                       | CRR            | 1 250 000          | 1 400 000          | 1 500 000          |
| Computer Equipment/laptops and computers                                     | CRR            | 1 250 000          | 1 250 000          | 1 000 000          |
| stores revamp & security upgrades  | CRR            | 1 500 000          | 1 000 000          | -                  |
| Distribution-WCWDM: Reduction of Water Loss                                  | CRR            | 1 425 000          | 1 489 125          | 1 526 353          |
| Anti Vandal Proof Metering Kiosk/ Boxes                                      | CRR            | 1 250 000          | 1 306 250          | 1 338 906          |
| Capital Spares-Smart Electrical Prepaid Meters and System                    | CRR            | 1 250 000          | 2 612 500          | 2 677 813          |
| Machinery and Equipment- Replacement of Pumps                                | CRR            | 1 250 000          | 1 306 250          | 1 338 906          |
| Smart Pre-Paid Water Meters  | CRR            | 1 250 000          | 1 306 250          | 1 338 906          |
| Refurbishment of 11KV Substation Buildings                                   | CRR            | 1 229 444          | 1 284 769          | 1 316 889          |
| HV Test machine and Equipment (replacement)                                  | CRR            | 1 083 920          | 1 132 697          | 1 161 014          |
| Machinery and Equipment-Replacement of Airconditioners                       | CRR            | 1 000 000          | 1 045 000          | 1 071 125          |
| Servers of IT Infrastructure   | CRR            | 1 000 000          | 1 250 000          | 1 250 000          |
| CCTV Cameras   | CRR            | 5 500 000          | 500 000            | 1 000 000          |
| Upgrading of Kremetart Road Crossing   | CRR            | 823 110            | 860 150            | 881 654            |
| Supply and installation of solar panels on various facilities                | CRR            | 1 300 000          | 1 202 900          | 1 320 587          |
| Waterproofing at various RLM facilities                                      | CRR            | 750 000            | 784 500            | 820 587            |
| Upgrading of Krokodile Road Crossing/Waterivier                              | CRR            | 696 790            | 728 146            | 746 349            |
| Upgrading of Watsonia / Golf Course Crossing                                 | CRR            | 688 633            | 719 621            | 737 612            |
| Upgrading of Phala Road Crossing   | CRR            | 672 668            | 702 938            | 720 511            |
| Refurbishment of Traffic Light Intersections                                 | CRR            | 668 434            | 698 513            | 715 976            |
| Upgrading of Pendorring Road Crossing  | CRR            | 663 460            | 693 316            | 710 649            |
| Upgrading of Middle Road Crossing  | CRR            | 646 221            | 720 301            | 763 308            |
| Dinie Estate - Electrification - Bulk line                                   | CRR            | 601 857            | 628 940            | 644 664            |
| Electrical Tools and Equipment (Protection relays, Reclosers & Two Way R     | CRR            | 554 113            | 579 048            | 593 525            |
| Renovation of East End Sport Facility  | CRR            | 550 000            | 575 300            | 601 764            |
| Installation of back-up water supply at various facilities                   | CRR            | 500 000            | 523 000            | 547 058            |
| REVAMP OF CIVIC CENTER   | CRR            | 500 000            | 523 000            | 547 058            |
| REVAMP OF MPHENI BUILDING  | CRR            | 500 000            | 523 000            | 547 058            |
| STOVES   | CRR            | 500 000            | 523 000            | 547 058            |
| Access control   | CRR            | 500 000            | 500 000            | 500 000            |
| Refurbishment of Sewer pump stations   | CRR            | 500 000            | 522 500            | 535 563            |
| Renovation of various RLM public toilets                                     | CRR            | 450 000            | 470 700            | 492 352            |
| Refurbishment of Ben Marais Hall ( move to fence zweli )                     | CRR            | 450 000            | 470 700            | 492 352            |
| Supply, commission and installation of a generator at Civic Centre           | CRR            | 1 500 000          | 418 400            | 437 646            |
| Capex : P.P.E > Sound Equip & Lights, Civic Centre and various Halls         | CRR            | 400 000            | 418 400            | 437 646            |

IDP REVIEW 2024-2025

| AccountDescription   | Funding Source | Proposed 2025-2026 | Proposed 2026-2027 | Proposed 2027-2028 |
|--|----------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| call centre system   | CRR            | 400 000            | -                  | -                  |
| Renovation of Lethabong Hall   | CRR            | 350 000            | 366 100            | 1 266 175          |
| Purchase Bomag rollers/Roads/Default/RRT : Roads And Stormwater          | CRR            | 350 000            | 365 750            | 374 894            |
| Renovation of Meriting Hall  | CRR            | 300 000            | 313 800            | 328 235            |
| Purchase road marking machine/Roads/Default/RRT : Roads And Stormwa      | CRR            | 300 000            | 313 500            | 321 338            |
| Renovation of Vehicle Testing Station                                    | CRR            | 300 000            | -                  | 350 000            |
| Capex : Injection tester - Primary and secondary                         | CRR            | 291 000            | 304 095            | 311 697            |
| Capex : Batteries and Chargers   | CRR            | 291 000            | 304 095            | 311 697            |
| Municipal Running Cost/Acquisitions/Equitable Share/Roads/Whole of the M | CRR            | 274 314            | 286 658            | 293 824            |
| Installation of fence at various RLM facilities (Incl RCCs)              | CRR            | 250 000            | 261 500            | 273 529            |
| Closure and rehabilitation of 5 Communal Sites                           | CRR            | 250 000            | 545 500            | 273 529            |
| Rescue Equipment Jaws of Life  | CRR            | 225 000            | -                  | -                  |
| Capex : Distribution - Replacement of Electricians Tool Boxes            | CRR            | 177 353            | 185 334            | 189 967            |
| Brush cutters/ including sport facilities unit                           | CRR            | 197 500            | 300 000            | 200 000            |
| Borehole installation x8   | CRR            | 160 000            | 167 200            | 171 380            |
| Supply and Installation of Pumps and Generators                          | CRR            | 150 000            | 156 900            | 164 117            |
| Fire and Rescue equipment  | CRR            | 150 000            | 100 000            | 100 000            |
| Refurbishment of Pound   | CRR            | 125 000            | -                  | 50 000             |
| Tools and Equipment  | CRR            | 125 000            | 130 625            | 133 891            |
| Ride On Lawn Mower   | CRR            | 100 000            | 200 000            | 85 000             |
| Public Address system (PA)   | CRR            | 100 000            | -                  | -                  |
| Purchase Multipurpose trailers/Roads/Default/RRT : Roads And Stormwater  | CRR            | 100 000            | 104 500            | 107 113            |
| Backup Water - RCCs x9 (Jojo Tanks)                                      | CRR            | 99 500             | -                  | -                  |
| Audit software: Licence fees   | CRR            | 91 316             | 95 425             | 97 810             |
| 500 Liters per hour Reverse Osmosis Systems x9 (Purifying System)        | CRR            | 82 500             | -                  | -                  |
| Motors and Pumps   | CRR            | 80 000             | 83 000             | 85 000             |
| Binding Machine  | CRR            | 75 000             | -                  | -                  |
| Parking Area ( Pavement and Carports)                                    | CRR            | 75 000             | 78 375             | 80 334             |
| Storage Lockers  | CRR            | 75 000             | -                  | -                  |
| Industrial carpet cleaning machines                                      | CRR            | 55 000             | 57 530             | 60 176             |
| Extension pruners  | CRR            | 50 000             | -                  | 45 000             |
| Chainsaws  | CRR            | 50 000             | -                  | 60 000             |
| Office Equipment (Two-Way Radios and Tablets)                            | CRR            | 50 000             | 52 250             | 53 556             |
| Capex : Distribution - Replacement of Hydraulic Hand Tools In Store Room | CRR            | 48 500             | 50 683             | 51 950             |
| Mobile wastewater pump   | CRR            | 35 000             | -                  | -                  |
| Office Equipment- Water Dispensers                                       | CRR            | 30 439             | -                  | -                  |
| Office Equipment   | CRR            | 25 000             | -                  | -                  |
| Office Equipment   | CRR            | 25 000             | -                  | -                  |
| Point of Sale Complete Register x 5 ( TILLS )                            | CRR            | 25 000             | -                  | -                  |
| Machinery  | CRR            | 25 000             | -                  | -                  |
| First Aid Boxes  | CRR            | 25 000             | 10 000             | 15 000             |
| Office Equipment (Hoover Vacuum Cleaner)                                 | CRR            | 21 560             | -                  | -                  |
| Fire and Escape Doors Ikageng & Rankelenyane RCCs                        | CRR            | 16 000             | -                  | -                  |
| Road Safety Training Equipments  | CRR            | 15 000             | 50 000             | 50 000             |
| Generator  | CRR            | 15 000             | -                  | -                  |
| Projector  | CRR            | 10 000             | -                  | -                  |
| Devices:(Recording device, camera & projector)                           | CRR            | 5 000              | -                  | -                  |
| Law enforcement vehicles   | CRR            | -                  | -                  | -                  |
| STUFF LOCKERS  | CRR            | 300 000            | -                  | -                  |
| Fire engine  | CRR            | -                  | 2 500 000          | -                  |
| Land acquisition   | CRR            | 1 000 000          | 1 045 000          | 1 071 125          |
| Capex : Leethabong Beehives  | CRR            | 500 000            | 525 000            | 550 000            |
| Capex : Revonations Farmer's Production Support Unit                     | CRR            | 250 000            | 300 000            | 350 000            |
| Capex : Database Software  | CRR            | 150 000            | 156 600            | 160 515            |
| Capex : Self-Service Computer Screens                                    | CRR            | 150 000            | 156 600            | 160 515            |
| Capex : Mechanisation of Farmer's Production Support Unit                | CRR            | 125 000            | 150 000            | 175 000            |
| Capex : Digital Business License Software                                | CRR            | 100 000            | 104 400            | 107 010            |
| Sliding tracked storage system   | CRR            | 100 000            | -                  | -                  |
| Sliding tracked storage system   | CRR            | 100 000            | -                  | -                  |
| Capex : Tools of Trade   | CRR            | 50 000             | 52 200             | 53 505             |
| Temporal Toilets   | CRR            | 2 500 000          | 2 612 500          | 2 677 813          |
| Speed Cameras  | CRR            | 5 000 000          | -                  | -                  |
| <b>Total</b>   |                | <b>101 549 631</b> | <b>92 126 833</b>  | <b>93 529 646</b>  |

**4.4 PUBLIC SECTOR, BUSINESS AND OTHER STAKEHOLDER PROJECTS/PROGRAMS**

This section is populated with Programmes and/ or Projects from other government departments and the Business Community, which must be implemented in partnership with the Municipality in fulfilment of Government department business plans, Mining companies Social Labour Plans (SLPs) and Corporate Social Investments Legislative requirements. An updated list of projects from stakeholders is still expected and will be replaced once received.

**1. HEALTH**

| Project Name   | MTEF Forward Estimates |               |               |
|--|------------------------|---------------|---------------|
|  | 24/25                  | 25/26         | 26/27         |
| <b>Maintenance and Repairs</b>                         |                        |               |               |
| JST Lifts Replacement                                  | 2 400                  | -             | -             |
| Maintenance on Prioritized Clinics - Bojanala District | 4 200                  | 4 900         | 11 000        |
| Bojanala Statutory Maintenance                         | 4 550                  | 6 860         | 15 000        |
| Fire Equipment Term Contract - Bojanala District       | 560                    | 588           | 2 000         |
| <b>TOTAL</b>   | <b>11 710</b>          | <b>12 348</b> | <b>28 000</b> |
| <b>New or Replaced Infrastructure</b>                  |                        |               |               |
| Bojanala Tertiary Hospital                             | 1 540                  | 1 470         | -             |
| <b>TOTAL</b>   | <b>1 540</b>           | <b>1 470</b>  |               |
| <b>Rehabilitation, Renovations &amp; Refurbishment</b> |                        |               |               |
| Boitekong CHC - Refurbish Mental Health Unit           | 700                    | -             | -             |
| Phokeng Forensic Mortuary                              | 10 500                 | 9 800         | 1 000         |
| JST Hospital Mental Unit Refurbishment                 | 700                    | -             | -             |
| Refurbish Medical Gas Systems Bojanala Phase 2         | 14 000                 | -             | -             |

IDP REVIEW 2024-2025

|   |               |               |               |
|---|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| <b>TOTAL</b>                                | <b>25 900</b> | <b>9 800</b>  | <b>1 000</b>  |
| <b>Upgrading and Additions</b>              |               |               |               |
| JST Hospital - Upgrading of ICU             | 17 500        | 34 300        |               |
| JST Hospital (New Maternal Obstetrics Unit) | 7 000         | -             | 10 000        |
| EMS - Additional Space in Bojanala          | 3 850         | 7 350         | 10 000        |
| <b>TOTAL</b>                                | <b>28 350</b> | <b>41 650</b> | <b>20 000</b> |
| <b>Non-Infrastructure</b>                   |               |               |               |
| JST Hospital - HT ( Mental and Theatre )    | 500           | -             | 10 000        |
| JST Hospital ( Upgrade Gyno Ward ) HT       | -             | 4 900         | -             |
| Seraleng Clinic - HT                        | 2 450         | 980           | -             |
| <b>TOTAL</b>                                | <b>2 950</b>  | <b>5 880</b>  | <b>10 000</b> |

2. EDUCATION

| Project Name                          | MTEF Forward Estimates (R'000) |              |               |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------|---------------|
|                                       | 24/25                          | 25/26        | 26/27         |
| <b>New or Replaced Infrastructure</b> |                                |              |               |
| Chaneng Primary School                | 15 000                         | -            | -             |
| Paardekraal Primary                   | 2 004                          | -            | -             |
| Senganga Primary School               | 1 619                          | 5 000        | 32 000        |
| Seraleng Primary                      | 3 000                          | -            | -             |
| <b>TOTAL</b>                          | <b>21 623</b>                  | <b>5 000</b> | <b>32 000</b> |
| <b>Upgrading and Additions</b>        |                                |              |               |

IDP REVIEW 2024-2025

|   |               |              |               |
|---|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| Bakwena Secondary School 001                | 14 500        | 1 500        | -             |
| Bonwakgogo Primary                          | -             | 1 340        | 12 000        |
| <b>TOTAL</b>                                | <b>14 500</b> | <b>2 840</b> | <b>12 000</b> |
| <b>Non-Infrastructure</b>                   |               |              |               |
| Bojanala Platinum District Office Furniture | 6 000         | 4 000        | 4 000         |
| <b>TOTAL</b>                                | <b>6 000</b>  | <b>4 000</b> | <b>4 000</b>  |

3. CATA

| Project Name                                       | MTEF Forward Estimates (R'000) |       |              |
|--|--------------------------------|-------|--------------|
|  | 24/25                          | 25/26 | 26/27        |
| <b>1. Maintenance and Repairs</b>                  |                                |       |              |
| Rustenburg Recreation Centre (Building/Structures) | 500                            |       | 1 000        |
| <b>TOTAL: Maintenance and Repairs</b>              | <b>500</b>                     |       | <b>1 000</b> |

## 4. SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

| Project Name   | MTEF Forward Estimates (R'000) |              |              |
|--|--------------------------------|--------------|--------------|
|  | 24/25                          | 25/26        | 26/27        |
| <b>Maintenance and Repairs</b>                                     |                                |              |              |
| Lethabong CCC Maintenance (Day Care Centre)                        | 400                            | 400          | 400          |
| Rustenburg Secure Care Centre                                      | 454                            | 454          | 454          |
| Tlhabane Building (Rustenburg Service Point) (Office Accomodation) | 350                            | 350          | 350          |
| <b>TOTAL: Maintenance and Repairs</b>                              | <b>1 204</b>                   | <b>1 204</b> | <b>1 204</b> |
| <b>Upgrading and Additions</b>                                     |                                |              |              |
| Tlhabane Service Point (Office Accomodation)                       | -                              | 2 236        | 2 236        |
| <b>TOTAL: Upgrading and Additions</b>                              |                                | <b>2 236</b> | <b>2 236</b> |

## 5. HUMAN SETTLEMENT

| Project Name   | MTEF Forward Estimates (R'000) |        |       |
|--|--------------------------------|--------|-------|
|  | 24/25                          | 25/26  | 26/27 |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Marikana Rooikoppies                    | 2 000                          | -      | -     |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Mbeki Sun 2000                          | 1 000                          | 742    | -     |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Popo Molefe                             | 1 000                          | 742    | -     |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Yizo Yizo                               | 132                            | 132    | -     |
| Rustenburg Boshhoek  | 345                            | 645    | -     |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Marikana Rooikoppies - Phase 1          | 156                            | 156    | -     |
| Marikana Ext 13  | 595                            | 895    | -     |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Popo Molefe                             | 2 055                          | -      | -     |
| Remainder Portion 21 of the farm Goedgenoeg                | 2 000                          | 2 500  | -     |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Popo Molefe                             | 21 732                         | 7 211  | -     |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Popo Molefe                             | 21 732                         | 7 211  | -     |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Popo Molefe                             | 21 732                         | 7 211  | 7 715 |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Popo Molefe                             | 21 732                         | -      | -     |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Popo Molefe                             | 21 732                         | -      | -     |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Mbeki Sun 2000                          | 18 027                         | 7 211  | -     |
| Rustenburg Boshhoek  | 2 000                          | -      | -     |
| 2023/24 Rustenburg Popo Molefe internal services - Phase 1 | 18 127                         | 16 296 | -     |

| Project Name  | MTEF Forward Estimates (R'000) |               |               |
|---|--------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
|   | 24/25                          | 25/26         | 26/27         |
| 2023/24 Rustenburg Yizo Yizo Internal services - Phase 1                        | -                              | 25 237        | 7 788         |
| <b>TOTAL Informal Settlements Upgrading Partnership Grant</b>                   | <b>156 944</b>                 | <b>77 036</b> | <b>15 503</b> |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Bokamoso 1600 - Metro Projects                               | 4 418                          | 5 522         | 5 522         |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Lethabong Ext 2 - Makole                                     | 4 086                          | 5 964         | 5 853         |
| 2016/17 Rustenburg Marikana Rooikoppies - Phase 1                               | 10 000                         | 9 000         | 7 000         |
| 2021/22 Rustenburg Bokamoso - 250 Units Tholo tsa Kwena                         | 3 408                          | 4 260         | 8 520         |
| 2021/22 Rustenburg Bokamoso - 300 Mintirho                                      | 3 408                          | 4 260         | 4 260         |
| Rustenburg L M. Meriting Ext 4 & 5 (1590 Sub) - Phase 1                         | 649                            | 865           | 649           |
| RUSTENBURG - BOITEKONG Ext 2.4 & 5 (3200 Subs) - Boitekong Ext. 2.4 & 5 Phase 1 | 150                            | 252           | 100           |
| Rustenburg - Boitekong Ext 13 (440 Subsidies) - Phase 1                         | 100                            | 166           | 66            |
| RUSTENBURG - FREEDOM PARK (2000 SUBSIDIES) - Phase 1                            | 185                            | 309           | 123           |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Bobuampya Village                       | 2 609                          | -             | -             |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Kanana                                  | 2 609                          | -             | -             |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Lefaragatlhe Village                    | 2 609                          | -             | -             |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Lesung Village 50                       | 2 609                          | -             | -             |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Mabitse Village                         | 2 609                          | -             | -             |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Makolokwe 150                           | 435                            | -             | -             |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Military Veterans                       | 2 234                          | -             | -             |

| Project Name  | MTEF Forward Estimates (R'000) |        |        |
|---|--------------------------------|--------|--------|
|   | 24/25                          | 25/26  | 26/27  |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Mmamerotse Village  | 435                            | -      | -      |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Mosenthal           | 2 609                          | -      | -      |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Phokeng Village     | 2 826                          | -      | -      |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Photsaneng Village  | 3 044                          | -      | -      |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Rankelenyane        | 3 478                          | -      | -      |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Syferbult Village   | 3 044                          | 3 261  | 3 261  |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Tantanana Village   | 1 087                          | -      | -      |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Thekwane Village    | 3 261                          | -      | -      |
| Rustenburg - Rustenburg Villages 1050 - Tlapa Village       | 2 609                          | -      | -      |
| Rustenburg Boitekong Ext16 Bulk Services - Phase 1          | 15 000                         | 9 000  | 10 000 |
| Rustenburg Bokamoso 1400 - Phase 1                          | 15 482                         | 9 000  | 10 000 |
| Rustenburg Hartebeesfontein Pls (1417 Subs) - Phase1        | 216                            | 360    | 144    |
| Rustenburg L.M Boitekong Ext 7[23] (1075 Subs) - Phase 1    | 194                            | 259    | 194    |
| Rustenburg Municipality - Rankunyane (Monnakato) - 93 Units | 3 044                          | 5 435  | 3 261  |
| Rustenburg Rustenburg Military Vets 26 - Phase 1            | 2 616                          | -      | -      |
| Rustenburg. Rankelenyane. 65 - Phase 1                      | 2 609                          | 1 087  | 1 087  |
| 2021/22 Rustenburg Bokamoso - 250 Tawana                    | 3 093                          | 11 045 | 11 045 |
| 2021/22 Rustenburg Bokamoso - Lempitse                      | 3 093                          | 11 045 | 11 045 |
| 2023/24 Rustenburg Boitekong ext 16 units - Phase 1         | -                              | 11 045 | 11 045 |

| Project Name                                     | MTEF Forward Estimates (R'000) |                |                |
|--|--------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
|  | 24/25                          | 25/26          | 26/27          |
| 2023/24 Rustenburg Mbeki Sun units - Phase 1     | -                              | 11 045         | 11 045         |
| 2023/24 Rustenburg Popo Molefe units - Phase 1   | -                              | -              | 11 045         |
| Rustenburg Marikana Mega Project - Phase 1       | 10 034                         | 5 000          | 10 000         |
| Rustenburg Mega Project - Phase 1                | -                              | 3 000          | 3 000          |
| <b>TOTAL Human Settlements Development Grant</b> | <b>119 889</b>                 | <b>111 180</b> | <b>128 265</b> |



**SIBANYESTILLWATER RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES (SRPM) - 2021 – 2025 SLP)**

**AND**

**SIBANYE RUSTENBURG MINE COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT TRUST (SRMCDT)**

| SECTOR | KEY PROJECTS   | LOCALITY AND WARD NO.   | PROJECT FUNDER     | VALUE BUDGET (allocation) |    |           |          |     | TOTAL NO. ESTIMATED JOBS TO BE CREATED |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    | DELIVER Y PARTNE R/ IMPLEM ENTING AGENT |  |     |
|--------|--|-------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|----|-----------|----------|-----|--|----|----|----|----|-----------------------|----|----|-----|----|---|--|-----|
|        |  |                         |                    |                           |    |           |          |     | SHORT TERM (during construction)       |    |    |    |    | LONG TERM (permanent) |    |    |     |    |   |  |     |
|        |  |                         |                    | Y1                        | Y2 | Y3        | Y4       | Y5  | Y1                                     | Y2 | Y3 | Y4 | Y5 | Y1                    | Y2 | Y3 | Y 4 | Y5 |   |  |     |
|        |  | Rankelenyan e Ward 29   |                    |                           |    | R1m       | R2,9     |     |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   |  |     |
|        | Stormwater Channel                                       | Photsaneng Ward 45      | Sibanye Stillwater |                           |    | R 800 000 | R8m      |     |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   |  | RBA |
|        | High mast lights   | Popo Molefe Ward 21, 22 | Sibanye Stillwater |                           |    |           |          | R2m |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   |  | RLM |
|        | Support to the District Hospital (Job Shimankana Tabane) | Rustenburg Ward 42      | Sibanye Stillwater |                           |    | R780 000  | R5,220 m |     |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   |  | DOH |
|        | Provision of mobile water tankers                        | ALL WARDS               | Sibanye Stillwater |                           |    | R3m       |          |     |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   |  | RLM |







**SIBANYESTILLWATER RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES (SRPM) - 2021 – 2025 SLP)**

**AND**

**SIBANYE RUSTENBURG MINE COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT TRUST (SRMCDT)**

| SECTOR        | KEY PROJECTS   | LOCALITY AND WARD NO.     | PROJECT FUNDER     | VALUE BUDGET (allocation) |    |                   |             |    | TOTAL NO. ESTIMATED JOBS TO BE CREATED |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    | DELIVER Y PARTNE R/ IMPLEM ENTING AGENT |        |
|---------------|--|---------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|----|-------------------|-------------|----|--|----|----|----|----|-----------------------|----|----|-----|----|---|--------|
|               |  |                           |                    |                           |    |                   |             |    | SHORT TERM (during construction)       |    |    |    |    | LONG TERM (permanent) |    |    |     |    |   |        |
|               |  |                           |                    | Y1                        | Y2 | Y3                | Y4          | Y5 | Y1                                     | Y2 | Y3 | Y4 | Y5 | Y1                    | Y2 | Y3 | Y 4 | Y5 |   |        |
|               | Swimming skills and reduce child drowning incidents in dams/tailing dams                       | All identified ward - RLM | Sibanye Stillwater |                           |    | <b>R200 000</b>   |             |    |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   | RLM    |
|               | Provide Broad Based Livelihoods Programme and GBV in partnership with the Pastors (Rustenburg) | All wards - RLM           | Sibanye Stillwater |                           |    | <b>R3 952 800</b> |             |    |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   | Umsizi |
| <b>SRMCDT</b> | Construction of a new school, Tirelong Secondary School  | Ikemeleng Ward 35/Ward 33 | SRMCDT             |                           |    |                   | <b>R25m</b> |    |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   | DOE    |

SIBANYESTILLWATER RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES (SRPM) - 2021 – 2025 SLP

AND

SIBANYE RUSTENBURG MINE COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT TRUST (SRMCDT)

| SECTOR | KEY PROJECTS  | LOCALITY AND WARD NO. | PROJECT FUNDER | VALUE BUDGET (allocation) |    |    |        |    | TOTAL NO. ESTIMATED JOBS TO BE CREATED |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    | DELIVER Y PARTNE R/ IMPLEM ENTING AGENT |  |     |
|--------|---|-----------------------|----------------|---------------------------|----|----|--------|----|--|----|----|----|----|-----------------------|----|----|-----|----|---|--|-----|
|        |   |                       |                |                           |    |    |        |    | SHORT TERM (during construction)       |    |    |    |    | LONG TERM (permanent) |    |    |     |    |   |  |     |
|        |   |                       |                | Y1                        | Y2 | Y3 | Y4     | Y5 | Y1                                     | Y2 | Y3 | Y4 | Y5 | Y1                    | Y2 | Y3 | Y 4 | Y5 |   |  |     |
|        | Provision of equipment to a new Technical School (Tsholofelo College)                       | Boitekong Ward 20     | SRMCDT         |                           |    |    | R2m    |    |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   |  | DOE |
|        | 1.Purchase of 2 Emergency Response Vehicle<br>2. Procurement of 3 planned patient transport | All wards - RLM       | SRMCDT         |                           |    |    | R5m    |    |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   |  | DOH |
|        | Renovation of Thekwane Clinic   | Thekwane Ward 34      | SRMCDT         |                           |    |    | R7,5 m |    |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   |  | DOH |
|        | High Mast Lights  | Ikemeleng Ward        | SRMCDT         |                           |    |    | R6m    |    |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   |  | RLM |

**SIBANYESTILLWATER RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES (SRPM) - 2021 – 2025 SLP)**

**AND**

**SIBANYE RUSTENBURG MINE COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT TRUST (SRMCDT)**

| SECTOR | KEY PROJECTS   | LOCALITY AND WARD NO. | PROJECT FUNDER | VALUE BUDGET (allocation) |    |    |        |    | TOTAL NO. ESTIMATED JOBS TO BE CREATED |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    | DELIVER Y PARTNE R/ IMPLEM ENTING AGENT |                    |
|--------|--|-----------------------|----------------|---------------------------|----|----|--------|----|--|----|----|----|----|-----------------------|----|----|-----|----|---|--------------------|
|        |  |                       |                |                           |    |    |        |    | SHORT TERM (during construction)       |    |    |    |    | LONG TERM (permanent) |    |    |     |    |   |                    |
|        |  |                       |                | Y1                        | Y2 | Y3 | Y4     | Y5 | Y1                                     | Y2 | Y3 | Y4 | Y5 | Y1                    | Y2 | Y3 | Y 4 | Y5 |   |                    |
|        |  | 35/Ward 33            |                |                           |    |    |        |    |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   |                    |
|        | Construction of a community swimming pool and Training of swimming instructors and lifesavers. |                       | SRMCDT         |                           |    |    | R7m    |    |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   | African Sea Divers |
|        | Establishment of backyard gardens i.e. Broad-based livelihoods Programme                       | All wards - RLM       | SRMCDT         |                           |    |    | R3,1 m |    |  |    |    |    |    |                       |    |    |     |    |   | DOA                |

| IMPALA PLATINUM LIMITED (2024 – 2028) SOCIAL AND LABOUR PLAN - MINING RIGHT (130, 131, 132 & 133MR) |  |                           |                                |              |              |              |              |              |              |  |    |    |    |    |                                      |
|---|--|---------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--|----|----|----|----|--------------------------------------|
| SECTOR  | KEY PROJECTS                           | LOCALITY AND WARD NO.     | PROJECT FUNDER & COST ESTIMATE | VALUE        |              |              |              |              |              | TOTAL NO. ESTIMATED JOBS TO BE CREATED |    |    |    |    | DELIVERY PARTNER/ IMPLEMENTING AGENT |
|   |  |                           |                                | BUDGET       |              |              |              |              |              | SHORT TERM (during construction)       |    |    |    |    |                                      |
|   |  |                           |                                | (allocation) |              |              |              |              |              |  |    |    |    |    |                                      |
|   |  |                           |                                | Y1           | Y2           | Y3           | Y4           | Y5           | Total        | Y1                                     | Y2 | Y3 | Y4 | Y5 |                                      |
| INFRASTRUCTURE  | Construction of Internal Roads ±1,300m | Kanana - Ward 23          | Impala                         |              |              | R 4 687 000  | R 6 030 500  |              | R 10 717 500 |  |    |    |    |    |                                      |
|   | Walkway Bridge (Pedestrian Bridge)     | Meriting (Ex 2) - Ward 12 | Impala                         |              |              | R 3 100 000  | R 4 650 000  |              | R 7 750 000  |  |    |    |    |    |                                      |
|   | Construction of a Sports Field         | Seraleng - Ward 41        | Impala                         |              |              |              | R 3 223 740  | R 4 835 610  | R 8 059 350  |  |    |    |    |    |                                      |
|   | Construction of Internal Roads ±1,300m | Luka - Ward 4             | Impala                         |              |              |              | R 4 687 000  | R 6 030 500  | R 10 717 500 |  |    |    |    |    |                                      |
|   | Construction of a Community Center     | Phokeng - Ward 4          | Impala                         |              |              | R 4 485 756  | R 2 990 504  |              | R 7 476 260  |  |    |    |    |    |                                      |
|   | Construction Of Paved Road ±1,300m     | Phokeng - Ward 6          | Impala                         |              |              |              | R 4 358 800  | R 6 538 200  | R 10 897 000 |  |    |    |    |    |                                      |
|   | School Renovation Keledi Sec Sch       | Phokeng - Ward 5          | Impala                         |              |              | R 5 000 000  | R 5 700 000  |              | R 10 700 000 |  |    |    |    |    |                                      |
| LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT  | Enterprise and Supplier Development    | All Wards                 | Impala                         | R 9 000 000  | R 19 000 000 | R 20 000 000 | R 20 000 000 | R 20 000 000 | R 88 000 000 |  |    |    |    |    |                                      |

**GLENCORE - RHOVAN SLP PROJECTS**

| Items                     | Description   | 2023        | 2024        | 2025        | 2026       | 2027       | Total       | Grand total | % allocation |
|---------------------------|---|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| Bethanie Clinic           | 2 x ambulances (Bethanie Clinic)                        | R0          | R0          | R0          | R3 000 000 | R0         | R3 000 000  | R3 000 000  | 1.89%        |
| Multipurpose Centre       | Multipurpose Centre Infrastructure                      | R0          | R0          | R14 700 000 | R7 000 000 | R0         | R21 700 000 | R21 700 000 | 13.68%       |
| Provision of Water        | Water reticulation                                      | R10 000 000 | R20 000 000 | R0          | R0         | R0         | R30 000 000 | R50 621 568 | 31.91%       |
|                           | Pumping water services                                  | R3 120 000  | R3 369 600  | R3 639 168  | R0         | R0         | R10 128 768 |             |              |
|                           | Solar towers  | R1 000 000  | R1 000 000  | R1 000 000  | R1 000 000 | R0         | R4 000 000  |             |              |
|                           | Drilling boreholes                                      | R2 000 000  | R2 160 000  | R2 332 800  | R0         | R0         | R6 492 800  |             |              |
| Resurface Road in Maumong | Resurface (1km) road in Maumong                         | R0          | R7 000 000  | R0          | R0         | R0         | R7 000 000  | R7 000 000  | 4.41%        |
| Sports and Recreation     | Build sports field - Modikoe                            | R5 000 000  | R2 000 000  | R0          | R0         | R2 000 000 | R9 000 000  | R34 750 000 | 21.90%       |
|                           | Upgrade sports field - Berseba                          | R3 000 000  | R3 000 000  | R3 000 000  | R2 000 000 | R2 500 000 | R13 500 000 |             |              |
|                           | Upgrade sports field - Bethanie                         | R0          | R0          | R3 000 000  | R1 500 000 | R1 000 000 | R5 500 000  |             |              |
|                           | Upgrade sports field - Makolokwe                        | R2 000 000  | R0          | R1 000 000  | R3 750 000 | R0         | R6 750 000  |             |              |
| Building High School      | Build a new School Infrastructure - Bakwena High School | R0          | R30 000 000 | R0          | R0         | R0         | R30 000 000 | R35 670 000 | 22.48%       |
| Build School Admin Block  | Build Administration Block - Lerothodi High School      | R0          | R0          | R0          | R3 000 000 | R0         | R3 000 000  |             |              |
| Ablution                  | Build toilets - Mojagedi High School                    | R0          | R0          | R0          | R1 500 000 | R0         | R1 500 000  |             |              |
| School Classrooms         | Build two Classrooms - Mamogale Segale Primary School   | R1 170 000  | R0          | R0          | R0         | R0         | R1 170 000  |             |              |
| Agriculture Sponsorship   | Sponsor Agricultural Business Activities                | R1 500 000  | R0          | R3 000 000  | R0         | R0         | R4 500 000  | R4 500 000  | 2.84%        |
| High Mast Light           | Additional and Fixing Existing High Mast Lights         | R0          | R1 400 000  | R0          | R0         | R0         | R1 400 000  | R1 400 000  | 1%           |

|       |                |                |                |                |               |                 |                 |         |
|-------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------|
| Total | R28 790<br>000 | R69 929<br>600 | R31 671<br>968 | R22 750<br>000 | R5 500<br>000 | R158 641<br>568 | R158 641<br>568 | 100.00% |
|-------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------|

**4.5 DISTRICT DEVELOPMENT MODEL (DDM)/BOJANALA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY ONE PLAN**

The following are high impact projects within the Bojanala District one plan

| NO | PROJECT NAME  | PROJECT OBJECTIVE                                     | ESTIMATED EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITIES | TOTAL BUDGET REQUIRED | AVAILABLE BUDGET | IMPACT           | LOCATION      | PROGRESS       |
|----|---|---|------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------|------------------|---------------|----------------|
| 01 | Waste to energy   | Provision of electricity                              | 1000                               | 13 Billion            | 0                | Over 25-30 Years | District      | Planning Stage |
| 02 | District Fresh produce market   | To establish fresh produce market                     | 500                                | 1 billion             | 0                | Over 25-30 Years | District Wide | Planning Phase |
| 03 | Revitalization of railway network   | Improved transportation                               | 0                                  | 0                     | 0                | over 25-30 years | District Wide | Planning Phase |
| 04 | Development of University of Technology                                     | To promote learning, social, and economic development | 0                                  | 0                     | 0                | over 25-30 years | District Wide | Planning Phase |
| 05 | Expansion of Rustenburg Rapid Transport system- 'Ya Rona' to Bakubung Smart | Promote economic growth and improving                 | 0                                  | 0                     | 0                | over 25-30 years | District Wide | Planning Phase |

IDP REVIEW 2024-2025

|    | City/Sun City  | quality of life.   |   |   |   |                  |               |                         |
|----|--|--|---|---|---|------------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| 06 | Phokeng Tertiary Hospital & Bakubung Smart City Proposed Medical Tertiary Hospital | To improve the level of health care, reduce patience travel to Gauteng | 0 | 0 | 0 | over 25-30 years | Rustenburg LM | Planning Phase          |
| 07 | Marikana Renewal Project: Memorial Site, Health, Education and Housing             | To provide formal housing and social facilities                        | 0 | 0 | 0 | over 25-30 years | Marikana      | Conceptualization stage |
|    |  |  |   |   |   |                  |               |                         |

## CHAPTER 5. INTEGRATION

### Sector Plans Alignment with IDP

The Integrated Development Plan is an important tool used by municipalities to provide vision, guidance and ultimately a roadmap towards developing the municipal area. Municipalities play an important role in ensuring sustainable integration between the cross cutting inter-dimensional sectors in achieving development in the area that is socially, economically, and environmentally sustainable. In order to implement the correct developmental approach, projects should be targeted at specific human needs identified during public participation. Each need identified can be allocated to a certain sector and is important in the planning and delivery of services.

The concept of integration is central to the Integrated Development Plan and is led by priority issues identified in each municipality, which provides the focus for planning and development. Furthermore, it is important that each sector should be considered in their relevance to the priority issues identified by the public.

Through sector planning the local planning requirements of each specific sector are met and need to feature as part of the IDP process. It is therefore important to make sure that the sector plans of the RLM are aligned with the IDP. In the past, the local government only played an administrative and service delivery role. It has changed in the modern day, where local needs inform the active planning of sector-specific development and ultimately contribute towards the compilation of the overall Integrated Development Plan.

Table 5-1 attends to the contribution made by each sector through the identification of their specific objectives/goals/thrusts/issues and the alignment with the priorities (strategic objectives) identified for the IDP. The following sector plans for the RLM are included:

Spatial Development Framework, 2010

Disaster Management Plan, 2007

Integrated Waste Management Plan, 2006

Water Services Development Plan, 2009

Integrated Transport Plan, 2008

Housing Sector Plan, 2012

Electricity Master Plan, 2009

Local Economic Development Plan, 2011

City Development Strategy, 2006.

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

Table 5-4: Sector Plan Alignment with the IDP

Every sector plan contributes towards fulfilling the ultimate goal of the RLM in achieving each of their priority areas, through the implementation of its sector plans.

### Linkages of the Municipal Role, to National Outcomes

| Outputs   | Key spending programmes (National)  | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.   |
|---|---|--|
| Improve on the quality of basic education   |   |  |
| <p>Improved quality of teaching and learning.</p> <p>Improved early childhood development.</p>  | <p>Increase the number of Funza Lushaka bursary recipients from 9300 to 18 100 over the 2011 MTEF</p> <p>Assess every child in grade 3, 6 and 9 every year</p> <p>Improve learning and teaching materials to be distributed to primary schools in 2014</p> <p>Improve maths and science teaching.</p> | <p>Collecting needs related to school from communities during mayoral imbizos</p> <p>Identification and allocation appropriate land and appropriate zoning for school and early childhood development centres</p> <p>Facilitate zoning and planning processes</p> <p>Facilitate the eradication of municipal service backlogs in schools by extending appropriate bulk infrastructure and connections.</p> |
| Improved health and life expectancy   |   |  |
| <p>Decreased maternal and child mortality.</p> <p>Combating HIV and AIDS and decreased burden of Tuberculosis.</p> <p>Strengthen health services effectiveness.</p> | <p>Revitalize primary health care</p> <p>Increase early antenatal visits to 50%</p> <p>Increase vaccine coverage</p> <p>Improve hospital and clinic infrastructure</p>  | <p>Offering Primary Health Care at municipal clinics</p> <p>Increase the percentage of children under 1 year of age that are vaccinated with pneumococcal and rotavirus vaccines</p> <p>Increase the proportion of pregnant women tested through health care provider-initiated counselling and testing for all</p>  |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs  | Key spending programmes (National)   | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.   |
|--|--|--|
| <p>Related IDP objective: (To ensure good health of the community by providing a comprehensive Primary Health care and ensuring the implementation of HIV/AIDS programmes)</p>   | <p>Accredit health facilities</p> <p>Extend coverage of new child vaccines</p> <p>Expand HIV prevention and treatment</p> <p>Increase prevention of mother to child transmission</p> <p>School health promotion increase school visits by nurses from 5 to 20 %</p> <p>Enhance TB treatment.</p> | <p>pregnant women</p> <p>Increase the percentage of infants requiring dual therapy for PMTCT</p> <p>Provide Isonaid Preventive Therapy (IPT) to HIV positive patients with no active TB</p> <p>Provide Contrimoxazole Preventive therapy (CPT) to HIV-TB co-infected patients</p> <p>Establishment of the HIV/AIDS support Groups</p> <p>Conducting workshops on HIV &amp; AIDS Mainstreaming in municipal services.</p> |
| <p>All people in South Africa protected and feel safe</p>  |  |  |
| <p>Reduced overall level of crime.</p> <p>An effective and integrated criminal justice system.</p> <p>Improved perceptions of crime among the population.</p> <p>Improved investor perceptions and trust.</p> <p>Effective and integrated border</p> | <p>Increase police personnel</p> <p>Establish tactical response teams in</p> <p>Occupation-specific dispensation for legal professionals</p> <p>Deploy SANDF soldiers to South Africa's borders.</p>   | <p>Crime Prevention through Environmental Design – Installation of CCTV cameras</p> <p>Establishment of Alcohol Testing Centre</p> <p>Joint law enforcement operation on bylaws and traffic regulations</p> <p>Integrated communication centre at Fire Department</p> <p>Construction and staffing of fire houses at the regional centres</p>  |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs  | Key spending programmes (National)                                      | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.   |
|--|---|--|
| <p>management.</p> <p>Integrity of identity of citizens and residents secured.</p> <p>Related IDP objective: (To promote safety and security by adequately managing traffic, monitoring public transport; providing adequate disaster management and emergency services and by ensuring compliance to and enforcement of by-laws.)</p> |   | <p>(Marikana and Phatsima)</p> <p>Strengthened traffic and by law enforcements Joint operations</p> <p>Special operations on outstanding traffic fines</p> <p>Extension of Traffic safety programmes to school outside the city core.</p>  |
| <p>Integrated ICT system and combated cybercrime.</p> <p>Related IDP objective: (To create an integrated information and communication technology for the municipality by establishing, implementing, and monitoring Management Information Systems.)</p>  | <p>Upgrade IT infrastructure</p> <p>ICT renewal in justice cluster.</p> | <p>Revision of the ICT master system plan (ICT Strategy)</p> <p>Address cybercrime by developing and approving an IT Security and cybercrime policy</p> <p>Monitoring the implementation of the Security and cybercrime policy</p> <p>Maintenance of the ICT infrastructure.</p> |
| <p>4. Decent employment through inclusive economic growth</p>  |   |  |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs   | Key spending programmes (National)   | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.   |
|---|--|--|
| <p>Faster and sustainable inclusive growth.</p> <p>More labour-absorbing growth.</p> <p>Strategy to reduce youth unemployment.</p> <p>Increase competitiveness to raise net exports and grow trades.</p> <p>Improve support to small business and cooperatives.</p> <p>Implement expanded public works programme.</p> <p>Related IDP objectives:</p> <p>(To promote, attract and retain investors through maximising private sector investment and facilitate forging of partnerships and creating conditions conducive to entrepreneurial activity and investment.)</p> <p>(To promote a diverse economic development and job creation for local residents by the development of</p> | <p>Invest in industrial development zones</p> <p>Industrial sector strategies – automotive industry; clothing and textiles</p> <p>Youth employment incentive</p> <p>Develop training and systems to improve procurement</p> <p>Skills development and training</p> <p>Reserve accumulation</p> <p>Enterprise financing support</p> <p>New phase of public works programme.</p> | <p>Create an enabling environment for investment by streamlining planning application processes</p> <p>Ensure proper maintenance and rehabilitation of essential services infrastructure</p> <p>Ensure proper implementation of the EPWP at municipal level</p> <p>Design service delivery processes to be labour intensive</p> <p>Improve procurement systems to eliminate corruption and ensure value for money</p> <p>Utilise community structures to provide services.</p> |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs   | Key spending programmes (National)   | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.   |
|---|--|--|
| entrepreneurial skills in the management of SMME's, tourism and capital projects undertaken within the municipal area.)   |  |  |
| 5. A skilled and capable workforce to support inclusive growth  |  |  |
| <p>A credible skill planning institutional mechanism.</p> <p>Increase access to intermediate and high-level learning programmes.</p> <p>Increase access to occupation- specific programmes (especially artisan skills training).</p> <p>Research, development and innovation in human capital.</p> <p>Related IDP objectives:</p> <p>To promote capacity building through skills development</p> <p>To ensure that transformation is reflected in all levels of municipality through managing an organisational structure</p> | <p>Increase enrolment in FET colleges and training of lecturers</p> <p>Invest in infrastructure and equipment in colleges and technical schools</p> <p>Expand skills development learnerships funded through sector training authorities and National Skills Fund</p> <p>Industry partnership projects for skills and technology development</p> <p>National Research Foundation centres excellence, and bursaries and research funding.</p> <p>Science council applied research programmes.</p> | <p>Conducting of skill audit critical posts of all senior management to ensure that competent and suitable qualified individuals fill the positions</p> <p>Develop and extend intern and work experience programmes in municipalities</p> <p>Implementation on Workplace skills plan by appointing accredited providers</p> <p>Implementation of the national treasury competency regulation, enrolling senior management middle management in high level learning programmes to close the identified skill gaps and to meet the target date of 2013</p> <p>Allocation of Municipal bursaries for further tertiary education of personnel.</p> |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs  | Key spending programmes (National)   | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.   |
|--|--|--|
| supportive of the Employment Equity.   |  |  |
| An efficient, competitive, and responsive economic infrastructure network  |  |  |
| <p>Improve competition and regulation.</p> <p>Reliable generation, distribution, and transmission of energy.</p> <p>Maintain and expand road and rail network, and efficiency, capacity, and competitiveness of seaports.</p> <p>Maintain bulk water infrastructure and ensure water supply.</p> <p>Information and communication technology.</p> <p>Benchmarks for each sector.</p> | <p>An integrated energy plan and successful independent power producers</p> <p>Passenger Rail Agency acquisition of rail rolling stock, and refurbishment and upgrade of motor coaches and trailers</p> <p>Increase infrastructure funding for provinces for the maintenance of provincial roads</p> <p>Complete Gauteng Freeway Improvement Programme</p> <p>Complete De Hoop Dam and bulk distribution.</p> <p>Nandoni pipeline</p> <p>Invest in broadband network infrastructure.</p> | <p>Ring-fence water, electricity, and sanitation functions so as to facilitate cost-reflecting pricing of these services</p> <p>Maintain and expand water purification works and wastewater treatment works in line with growing demand</p> <p>Improve maintenance of municipal road networks</p> <p>Implementations of the bus rapid transport system to link create transports with urban centres.</p> |
| <p>Ensured reliable generation, distribution, and transmission of electricity.</p> <p>Maintenance and supply availability of</p>   | .  | <p>Develop programme for interaction through social development vehicle for municipal infrastructure that will be established in collaboration with other departments, business, and mines to</p>  |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs   | Key spending programmes (National)   | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.   |
|---|--|--|
| <p>our bulk water infrastructure</p> <p>Related IDP objective:</p> <p>To ensure provision of quality basic services and investment of funds into infrastructure projects to benefit the community.</p>  |  | <p>assist in mobilising private sector infrastructure funding for municipality and also to support the planning and expenditure of CAPEX and OPEX in municipalities.</p>   |
| <p>7. Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities and food security</p>  |  |  |
| <p>Sustainable agrarian reform and improved access to markets for small farmers.</p> <p>Improve access to affordable and diverse food.</p> <p>Improve rural services and access to information to support livelihoods.</p> <p>Improve rural employment opportunities.</p> <p>Enable institutional environment for sustainable and inclusive growth.</p> | <p>Settle 7 000 land restitution claims</p> <p>Redistribute 283 592 ha of land by 2014</p> <p>Support emerging farmers</p> <p>Soil conservation measures and sustainable land use management</p> <p>Nutrition education programmes</p> <p>Improve rural access to services by 2014:</p> <p>Water - 74% to 90%</p> <p>Sanitation - 45% to 65%</p> | <p>Facilitate the development of local cooperatives and support</p> <p>Promote home production to enhance food security, through agricultural support programme</p> <p>(strategies of the CDS and LED strata not captured)</p> |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs   | Key spending programmes (National)  | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.   |
|---|---|--|
| <p>Related IDP objective:</p> <p>To promote a diverse Economic development and job creation for local residents by the development of entrepreneurial skills in the management of SMME's, tourism and capital projects undertaken within the municipal area.</p>  | <p>Sanitation - 45% to 65%</p>  |  |
| <p>Improved access to affordable diverse food</p> <p>Rural job creation linked to skills training and promoting economic livelihoods</p> <p>Related IDP objective:</p> <p>To promote partnerships, public and stakeholder participation by empowering and involving Magosi, communities and ward committees on matters of local government.</p> |   | <p>To strengthen engagement with the traditional authorities on basic services with emphasis on rural development and food security.</p> |
| <p>8. Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life</p>  |   |  |
| <p>Accelerate housing delivery.</p> <p>Improve property market.</p>   | <p>Increase housing units built from 220 000 to 600 000 a year</p> <p>Increase construction of social housing</p> | <p>Accreditation for housing provision</p> <p>Review spatial plans to ensure new housing developments are in</p>                         |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs  | Key spending programmes (National)  | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.  |
|--|---|---|
| <p>More efficient land utilisation and release of state-owned land.</p> <p>Related IDFP objective: To facilitate an accelerated housing development and promote integrated human settlement through spatial restructuring and integrated land-use management with special emphasis on curbing urban sprawl and promotion of densification.</p> | <p>units to 80 000 a year</p> <p>Upgrade informal settlements: 400 000 units by 2014</p> <p>Deliver 400 000 low-income houses on state-owned land</p> <p>Improved urban access to basic services by 2014:</p> <p>Water - 92% to 100%</p> <p>Sanitation - 69% to 100%</p> <p>Refuse removal - 64% to 75%</p> <p>Electricity - 81% to 92%</p> | <p>line with national policy on integrated human settlements</p> <p>Participate in the identification of suitable land for social housing</p> <p>Ensure capital budgets are appropriately prioritised to maintain existing services and extend services.</p>              |
| <p>9. A responsive and accountable, effective, and efficient local government system</p>   |   |   |
| <p>Differentiate approach to municipal financing, planning and support.</p> <p>Community work programme.</p> <p>Support for human settlements.</p> <p>Refine ward committee model to deepen democracy.</p>   | <p>Municipal capacity-building grants:</p> <p>Systems improvement</p> <p>Financial management (target: 100% unqualified audits)</p> <p>Municipal infrastructure grant</p>   | <p>In line with the Guideline to be developed by COGTA the RLM will focus on the Following:</p> <p>Develop a framework for priority infrastructure informed by the backlog report</p> <p>Review IDP legal status to include national and provincial sector Commitment</p> |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs  | Key spending programmes (National)  | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.   |
|--|---|--|
| <p>Improve municipal financial administrative capability.</p> <p>Single coordination window.</p> | <p>Electrification programme</p> <p>Public transport &amp; systems grant</p> <p>Bulk infrastructure &amp; water grants</p> <p>Neighbourhood development partnership grant</p> <p>Increase urban densities</p> <p>Informal settlements upgrades.</p> | <p>In a consultative manner engage internal and external stakeholder for project and implementation alignment.</p> <p>Development of the financial plan as prescribed by Municipal planning and performance regulation of 2001</p> <p>All ward committees functional. (Budgeted for stipend, transport costs, stationery, and capacity building). participate in IDP planning processes</p> <p>Monitor and table audit reports to Performance Audit Committee and Council in terms of the MFMA timelines</p> <p>Integrate risk management as part of promoting internal controls and good governance</p> <p>Use risk identified during audit to compile the operational risk and mitigation strategies and controls</p> <p>Implement the community work programme in more wards of the municipality</p> <p>Availing land for housing developments, Township establishment; Administration and allocation of houses to correct beneficiaries</p> <p>Re-establishment of ward committee after elections and Ensuring that ward committees are representative and fully involved in community consultation processes around the IDP, budget and</p> |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs   | Key spending programmes (National)  | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.   |
|---|---|--|
|   |   | <p>other strategic service delivery issues</p> <p>Improve municipal financial and administrative capacity by implementing competency norms and standards and acting against incompetence and corruption.</p>   |
| <p>A differentiated approach to municipal financing, Planning and support implemented.</p> <p>Produced simplified IDP</p> <p>A simplified revenue plan to Support the simplified IDP.</p> | <p>To promote a culture of accountability, transparency, and performance excellence through proper implementation of performance management system, other compliance monitoring mechanisms and by ensuring effective internal audit services.</p> | <p>In line with the Guideline to be developed by COGTA the RLM will focus on the Following:</p> <p>Develop a framework for priority infrastructure informed by the backlog report</p> <p>Review IDP legal status to include national and provincial sector Commitment</p> <p>In a consultative manner engage internal and external stakeholder for project and implementation alignment</p> <p>Development of the financial plan as prescribed by Municipal planning and performance regulation of 2001.</p> |
| <p>Concise Performance contract for municipal manager, senior and middle management developed.</p> <p>Related IDP objective: To promote a culture of accountability, transparency,</p>    |   | <p>Develop performance agreement for all senior management and middle management and other positions that Council identified as next level of cascading</p> <p>Aggressive implementation of the employee performance assessment and review systems for high performance and cascading to level five including all traffic Officers into the system</p>   |

IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs   | Key spending programmes (National) | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.   |
|---|------------------------------------|--|
| <p>and performance excellence through proper implementation of performance management system, other compliance monitoring mechanisms and by ensuring effective internal audit services.</p>   |                                    | <p>Ensure that the performance contract of the Municipal Manager is concise and focused on key deliverables</p> <p>Monitor the implementation of IDP &amp; SDBIP and adherence to targets of the programmes</p> <p>Receive regular reports and feedback from municipal entities and Provide quarterly reports to council</p> <p>Ensure that feedback is provided to council on decisions taken at mining forum by the LED directorate</p> <p>Quarterly and Annual Performance reviews.</p>   |
| <p>Improved Municipal Financial and Administrative capacities.</p> <p>Improved Audit outcomes</p> <p>Related IDP Objectives:</p> <p>To practice sound and sustainable financial management by strengthening internal control measures and compliance to relevant legislations and policies.</p> |                                    | <p>Update consumer information with correct stand no.; water &amp; electricity meter number and postal address in urban areas</p> <p>Transfer RDP houses to rightful beneficiaries and to complete service level agreements and capture the new consumer information on PROMIS following deed registrations</p> <p>Link farm with correct owner and obtain all consumer contact information to enable successful delivery of municipal account</p> <p>Reconcile the supplementary valuation roll to be received end of March 2011 with PROMIS</p> <p>Reduce estimated metered readings by 10% per month, Investigate consumer accounts in credit</p> |

# IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs  | Key spending programmes (National) | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.  |
|--|------------------------------------|---|
| <p>To enhance and optimise all current and potential revenue resources by cultivating a culture of payment for services.</p> |                                    | <p>repay where need be</p> <p>adjust account where need be</p> <p>Apply rates &amp; tariffs in accordance with consumer /property categories or usage</p> <p>Link and consolidate accounts</p> <p>Enhance collection thru implementation of water pre-paid system</p> <p>Reduce to below 5% the number arrear accounts that result from transfer of properties</p> <p>Enter into agreements with employers to collect municipal debt from their employees</p> <p>Verify correctness of top 1 000 (one thousand) outstanding consumer accounts</p> <p>Appoint additional employees as debt collectors at Regional Offices</p> <p>Monitor and table audit reports to Performance Audit Committee and Council in terms of the MFMA timelines</p> <p>Integrate risk management as part of promoting internal controls and good governance</p> |

IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs   | Key spending programmes (National)  | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.  |
|---|---|---|
|   |   | <p>Use risk identified during audit to compile the operational risk and mitigation strategies and controls</p> <p>To integrate risk analysis on the SDBIP key deliverable upon completion of the risk sessions</p> <p>Procedure manuals and standard operation procedure to strengthen the internal control system</p> <p>Strengthen management oversight financial records and asset management.</p> |
| <p>Strengthened anti-corruption capacity of the municipality.</p>   |   | <p>Approval of the anti-fraud and anti-corruption policies</p> <p>Resuscitation of the fraud hotline</p> <p>Review supply chain policy in line with the Supply chain management regulation to be reviewed</p> <p>Campaigns on ethics and fraud prevention awareness.</p>  |
| <p>Improved access to basic services</p> <p>Increased access to basic water</p> <p>Improved access to basic sanitation</p> <p>Increased access to basic refuse removal</p> <p>Increased access to basic electricity</p> | <p>To ensure provision of quality basic services and investment of funds into infrastructure projects to benefit the community.</p> | <p>Implementation of projects though own and Grant Funding to reduce backlog on basic services</p> <p>Water provision will be extended to all areas of the municipality. Adequate resources will be allocated to areas with no access to water</p> <p>Reduction in backlog on rehabilitation/refurbishment of the old</p>   |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs   | Key spending programmes (National)  | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.  |
|---|---|---|
| <p>Related IDP Objective:</p> <p>To ensure provision of quality basic services and investment of funds into infrastructure projects to benefit the community.</p> |   | <p>water infrastructure</p> <p>Reduction in unaccounted water from approximately 39% of supply to 15%.by 2013</p> <p>The number of households with access to refuse removal services will be increased through the extension of the services to all the areas of the municipality, especially the villages</p> <p>Household access to electricity should be 100% by 2014. Rustenburg Local Municipality will facilitate the provision of electricity to all its communities through cooperation with Eskom and other service providers</p> <p>Maintenance and refurbishment master plan to be reviewed and implemented to ensure efficient supply and minimized power outages</p> <p>The condition of access and internal roads will be improved</p> <p>High mast lights will be provided and maintained in the entire area of the municipality</p> <p>Prioritise those areas without street lighting and those with the greatest need for maintenance.</p> |
| <p>CWP Implemented in at least two wards in the Municipality</p>  | <p>To promote a diverse economic development and job creation for local residents by the development of</p> | <p>Identification of wards poor wards for implementation</p> <p>Deployment of CWP labourer across the municipal ward with</p>   |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs   | Key spending programmes (National)   | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.  |
|---|--|---|
| <p>Job opportunities associated with Functional cooperatives</p> <p>Related IDP objective:</p> <p>To promote a diverse economic development and job creation for local residents by the development of entrepreneurial skills in the management of SMME's, tourism and capital projects undertaken within the municipal area.</p> | <p>entrepreneurial skills in the management of SMME's, tourism and capital projects undertaken within the municipal area.</p>  | <p>particular focus on poorer wards.</p> <p>Implement the Housing EPWP and link it to the Private Sector Property Development Initiatives.</p> <p>Monitoring and reporting.</p> <p>Training of SMMEs</p> <p>Implement Community Works Programme. (CWP)</p> <p>The CWP is a key initiative to mobilise communities in order to provide regular and predictable work opportunities at the local level. This is a ward-based programme the idea being to identify 'useful work' ranging from 1-2 days a week or one week a month initially targeted at the poorest wards</p> <p>Facilitate grading of the Bread and Breakfast accommodation.</p> |
| <p>Support to the human settlement outcomes</p> <p>Increased densities in the in human settlements</p>  | <p>To facilitate an accelerated housing development and promote integrated human settlement through spatial restructuring and integrated land-use management with special emphasis on curbing urban sprawl and promotion of densification.</p> | <p>The implementation plan of the CWP to ensure that 30% of all job's opportunities of the CWP are associated with functional cooperatives.</p>   |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs   | Key spending programmes (National) | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.   |
|---|------------------------------------|--|
| Mobilised well located public, private, and traditional land for low income and affordable housing. |                                    | <p>To participate in the in the development of a Framework to ensure densification</p> <p>Facilitate the establishment of human settlement committee, guided by COGTA</p> <p>Support the review of the Land used planning and management bill.</p> <p>To review the municipal Spatial Development Plan</p> |
| Mobilised well located public, private, and traditional land for low income and affordable housing. |                                    | <p>To participate in the in the development of a Framework to ensure densification</p> <p>Facilitate the establishment of human settlement committee, guided by COGTA</p> <p>Support the review of the Land used planning and management bill.</p> <p>To review the municipal Spatial Development Plan</p> |
| Mobilised well located public, private, and traditional land for low income and affordable housing. |                                    | <p>To participate in the in the development of a Framework to ensure densification</p> <p>Facilitate the establishment of human settlement committee, guided by COGTA</p> <p>Support the review of the Land used planning and management</p>   |

IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs  | Key spending programmes (National) | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.  |
|--|------------------------------------|---|
|  |                                    | <p>bill</p> <p>To review the municipal Spatial Development Plan</p>   |
| <p>Mobilised well located public, private, and traditional land for low income and affordable housing.</p> |                                    | <p>To participate in the in the development of a Framework to ensure densification</p> <p>Facilitate the establishment of human settlement committee, guided by COGTA</p> <p>Support the review of the Land used planning and management bill</p> <p>To review the municipal Spatial Development Plan</p>   |
| <p>Formalised Settlements under the National Upgrading Support programme (NUSP)</p>                        |                                    | <p>Extend the lessons of the integrated human settlement programme to other new development projects</p> <p>Develop bulk infrastructure in the development nodes</p> <p>A key requirement is a proper functioning land use management system to improve development and zoning processes and systems. In this regard, the Municipality will align with the process coordinated by the Presidency in the development of new comprehensive land use management legislation</p> <p>Identification of settlement to be formalised</p> <p>Applications for township establishment.</p> |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs   | Key spending programmes (National)   | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.   |
|---|--|--|
| Refined ward committee model to deepen democracy.       | To ensure functionality and sustainability of ward committees, Council committees and Business and Mining consultative forum by positively engaging on issues of common interest and oversight | <p>Development of support measures to ensure that at least 100% of all Ward Committees are fully functional by 2011</p> <p>Facilitate election of ward committee in consultation with province.</p> <p>LG-SETA accredited training for ward committee members.</p> <p>Support the updating and refinement of wards committee induction material by COGTA</p>   |
| Reduced Municipal debts and enhance revenue collection. | To enhance and optimize all current and potential revenue resources by cultivating a culture of payment for services   | <p>Rollout of comprehensive revenue enhancement programme that includes:</p> <p>Debt Collection</p> <p>Indigent management</p> <p>Billing systems and data Cleansing</p> <p>Undertake detailed investment and tariff plan</p> <p>Co-sourcing debts collections to maximise collection.</p> <p>Embark on campaign to simultaneously register indigents and make awareness on payment of services and different option of making payments.</p> <p>Audit all properties and meters to ensure correct levying in terms of zoning and investigate illegal connections, electricity, and</p> |

## IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs  | Key spending programmes (National)  | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.   |
|--|---|--|
|  |   | <p>water losses</p> <p>Regular audits on Water quality to sustain the blue drop status</p> <p>Implement the innovative meter reading system linked to GIS</p>  |
| Reduced municipal under spending on capital budget (Capex)   | To practice sound and sustainable financial management by strengthening internal control measures and compliance to relevant legislations and policies. | <p>Implementation of capital projects within the planned timeframes</p> <p>Reduction in turnaround times in the supply chain processes</p> <p>Completion of Purchasing of capital items by the first quarter of the financial year.</p>  |
| Reduced overspending on operational budget (opex)  |   | Monitoring and control on overtime and other votes with high potential of overspending.  |
| Increased Municipal Spending on repairs and maintenance.   | To maintain and upgrade the level of existing services to meet the required standards and ensure sustainability of assets/ projects.                    | Monitor budget and in year reporting for expenditure on repairs and maintenance.   |
| <p>Increased access to occupationally directed programmes in needed areas</p> <p>Increased level of post matric and post graduate qualification amongst staff and councillors.</p> | To promote capacity building through skills development   | <p>Prepare targeted workplace Skills Plan, setting of aggressive skills development targets for the municipal labour force</p> <p>Award bursaries to deserving and qualifying officials</p> <p>Implementation of the national treasury competency regulation for senior and middle management by enrolling Officials and</p> |

# IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs   | Key spending programmes (National)   | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.  |
|---|--|---|
|   |  | <p>Councillors in the CPMD programmes</p> <p>Coordinate development of a clear institutional plan (illustrating future need for human resources, office space and estimated cost to fund the plan) in line with the Integrated Development Planning guidelines and sector plans</p> <p>Revision of the employment equity plan with clear numeric targets</p> <p>Implementation of the EEP.</p>  |
| <p>10. Protection and enhancement of environmental assets and natural resources</p>   |  |   |
| <p>Enhance quality and quantity of water resources</p> <p>Reduce greenhouse gas emissions; mitigate climate change impacts; improve air quality</p> <p>Sustainable environment management</p> <p>Protect biodiversity.</p> <p>Related IDP objective: Ensuring sustainable environment management and protection</p> | <p>National water resource infrastructure programme</p> <p>reduce water losses from 30% to 15% by 2014</p> <p>Expanded public works environmental programmes.</p> <p>100 wetlands rehabilitated a year</p> <p>Forestry management (reduce deforestation to &lt;5% of woodlands)</p> <p>Biodiversity and conservation (increase</p> | <p>Review the Strategic Environmental Assessment reports (SEA)</p> <p>Conduct air quality monitoring</p> <p>Develop and implement water management plans to reduce water losses</p> <p>Ensure effective maintenance and rehabilitation of infrastructure</p> <p>Run water and electricity saving awareness campaigns</p> <p>Ensure proper management of municipal commonage and urban open spaces</p> <p>Ensure development does not take place on wetlands</p> |

# IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs  | Key spending programmes (National)  | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.  |
|--|---|---|
|  | land under conservation from 6% to 9%).   | Review of the Integrated Environmental Management Plan (IEMP)<br><br>Alignment of the environmental framework with the Spatial Development Framework. |
| 11. A better South Africa, a better and safer Africa and world   |   |   |
| Enhance the African agenda and sustainable development<br><br>Enhance regional integration<br><br>Reform global governance institutions<br><br>Enhance trade and investment between South Africa and partners. | International cooperation: proposed establishment of the South African Development Partnership Agency<br><br>Defence: peace-support operations<br><br>Participate in post-conflict reconstruction and development<br><br>Border control: upgrade inland ports of entry<br><br>Trade and Investment South Africa:<br><br>Support for value – added exports<br><br>Foreign direct investment promotion. | Our Role of local government is limited in this area.   |
| A development-orientated public service and inclusive citizenship  |   |   |
| Improve government performance   | Performance monitoring and evaluation:  | Develop performance agreement for all senior management and middle management and other positions that Council identified                             |

# IDP REVIEW 2025 2026

| Outputs   | Key spending programmes (National)   | Municipal Role programmes/ projects.  |
|---|--|---|
| <p>Government-wide performance monitoring and evaluation</p> <p>Conduct comprehensive expenditure review</p> <p>Information campaign on constitutional rights and responsibilities</p> <p>Celebrate cultural diversity.</p> | <p>Oversight of delivery agreements</p> <p>Statistics SA: Census 2011 – reduce undercount</p> <p>Chapter 9 institutions and civil society: programme to promote constitutional rights.</p> <p>Arts &amp; Culture: promote national symbols and heritage.</p> <p>Sport &amp; Recreation: support mass participation and school sport programmes</p> | <p>as next level of cascading</p> <p>Aggressive implementation of the employee performance assessment and review systems</p> <p>Comply with legal financial reporting requirements</p> <p>Review municipal expenditures to eliminate wastage</p> <p>Monitor the implementation of IDP &amp; SDBIP and adherence to targets of the programmes.</p> |

## CHAPTER 6. FINANCIAL PLAN

### Report Overview – Introduction and Background

Rustenburg Local Municipality (Rustenburg) appointed INCA Portfolio Managers in 2022 to prepare a Long-Term Financial Plan (LTFP). The output of the assignment was a report entitled Rustenburg Local Municipality Long-Term Financial Plan: 2022/23 – 2031/32. This 2023 Update aims to update the LTFP based on the latest available information and report on the findings.

The objective of a Long-Term Financial Plan is to recommend strategies and policies that will maximise the probability of the municipality’s financial sustainability into the future. This is achieved by predicting future cash flows and affordable capital expenditure based on the municipality’s historic performance and the environment in which it operates.

A summary of the demographic, economic and household infrastructure perspective was updated with the latest available information as published by S&P Global Insight (S&P). The historic financial analysis was updated with the information captured in the municipality’s audited financial statements of 30 June 2023 and the approved operational & capital budgets for the FY 2023/24. IPM’s Long-Term Financial Model

(latest and updated version 21.2) was populated and run with this latest information, and the outcome thereof is reported herein. The model was re-calibrated against the municipality's MTREF for the 3 years from 2023/24 to 2025/26.

Unlike the original assignment, no renewed analysis of the Asset Register, review of municipal documents (viz. IDP, Master Plans, etc.) and conversations with management were undertaken. The conclusions reached in this report are complimentary to the recommendations made previously.

The contents of this report entail the following:

|                    |  |       |   |
|--------------------|--|-------|---|
|                    |  | CPI   | Consumer Price Index                          |
| 1                  | Planning Process   | DBSA  | Developmental Bank of Southern Africa         |
| 2                  | Updated Perspectives (Demographic, Economic, Household Infrastructure) | FY    | Financial Year                                |
| 3                  | Updated Historic Financial Assessment                                  | FYE   | Financial Year Ended                          |
| 4                  | Long Term Financial Model Outcomes                                     | GDP   | Gross Domestic Product                        |
| 5                  | Future Revenues  | GVA   | Gross Value Added                             |
| 6                  | Affordable Future Capital Investment                                   | IP    | Investment Property                           |
| 7                  | Scenario Analysis  | IPM   | INCA Portfolio Managers                       |
| 8                  | Ratio Analysis   | LTFM  | Long Term Financial Model                     |
| 9                  | Conclusions  | LTFP  | Long Term Financial Plan                      |
| Abbreviations Used |  | MFMA  | Municipal Finance Management Act              |
|                    |  | mSCOA | Municipal Standard Chart of Accounts          |
|                    |  | MRRRI | Municipal Revenue Risk Indicator              |
| AFS                | Annual Financial Statements  | MTREF | Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework |
| CAPEX              | Capital Expenditure  | NERSA | National Energy Regulator of South Africa     |
| CRR                | Capital Replacement Reserve  | NT    | National Treasury                             |

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| OPEX     | Operational Expenditure                  |
| PPE      | Property, Plant and Equipment            |
| R '000   | Rand x 1 000                             |
| R'm      | Rand x 1 000 000                         |
| SA       | South Africa                             |
| Stats SA | Statistics South Africa                  |
| S&P      | S&P Global Market Intelligence ReX v2404 |

## **Executive Summary: Key Findings and Conclusions**

### **Demographic, Economic and Household Infrastructure**

Rustenburg's population grew by 1.5% to 716 638 people (2022).

Average household income of R 287 153 p.a. recorded in 2022 is the highest in the district.

The EAP as a percentage of population marginally increased to 40.0% after consecutive slumps; the unemployment rate worsened to 59.7% in 2022.

The GVA (local economy) contracted by 4.1% to R63.1 billion in current 2022 prices.

The Mining sector produced 73% of Rustenburg's economic output resulting in a high Tress index of 87.7 due to the lack of economic diversification.

Tourism spends contributed 3.7% of the GVA, more than five out of nine economic sectors.

The Infrastructure Index remained stable at 0.79 despite the formation of 6 356 households in 2022.

### **Historic Financial Assessment**

Interest-bearing liabilities continue their downtrend resulting in decreasing gearing and debt service to total operating expenditure ratios, standing at 4.0% and 1.1% of 5.5% in FY2023. Both are below the NT norms.

The municipality's liquidity ratio improved to 0.72:1 but still remain below the NT norm of 1.5:1 and a matter of concern, indicating poor liquidity and cash flow.

The municipality recorded a collection rate of 79% in FY2023. This is below the review period average of 83% and the NT norm of at least 95% and not sustainable.

Financial performance improved as an accounting surplus of R146.8 million was posted in FY2023 following a deficit of R289,6 million in FY2022. Operating deficits continued albeit a lesser deficit. Rustenburg utilized its own cash to fund operations as cash generation issues persist.

Water distribution losses for FY 2023 increased to 52% from 46% for FY2022.

Repairs and maintenance as a percentage of PPE and IP was 2% in FY2023, falling well below the NT norm of 8% and not good in terms of sustainable asset care.

Cash utilized by operations amounted to R209.2 million in FY2023, compared to a cash utilization of R35.3 million in FY2022.

Capital expenditure amounted to R315.0 million in FY2023, solely funded by capital grants (R206.0 million for FY2022).

The municipality held sufficient cash reserves for short term liabilities and at least 1 months' operating expenditure, resulting in a cash surplus of R139.7 million in FY2023.

The municipality managed an IPM Credit rating of 3.5, which is not considered investment grade.

### Long-Term Financial Plan Update

Modelling of the current MTREF scenario presents a financially unsustainable financial position, evidenced by declining financial performance, low liquidity levels and unaffordable capital expenditure. Necessary adjustments have been implemented to formulate the Base Case, which addresses the underlying issues contributing to this unsustainable outcome.

The following key assumptions are modelled in the Base Case, in order to achieve a more sustainable financial outcome:

The collection rate is assumed to reach 85% after five years and maintained at this rate throughout the planning period.

The load shedding impact was assessed and included – with the expectation that load shedding will continue for the next two years at an average level of stage 3. This results in an approximate reduction in electricity consumption of 19.3%. Furthermore, a permanent loss of electricity consumers of 2% was included.

Expenditure on repairs and maintenance on PPE as a percentage of the value of PPE & IP is forecast to reach 4% by the end of the planning period.

Electricity losses were maintained at 9%; water losses are set to decrease to 40% at the end of the planning period.

Capital expenditure during the MTREF period is adjusted in order to safeguard cash reserves.

The MTREF capital expenditure programme is adjusted as follows:

2024: MTREF R588.1 million, Base Case R588.1 million

2025: MTREF R640.2 million, Base Case R599.4 million

2026: MTREF R622.7 million, Base Case R620.0 million

Capital expenditure is accelerated with a 6% annual growth for the years beyond the MTREF period.

Table 1: Assumptions of the Base Case Variables

| Outcome   | 10-Year Outcome |
|---|-----------------|
| Average annual % increase in Revenue                                  | 7.3%            |
| Average annual % increase in Expenditure                              | 6.2%            |
| Accounting Surplus accumulated during Planning Period (Rm)            | R 1,643         |
| Operating Surplus accumulated during Planning Period (Rm)             | -R 4,972        |
| Cash generated by Operations during Planning Period (Rm)              | R 3,693         |
| Average annual increase in Gross Consumer Debtors                     | 0.6%            |
| Capital investment programme during Planning Period (Rm)              | R 9,801         |
| External Loan Financing during Planning Period (Rm)                   | R 866           |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents at the end of the Planning Period (Rm)      | R 991           |
| No of Months Cash Cover at the end of the Planning Period (Rm)        | 1.5             |
| Liquidity Ratio at the end of the Planning Period                     | 1.8 : 1         |
| Gearing at the end of the Planning Period                             | 7.0%            |
| Debt Service to Total Expense Ratio at the end of the Planning Period | 1.6%            |

## **Recommendations:**

Based on the results of the Long-Term Financial Model as indicated above, it is further recommended that Rustenburg:

Maintain the funding mix that aims to utilise the scope available for further borrowing at sustainable levels and influence a limited utilisation of own cash to fund capital expenditure. An extension of the loan tenor is recommended to further facilitate this.

Maintain a prudent allocation of capital investment, balancing affordability, and long-term financial viability, while safeguarding the integrity and effectiveness of the capital investment program. In the long-term capital investment programme, prioritizing investment in productive assets that aim to create an enabling environment for economic growth is imperative.

Capital investment and repairs and maintenance decisions must be optimised to prioritize the curtailing of excessive distribution losses pertaining to water services. Continuous monitoring and inspection along transmission mains to allow a prompt address of leakages together with a prudent financial resource allocation towards investment in water infrastructure is recommended.

Augment the execution of critical repairs and maintenance, considering the cost-benefit evaluation, with a prioritisation on improving efficiency and minimizing potential disruptions to service delivery.

Maintain an average collection rate above 85% after five years. To prevent the decline of the collection rate, prioritize decisions and actions that sustain the high collection rate while safeguarding profitability/surpluses. This is influenced by efforts such as effectively implementing regular audits of the indigency register, adopting efficient and regularly updated methods for delivering pre-termination notices for significantly overdue bills, ongoing data cleansing, follow-up on zero consumption consumers, effective & timeous credit control actions and improving convenient payment methods.

Institutionalise the utilisation of a robust tariff model to ensure that tariffs reflect the true cost of delivering the services.

Annually review and update the long-term financial plan to ensure alignment with emerging trends and the current state of the municipality. This practice ensures that the financial plan remains responsive to evolving circumstances and effectively supports the municipality's strategic objectives. Utilize a long-term financial model that will enable the municipality to quantify developments in the external environment and enable the prediction of the financial impact on the municipality in a more dynamic manner.

Enhance working capital management practices by reducing the creditors payment period and maintaining optimal spending implementation of the capital budget and capital grants expenditure.

1 Planning Process

2 Updated Perspectives (Demographic, Economic, Household Infrastructure)

3 Updated Historic Financial Assessment

4 Long Term Financial Model Outcomes

5 Future Revenues

6 Affordable Future Capital Investment

7 Scenario Analysis

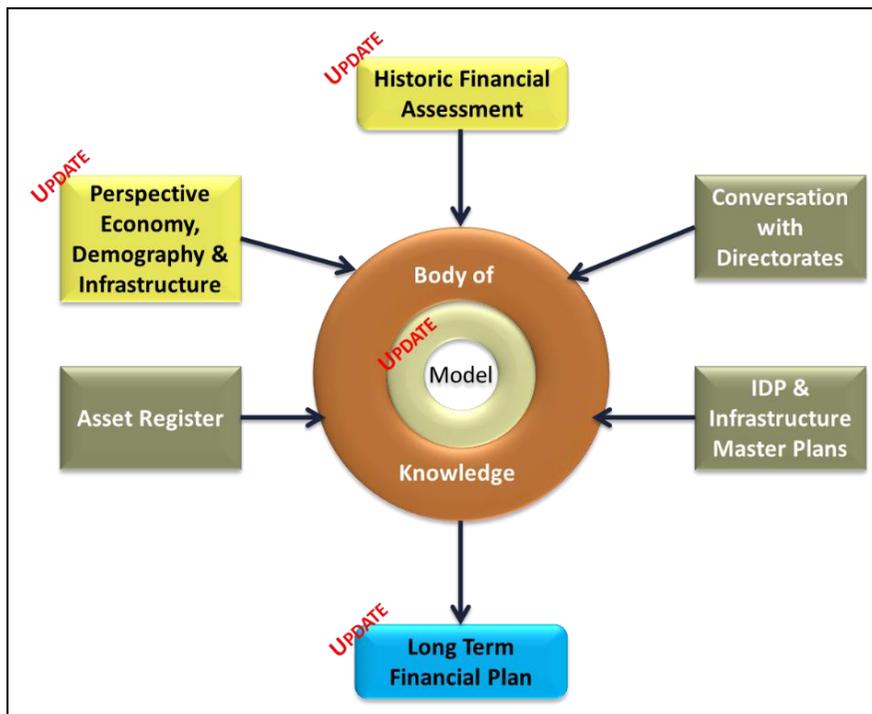
8 Ratio Analysis

9 Conclusions

### Planning Process

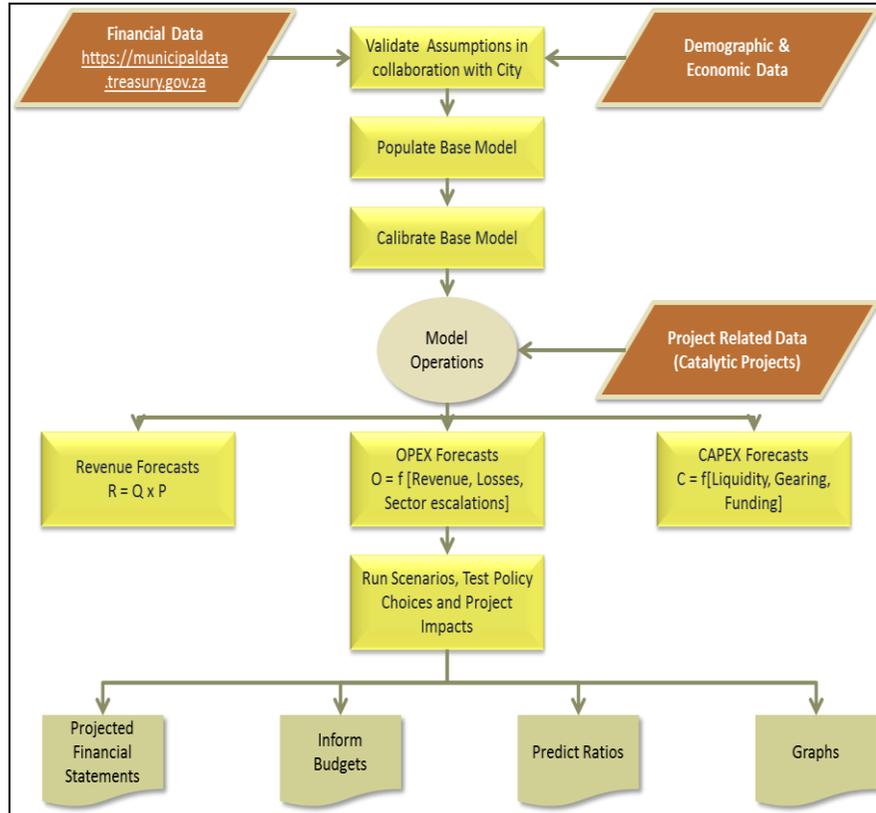
The diagram below illustrates the steps in the process that were followed in drafting the LTFP and the steps taken during this 2023 “LTFP Update”:

Figure 1: Planning Process



The long-term financial model was populated with the latest information of Rustenburg and used to make a base case financial forecast of the future financial performance, financial position, and cash flow of the municipality. The diagram below illustrates the outline of the model.

Figure 2: Financial Model Framework



The model methodology remains the same and the capital budget as presented in the MTREF was utilised and forecasts of an affordable future capex were made.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | Planning Process   |
| 2 | Updated Perspectives (Demographic, Economic, Household Infrastructure) |
| 3 | Updated Historic Financial Assessment                                  |
| 4 | Long Term Financial Model Outcomes                                     |
| 5 | Future Revenues  |
| 6 | Affordable Future Capital Investment                                   |
| 7 | Scenario Analysis  |
| 8 | Ratio Analysis   |
| 9 | Conclusions  |

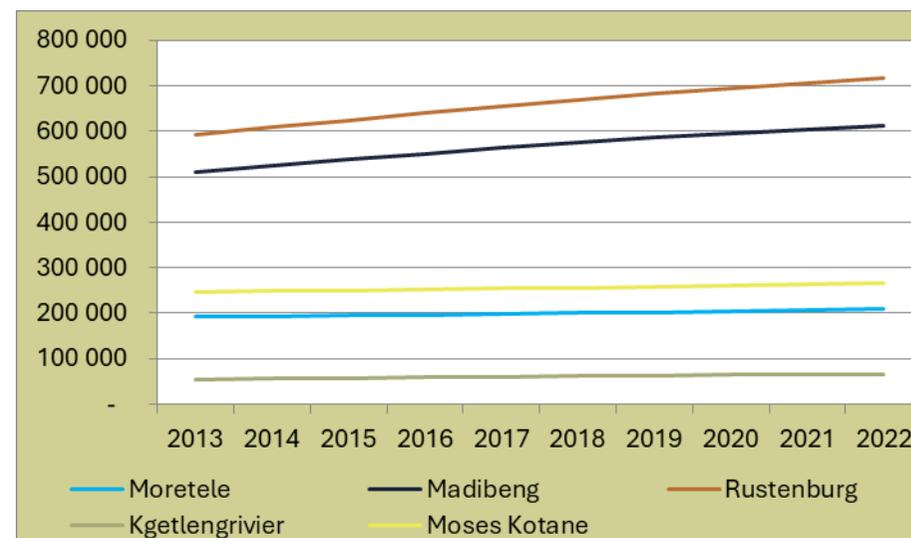
### Demography

Rustenburg has an approximate population of 716 638 people (2022), which represents 38% of people living in the Bojanala Platinum District. This ranks it as the most populous municipality in the district, with a high population density of 210 people per km<sup>2</sup>.

Over the last five years, the population growth rate has averaged 1.8% p.a. and was the second highest in the district falling only behind Kgetlengrivier. This average growth rate proved to be higher than both the national and provincial rate, which both averaged 1.4% p.a. over the same period. The current population growth rate sits at 1.5% (2022).

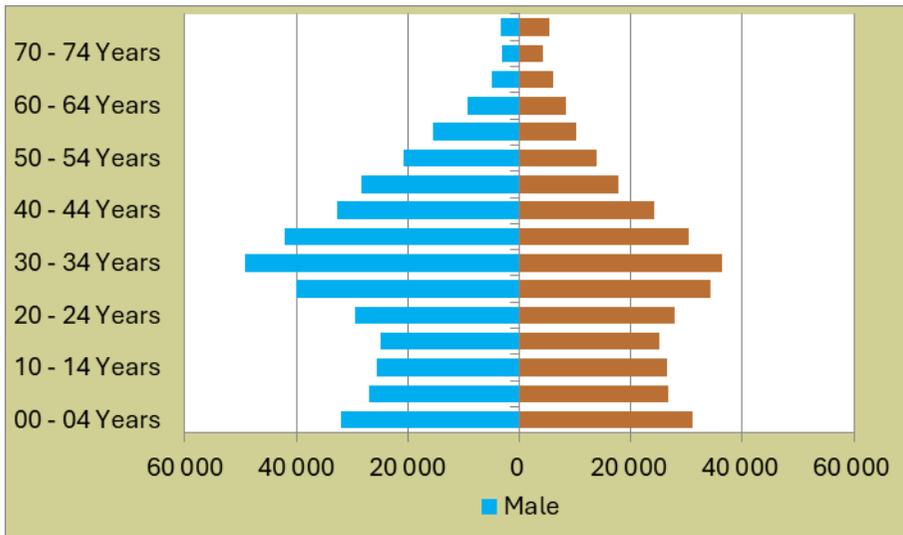
The high population growth rate in Rustenburg continues to be driven by an influx of job seekers looking for employment opportunities in the mining sector. This influx of job seekers is evident in the shape of the population pyramid which will be explored in further detail below.

Graph 1: Total Population



The age profile pyramid – Graph 2 – is unlike a typical population pyramid that is characterised by a larger percentage of the population in the younger age cohorts, usually with each age cohort smaller in size than the one below. Rustenburg’s age profile however is more constrictive with young people (below the age of 14) constituting only 24% and a higher number of people – approximately 32% - falling between the ages of 25 and 39 years. The highest concentrated age group is between the age of 30 and 34 years as seen in the graph. Typical of an area with an active mining sector, the male population (54%) is higher than the female population (46%). The influx of job seekers is evident in the high concentration in the working age group (age 20 to 49) in the municipality.

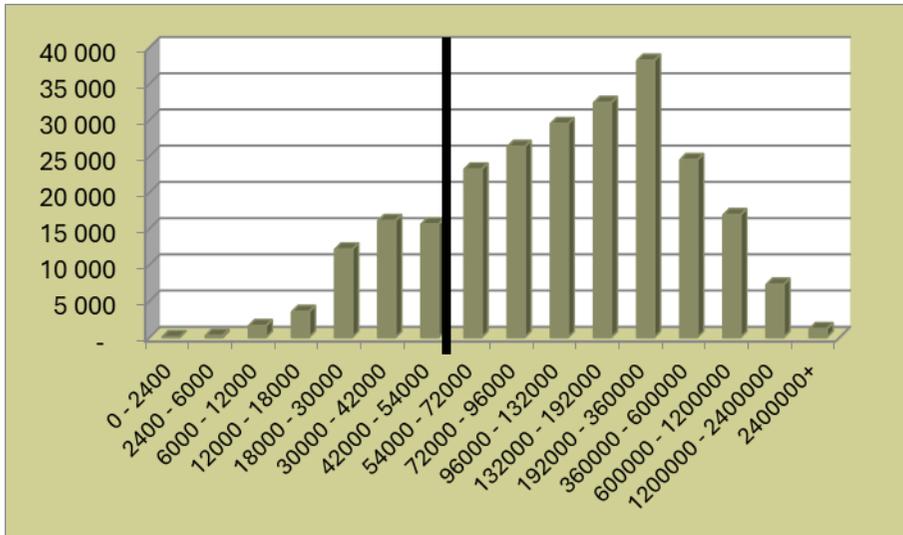
Graph 2: Population Pyramid



Further analysis of the household income distribution indicates a society in which 47.3% of all households earn an income within the range R54 000 p.a. and R192 000 p.a. (R16 000 p.m.), i.e. below the average middle income (between R180 000 – R500 000 per annum). This income range is classified as the vulnerable middle class due its vulnerability and proximity to poverty. Considering the negative impact of rising fuel costs, higher food prices and interest rate hikes, the extent to which households can be levied in future needs to be closely monitored as these factors continue to strip away at household income. Rapid increases in municipal service costs will pose a serious challenge to Rustenburg’s future cash revenue collection.

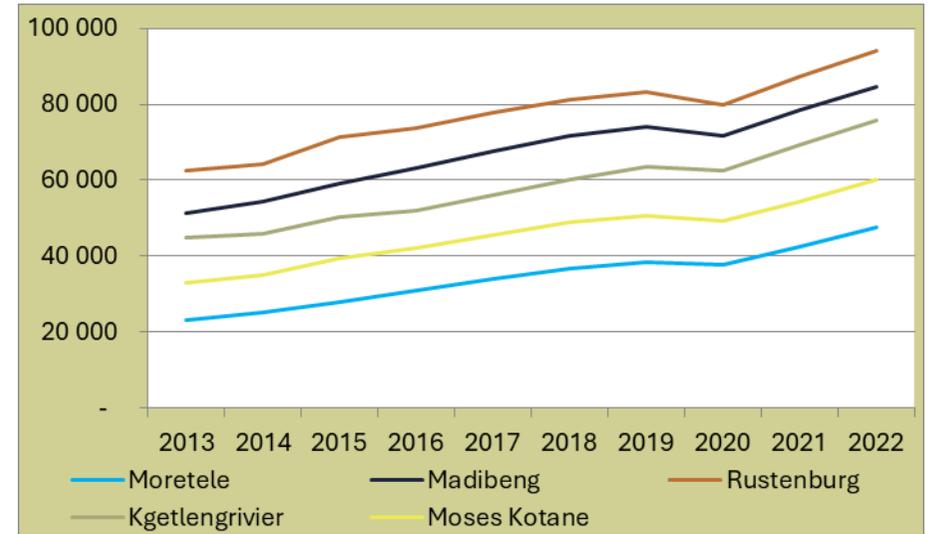
Rustenburg’s household income in 2022 amounted to R287 153. This value increased by 6.8% from R268 894 recorded in 2021. In comparison to its municipal counterparts, this was the highest household income recorded in the district. A staggering 20.9% of households in Rustenburg earn less than R54 000 p.a. Households earning less than R54 000 p.a. are indicative of the number of indigent households in the municipal area and reflect those who qualify for and/or are largely reliant on government grants as a source of income. The provision of RDP level of basic services to these households is theoretically covered by the equitable share and should compensate the municipality for providing free basic services.

Graph 3: Household Income Distribution



Rustenburg has the third highest annual per capita income in the district with an amount of R94 257 recorded in 2022. This is an 8.1% increase from the 2021 amount of R87 186, which is higher than the average inflation rate experienced over that period.

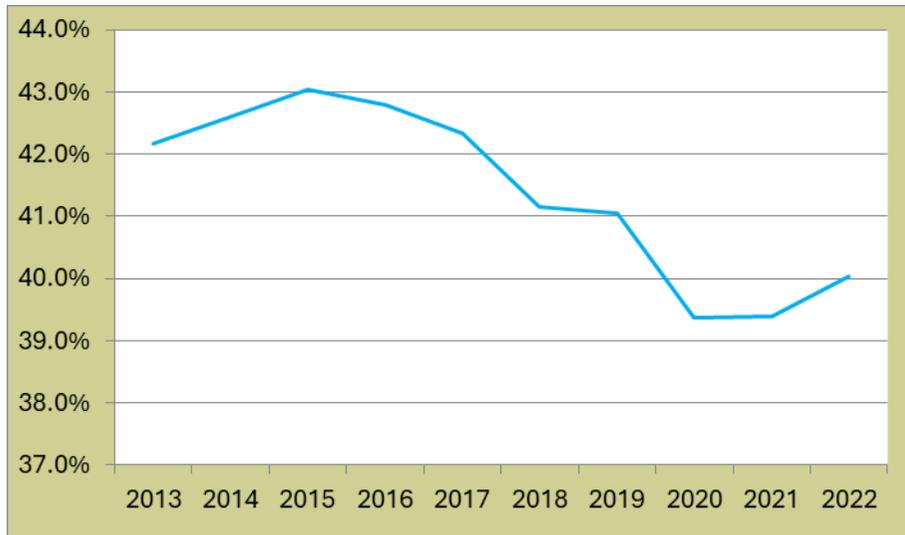
Graph 4: Annual per Capita Income



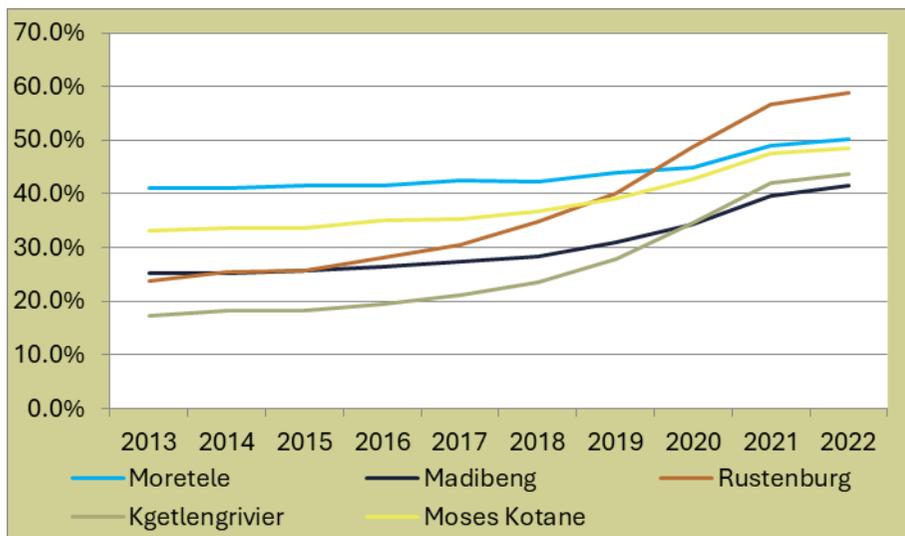
The economically active population as a percentage of population has shown signs of recovery after periods of decline and stagnation since 2015. The ratio marginally increased to 40.0% in 2022 from 39.4% in 2021. In absolute values, this is an approximate increase of 8 819 people who have either joined the workforce or are actively looking for work in the municipality.

Unemployment was highlighted in the previous LTFP as a crisis in the municipality and it continues to be so. The unemployment rate increased to 58.9% in 2022 (2021: 56.7%). This is the highest unemployment rate in the district, and it is substantially higher than the unemployment rates of the North West (36.3%) and South Africa (33.7%). This is a conservative rate as it does not factor in discouraged workers; the inclusion of which would lead to considerably higher rates. A rising unemployment rate would place more pressure on the municipality to provide free basic services to residents or households who cannot afford them.

Graph 5: Economically Active People as a % of Total Population



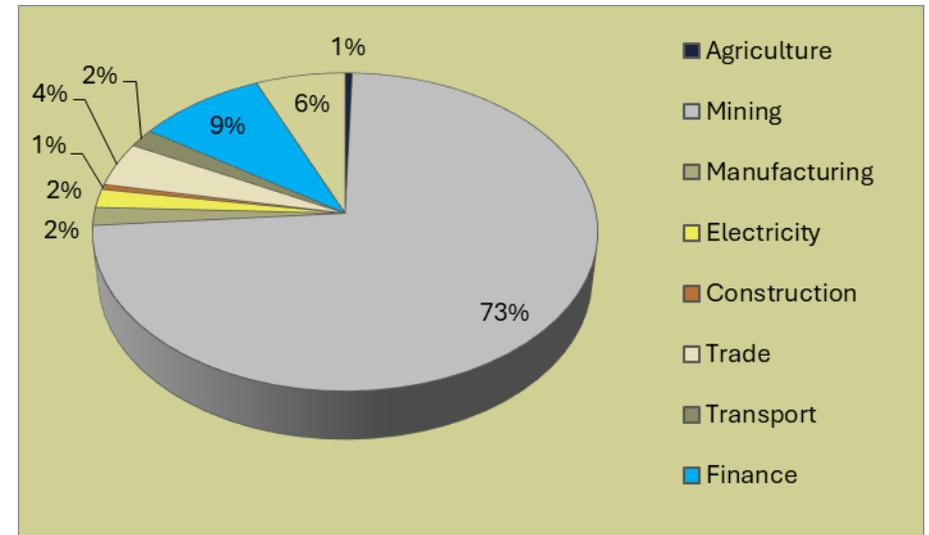
Graph 6: Official Unemployment Rate



## Economy

Rustenburg's Gross Value Add (GVA) for 2022 amounted to be R63.1 billion in current prices, or R31.3 billion in 2015 constant prices. This has contracted by 4.1% from 2021 after a post-Covid rebound of 3.8%. This contraction is consistent with the economic woes experienced in the municipality over the review period as the economy had shrunk for four consecutive periods preceding the Covid-19 affected 2020. The Tress index<sup>2</sup> of 87.7 indicates a highly concentrated economy. This lack of diversity is further corroborated by a staggering 73% of the municipality's economic output being produced by the Mining sector in 2022. The other nine sectors cumulatively contribute the remaining 27%.

Graph 7: Economic Sectors



The Mining sector has asserted its dominance over economic sectors with a substantial proportionate growth of 9.9% over the last 10 years. The only other sector to experience growth over the same period, albeit marginally, was the Electricity sector with a 0.2% increase.

---

<sup>2</sup> The Tress Index provides insight into the level of concentration (or diversification) within an economic region. A Tress Index value of 0 means that all economic sectors in the region contribute equally to GVA, whereas a Tress index of 100 means that only one economic sector makes up GVA of the region.

| Subsector          | 2013       | 2022       |
|--------------------|------------|------------|
| Agriculture        | 335,796    | 159,016    |
| Mining             | 28,105,429 | 22,915,687 |
| Manufacturing      | 1,371,338  | 570,691    |
| Electricity        | 758,129    | 588,630    |
| Construction       | 533,865    | 165,080    |
| Trade              | 3,288,722  | 1,409,752  |
| Transport          | 1,266,156  | 592,038    |
| Finance            | 4,432,794  | 2,872,785  |
| Community Services | 4,274,290  | 2,003,514  |

Table 2: Proportional Growth of Economic Sectors (R'000)

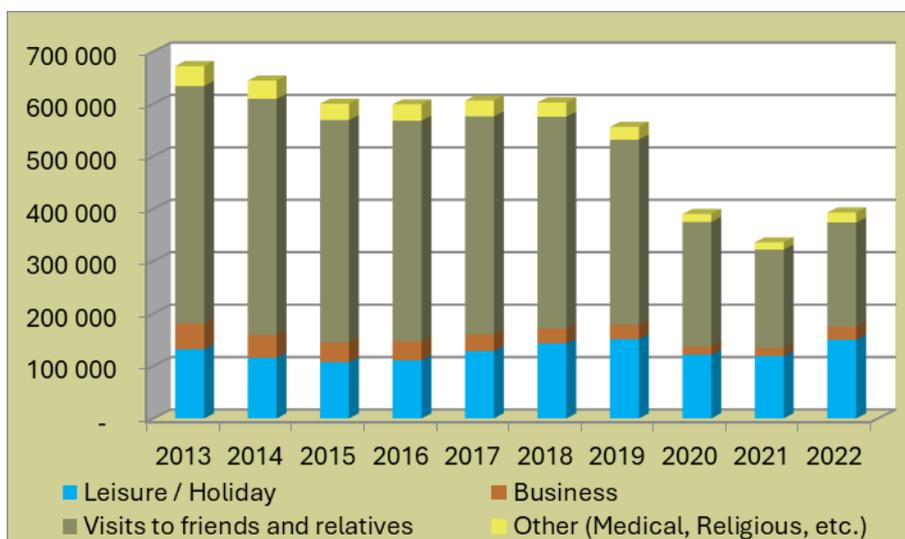
Table 3 below presents employment figures since the last LTFP update. There has been a decrease in employment opportunities by 2.8% in one calendar year or 3 318 jobs lost in absolute terms. The job market suffered losses across the board in Rustenburg, except the Mining sector which provided an additional 1 661 employment opportunities in 2022.

Table 3: Employment By Sector

| Subsector          | 2021    | 2022    |
|--------------------|---------|---------|
| Agriculture        | 2,363   | 2,074   |
| Mining             | 59,779  | 61,439  |
| Manufacturing      | 4,608   | 3,950   |
| Electricity        | 584     | 531     |
| Construction       | 3,826   | 3,650   |
| Trade              | 11,545  | 10,453  |
| Transport          | 855     | 737     |
| Finance            | 7,871   | 7,047   |
| Community Services | 13,542  | 12,215  |
| Households         | 12,532  | 12,090  |
| Total              | 117,505 | 114,188 |

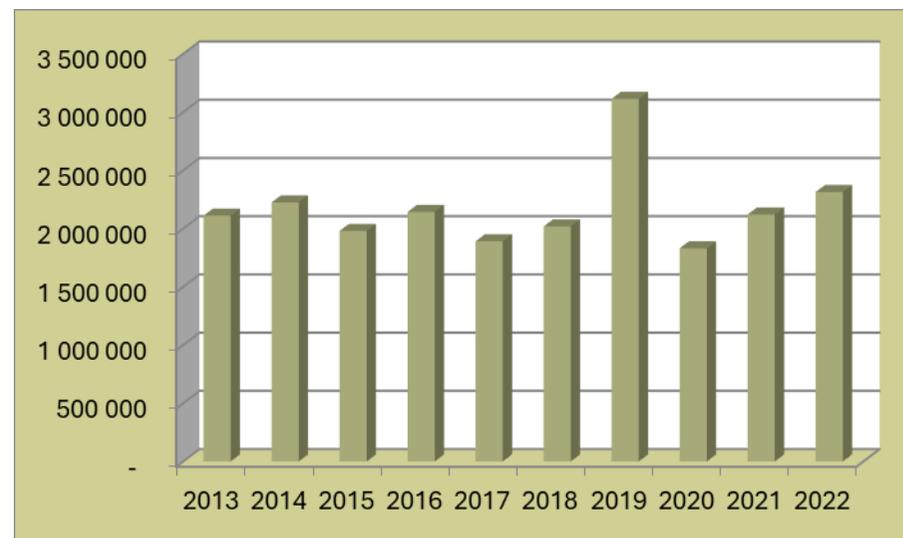
The total number of tourism trips is once again on the rise with a 17% increase in trips in 2022. This rise is expected to continue as the 392 692 trips in 2022 is substantially lower than the 5-year pre-Covid average of 592 856 trips p.a. (a difference of 200 164 trips). Rustenburg is no popular tourist destination therefore it comes as no surprise that the main purpose for trips is for visits to friends and relatives, comprising of 50.7% of the trips in 2022.

Graph 8: Tourism Trips by Purpose of Trip



Tourism-spend increased to R2.3 billion in 2022 from R2.1 billion in 2021. This represents a 9% increase in one calendar year. The gross amount spent by tourists contributed 3.7% to the region's GDP in 2022. To put this into context, this is higher than the economic output produced by five of the nine economic sectors emphasizing that tourism is an integral part in the local economy.

Graph 9: Tourism Spend (Current Prices)



## Household Infrastructure

The household formation in 2022 totalled 6 356 households, reflecting a 2.8% increase in households from 2021. The municipality maintained an Infrastructure Index of 0.76, which is the highest in the district and higher than that of the province (0.70). Although this infrastructure index is not as high as 0.90, Rustenburg must be commended for maintaining it (as opposed to it declining) considering the substantial number of new households in the municipality. The ability to maintain this index is indicative of ongoing investment in infrastructure, which enables the municipality to keep up with the rate of household formation. The maintenance of this index, or improvement thereof, in future will require this investment in infrastructure to continue as the high population growth rate will continue to increase demand for municipal services.

Graph 10: Household Formation

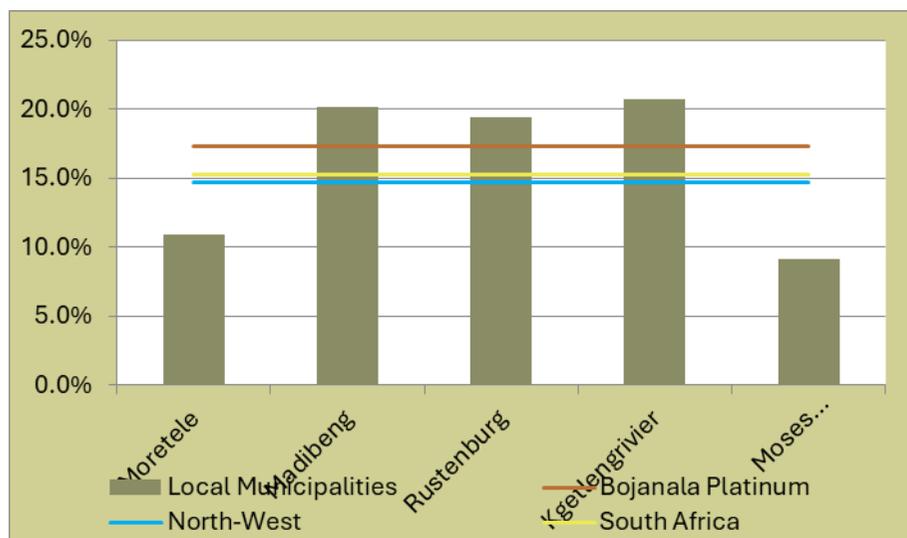


Table 4: Household Infrastructure Provision

| Infrastructure                    | Bojanala Platinum |               | Rustenburg     |               |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| <b>Above RDP Level</b>            |                   |               |                |               |
| Sanitation                        | 405,867           | 67.7%         | 187,331        | 79.6%         |
| Water                             | 538,440           | 89.8%         | 220,992        | 93.9%         |
| Electricity                       | 546,081           | 91.1%         | 209,458        | 89.0%         |
| Refuse Removal                    | 332,493           | 55.4%         | 180,436        | 76.7%         |
| <b>Below RDP or None</b>          |                   |               |                |               |
| Sanitation                        | 193,825           | 32.3%         | 47,902         | 20.4%         |
| Water                             | 61,252            | 10.2%         | 14,241         | 6.1%          |
| Electricity                       | 53,611            | 8.9%          | 25,775         | 11.0%         |
| Refuse Removal                    | 267,198           | 44.6%         | 54,797         | 23.3%         |
| <b>Total Number of Households</b> | <b>599,692</b>    | <b>100.0%</b> | <b>235,233</b> | <b>100.0%</b> |

Table 4 above compares the level of backlogs, of sanitation, water, electricity, and refuse removal of Rustenburg with that of the Bojanala Platinum District. Refuse removal continues to be the inferior area of service provision with a 23.3% backlog in 2022. This backlog has worsened since the last update (2021: 22.9%). In comparison to the District, Rustenburg lags behind in the provision of electricity services only; the municipality has superior provision in the other three services.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | Planning Process   |
| 2 | Updated Perspectives (Demographic, Economic, Household Infrastructure) |
| 3 | Updated Historic Financial Assessment                                  |
| 4 | Long Term Financial Model Outcomes                                     |
| 5 | Future Revenues  |
| 6 | Affordable Future Capital Investment                                   |
| 7 | Scenario Analysis  |
| 8 | Ratio Analysis   |
| 9 | Conclusions  |

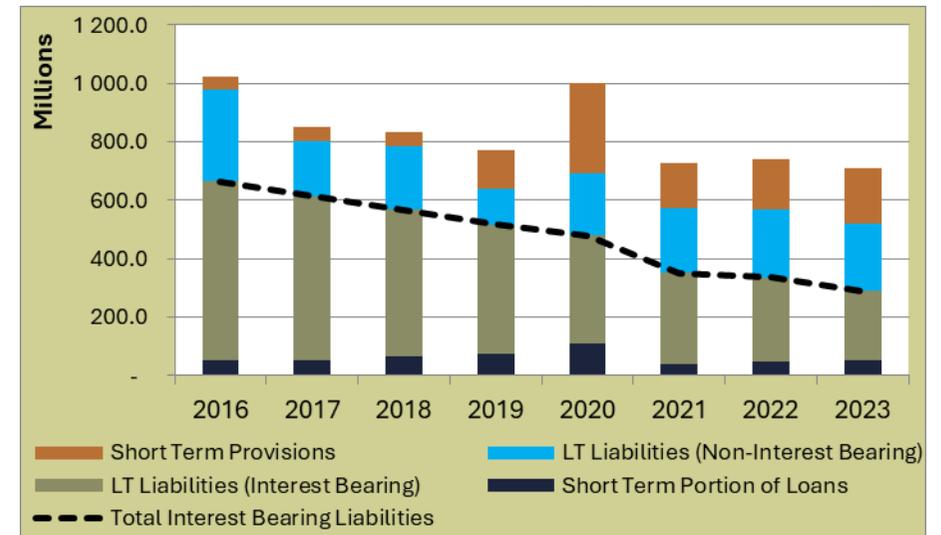
## Updated Historic Financial Assessment

### Financial Position

Rustenburg's Net Fixed Asset position regressed by 1.4% as at FYE2023, amounting to R8.9 billion at year end (2021: R9.1 billion). Accumulated surpluses, on the other hand, increased by 1.9% to R7.8 billion in FY2023.

Total liabilities marginally decreased by 1.2% in FY2023 attributable to declines in both current and non-current liabilities. Current liabilities decreased by R220.9 million as at FYE2023, aided by a significant decline in the creditors balance. Graph 11 indicates a declining trend in interest-bearing liabilities which continues in FY2023. This continuation can be attributed to a decline in financial liabilities, with Rustenburg repaying its long-term debt and not undertaking additional debt over that period. Long-term liabilities decreased by 9.9% as at FYE2023.

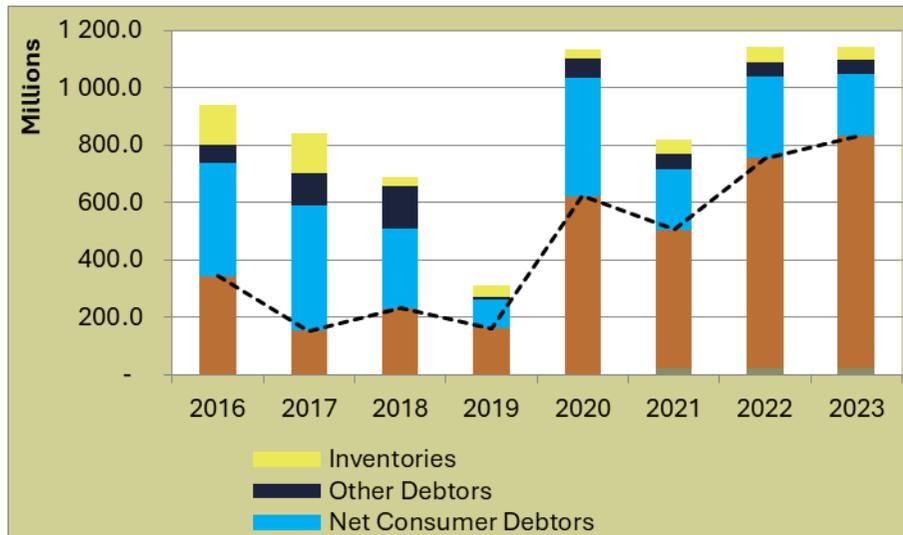
Graph 11: Long Term Liabilities: Interest Bearing vs Non-Interest Bearing



Consistent with the trend of declining interest-bearing liabilities, the gearing ratio continued to decrease reaching a review period low of 4% in FY2023. This decreased from 6% recorded in FY2022. This ratio remained below the NT maximum level of 45%. Similarly, the debt service to total expense ratio decreased to 1.1% in FY2023 from 1.3% in FY2022. This ratio also remained below the NT maximum of 8%.

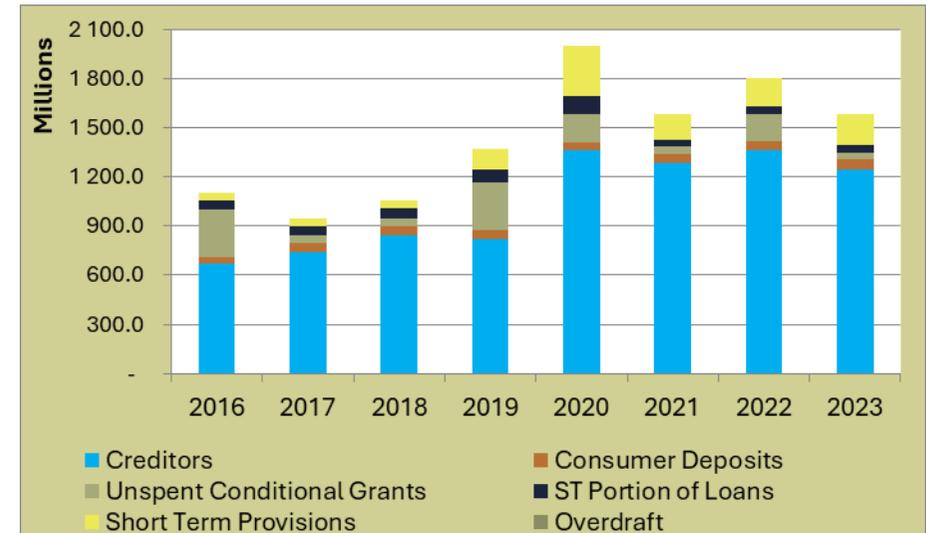
Current assets marginally increased by 0.3% to R1.1 billion as at FYE2023. As evident in Graph 12, cash and cash equivalents is the largest component of current assets, constituting 72.8% of the current assets balance. This indicates the liquid nature of the municipality's current assets.

Graph 12: Current Assets



Current Liabilities have decreased by R220.9 million (12.2%) to a balance of R1.8 billion as at FYE2023. This was mainly driven by decreases in the creditors balance and unspent conditional grants which cumulatively amounted to R245.8 million.

Graph 13: Current Liabilities



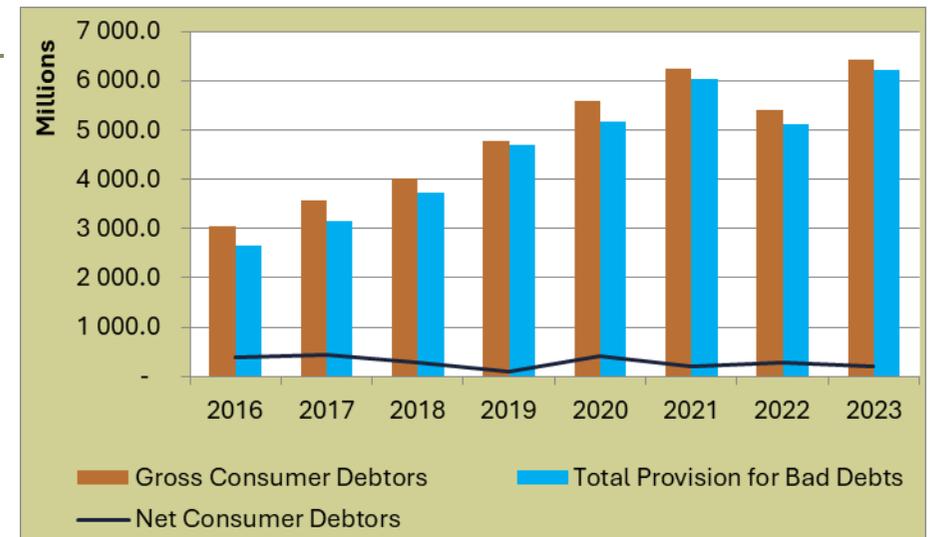
The combined effect of the movements in current assets and current liabilities is evident in the improvement of Rustenburg's liquidity ratio. The liquidity ratio improved from 0.63:1 as at FYE2022 to 0.72:1 as at FYE2023. This ratio remains far below the NT norm of at least 1.5:1, indicating the municipality's inability to pay its current/short term obligations. Should debtors older than 30 days be excluded from the calculation (i.e., least liquid debtors) the ratio remains the same at to 0.72:1. It remains the same due to the large component of cash and cash equivalents contributing to current assets.

Table 5: Liquidity Ratios

|   | 2016 | 2017 | 2018 | 2019 | 2020 | 2021 | 2022 | 2023 |
|---|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Current Assets : Current Liabilities                          | 0.85 | 0.91 | 0.65 | 0.23 | 0.57 | 0.52 | 0.63 | 0.72 |
| Current Assets (less Debtors > 30 Days) : Current Liabilities | 0.78 | 0.82 | 0.65 | 0.23 | 0.51 | 0.52 | 0.63 | 0.72 |

Gross consumer debtors – displayed on Graph 14 - increased by 18.8% to R6.4 billion as at FYE2023 after declining the previous financial year. The balance is mainly consisting of water and other debtors. The provision for bad debts amounted to 97% of gross consumer debtors at year end. Additionally, the provision for bad debts of R6.2 billion more than sufficiently covers debtors older than 90 days of R5.7 billion. This met and exceeded the NT norm of 100%. It is imperative that these debtors are provided for as these debtors are largely considered a high risk of default.

Graph 14: Gross Consumer Debtors VS Net Consumer Debtors

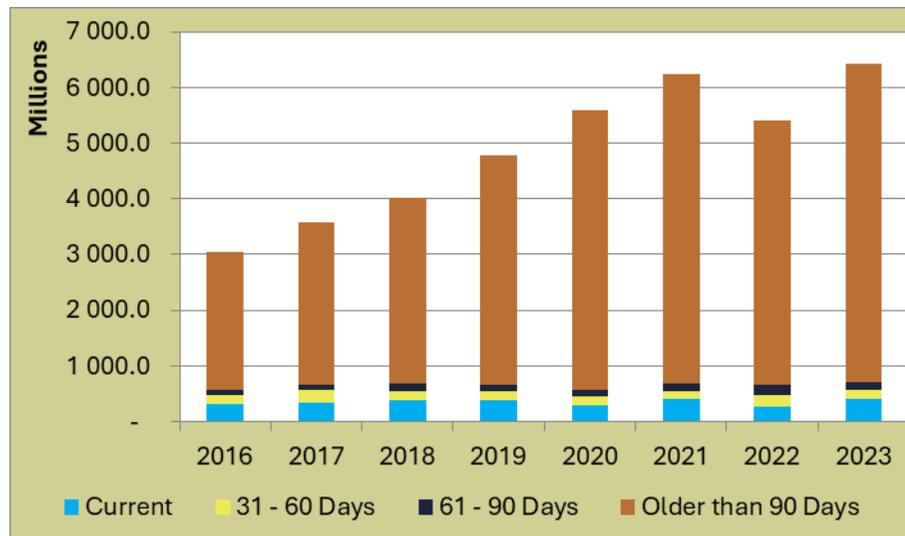


The age analysis of consumer debtors reflects dominance of debtors older than 90 days and an increasing trend. More recently, this increased from R959.3 million to R5.7 billion as at FYE2023. This balance constitutes 89% of

gross consumer debtors as at FYE2023. It therefore comes as no surprise that 97% of gross debtors have been provided for.

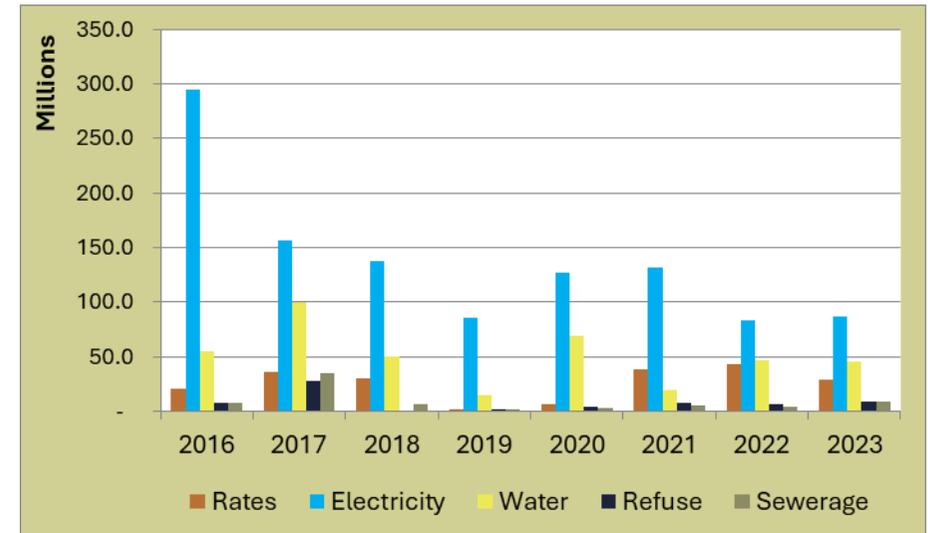
Net Debtor Days improved to 16 days, which is within the NT prescribed maximum of 30 days. There is still a grave need for sustained debtor management and credit control as debtors older than 90 days are still a large component of gross debtors.

Graph 15: Consumer Debtors Age Analysis



Electricity debtors remained the highest contributor to net debtors, comprising 48% of the net debtors' balance as at FYE2023. Water and rates debtors were the second and third highest contributors.

Graph 16: Consumer Debtors by Type



Billed revenue increased by 6% in FY2023. This figure is below the average inflation rate of 7% recorded during the financial year. The collection rate declined to 79% for FY2023, which is below the NT norm of at least 95%. This brought down the average collection rate over the review period to 83% p.a. The deteriorating collection rate emphasizes the need for improvement of Rustenburg's credit management policy.

Table 6: Debtors Ratios

|   | 2017  | 2018 | 2019  | 2020    | 2021  | 2022    | 2023  |
|---|-------|------|-------|---------|-------|---------|-------|
| Increase in Billed Income p.a.<br>(R'm)                                       | 420.0 | 31.4 | 309.8 | (104.2) | 329.8 | 1,065.2 | 291.7 |
| % Increase in Billed Income<br>p.a.   | 16%   | 1%   | 10%   | -3%     | 10%   | 30%     | 6%    |
| Gross Consumer Debtors<br>Growth  | 18%   | 12%  | 19%   | 17%     | 12%   | -13%    | 19%   |
| Payment Ratio / Collection<br>Rate  | 82%   | 86%  | 77%   | 75%     | 81%   | 100%    | 79%   |
| Provision for bad debts as a<br>% of consumer debtors<br>greater than 90 days | 108%  | 112% | 114%  | 103%    | 108%  | 108%    | 109%  |
| Net Debtor Days   | 54    | 34   | 11    | 47      | 22    | 22      | 16    |

## Financial Performance

Graph 17: Analysis of Surplus

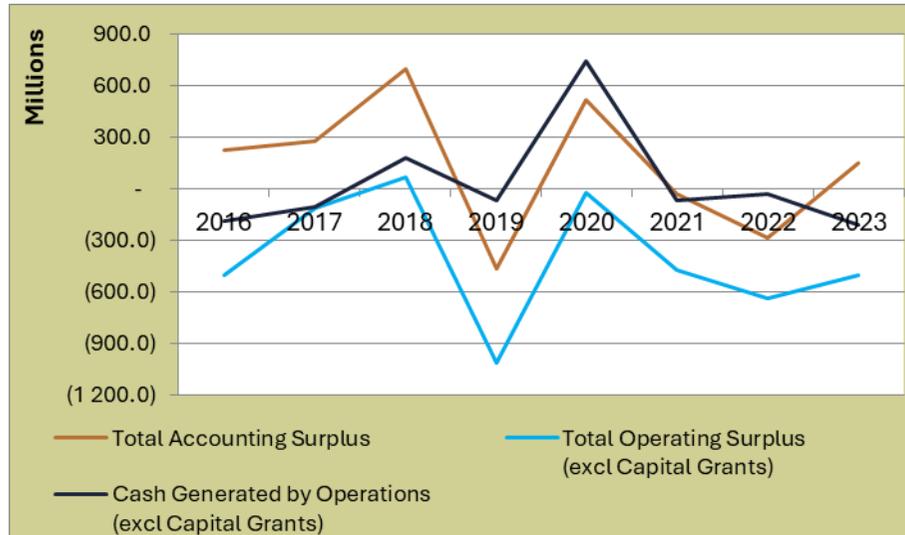


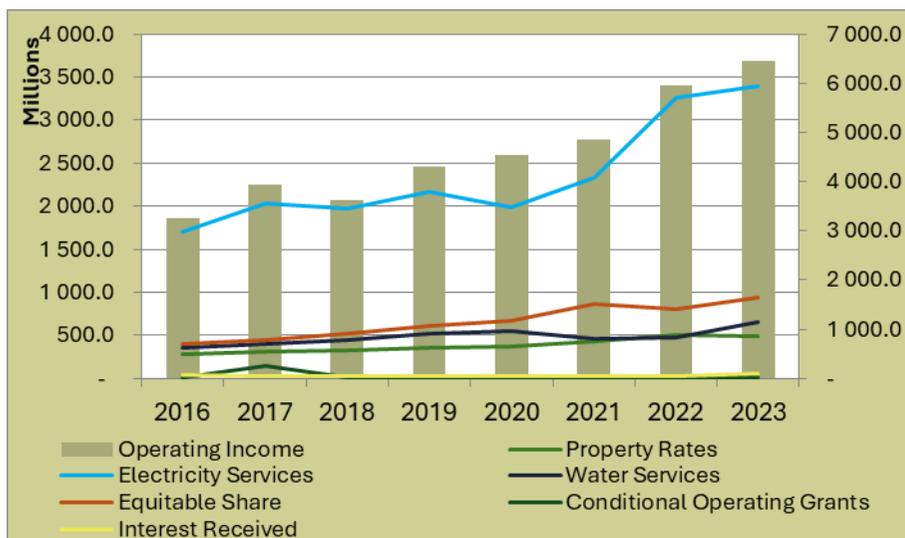
Table 7: Total Income vs Total Expenditure

|  | 2016  | 2017  | 2018  | 2019  | 2020  | 2021  | 2022  | 2023  |
|--|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Total Income                               | 3,977 | 4,317 | 4,249 | 4,845 | 5,072 | 5,291 | 6,300 | 7,098 |
| Total Operating Expenditure                | 3,758 | 4,040 | 3,554 | 5,310 | 4,558 | 5,325 | 6,589 | 6,951 |
| Operating Income (excl Conditional Grants) | 458   | 460   | 1     | 896   | 451   | 793   | 923   | 961   |

In FY2023, total income has increase by 13% and operating income by 4%. Operating income increased marginally higher than operating expenditure (5%). This disparity is an improvement from FY2022 when expenditure growth exceeded income growth by 8 percentage points. This improvement aided in the upturn in financial performance during the period. Rustenburg posted an accounting surplus of R146.8 million in FY2023 after two posting deficits in two consecutive years. Operating deficits remain a problem in the municipality with a fifth consecutive operating deficit of R503.8 million posted in FY2023. This was an improvement of R136.2 million from the FY2022 deficit of R640.1 million. These operating deficits indicate heavy reliance on capital grants for profitability. Cash generating deteriorated in the municipality.

This is evident in the cash utilisation of R209.2 million to fund operations. This was the third consecutive period in which Rustenburg did not manage to generate cash from operations. The disparity between the improved financial performance and a decline in cash generation can be traced to the repayment of creditors. The creditors balance decreased by R117.2 million as at FYE2023 and Rustenburg should continue to strive to repay creditors as will reduce its interest expense. Creditors days currently stand at 80 days, which falls outside the NT norm recommendation of 30 days.

Graph 18: Contribution per Income Source



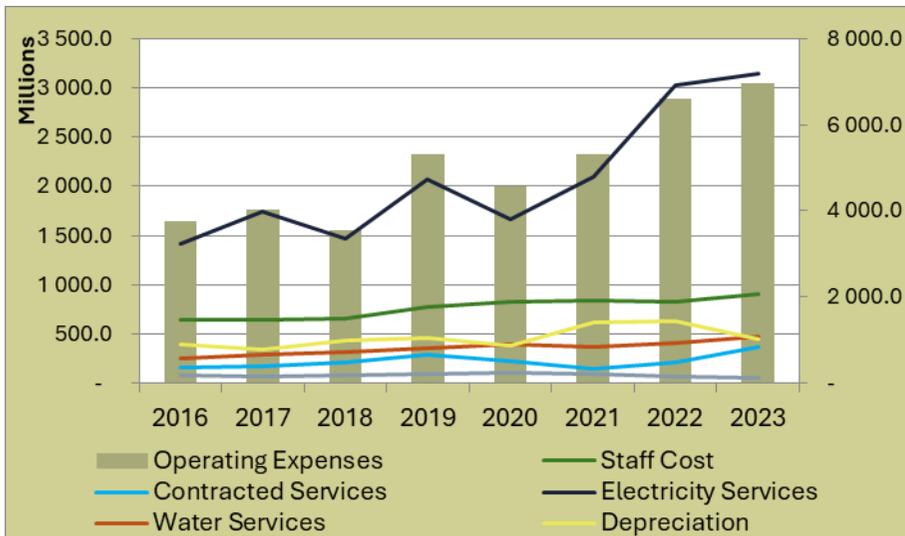
Electricity services revenue, with a 55% contribution, remained the main revenue source for the municipality. It only increased its revenue generation by 4% in FY2023. This fell below the average inflation rate of 7% during the financial period and far below the review period average increase of 13%.

Marginal increases in electricity revenue generation, or declines in worst case scenarios, have been a prevalent theme in municipalities in FY2023 due to consistent loadshedding experience during the period. Electricity surplus margins remained at 7% for the second consecutive period. Likewise, electricity losses remained at 9%, which is below the NT maximum of 10%. These margins are not sustainable and will influence the profitability & liquidity of the municipality going forward. A gross margin of 30-35% is necessary, depending on the overhead structure of the electrical department.

Equitable share, water services and property rates were the other main sources of operating income, contributing 15%, 10% and 8%, respectively. Property rates revenue worryingly declined by 2% in FY2022.

Water services revenue increased by 37% in FY2023. Additionally, water surplus margins increased to 28% from 16%. On the downside, water distribution losses increased to 52% from 46%, which far exceeds the NT maximum of 30%.

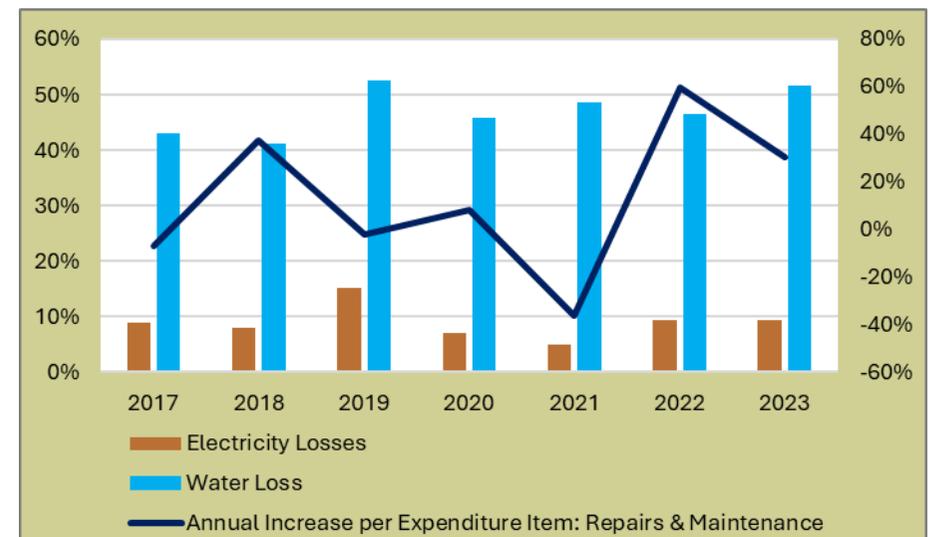
Graph 19: Contribution per Expenditure Item



The main cost driver in the municipality is electricity bulk purchases, contributing 43% to total operating expenditure in FY2023. Staff costs only contributed to 12%, falling well below the NT norm of at least 25%. This low ratio raises the question of whether the municipality is capacitated enough to meet the demands of its duties. Contracted services, often used to supplement employees, contributed to 5%, remaining within the NT maximum of 5%. Together, expenses incurred to capacitate the municipality amounted to 17% of total operating expenditure.

Expenditure incurred to repair and maintain capital assets marginally increased to 2% of PPE and IP for FY2023. This ratio is considered to be low when compared to the NT norm of 8%. Graph 20 below demonstrates the distribution losses suffered over the review period and the increase in repairs and maintenance over the same period. There were three periods in which financial resources assigned to repairs and maintenance declined even though Rustenburg was well below the NT norm of 8%. This is a concerning prevalent occurrence as inadequate repairs and maintenance could lead to impairment, early obsolescence of assets and regular breakdowns. This needs to be addressed.

Graph 20: Distribution Losses vs Annual Increase in Expenditure: Repairs and Maintenance

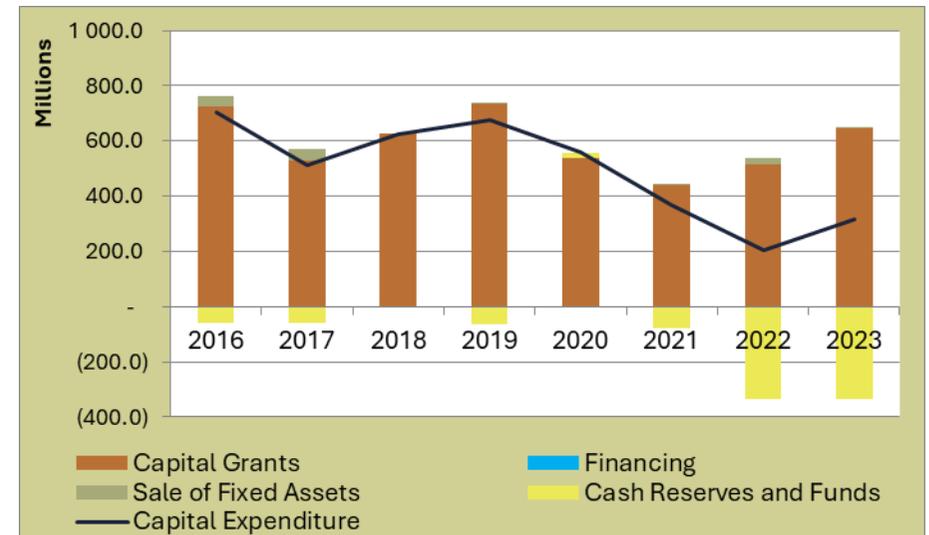


## Cash Flow

Graph 21: Cash Generated from Operations/Own Source Revenue



Graph 22: Annual Capital Funding Mix



The low collection rate – averaging 85% over the 8-year period - has negatively impacted the city’s ability to generate cash from its revenue. Graph 21 indicates that on average, the city’s cash generated from operations over the 8-year period comprised a mere 1% p.a of own source revenue.

Rustenburg invested a cumulative R4.0 billion in the acquisition of capital assets over the past 8 years. This amount was primarily funded by capital grants. Capital expenditure was not supplemented by own cash reserves, and this was warranted as the municipality did not hold sufficient cash reserves for seven out of the eight years under review. Debt has not been a financing avenue since

FY2016. The capital budget implementation indicator has remained an issue in the municipality with the indicator standing at 50% in FY2023.

Graph 23 shows signs of an uptrend after cash and cash equivalents declined as at FYE2021. The cash balance increased by R76.8 million to R832.0 million as at FYE2023. However, this cash balance and improvement thereof has not been attained in a financially sustainable manner: the creditors days are still above the NT norm of 30 days, the collection rate declined during the year and there were unspent conditional grants which will need to be repaid if these are not rolled over.

Graph 23: Cash and Investments

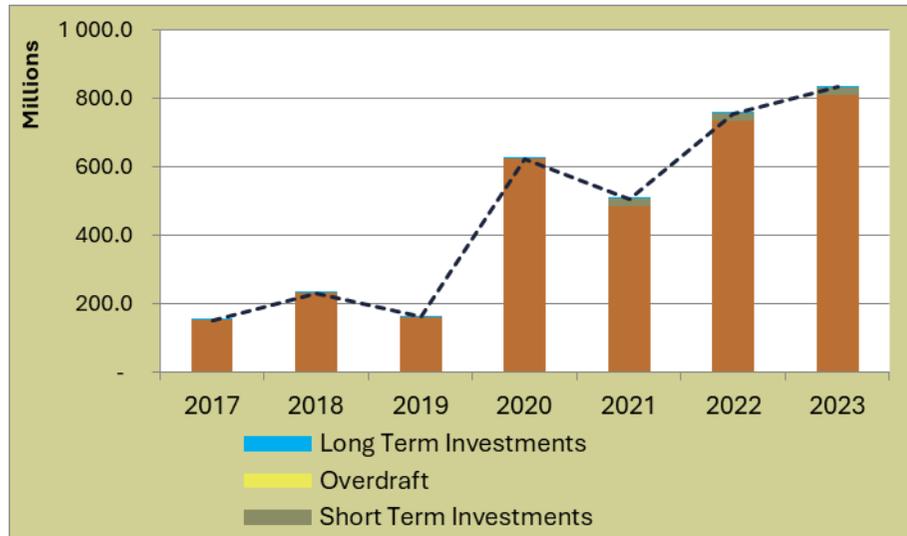


Table 8: Minimum Liquidity Levels

|   | 2016         | 2017         | 2018         | 2019         | 2020         | 2021         | 2022         | 2023         |
|---|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| Unspent Conditional Grants                  | 293.7        | 51.7         | 46.4         | 296.1        | 169.4        | 48.4         | 165.4        | 36.8         |
| Short Term Provisions                       | 45.6         | 49.5         | 52.1         | 131.2        | 306.2        | 154.5        | 173.5        | 189.7        |
| Funds, Reserves & Trust Funds (Cash Backed) | 92.3         | 98.5         | -            | -            | -            | -            | -            | -            |
| <b>Total</b>                                | <b>431.6</b> | <b>199.8</b> | <b>98.6</b>  | <b>427.3</b> | <b>475.6</b> | <b>202.9</b> | <b>338.9</b> | <b>226.5</b> |
| Unencumbered Cash                           | 314.8        | 122.5        | 201.1        | 160.6        | 622.2        | 505.4        | 754.6        | 831.4        |
| Cash Coverage Ratio (excl Working Capital)  | 0.7          | 0.6          | 2.0          | 0.4          | 1.3          | 2.5          | 2.2          | 3.7          |
| Working Capital Provision (1 Month's Opex)  | 241.7        | 270.4        | 260.3        | 329.3        | 310.6        | 327.8        | 421.3        | 465.3        |
| Cash Coverage Ratio (incl Working Capital)  | 0.5          | 0.3          | 0.6          | 0.2          | 0.8          | 1.0          | 1.0          | 1.2          |
| <b>Minimum Liquidity</b>                    | <b>673.3</b> | <b>470.2</b> | <b>358.9</b> | <b>756.5</b> | <b>786.2</b> | <b>530.7</b> | <b>760.2</b> | <b>691.7</b> |

Required

|                          |         |         |         |         |         |        |       |       |
|--------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------|-------|-------|
| Cash Surplus/(Shortfall) | (358.5) | (347.7) | (157.8) | (596.0) | (164.0) | (25.2) | (5.6) | 139.7 |
|--------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------|-------|-------|

Presented in Table 8 above, Rustenburg is required to maintain sufficient cash reserves to cover Unspent Conditional Grants (R36.8 million), Short-Term Provisions (R189.7 million) and Working Capital Provision (including 1 month’s Opex) (R465.3 million). The municipality’s unencumbered cash balance is more than sufficient to meet the required minimum liquidity levels of R691.7 million, resulting in a cash surplus of R139.7 million as at FYE2023. The cash coverage ratio (including working capital) improved to 1.2:1 for FY2023.

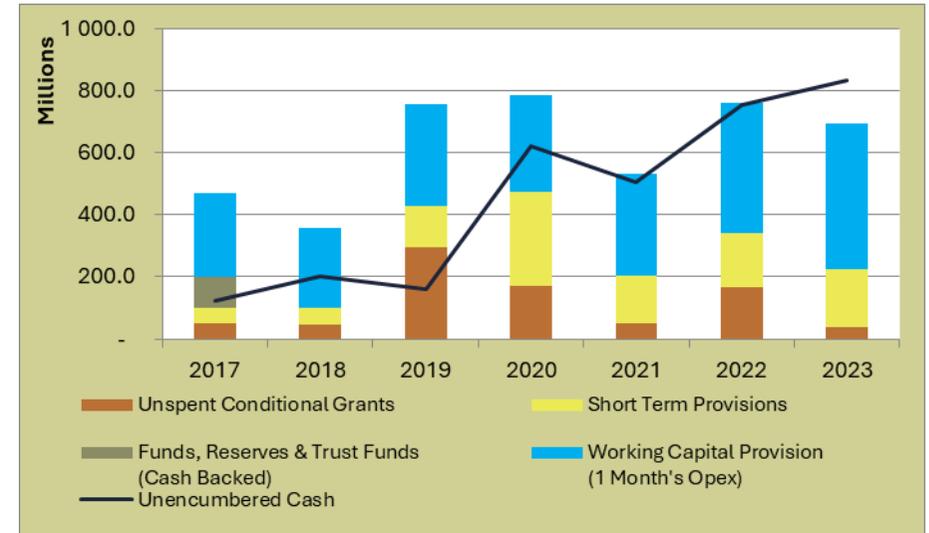
In our determination of the minimum liquidity requirements of a municipality we strictly apply the guidelines of National Treasury, which excludes items that municipalities in their own discretion may wish to provide for in cash. Amongst others, these items include - Consumer deposits, Builders deposits, Retentions held, Guarantees to service providers and Self-insurance reserves.

IPM Shadow Credit Score

Rustenburg was assessed for an IPM shadow credit score, to provide information to management and to council as to the current risk rating that municipality may receive from external lenders, which will determine the municipality’s cost of funding. Any improvements to the shadow credit rating over time will result in more affordable lending rates.

The IPM credit model reflects a score of 3.5, which is comparable to a BB+ on a national ratings scale. This credit score is high compared to other municipalities, which means that Rustenburg should be successful in accessing external borrowing at reasonably affordable rates.

Graph 24: Minimum Liquidity Required



The results obtained from the assessment, per module, are presented below:

Table 9: IPM Credit Model Outcomes

| Modules        | 2023<br>(5) |
|----------------|-------------|
| Financial      | 1.1         |
| Institutional  | 3.1         |
| Socio-Economic | 1.2         |
| Infrastructure | 1.7         |
| Environmental  | 2.4         |

From the assessment it is evident that the financial, socio-economic and infrastructure environments are the main impediments in achieving higher credit scores. These are affected by factors such as poor cash generation, high unemployment, and rampant distribution losses amongst many others.

The strong performance by the other two modules were driven by factors such as the employment of experienced management, low staff turnover and favourable Blue Drop and Green Drop Scores to name a few.



1 Planning Process

2 Updated Perspectives (Demographic, Economic, Household Infrastructure)

3 Updated Historic Financial Assessment

4 Long Term Financial Model Outcomes

5 Future Revenues

6 Affordable Future Capital Investment

7 Scenario Analysis

8 Ratio Analysis

9 Conclusions

## Long Term Financial Model Outcomes

| Variable                                      | Base Case Average for a 10-Year Planning Period |
|---|---|
| RSA consumer inflation rate (CPI)             | 5.3%  |
| Population Growth Rate                        | 1.5%  |
| GVA Growth Rate                               | 2.0%  |
| Short term investment rate (Margin above CPI) | 0.0%  |
| Electricity Price Elasticity of Demand        | -0.4  |
| Water Price Elasticity of Demand              | -0.2  |
| Employee related cost escalation              | 6.8%  |
| Bulk electricity cost escalation              | 9.4%  |
| Collection Rate of customer billings          | 79.0%   |

### MTREF Case Scenario

Future forecasts are based on the outcome of the LTFM. Financial data as well as economic and demographic data form part of the underlying data used within the

model. In this MTREF scenario, key variables or inputs remained as they were projected in the 2023/24 adjusted budget or as they were reported in the 2022/23 audited financial statements in order to depict the projected financial situation if the municipality continues on its current course.

Here are some of the key variables or inputs which remained as is:

The collection rate remained at 79% as recorded in FY2023;

Distribution losses for water and electricity remained at 52% and 9% respectively as reported in the FY2023 audited financial statements;

Repairs and maintenance remained at 2% of PPE and IP;

All revenue items were calibrated against the budget to solely reflect the budget projections and;

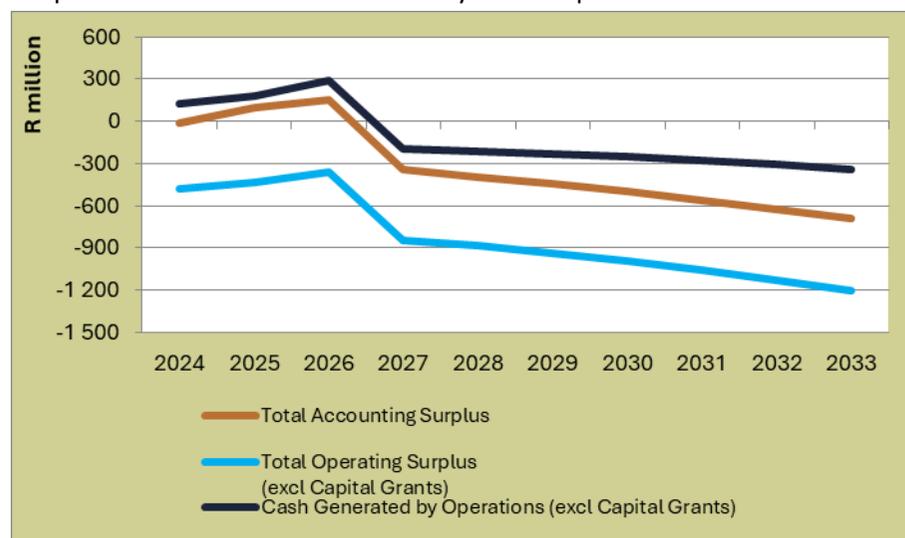
Budgeted CAPEX remained as is throughout the MTREF period and was escalated at 5.3% per annum (equivalent to the forecast inflation rate) for the financial periods beyond the MTREF.

Table 10: Assumptions of MTREF case scenario

Table 11: Outcomes of MTREF case scenario

Rustenburg would post accounting and operating deficits at the end of the planning period. Cash generation would deteriorate due to the low collection rate of 79%.

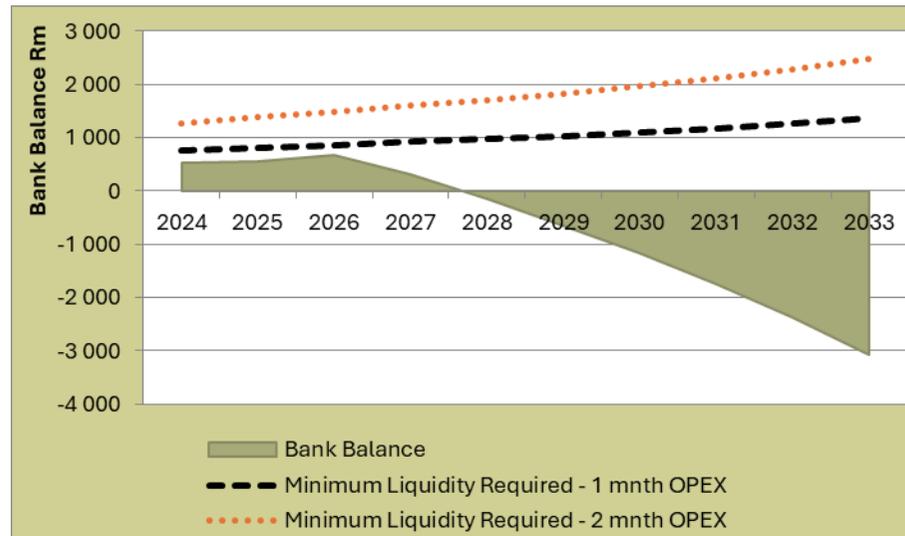
Graph 25: MTREF Case Scenario: Analysis of Surplus



The bank balance is set to decline as Rustenburg would be required to fund operations with its own cash due to the poor cash generation. The minimum liquidity requirements would not be met at any period over the 10-year planning period.

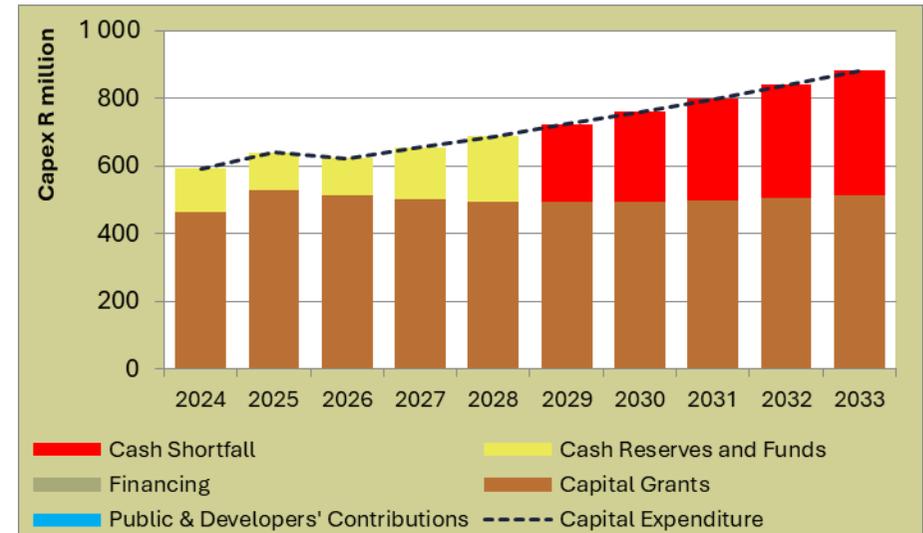
| Outcome  | 10-Year Outcome |
|--|-----------------|
| Average annual % increase in Revenue                                   | 8.5%            |
| Average annual % increase in Expenditure                               | 9.2%            |
| Accounting Surplus / (Deficit) accumulated during Planning Period (Rm) | -R 3,329        |
| Operating Surplus/ (Deficit) accumulated during Planning Period (Rm)   | -R 8,330        |
| Cash generated by Operations during Planning Period (Rm)               | -R 1,219        |
| Average annual increase in Gross Consumer Debtors                      | 8.9%            |
| Capital investment programme during Planning Period (Rm)               | R 7,200         |
| External Loan Financing during Planning Period (Rm)                    | R 0             |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents at the end of the Planning Period (Rm)       | -R 3,068        |
| No of Months Cash Cover at the end of the Planning Period (Rm)         | -2.8            |
| Liquidity Ratio at the end of the Planning Period                      | 0 : 1           |
| Gearing at the end of the Planning Period                              | 0.0%            |
| Debt Service to Total Expense Ratio at the end of the Planning Period  | 1.1%            |

Graph 26: MTREF Case Scenario: Bank Balance



The decline of the cash balance negatively affects the capital expenditure programme. Under these circumstances, Rustenburg would not be able to accelerate its capital expenditure programme with own cash reserves from FY2029. With the deteriorating cash balance, the capital programme would suffer a cash shortfall of R1.5 billion.

Graph 27: Base Case Scenario: Capital Funding Mix



Based on these results, it can be deduced that the current MTREF is not financially sustainable. It is fundamental that the main objective becomes stabilisation of the current financial position to achieve healthy liquidity results and contribute to a cash backed capital replacement reserve with a view of accelerating the capital expenditure levels further for the advancement of service delivery.

It is imperative to adopt assumptions that will result in financial sustainability.

#### Base Case Scenario

Adjustments were made to certain financial metrics in the MTREF Case to arrive at the Base Case scenario. These adjustments serve as recommendations and Rustenburg is urged to implement these recommendations in order to achieve financial sustainability.

Key assumptions to note that were made in arriving at the base case:

The collection rate is assumed to reach 85% after five years and maintained at this rate throughout the planning period.

The load shedding impact was assessed and included – with the expectation that load shedding will continue for the next two year at an average level of stage 3. This results in an approximate reduction in electricity consumption of 19.3%. Furthermore, a permanent loss of electricity consumers of 2% was included.

Expenditure on repairs and maintenance on PPE as a percentage of the value of PPE & IP is forecast to reach 4% by the end of the planning period.

Electricity losses were maintained at 9%; water losses are set to decrease to 40% at the end of the planning period.

Capital expenditure during the MTREF period is adjusted in order to safeguard cash reserves.

The MTRET capital expenditure programme is adjusted as follows:

2024: MTREF R588.1 million, Base Case R588.1 million

2025: MTREF R640.2 million, Base Case R599.4 million

2026: MTREF R622.7 million, Base Case R620.0 million

Capital expenditure is accelerated with a 6% annual growth for the years beyond the MTREF period.

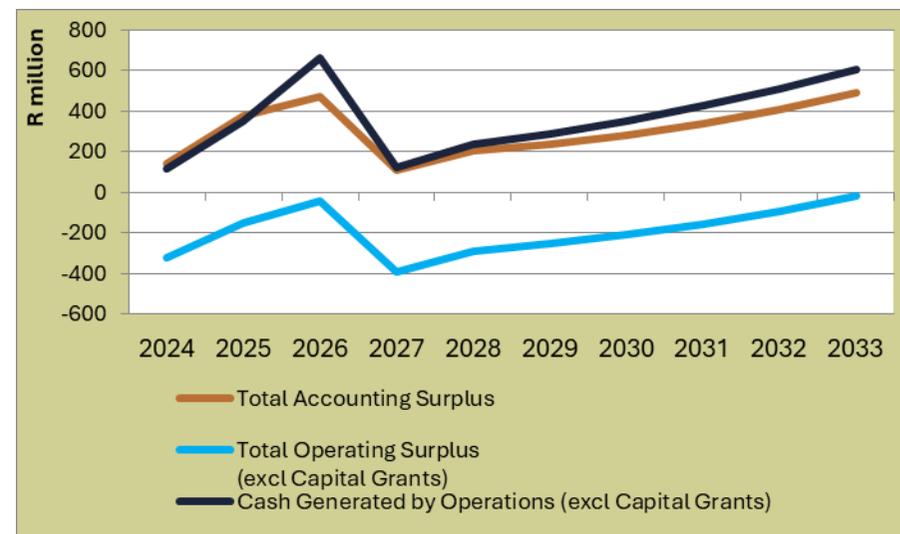
Table 12: Assumptions of the Base Case Variables

| Variable                                      | Base Case Average for a 10-Year Planning Period |
|---|---|
| RSA consumer inflation rate (CPI)             | 5.3%  |
| Population Growth Rate                        | 1.5%  |
| GVA Growth Rate                               | 2.0%  |
| Short term investment rate (Margin above CPI) | 0.0%  |
| Electricity Price Elasticity of Demand        | -0.4  |
| Water Price Elasticity of Demand              | -0.2  |
| Employee related cost escalation              | 6.8%  |
| Bulk electricity cost escalation              | 9.4%  |
| Collection Rate of customer billings          | 83.8%   |

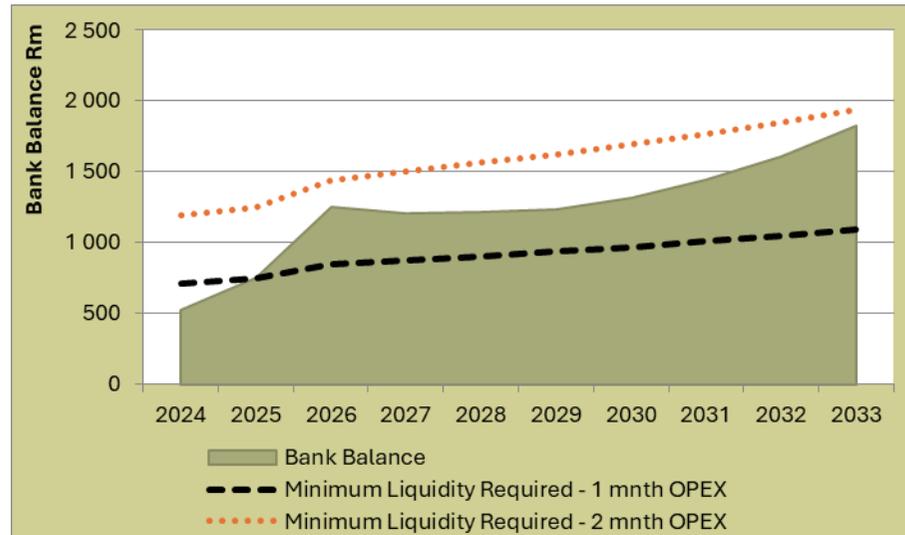
| Outcome   | 10-Year Outcome |
|---|-----------------|
| Average annual % increase in Revenue                                  | 6.0%            |
| Average annual % increase in Expenditure                              | 5.8%            |
| Accounting Surplus accumulated during Planning Period (Rm)            | R 3,058         |
| Operating Surplus/ (Deficit) accumulated during Planning Period (Rm)  | -R 1,943        |
| Cash generated by Operations during Planning Period (Rm)              | R 3,660         |
| Average annual increase in Gross Consumer Debtors                     | 4.5%            |
| Capital investment programme during Planning Period (Rm)              | R 7,184         |
| External Loan Financing during Planning Period (Rm)                   | R 0             |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents at the end of the Planning Period (Rm)      | R 1,826         |
| No of Months Cash Cover at the end of the Planning Period (Rm)        | 2.2             |
| Liquidity Ratio at the end of the Planning Period                     | 1.1: 1          |
| Gearing at the end of the Planning Period                             | 0.0%            |
| Debt Service to Total Expense Ratio at the end of the Planning Period | 0.0%            |

Table 13: Assumptions of the Base Case Variables

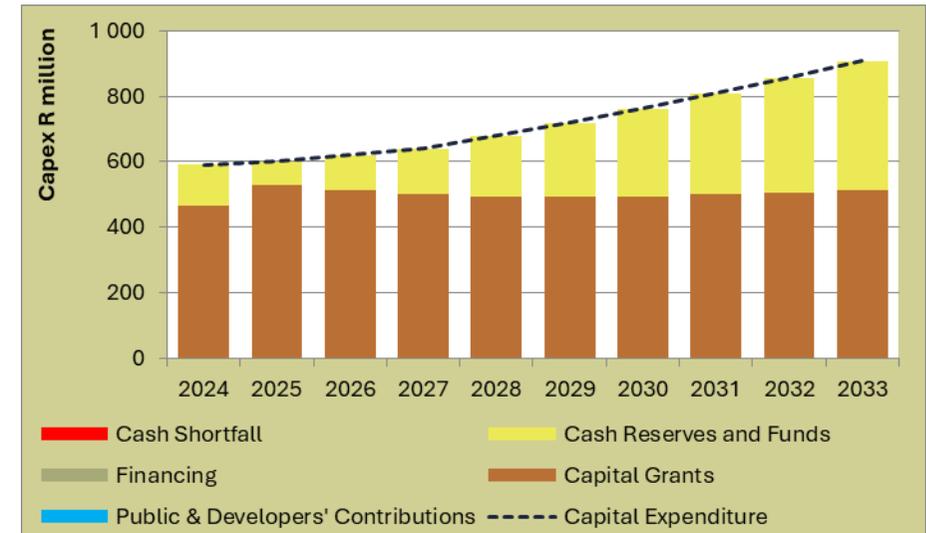
Graph 28: Base Case Scenario: Analysis of Surplus



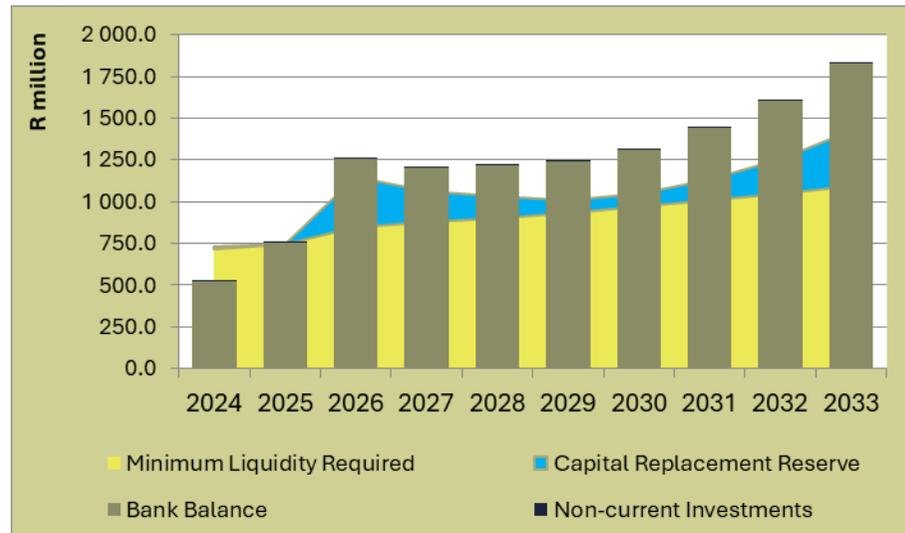
Graph 29: Base Case Scenario: Bank Balance vs Minimum Liquidity



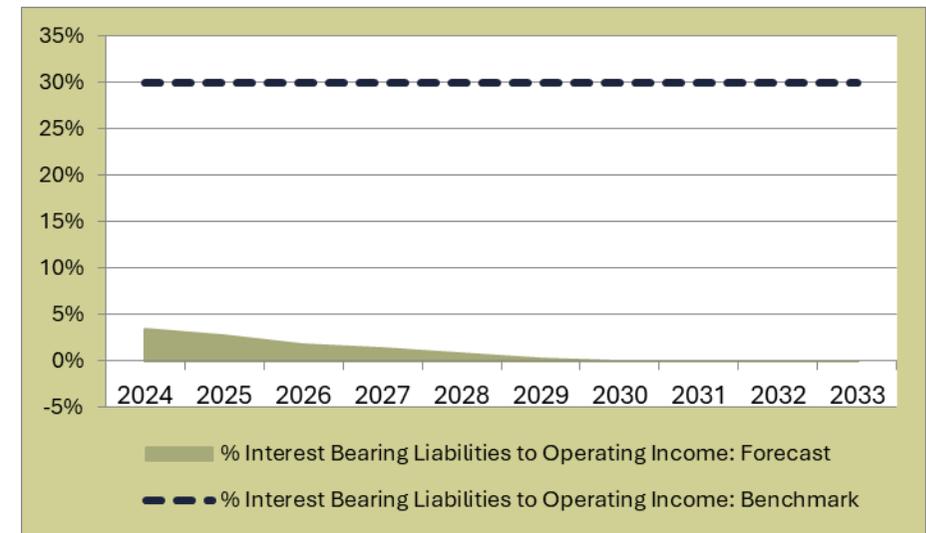
Graph 31: Base Case Scenario: Capital Funding Mix



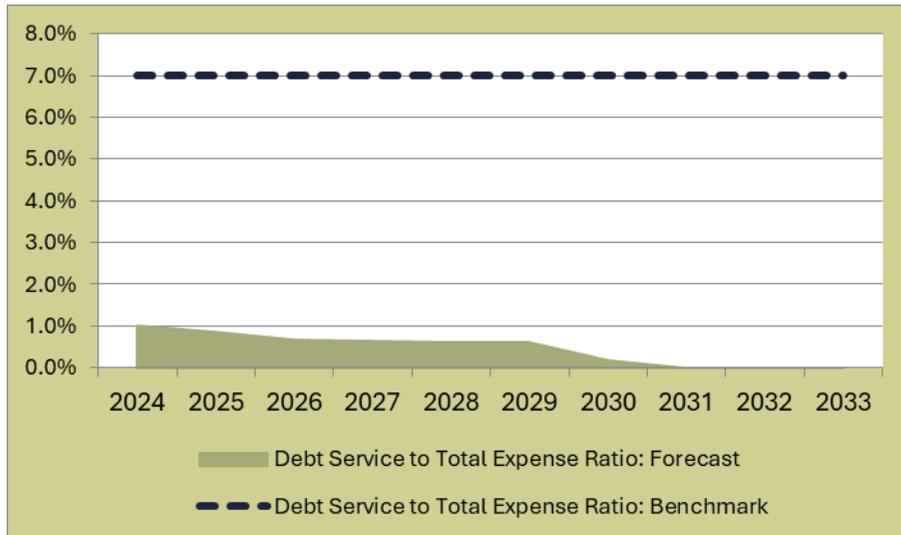
Graph 30: Base Case Scenario: Cash vs Reserves



Graph 32: Base Case Scenario: Gearing



Graph 33: Base Case Scenario: Debt Service to Total Expense Ratio



These adjustments serve Under the Base Case scenario, Rustenburg would post accounting surpluses and generate cash from operations throughout the review period. operating surpluses would not be posted throughout the 10-year planning period but there is a visible uptrend evident in Graph 28 indicating consistent improvement. Operating surpluses are expected to be posted in the years beyond the planning period.

The consistent cash generation manifests itself in the healthy bank balance and the ability to now build up a capital replacement reserve seen in Graph 30. The minimum liquidity requirement is expected to be met as early as FY2025.

With a healthier bank balance, the municipality regains the ability to supplement capital grants with own cash reserves without encountering cash shortfalls. This allows a marginal acceleration in the capital expenditure programme by increasing expenditure at an average rate of 6% per annum opposed to 5.1%.

Without accessing the debt market, the gearing ratio and debt service ratio are expected to decrease to zero at the end of the planning period, as seen in Graph 32 and 33.

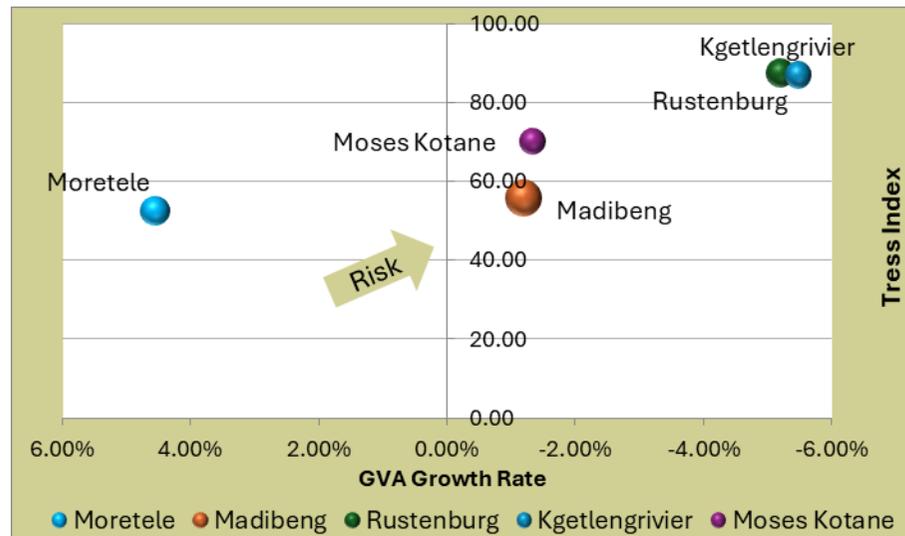


|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | Planning Process   |
| 2 | Updated Perspectives (Demographic, Economic, Household Infrastructure) |
| 3 | Updated Historic Financial Assessment                                  |
| 4 | Long Term Financial Model Outcomes                                     |
| 5 | Future Revenues  |
| 6 | Affordable Future Capital Investment                                   |
| 7 | Scenario Analysis  |
| 8 | Ratio Analysis   |
| 9 | Conclusions  |

## Future Revenues

Municipal Revenue Risk Indicator (MRRRI) = “High”

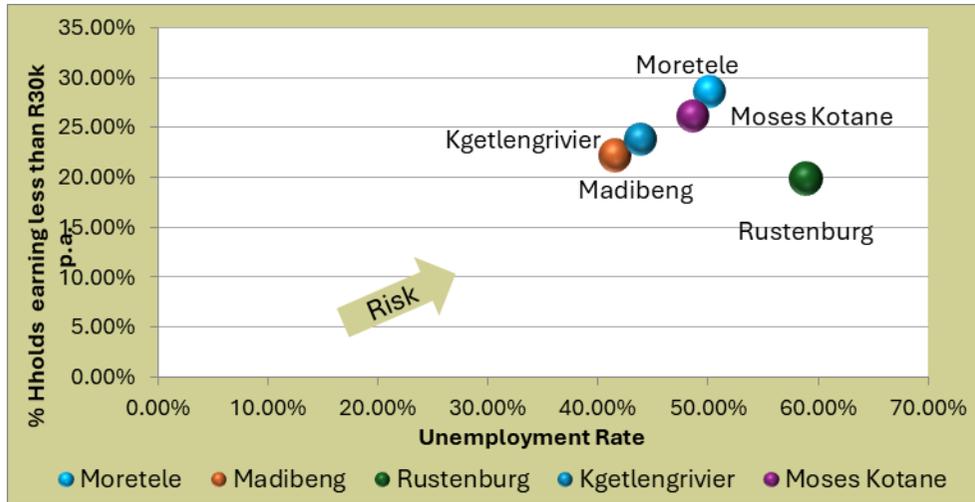
Graph 34: Economic Risk Component of MRRRI



The Municipal Revenue Risk Indicator (MRRRI) measures the risk of the municipality to generate its own revenues. This is a function of the economy (size of the economy as measured by GVA per capita, GVA growth rate and Tress Index); and the household ability to pay (measured by percentage of households with income below R54 000 p.a., unemployment rate and human development index).

The latest S&P Global Markt Intelligence update of Rustenburg’s local economy reveals an economic output of approximately R63.1 billion (2022). The economy has contracted at an average rate of 5.2% p.a. during the past 5 years, which was lower than the average population growth rate of 1.8% p.a. over the same period. Consequently, the GVA per capita has decreased over the same period to R43 644. The municipality’s local economy was assessed to be highly concentrated as indicated by a Tress Index of 87.66. This resulted in a “High” risk rating by the economic risk component of the MRRRI, due to the low economic recession over the past five years and the lack of economic diversification.

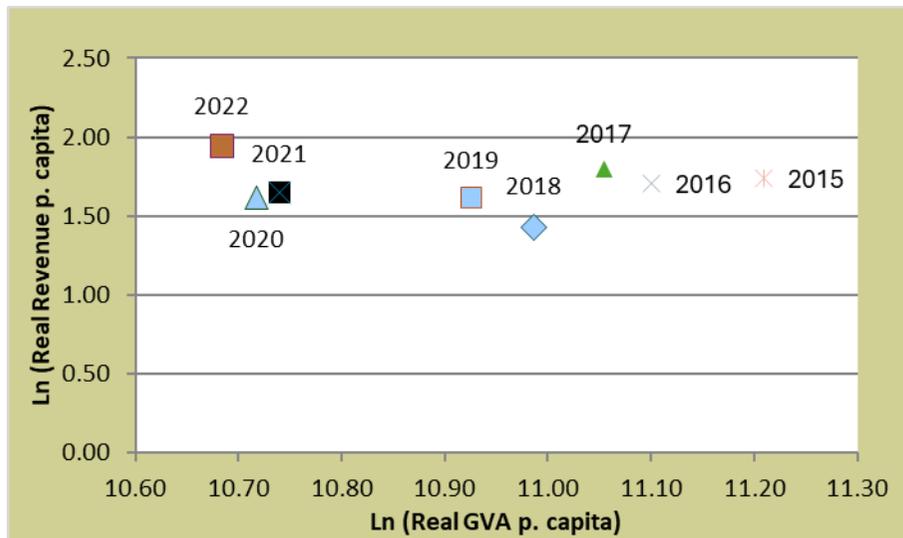
Graph 35: Household Ability to Pay Risk Component of MRRI



The reasonably high percentage of households reliant on indigent support (19.1%), the high unemployment rate of 58.9% and the human development index of 0.67, cumulatively resulted in a “High” household ability to pay risk component of the MRRI.

Therefore, the overall rating on the MRRI is deemed to be “High.” If population growth continues to outperform economic growth, unemployment will become more rampant and a reduction in household income will be experienced.

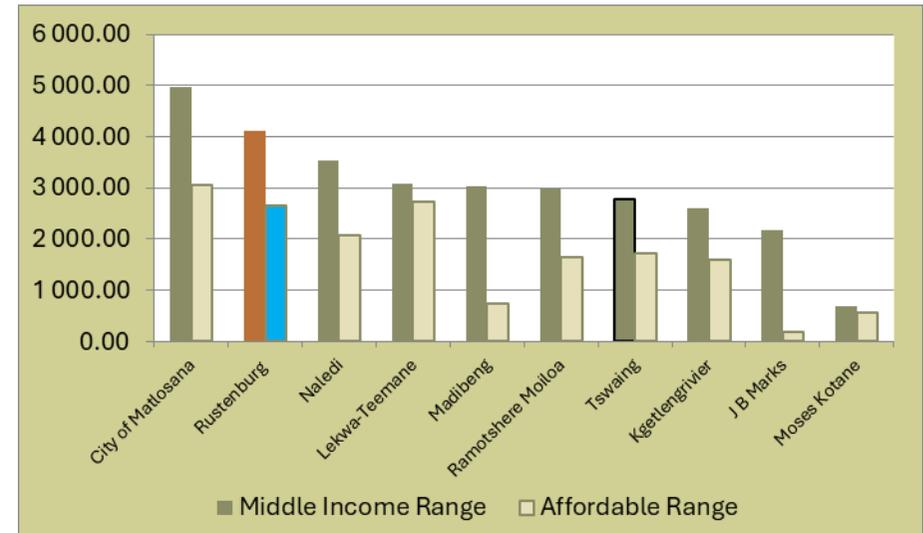
Graph 36: Real Revenue per Capita vs Real GVA per Capita



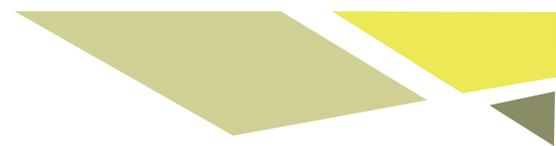
The GVA per capita has decreased over the past ten years, with a 5.5% decrease recorded in 2022. This decreased from R46 186 p.a in 2021 to R43 644 p.a in 2022. decrease in GVA per capita can be attributed to population growth rate exceeding the economic growth rate over the 10-year review period.

Real municipal revenue (excluding capital transfers) performed inconsistently, with increases and decreases evident throughout the review period. This indicates that revenue base has been unstable over the period. Sustained periods of low levels of GVA growth will negatively impact the municipality’s ability to generate income from households.

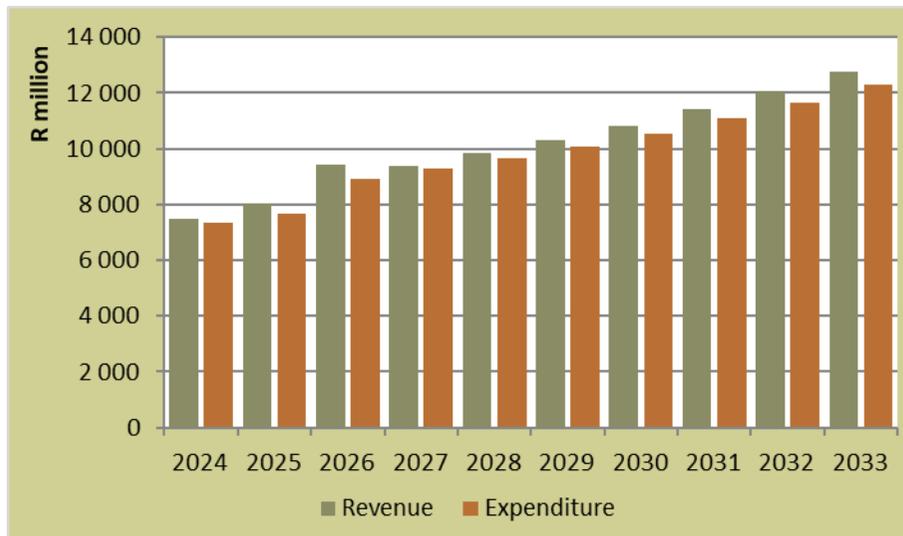
Graph 37: Average Household Bill (R)



A comparison of the average household bill for the middle income and affordable income range of a selected number of municipalities in North West(extracted from Budget Table SA14), based on the 2023/24 tariffs, reveals that Rustenburg features at the higher range. Considering the level of service provided by Rustenburg by comparison to its municipal counterparts, the current household bill is reasonable and justifiable. The scope of the tariff increases is, however, limited by household’s ability to pay for services.



Graph 38: Base Case: Revenue and Expenditure



### Municipal Revenue

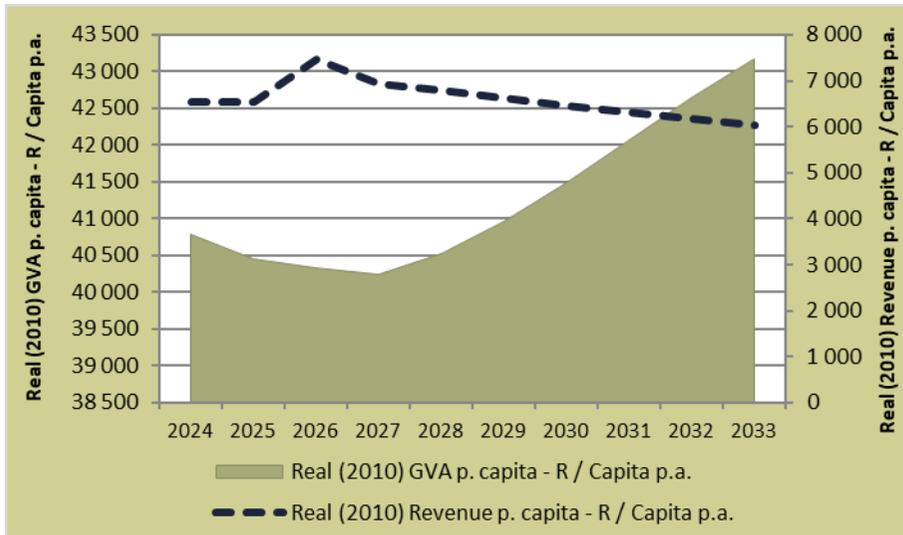
result in an increase in the municipality’s revenue base, which will improve profitability and ultimately accelerate investment in capital expenditure.

The municipality is forecast to generate cash from its operations; however, this is heavily reliant on achieving the recommended collection rate.

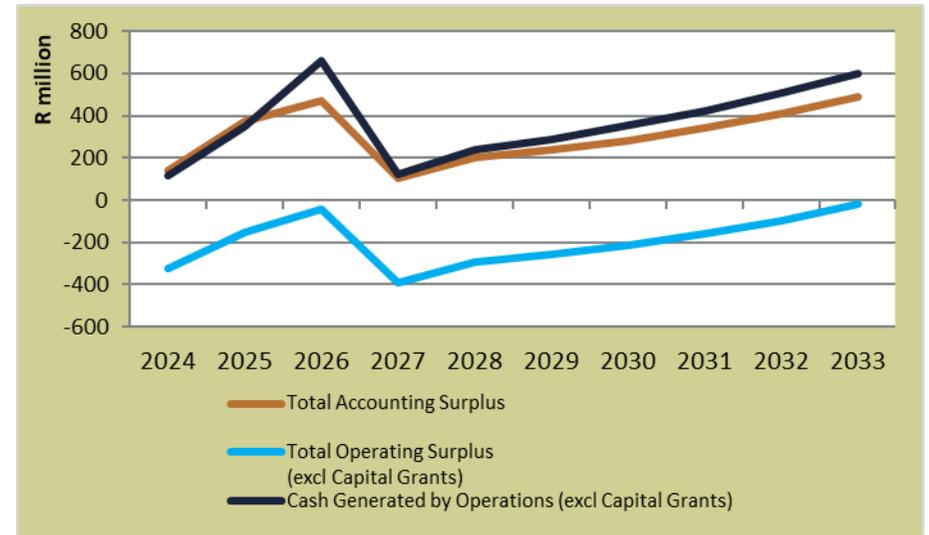
The Base Case estimates that, over the planning period, future nominal revenue (including capital grants) will grow at an average of 6.0% p.a. The revenue growth includes: (i) tariff increases, (ii) increased sales and (iii) additional revenue sources. Future nominal expenditure is estimated to grow at a marginally lower rate of 5.8% p.a., over the same period.

The Real GVA per capita is expected to decline in the first three years of the planning period then steadily improve in the years beyond 2027. The Real Revenue per capita is expected to decrease overall over the planning period. The local economic growth (GVA growth) is significant to the municipality as it affects the ability of the municipality to generate revenue (MRR). Growth in GVA will

Graph 39: Projected Real GVA and Revenues per Capita



Graph 40: Base Case: Analysis of Surplus



- 
- 1 Planning Process
  - 2 Updated Perspectives (Demographic, Economic, Household Infrastructure)
  - 3 Updated Historic Financial Assessment
  - 4 Long Term Financial Model Outcomes
  - 5 Future Revenues
  - 6 Affordable Future Capital Investment
  - 7 Scenario Analysis
  - 8 Ratio Analysis
  - 9 Conclusions

## Affordable Future Capital Investment

### Capex Affordability and Funding

The total CAPEX demand was determined during the preparation of the LTFP in 2018 but has changed since then. For purposes of this report, the estimated CAPEX demand in the previous update was adjusted for inflation.

Table 14: CAPEX Demand vs CAPEX Affordability

|                                    |   |                |
|------------------------------------|---|----------------|
| Total 10-year CAPEX Demand:        | = | R4 120 million |
| Total 10-year CAPEX Affordability: | = | R7 184 million |

Capex Demand far exceeds Capex Affordability. This disparity requires the municipality to prioritize capital projects it deems important. Alternatively, the municipality can pursue private sector participation or additional funding from developers or grants sources.

### MTREF Capital Funding Mix

Rustenburg's adjusted MTREF Budget 2023/24 to 2025/26, expects a capital budget amounting to R246.4 million funded as follows:

Table 15: MTREF Funding Mix (R'm)

| R'm                               | Total        | 2023/24    | 2024/25    | 2025/26    |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|------------|------------|------------|
| Public & Developers Contributions | 0            | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| Capital Grants                    | 1 504        | 464        | 528        | 512        |
| Financing                         | 0            | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| Cash Reserves and Funds           | 347          | 124        | 112        | 111        |
| <b>Total</b>                      | <b>1 851</b> | <b>588</b> | <b>640</b> | <b>623</b> |

The MTREF funding mix was adjusted in order to arrive at the Base Case, by marginally decreasing the utilisation of own cash reserves in FY2025 and FY2026 with the aim of securing minimum liquidity levels.

IPM recommends that the MTREF capital budget be adjusted as follows:

Table 16: Base Case Funding Mix (R'm)

| R'm                               | Total        | 2023/24    | 2024/25    | 2025/26    |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|------------|------------|------------|
| Public & Developers Contributions | 0            | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| Capital Grants                    | 1 504        | 464        | 528        | 512        |
| Financing                         | 0            | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| Cash Reserves and Funds           | 306          | 127        | 71         | 108        |
| <b>Total</b>                      | <b>1 810</b> | <b>591</b> | <b>599</b> | <b>620</b> |

The Base Case capex budget reflects an optimal funding mix shared amongst capital grants (83%) and own cash reserves (17%).

10-year Capital Funding Mix

The capital funding mix for the 10-year planning period is forecast to be as follows:

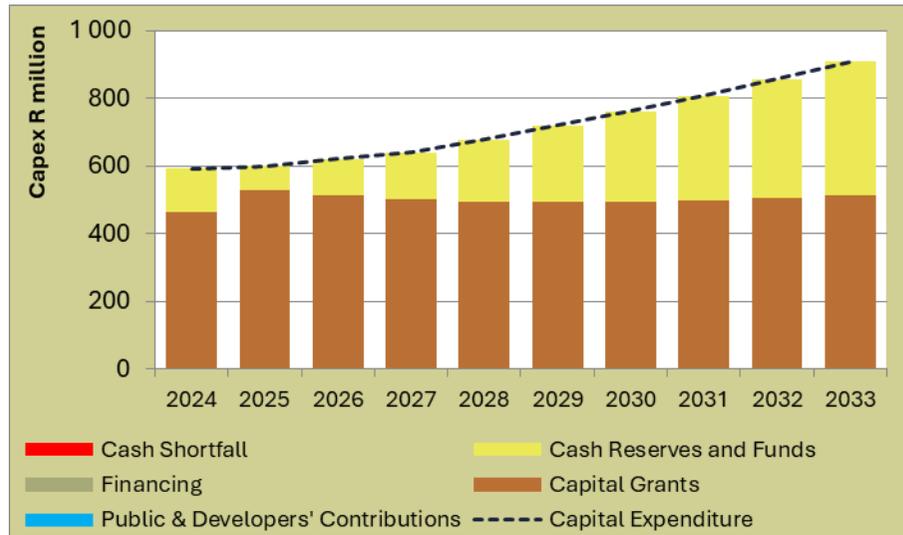
Table 17: 10-Year Capital Funding Mix

| Source                             | Rm    | %    |
|------------------------------------|-------|------|
| Public & Developers' Contributions | 0     | 0%   |
| Capital Grants                     | 5 001 | 70%  |
| Financing                          | 0     | 0%   |
| Cash Reserves and Funds            | 2 183 | 30%  |
| Cash Shortfall                     | 0     | 0%   |
| Capital Expenditure                | 7 184 | 100% |

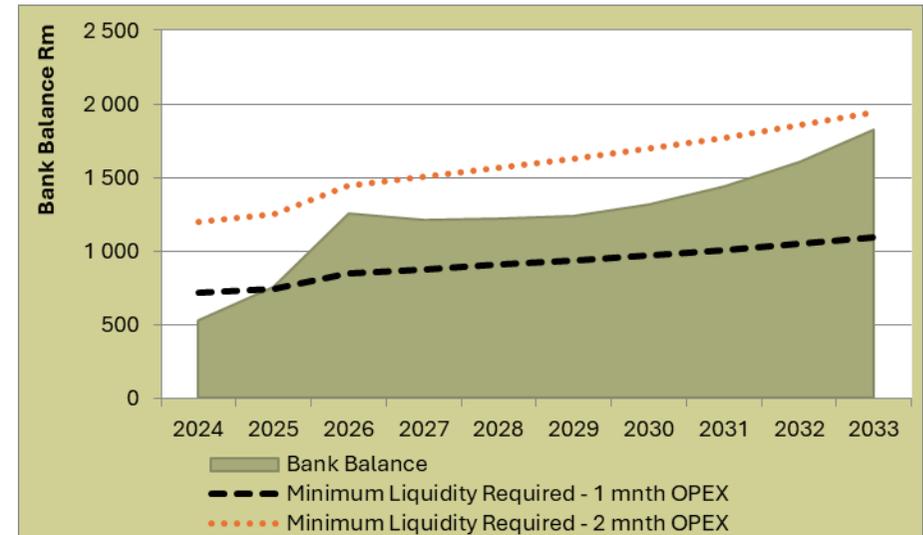
The proposed funding mix results in capital grants remaining as the main source of funding, at 70%; own cash reserves will fund 30%. No borrowing is expected. It is important to note that that, due to the prevailing national fiscus constraints, grant funding in future is expected to decline in real terms there less reliance should be placed on grants.

The Base Case's funding mix is presented below:

Graph 41: Distribution of Future Funding



Graph 42: Bank Balance vs Minimum Liquidity Requirements

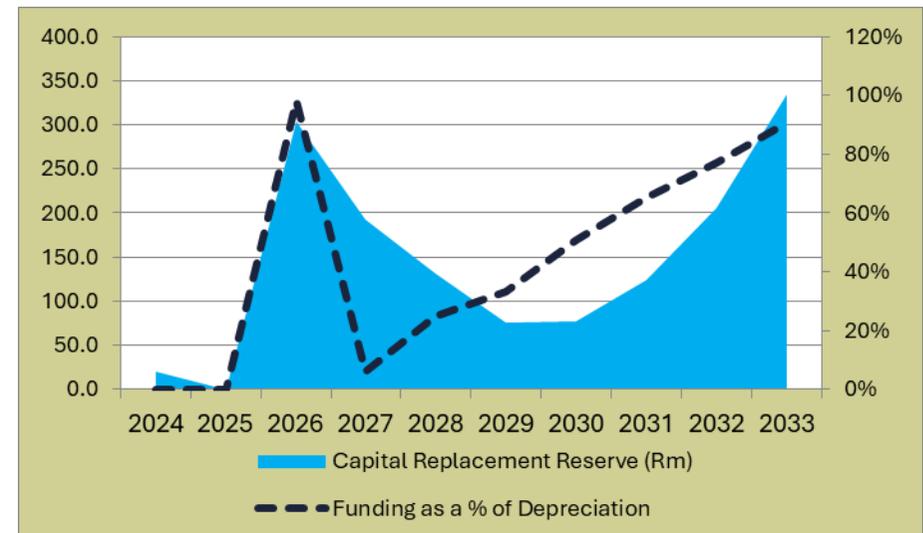


### Liquidity and Capital Replacement Reserve

The minimum liquidity levels cater for unspent conditional grants, cash-backed reserves, short term provisions and 1-month's working capital (operating expenditure).

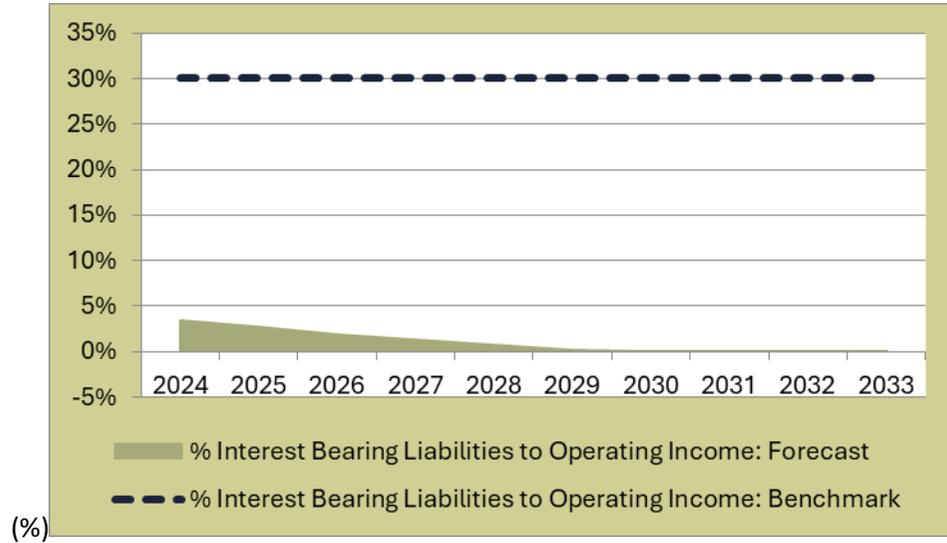
The municipality's liquidity ratio is set to improve to 1.1:1 at the end of the planning period and the cash balance of R1.8 billion shall meet the minimum liquidity requirements including 2 months operational expenditure. It is imperative that the municipality maintain the optimal funding mix indicated in the Base Case without over-extending the utilisation of own cash reserves. The most pivotal prerequisite to reaching these projected liquidity levels is achieving and maintaining a collection rate of at least 85% as proposed in the Base Case.

Graph 43: Capital Replacement Reserve

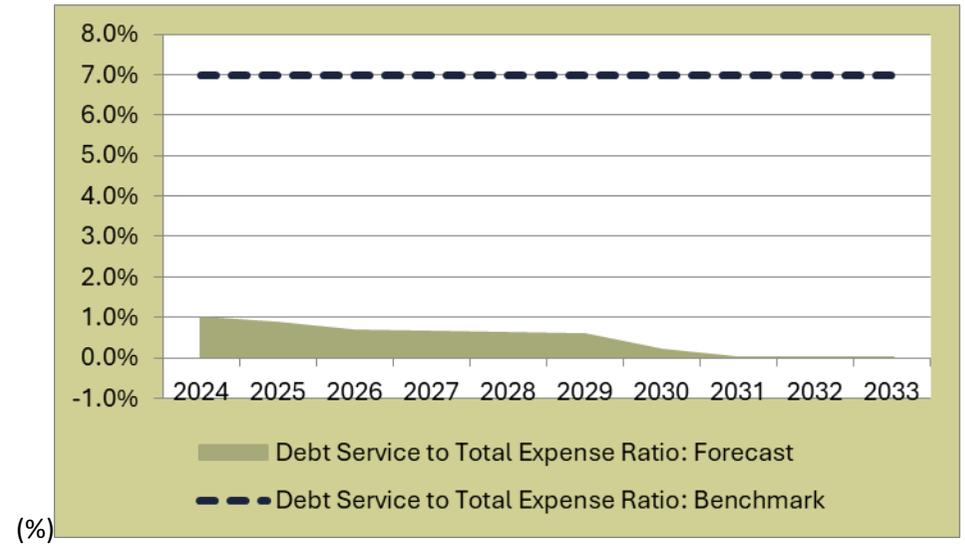


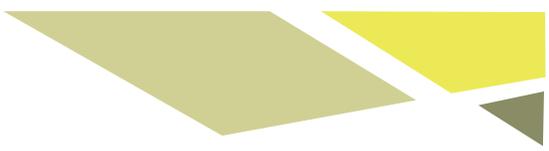
Gearing In the Base Case, no borrowing is recommended. Therefore, the gearing ratio and debt service ratio are both expected to reach 0% at the end of the planning period.

Graph 44: Gearing

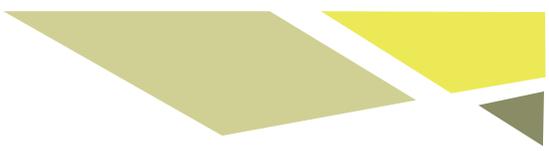


Graph 45: Debt Service to Total Expenditure





|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | Planning Process   |
| 2 | Updated Perspectives (Demographic, Economic, Household Infrastructure) |
| 3 | Updated Historic Financial Assessment                                  |
| 4 | Long Term Financial Model Outcomes                                     |
| 5 | Future Revenues  |
| 6 | Affordable Future Capital Investment                                   |
| 7 | Scenario Analysis  |
| 8 | Ratio Analysis   |
| 9 | Conclusions  |



## Scenarios Analysis

Considering our analysis of the proposed MTREF budget and the risks identified as part of this update, the following scenarios were run to indicate the potential outcomes. The main purpose of these scenarios is to assist the municipality in its strategic decision making and serve as an input to the tabled budget for FY2024:

To indicate the collection rate sensitivity on long-term financial sustainability:

- 1.1. The collection rate has been decreased by 2% to 83%.
- 1.2. A positive scenario depicting an improvement in the assumed collection rate by 2% to 87%.

To indicate the importance of maintaining operating expenditure savings:

- 2.1. A negative scenario indicating the impact of an increase of 3% annually in operating expenditure annually over the planning period.

The impact of water no changes to the distribution losses:

This scenario leaves the water distribution losses unchanged at 52% throughout the planning period.

### Scenario 1: Sensitivity Analysis on the Collection Rate

Decrease collection rate by 2 percentage points.

With high interest rates, sluggish economic growth and rising cost of living, households have less disposable income in their hands, which leads to a high risk of default on their bills including municipal. Under these circumstances, there is a reasonable expectation that collection rate may not be attainable by Rustenburg. Therefore, the model was adjusted by assuming that the collection rate would remain at 83% (which is the 8-year review period average). All other input variables remain constant.

The results indicate a significant decrease, by R1.8 billion, in the cash balance at the end of the planning period. The liquidity ratio also deteriorates to 0.2:1 indicating that the municipality would be unable to meet its short-term obligations. There would be insufficient cash cover for Opex at the end of the planning period. Average annual nominal increase in expenditure (6.0%) is marginally higher than the average annual nominal increase in revenue (5.9%), which indicates a high risk of declining financial performance.

Increase Collection Rate by 2 percentage points.

| Outcome   | 83%      | BASE CASE<br>– 85% | 87%     |
|---|----------|--------------------|---------|
| Average annual % increase in Revenue                                  | 5.9%     | 6.0%               | 6.1%    |
| Average annual % increase in Expenditure                              | 6.0%     | 5.8%               | 5.6%    |
| Accounting Surplus accumulated during Planning Period (Rm)            | R 1,233  | R 3,058            | R 4,883 |
| Operating Surplus accumulated during Planning Period (Rm)             | -R 3,768 | -R 1,943           | -R 118  |
| Cash generated by Operations during Planning Period (Rm)              | R 1,834  | R 3,660            | R 5,485 |
| Average annual increase in Gross Consumer Debtors                     | 5.5%     | 4.5%               | 3.4%    |
| Capital investment programme during Planning Period (Rm)              | R 7,184  | R 7,184            | R 7,184 |
| External Loan Financing during Planning Period (Rm)                   | R 0      | R 0                | R 0     |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents at the end of the Planning Period (Rm)      | R 1      | R 1,826            | R 3,652 |
| No of Months Cash Cover at the end of the Planning Period (Rm)        | 0.0      | 2.2                | 4.3     |
| Liquidity Ratio at the end of the Planning Period                     | 0.2 : 1  | 1.1 : 1            | 2.1 : 1 |
| Gearing at the end of the Planning Period                             | 0.0%     | 0.0%               | 0.0%    |
| Debt Service to Total Expense Ratio at the end of the Planning Period | 0.0%     | 0.0%               | 0.0%    |



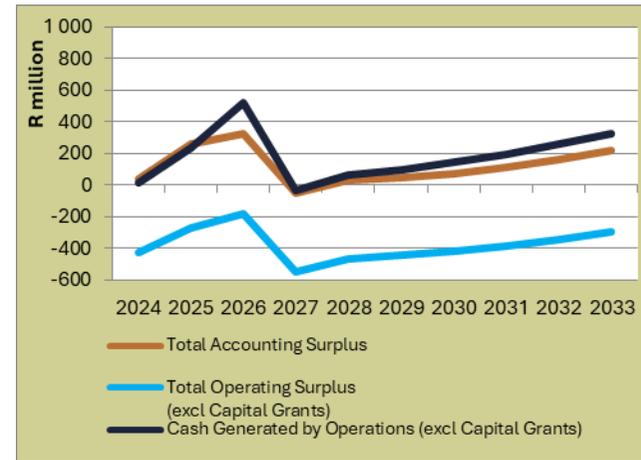
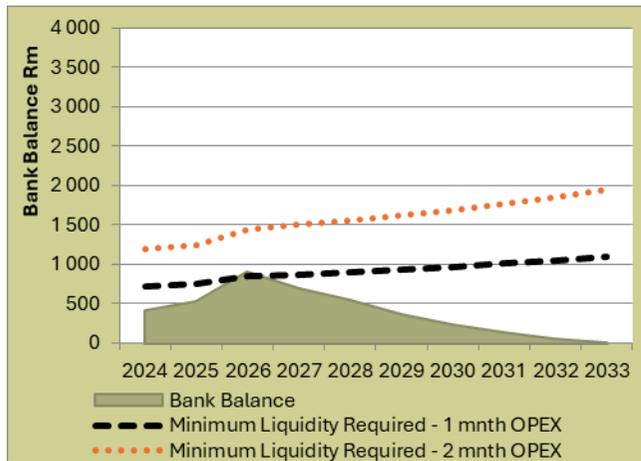
To assess the positive financial impact of a further improvement in the collection rate over the planning, an optimistic scenario has been modelled whereby the collection rate would be adjusted to 87%. All other input variables remain constant.

The results indicate a 100% increase in the cash balance at the end of the planning period, to R3.7 billion. The additional R1.8 billion can be used to accelerate the capital expenditure programme to bridge that gap between capital demand and capital affordability. This improved cash balance would drive the liquidity ratio up to 2.1:1, safely above the NT minimum of at least 1.5:1. Rustenburg would meet and exceed the liquidity requirements, with a cash cover of 4 months.

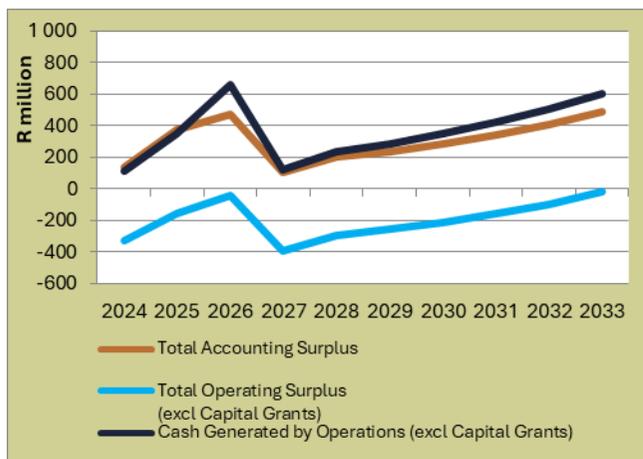
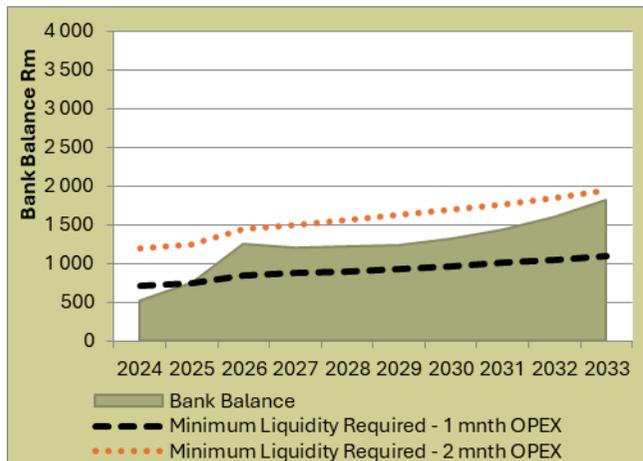
Table 18: Outcomes of Collection Rate sensitivity Analysis

Scenario 1: Sensitivity Analysis on the Collection Rate

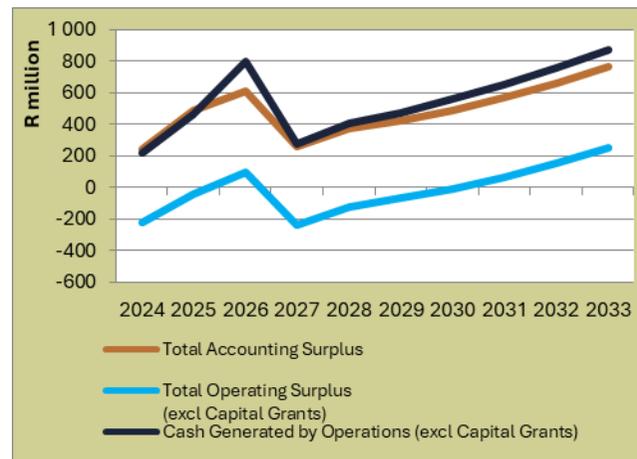
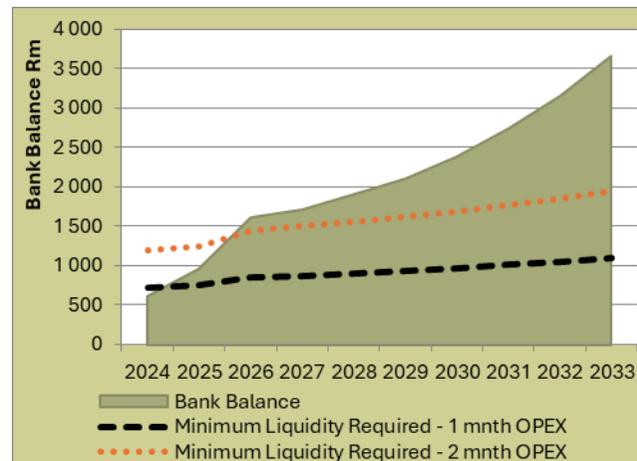
Decrease collection Rate



Base Case



Increase Collection Rate



| Outcome  | Base Case | Opex +3% |
|--|-----------|----------|
| Average annual % increase in Revenue                             | 6.0%      | 5.9%     |
| Average annual % increase in Expenditure                         | 5.8%      | 6.0%     |
| Accounting Surplus accumulated during Planning Period (Rm)       | R 3,058   | R 423    |
| Operating Surplus accumulated during Planning Period (Rm)        | -R 1,943  | -R 4,578 |
| Cash generated by Operations during Planning Period (Rm)         | R 3,660   | R 1,058  |
| Average annual increase in Gross Consumer Debtors                | 4.5%      | 4.5%     |
| Capital investment programme during Planning Period (Rm)         | R 7,184   | R 7,184  |
| External Loan Financing during Planning Period (Rm)              | R 0       | R 0      |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents at the end of the Planning Period (Rm) | R 1,826   | -R 775   |
| No of Months Cash Cover at the end of the Planning Period (Rm)   | 2.2       | -0.9     |
| Liquidity Ratio at the end of the Planning Period                | 1.1 : 1   | 0.1 : 1  |

## Scenario 2: Opex Increase

Operating Expenditure 3% Higher than Base Case

|   |      |      |
|---|------|------|
| Gearing at the end of the Planning Period                             | 0.0% | 0.0% |
| Debt Service to Total Expense Ratio at the end of the Planning Period | 0.0% | 0.4% |

In the previous LTFP, it was recommended that the municipality improve its profitability by decreasing operating expenditure. Evidently, Rustenburg has managed to follow through with the recommendation as the increase in operating expenditure in FY2023 came at a much improved 4% (16% in FY2022). The current economic conditions of high inflation, high interest rates and regular fuel price hikes are some of the factors to be considered in assessing operating expenditure. Consequently, operating expenditure was increased due to the reasonably high risk that the aforementioned factors would drive up input costs. To assess the impact that such adverse conditions will have on the finances of the municipality, the model was adjusted by assuming the municipality will spend an additional 2% annually over the planning period. All other input variables and assumptions remain constant.

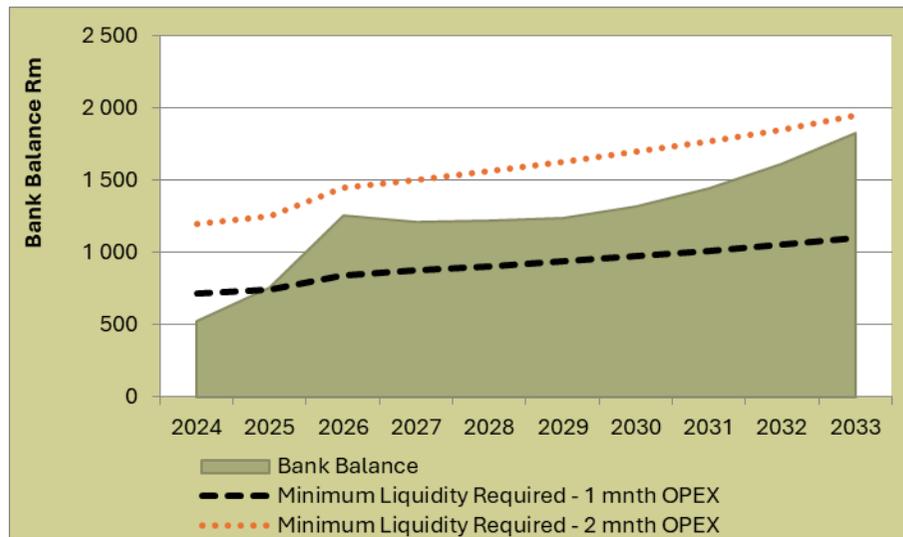
The increased operating expenditure results in a deterioration of the liquidity ratio to 0.1:1 at the end of the planning period. The average increase in expenditure is marginally higher than the increase in revenue, which have the potential to deplete accumulated surpluses if they persist. The municipality is forecast to post growing operating deficits throughout the planning period, placing the municipality in a position in which it relies on capital grants despite warnings from NT that grant funding is expected to decline over the years. The bank balance is forecast to deteriorate to a R755 million overdraft at the end of the planning period, which is not permitted. Due to the lack of cash, the capital expenditure programme is set to suffer a cash shortfall of R1.4 billion.

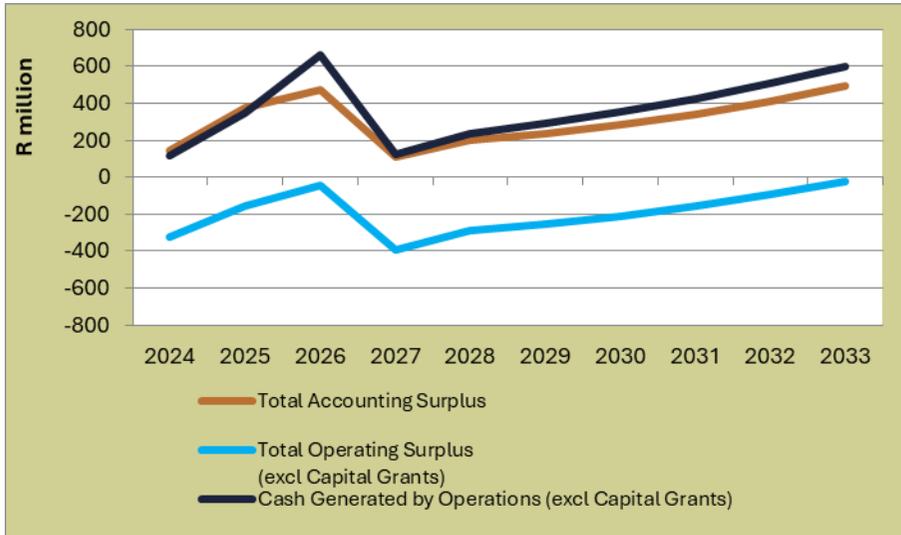
This would place the municipality in an unsustainable position, and it highlights the significance of maintaining strict oversight over operational expenditure.

Table 19: Outcomes of a Opex Sensitivity Analysis

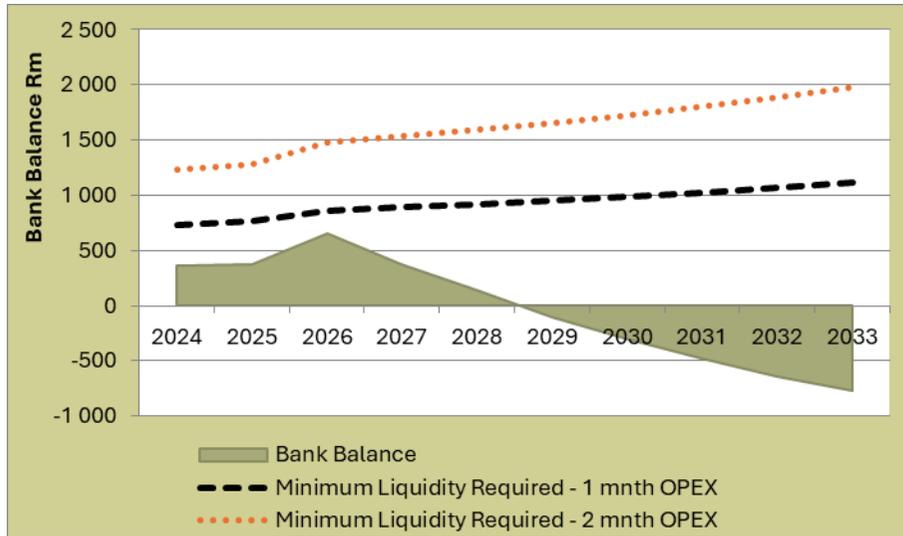
Scenario 2: Opex Increase

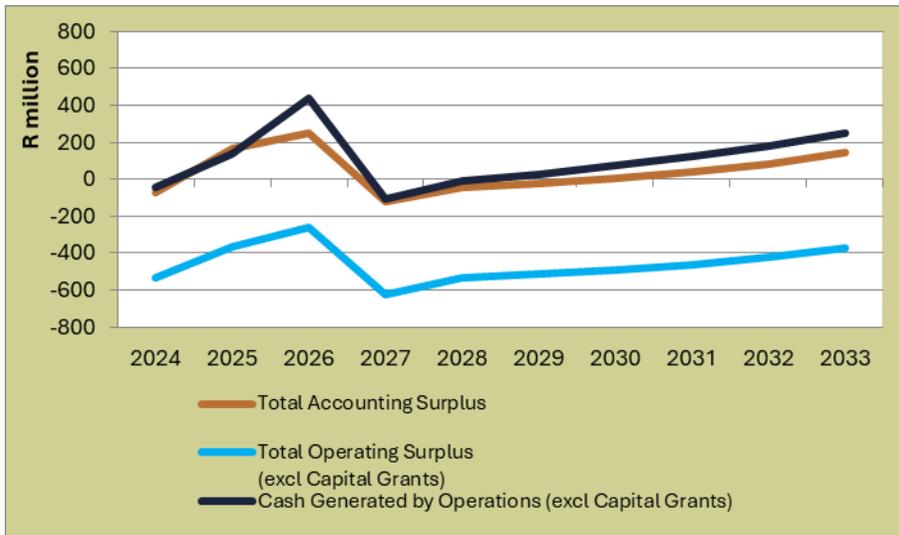
Base Case





Opex +3%





| Outcome  | Base Case | Unchanged Distribution Losses |
|--|-----------|-------------------------------|
| Average annual % increase in Revenue                       | 6.0%      | 6.0%                          |
| Average annual % increase in Expenditure                   | 5.8%      | 5.8%                          |
| Accounting Surplus accumulated during Planning Period (Rm) | R 3,058   | R 2,782                       |
| Operating Surplus accumulated during Planning Period (Rm)  | -R 1,943  | -R 2,219                      |
| Cash generated by Operations during Planning Period (Rm)   | R 3,660   | R 3,391                       |

### Scenario 3: Distribution Losses

#### Unchanged Distribution Losses

The Base Case assumes the water distribution losses decrease to 40% over the 10-year planning period; electricity losses remained unchanged at 9%. The water distribution losses reported in the audited 2022/23 AFS amounted to 52%. To illustrate the impact of not addressing the distributions losses, the water distribution losses were left unchanged at 52% for the entire planning period. All other input variables and assumptions remain constant.

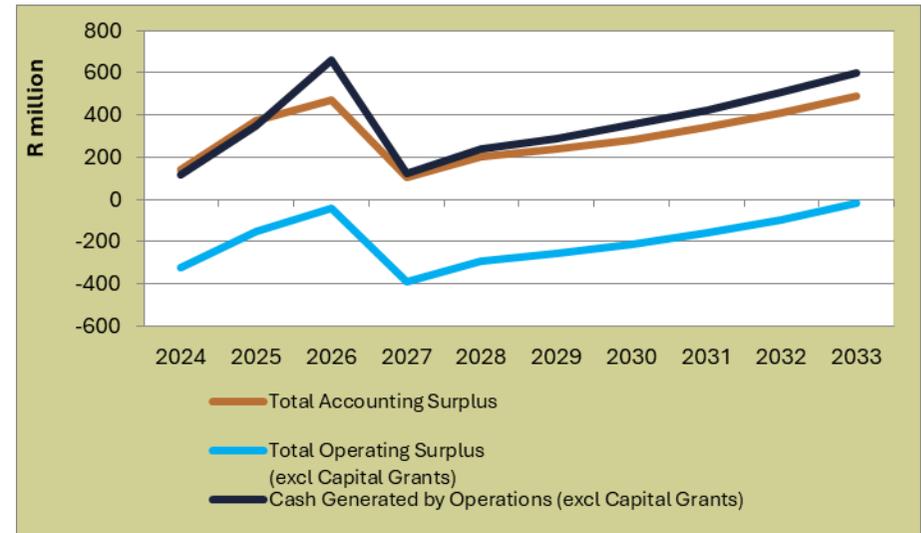
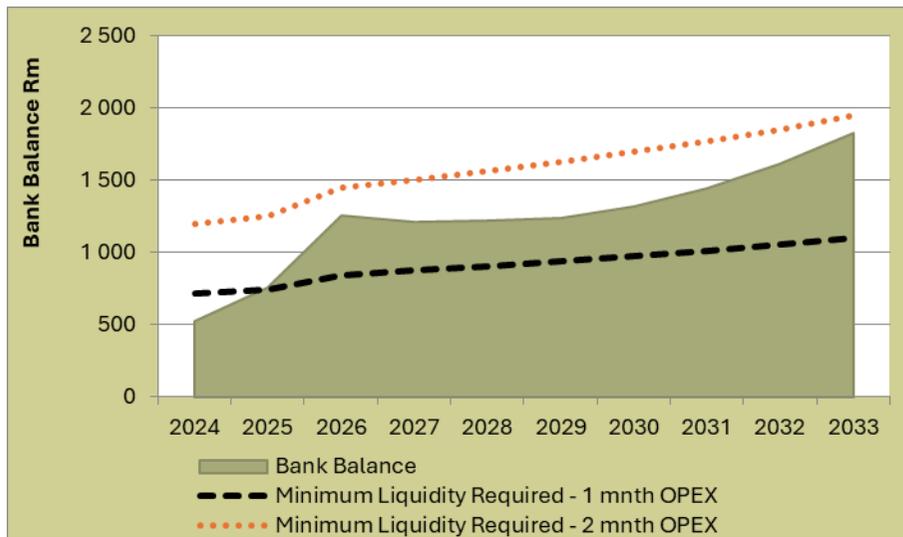
The results are seemingly marginal, but it must be emphasized that this is the effect one expenditure item and one source of revenue. The most noteworthy deviation is a R269 million decrease in the cash balance at the end of planning period. The cash balance declines R1.5 billion, decreasing the cash cover to 1.8 months. The liquidity ratio decreases to 1:1. The capital investment programme would remain affordable at R7.2 billion, without any expected cash shortfalls.

|   |         |         |
|---|---------|---------|
| Average annual increase in Gross Consumer Debtors                     | 4.5%    | 4.5%    |
| Capital investment programme during Planning Period (Rm)              | R 7,184 | R 7,184 |
| External Loan Financing during Planning Period (Rm)                   | R 0     | R 0     |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents at the end of the Planning Period (Rm)      | R 1,826 | R 1,557 |
| No of Months Cash Cover at the end of the Planning Period (Rm)        | 2.2     | 1.8     |
| Liquidity Ratio at the end of the Planning Period                     | 1.1 : 1 | 1 : 1   |
| Gearing at the end of the Planning Period                             | 0.0%    | 0.0%    |
| Debt Service to Total Expense Ratio at the end of the Planning Period | 0.0%    | 0.0%    |

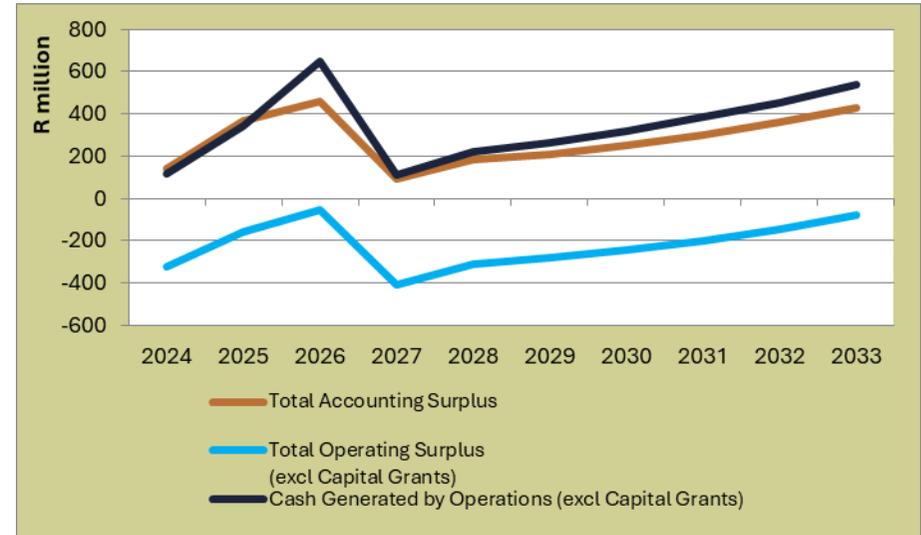
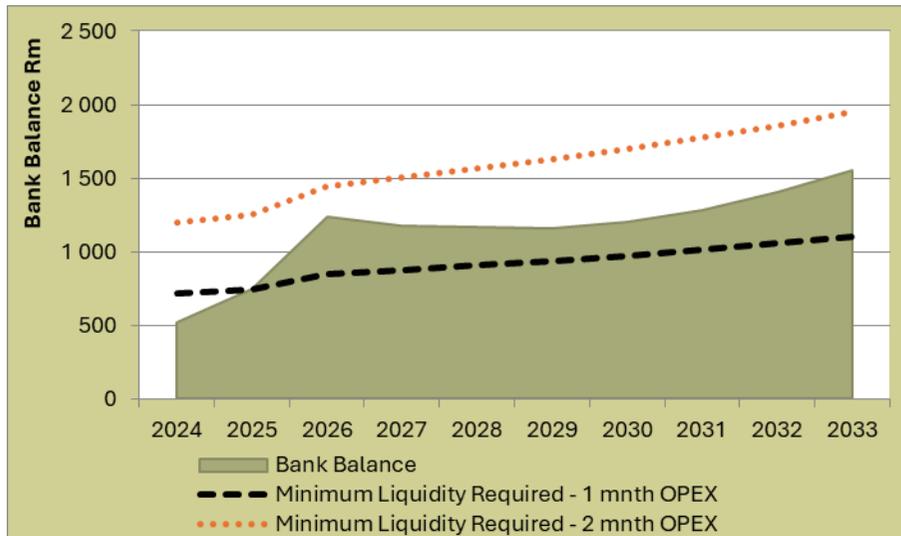
Table 20: Outcomes of Unchanged Distribution Losses

Scenario 3: Water Restrictions

Base Case



### Unchanged Distribution Losses





1 Planning Process

2 Updated Perspectives (Demographic, Economic, Household Infrastructure)

3 Updated Historic Financial Assessment

4 Long Term Financial Model Outcomes

5 Future Revenues

6 Affordable Future Capital Investment

7 Scenario Analysis

8 Ratio Analysis

9 Conclusions

## Forecast Ratios

The Base Case forecast ratios are presented below. Although the model is not programmed to measure the ratios as required by National Treasury in all instances, it does provide comfort that the municipality is sustainable in future – on condition that it operates within the assumed benchmarks set in the financial plan.

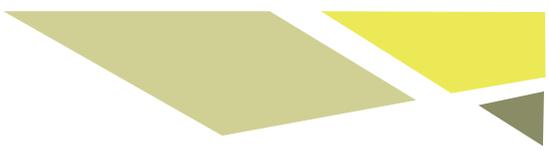
Table 21: Outcome of Future Ratio Analysis

|                             |  | N.T.<br>NORM | 2024   | 2026   | 2028   | 2030   | 2032   | 2033   | Comments   |
|-----------------------------|--|--------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--|
| <b>FINANCIAL POSITION</b>   |  |              |        |        |        |        |        |        |  |
| <b>ASSET MANAGEMENT</b>     |  |              |        |        |        |        |        |        |  |
| R29                         | Capital Expenditure / Total Expenditure    | 10% - 20%    | 7.4%   | 6.5%   | 6.6%   | 6.7%   | 6.8%   | 6.9%   | Capex as a % of Total Expenditure is expected end at a low 6.9% as capex will remain predominantly funded by capital grants.   |
| <b>DEBTORS MANAGEMENT</b>   |  |              |        |        |        |        |        |        |  |
| R4                          | Gross Consumer Debtors Growth              |              | 5.2%   | 6.1%   | 3.8%   | 3.9%   | 4.2%   | 4.3%   | The target collection rate is assumed progressively reach 85% and maintain it at the very least.   |
| R5                          | Payment Ratio / Collection Rate            | 95 %         | 80.4%  | 82.7%  | 85.0%  | 85.0%  | 85.0%  | 85.0%  |  |
| <b>LIQUIDITY MANAGEMENT</b> |  |              |        |        |        |        |        |        |  |
| R49                         | Cash Coverage Ratio (excl Working Capital) |              | 2.3: 1 | 5.1: 1 | 5: 1   | 5.3: 1 | 6.5: 1 | 7.3: 1 | The bank balance is expected to meet the minimum liquidity requirements from FY2025. The liquidity ratio is expected to improve to 1.1:1 at the end of the planning period. Although this still falls below the NT |
| R50                         | Cash Coverage Ratio (incl Working Capital) |              | 0.7: 1 | 1.5: 1 | 1.3: 1 | 1.3: 1 | 1.5: 1 | 1.6: 1 |  |

|                              |  |              |            |           |           |           |           |           |  |
|------------------------------|--|--------------|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--|
| R51                          | Cash Surplus / Shortfall on Minimum Liquidity Requirements             |              | -R 196.4 m | R 402.3 m | R 307.6 m | R 334.8 m | R 546.4 m | R 718.7 m | norm of at least 1.5:1, it indicates the ability for Rustenburg to meet its short-term obligations.  |
| R1                           | Liquidity Ratio (Current Assets: Current Liabilities)                  | 1.5 - 2.0: 1 | 0.5: 1     | 0.9: 1    | 0.8: 1    | 0.9: 1    | 1: 1      | 1.1: 1    |  |
| <b>LIABILITY MANAGEMENT</b>  |  |              |            |           |           |           |           |           |  |
| R45                          | Debt Service as % of Total Operating Expenditure                       | 6% - 8%      | 1.0%       | 0.7%      | 0.6%      | 0.2%      | 0.0%      | 0.0%      | The gearing and debt service to operating expenditure ratios are projected to reach zero at the end of the planning period. This is a result of not accessing any external borrowings due to issues such as historically low liquidity and unfavorable audit opinions                          |
| R6                           | Total Debt (Borrowings) / Operating Revenue                            | 45 %         | 3.5%       | 1.8%      | 0.8%      | 0.0%      | 0.0%      | 0.0%      |  |
| R7                           | Repayment Capacity Ratio   |              | 0.44       | 0.14      | 0.10      | 0.00      | 0.00      | 0.00      |  |
| R46                          | Debt Service Cover Ratio (Cash Generated by Operations / Debt Service) |              | 7.9: 1     | 19.7: 1   | 12.3: 1   | 42.9: 1   | 0.00      | 0.00      |  |
| <b>SUSTAINABILITY</b>        |  |              |            |           |           |           |           |           |  |
|                              | Net Financial Liabilities Ratio  | < 60%        | 16.5%      | 7.1%      | 7.0%      | 5.5%      | 3.3%      | 1.7%      | Operational deficits are posted throughout the planning period, but the deficits are continuously decreasing. Asset Sustainability is not calculated but entered as an assumption in the model. The municipality must ensure that a greater proportion of capex is spent on asset replacement. |
|                              | Operating Surplus Ratio  | 0% - 10%     | -4.6%      | -0.5%     | -3.1%     | -2.0%     | -0.8%     | -0.2%     |  |
|                              | Asset Sustainability Ratio   | > 90%        | 19.2%      | 16.6%     | 17.6%     | 18.6%     | 19.8%     | 20.4%     |  |
| <b>FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE</b> |  |              |            |           |           |           |           |           |  |
| <b>EFFICIENCY</b>            |  |              |            |           |           |           |           |           |  |

|                               |  |           |          |             |           |           |           |           |  |
|-------------------------------|--|-----------|----------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--|
| R42                           | Net Operating Surplus / Total Operating Revenue                                | >= 0%     | -4.6%    | -0.5%       | -3.1%     | -2.0%     | -0.8%     | -0.2%     | The ratio Net Operating Surplus / Total Operating Revenue is negative throughout the planning period but is improving over time. Surplus margins on electricity sales are forecast to remain stable, though in reality might decline.  |
| R43                           | Electricity Surplus / Total Electricity Revenue                                | 0% - 15%  | 4.5%     | 3.9%        | 5.1%      | 5.2%      | 5.3%      | 5.3%      |  |
| <b>REVENUE MANAGEMENT</b>     |  |           |          |             |           |           |           |           |  |
| R8                            | Increase in Billed Income p.a. (R'm)   |           | R 89.7 m | R 1,196.2 m | R 294.7 m | R 339.5 m | R 409.9 m | R 446.1 m | Revenue growth is positive over the planning period due to an increase in quantities of services sold as well as moderate increase in tariffs. Deteriorating ability of households to pay rates and service charges may have an adverse effect on the cash generating ability of the municipality.<br><br>Overall revenue management is set to be healthy, provided that the collection rate improves. |
| R9                            | % Increase in Billed Income p.a..  | CPI       | 1.8%     | 22.1%       | 4.2%      | 4.5%      | 4.9%      | 5.1%      |  |
| R12                           | Operating Revenue Growth %   | CPI       | 8.3%     | 18.6%       | 5.0%      | 5.3%      | 5.9%      | 6.1%      |  |
| R47                           | Cash Generated by Operations / Own Revenue                                     |           | 10.2%    | 16.0%       | 9.7%      | 10.3%     | 11.2%     | 11.7%     |  |
| R48                           | Cash Generated by Operations / Total Operating Revenue                         |           | 8.3%     | 13.2%       | 7.8%      | 8.2%      | 8.8%      | 9.1%      |  |
| <b>EXPENDITURE MANAGEMENT</b> |  |           |          |             |           |           |           |           |  |
|                               | Creditors Payment Period   | 30        | -        | 782         | 900       | 722       | 564       | 501       | Creditors' payment period is higher than the NT benchmark of 30 days throughout the planning period. excess cash can be utilised to repay cash in order to improve the days. Employee related costs are well below the NT maximum. Contracted services exceed the NT norms, which is expected due to the RRT   |
| R30                           | Contribution per Expenditure Item: Staff Cost (Salaries, Wages and Allowances) | 25% - 40% | 12.6%    | 11.4%       | 12.0%     | 12.4%     | 12.9%     | 13.2%     |  |
|                               | Contribution per Expenditure Item: Contracted Services                         | 2% - 5%   | 11.9%    | 9.2%        | 10.1%     | 10.9%     | 11.7%     | 12.1%     |  |

|                         |   |  |       |       |       |       |       |       |   |
|-------------------------|---|--|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|---|
| R31                     | Contribution per Expenditure Item: Electricity Services |  | 39.2% | 47.0% | 46.9% | 45.6% | 44.4% | 43.8% | project   |
| <b>GRANT DEPENDENCY</b> |   |  |       |       |       |       |       |       |   |
| R10                     | Total Grants / Total Revenue                            |  | 23.6% | 22.0% | 23.4% | 24.1% | 24.9% | 25.3% | The tightening of the national fiscus will require of municipalities to lower its dependence on transfers from other spheres of government. |
| R11                     | Own Source Revenue to Total Operating Revenue           |  | 81.4% | 82.5% | 80.7% | 79.5% | 78.4% | 77.8% |   |
|                         | Capital Grants to Total Capital Expenditure             |  | 78.6% | 82.6% | 72.7% | 64.8% | 59.0% | 56.4% |   |



|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | Planning Process   |
| 2 | Updated Perspectives (Demographic, Economic, Household Infrastructure) |
| 3 | Updated Historic Financial Assessment                                  |
| 4 | Long Term Financial Model Outcomes                                     |
| 5 | Future Revenues  |
| 6 | Affordable Future Capital Investment                                   |
| 7 | Scenario Analysis  |
| 8 | Ratio Analysis   |
| 9 | Conclusions  |



## Conclusion

### Outcome of the Independent Financial Assessment

Rustenburg's financial performance improved in FY2023 as the municipality posted an accounting surplus of R146.8 million after posting accounting deficits in the two preceding financial years. Should capital grants be excluded from total revenue, this figure decreases to an operating deficit of R503.8 million. Although this is yet another operating deficit posted by the municipality, a positive takeaway is that it is an improvement from the operating deficit of R640.1 million posted in FY2022. These are welcome improvement as surpluses had been declining for two consecutive periods. It will take immense efforts from the municipality to post operating surpluses due to the current economic circumstances. Factors such rising fuel costs, steep inflation rate since Covid-19 and interest rate hikes are likely to drive up the municipality's input costs.

Cash utilised by operations increased from R35.3 million in FY2022 to R209.2 million in FY2023. This deterioration in cash generation can be attributed to the collection rate which declined to 79% in FY2023. The cash utilisation would be a worse picture if Rustenburg repaid its creditors. The creditors' payment period currently sits at 78 days – significantly higher than the NT benchmark of 30 days. It must be noted, though, that the repayment period has decreased for the third consecutive period.

Staff Costs as a percentage of total operating expenditure have consistently been below the NT maximum level of 40% over the past 8 years. Contracted services as a percentage of total operating expenditure currently sit at 5%, which is at the upper ends of the NT benchmark of 3% to 5%. This ratio is expected to increase further as more work will be outsourced to fill the operational needs of RRT.

The annual expenditure for repairs and maintenance amounted to 2% of property, plant and equipment and investment property. This has averaged just 1% over the review period, which is below the NT norm of 8%. This indicates insufficient money being spent on repairs and maintenance, which increases the assets' exposure to impairment.

CAPEX significantly increased by 53% in FY2023, to R315.0 million in FY2023. This was solely funded by capital grants consistent with the capital grants being the main source of funding over the review period. The municipality has not managed to implement its capital budget over the past 8 years, with the ratio of capital expenditure as a percentage of budgeted capital expenditure averaging 72%. This ratio stood at a low 50% in FY2023, below the NT recommended minimum of 95%. This low budget implementation together with the contracted services being on the upper limits of the recommended norm is indicative of capacity constraints in the municipality, rather than discrepancies in planning. Rustenburg's CAPEX amounted to 4% of total expenditure, which was below the NT norm of at least 10%.



The lack of borrowing over recent years has translated in decreases in the gearing ratio and debt to operating expense ratio, currently reported at 4.0% and 1.1%, respectively. These were both below the NT minimum norms. The debt service cover ratio indicates a municipality without the capacity to undertake additional debt with a ratio of -2.65 in FY2023 due to poor cash generation.

The liquidity position as indicated by the ratio of current assets to current liabilities of 0.72:1, as at FYE2023, remains weak and well below the NT benchmark of 1.5:1. This ratio excluding the least liquid debtors – debtors greater than 30 days – remains at 0.72:1 as the predominant contributor to current assets is cash and cash equivalents. Both these ratios indicate that the municipality does not hold sufficient liquid assets to meet short-term financial obligations.

Net debtor days improved from 22 days as at FY2022 to 15 days as at FY2023. This remained below the NT norm of 30 days and suggests that the municipality has sound credit management. However, the discovery that debtors older than 90 days constitute 89% of gross debtors indicates otherwise. This, together with the low collection rate emphasizes the need to improve the management policy. Provision for bad debts as a percentage of debtors older than 90 days amounted to more than 100%. This provided sufficient cover for debtors who are largely considered at a high risk of defaulting.

#### Strengths

Improved financial performance in FY2023.

Decreasing creditor days.

Low gearing and debt service ratio

#### Weaknesses

Low collection rate

Poor liquidity and cash generation

Low implementation ratio of capital budget.

Reduced spending on repair and maintenance of infrastructure.

Low margins on main service (electricity)

Increasing trend in water losses

## Outcome of the Future Forecasts

The MTREF Case forecasts the financial outcome if the municipality continues its current trajectory. In this case, financial performance is expected to continuously decline as both accounting and operating deficits would be posted at the end of the planning period. With the low collection rate of 79%, cash generation would continue to be an issue. As a consequence of poor cash generation, the cash balance would decline, and the capital expenditure programme would suffer from cash shortfalls. The overall result is a financially unsustainable municipality at the end of the 10-year planning period.

To rectify this, a Base Case was modelled with assumptions that need to be implemented in order to achieve financial sustainability. The impact of Covid-19, subsequent sluggish economic recovery and implications of the country's response was included in the determination of the base case.

The Base Case presents a financially sustainable outcome. Profitability is forecast to improve as the average 6.0% p.a. increase in nominal revenue is higher than the average 5.8% p.a. increase in operating expenditure. Although no operating surplus is posted at any period over the 10 years, there is an evident uptrend in operating profitability which will result in an operating surplus in the years beyond the planning period. Cash generated by operations is expected to amount to R3.7 billion over the duration of the planning period. This is expected to translate into a planning period end bank balance of R1.8 billion, which contributes to a healthy liquidity position as evidenced by a liquidity ratio of 1.1:1 as at FYE2033. This liquidity position is not yet at the NT norm of at least 1.5:1 but it is an improvement from the 0.79:1 recorded as at FYE2023, and it indicates the municipality's ability to meet its short-term obligation. The healthy liquidity position as well as adjustments made to the capital funding mix, has unlocked an acceleration in the capital investment programme for a total capital outlay of R7.2 billion over the planning period.

A few additional scenarios were run to assess the impact of improvements/regressions to certain metrics, as well as the impact of alternative strategic decisions. The outcomes thereof are summarised below.

### Collection rate sensitivity to movements of 2%.

A decrease of 2% in the collection rate has a negative impact in the liquidity position of the municipality. The liquidity ratio decreases to 0.2:1 at the end of the planning period, with the bank balance not meeting minimum liquidity requirements in nine out of the ten planning periods. This decrease in the collection rate is forecast to decrease the bank balance at the end of the planning period by R1.8 billion, leaving Rustenburg with only R1 million in the bank account. With less cash to supplement capital expenditure, the capital expenditure programme is set to suffer a R618 million setback.

An improvement in the collection rate of 2% on the other hand has positive effects and the minimum liquidity requirements including 2 months' operating expenditure is forecast to be covered throughout the planning period. Additionally, the liquidity ratio is forecast to improve to 2.1:1, which is above the minimum NT norm. The cash balance at the end of the planning period increases by 100%. This excess cash can be utilized to further supplement capital expenditure, condensing the gap between capital demand and capital affordability.

This highlights directly proportional nature of the relationship between collection rate and cash generation.

Operating expenditure increase by 3%.

Increases in total operating expenditure of 3% annually has a widespread negative impact on the municipality. The average increases in operating expenditure (6.0%) are set to marginally exceed the average increases in operating income (5.9%), which will place immense pressure on the municipality's profitability. The liquidity ratio declines to 0.1:1 at the end of the planning period. The liquidity position deteriorates even further as the cash balance at the end of the period is R2.6 billion less than that of the Base Case, reflecting a cash overdraft of R775 million which is not permitted. The municipality is forecast to fail to meet minimum liquidity requirements including 1 months' operational expenditure as throughout the planning period. Due to the lack of cash, the capital programme suffers a R1.4 billion setback.

This highlights the importance of maintaining budgeted levels of operational expenditure and the effect that unexpected and unplanned expenses can have on the liquidity of the municipality.

Unchanged Distribution Losses

The distribution losses were left unchanged to demonstrate the financial impact of not addressing these losses. The water losses were adjusted back to 52% as reported in the audited 2022/23 financial statements. This resulted in a marginal decline in the liquidity from 1.1:1 to 1:1. The cash balance at the end of planning period decreases by R269 million, compared to that of the Base Case. Throughout the planning period, the municipality is forecast to still meet minimum liquidity requirements including 1 months' Opex.

The impact is not as drastic as other scenarios explored but it does highlight that one major revenue item can have a sizable effect on the cash balance.

## ANNEXURE 1: PROJECTED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

**Municipal Financial Model**  
**Statement of Financial Position**

| Model year  | 1                  | 2                 | 3                 | 4                 | 5                 | 6                 | 7                 | 8                 | 9                 | 10                |
|---|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Financial year (30 June)                              | <u>2024</u>        | <u>2025</u>       | <u>2026</u>       | <u>2027</u>       | <u>2028</u>       | <u>2029</u>       | <u>2030</u>       | <u>2031</u>       | <u>2032</u>       | <u>2033</u>       |
|   | <i>R thousands</i> |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |
| <b>Non-current assets:</b>                            | 9,329,118          | 9,477,150         | 9,644,389         | 9,799,088         | 9,977,148         | 10,180,941        | 10,412,791        | 10,674,989        | 10,969,817        | 11,299,561        |
| Property, plant and equipment                         | 8,955,649          | 9,088,585         | 9,237,579         | 9,392,139         | 9,570,018         | 9,773,594         | 10,005,196        | 10,267,114        | 10,561,629        | 10,891,032        |
| Intangible assets                                     | 2,920              | 2,374             | 2,374             | 2,513             | 2,695             | 2,910             | 3,159             | 3,440             | 3,752             | 4,093             |
| Investment properties                                 | 369,521            | 386,058           | 404,301           | 404,301           | 404,301           | 404,301           | 404,301           | 404,301           | 404,301           | 404,301           |
| Investments   | 999                | 101               | 101               | 101               | 101               | 101               | 101               | 101               | 101               | 101               |
| Long-term receivables                                 | -                  | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 |
| Other non-current assets                              | 29                 | 32                | 34                | 34                | 34                | 34                | 34                | 34                | 34                | 34                |
| <b>Current assets:</b>                                | 818,810            | 1,046,650         | 1,552,503         | 1,505,343         | 1,521,897         | 1,541,738         | 1,620,610         | 1,749,627         | 1,919,648         | 2,141,396         |
| Inventories   | 37,816             | 37,247            | 38,571            | 40,451            | 42,517            | 44,830            | 47,416            | 50,277            | 53,416            | 56,846            |
| Trade and other receivables                           | 258,102            | 258,102           | 258,102           | 258,102           | 258,102           | 258,102           | 258,102           | 258,102           | 258,102           | 258,102           |
| Cash & Short term investments                         | 522,892            | 751,301           | 1,255,830         | 1,206,790         | 1,221,278         | 1,238,806         | 1,315,092         | 1,441,248         | 1,608,130         | 1,826,448         |
| <b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>                                   | <b>10,147,927</b>  | <b>10,523,800</b> | <b>11,196,892</b> | <b>11,304,431</b> | <b>11,499,045</b> | <b>11,722,679</b> | <b>12,033,401</b> | <b>12,424,616</b> | <b>12,889,465</b> | <b>13,440,957</b> |
| <b>Municipal Funds:</b>                               | 8,168,972          | 8,543,631         | 9,014,568         | 9,121,547         | 9,324,171         | 9,560,442         | 9,843,072         | 10,183,241        | 10,592,859        | 11,085,131        |
| Housing development fund & Other Cash Backed Reserves | -                  | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 |
| Reserves (Not Cash Backed)                            | 204,588            | 885,909           | 1,375,950         | 1,375,950         | 1,375,950         | 1,375,950         | 1,375,950         | 1,375,950         | 1,375,950         | 1,375,950         |
| Accumulated surplus                                   | 7,964,384          | 7,657,722         | 7,638,618         | 7,745,597         | 7,948,221         | 8,184,492         | 8,467,122         | 8,807,291         | 9,216,909         | 9,709,181         |
| <b>Non-current liabilities:</b>                       | 438,718            | 403,923           | 365,288           | 331,894           | 298,304           | 302,832           | 328,691           | 357,909           | 390,358           | 425,826           |
| Long-term liabilities (Interest Bearing)              | 201,296            | 161,753           | 118,274           | 70,468            | 17,904            | (0)               | (0)               | (0)               | (0)               | (0)               |
| Non-current provisions                                | 237,422            | 242,171           | 247,014           | 261,426           | 280,400           | 302,832           | 328,691           | 357,909           | 390,358           | 425,826           |
| <b>Current liabilities:</b>                           | 1,540,237          | 1,576,246         | 1,817,036         | 1,850,990         | 1,876,571         | 1,859,405         | 1,861,638         | 1,883,466         | 1,906,248         | 1,930,000         |
| Consumer deposits                                     | 76,202             | 86,041            | 96,198            | 106,742           | 115,781           | 125,270           | 135,563           | 146,696           | 158,771           | 172,180           |
| Provisions  | 190,862            | 198,497           | 206,437           | 206,437           | 206,437           | 206,437           | 206,437           | 206,437           | 206,437           | 206,437           |
| Trade and other payables                              | 1,230,935          | 1,252,165         | 1,470,922         | 1,490,005         | 1,501,789         | 1,509,794         | 1,519,638         | 1,530,334         | 1,541,040         | 1,551,384         |
| Bank overdraft  | -                  | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 |
| Current portion of interest bearing liabilities       | 42,238             | 39,543            | 43,479            | 47,806            | 52,564            | 17,904            | (0)               | -                 | -                 | -                 |
| <b>TOTAL MUNICIPAL FUNDS AND LIABILITIES</b>          | <b>10,147,927</b>  | <b>10,523,800</b> | <b>11,196,892</b> | <b>11,304,431</b> | <b>11,499,045</b> | <b>11,722,679</b> | <b>12,033,401</b> | <b>12,424,616</b> | <b>12,889,465</b> | <b>13,440,957</b> |

**Municipal Financial Model**

**Statement of Financial Performance**

| Model year                                 | 1                | 2                | 3                | 4                | 5                | 6                 | 7                 | 8                 | 9                 | 10                |
|--|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Financial year (30 June)                   | <u>2024</u>      | <u>2025</u>      | <u>2026</u>      | <u>2027</u>      | <u>2028</u>      | <u>2029</u>       | <u>2030</u>       | <u>2031</u>       | <u>2032</u>       | <u>2033</u>       |
| <i>R thousands</i>                         |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |
| <b>Revenue</b>                             |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |
| Property rates                             | 515,895          | 558,617          | 606,053          | 657,549          | 715,339          | 782,392           | 859,220           | 946,292           | 1,044,023         | 1,152,693         |
| Service Charges                            | 4,458,345        | 4,845,557        | 5,993,570        | 6,304,595        | 6,540,030        | 6,773,963         | 7,034,797         | 7,320,784         | 7,630,725         | 7,965,736         |
| Service charges - electricity              | 3,258,510        | 3,581,885        | 4,670,985        | 4,920,609        | 5,093,925        | 5,258,735         | 5,442,659         | 5,644,021         | 5,861,588         | 6,096,172         |
| Service charges - water                    | 594,181          | 624,882          | 651,282          | 677,883          | 706,299          | 738,006           | 773,387           | 812,420           | 855,122           | 901,457           |
| Service charges - sanitation               | 431,705          | 452,857          | 472,703          | 493,098          | 510,039          | 528,795           | 549,521           | 572,058           | 596,291           | 622,308           |
| Service charges - refuse                   | 173,949          | 185,933          | 198,600          | 213,005          | 229,767          | 248,427           | 269,229           | 292,284           | 317,724           | 345,799           |
| Service charges - other                    | 0                | (0)              | (0)              | (0)              | (0)              | (0)               | (0)               | (0)               | (0)               | (0)               |
| Rental of facilities and equipment         | 14,021           | 16,589           | 17,352           | 18,540           | 19,998           | 21,623            | 23,433            | 25,440            | 27,654            | 30,098            |
| Interest earned - external investments     | 41,648           | 26,207           | 32,394           | 59,158           | 60,966           | 65,171            | 68,950            | 75,514            | 84,558            | 95,560            |
| Interest earned - outstanding debtors      | 527,919          | 498,477          | 534,681          | 20,432           | 22,383           | 24,261            | 26,147            | 28,031            | 29,899            | 31,741            |
| Dividends received                         | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 |
| Fines, penalties and forfeits              | 9,587            | 10,028           | 10,490           | 11,208           | 12,090           | 13,072            | 14,166            | 15,379            | 16,718            | 18,195            |
| Licences and permits                       | 12,130           | 12,681           | 13,265           | 14,024           | 15,185           | 16,555            | 18,139            | 19,938            | 21,951            | 24,172            |
| Agency services                            | 108,282          | 99,584           | 105,130          | 112,326          | 121,165          | 131,006           | 141,976           | 154,133           | 167,549           | 182,354           |
| Transfers and subsidies (operating)        | 1,304,905        | 1,406,076        | 1,553,296        | 1,675,936        | 1,807,309        | 1,953,562         | 2,116,469         | 2,296,866         | 2,495,735         | 2,714,871         |
| Other revenue                              | 20,599           | 21,778           | 22,976           | 24,549           | 26,480           | 28,631            | 31,028            | 33,686            | 36,617            | 39,853            |
| Gain on disposal of PPE                    | 7,088            | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 |
| Revaluation of assets gain / (loss)        | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 |
| <b>Total revenue before Capital Grants</b> | <b>7,020,419</b> | <b>7,495,596</b> | <b>8,889,207</b> | <b>8,898,317</b> | <b>9,340,945</b> | <b>9,810,236</b>  | <b>10,334,325</b> | <b>10,916,064</b> | <b>11,555,430</b> | <b>12,255,273</b> |
| Capital Grants                             | 464,452          | 528,205          | 512,007          | 500,265          | 493,511          | 491,878           | 494,132           | 498,967           | 505,266           | 512,172           |
| Public & developers contributions          | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 |
| <b>Total Revenue after Capital Grants</b>  | <b>7,484,871</b> | <b>8,023,801</b> | <b>9,401,214</b> | <b>9,398,582</b> | <b>9,834,457</b> | <b>10,302,115</b> | <b>10,828,457</b> | <b>11,415,031</b> | <b>12,060,696</b> | <b>12,767,445</b> |
| <b>Operating expenditure</b>               |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |
| Employee related costs                     | 929,095          | 969,531          | 1,013,220        | 1,076,138        | 1,146,632        | 1,225,005         | 1,311,545         | 1,406,510         | 1,510,108         | 1,622,474         |
| Remuneration of councillors                | 71,890           | 74,855           | 77,954           | 81,625           | 85,748           | 90,323            | 95,349            | 100,822           | 106,736           | 113,077           |
| Debt impairment                            | 997,876          | 1,019,733        | 1,165,422        | 1,149,424        | 1,115,051        | 1,162,385         | 1,215,476         | 1,274,147         | 1,338,292         | 1,408,149         |
| Depreciation and asset impairment          | 466,991          | 467,064          | 471,006          | 485,440          | 500,522          | 515,527           | 530,649           | 546,067           | 561,949           | 578,449           |
| Finance charges                            | 28,548           | 24,168           | 20,055           | 16,120           | 11,792           | 7,034             | 1,803             | -                 | -                 | -                 |
| Bulk purchases                             | 3,111,585        | 3,441,892        | 4,487,009        | 4,668,855        | 4,831,778        | 4,986,531         | 5,159,304         | 5,348,492         | 5,552,911         | 5,773,315         |
| Inventory Consumed                         | 456,714          | 453,439          | 466,309          | 481,232          | 498,677          | 518,480           | 540,862           | 565,754           | 593,107           | 622,844           |
| Repairs and maintenance                    | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 |
| Contracted services                        | 940,211          | 866,706          | 883,282          | 962,677          | 1,046,181        | 1,137,012         | 1,236,134         | 1,344,053         | 1,461,369         | 1,589,086         |
| Transfers and subsidies                    | 21,164           | 22,088           | 23,104           | 24,711           | 26,405           | 28,280            | 30,361            | 32,652            | 35,162            | 37,911            |
| Other expenditure                          | 319,065          | 309,667          | 322,916          | 345,381          | 369,046          | 395,265           | 424,344           | 456,365           | 491,445           | 529,869           |
| Loss on disposal of PPE                    | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 | -                 |
| <b>Total Expenditure</b>                   | <b>7,343,140</b> | <b>7,649,142</b> | <b>8,930,277</b> | <b>9,291,603</b> | <b>9,631,832</b> | <b>10,065,843</b> | <b>10,545,827</b> | <b>11,074,862</b> | <b>11,651,078</b> | <b>12,275,173</b> |
| <b>Suplus/ (Shortfall) for the year</b>    | <b>141,731</b>   | <b>374,659</b>   | <b>470,938</b>   | <b>106,978</b>   | <b>202,624</b>   | <b>236,271</b>    | <b>282,630</b>    | <b>340,169</b>    | <b>409,618</b>    | <b>492,272</b>    |

## Municipal Financial Model

### Cash Flow Statement

Model year

Financial year (30 June)

R thousands

#### Cash flows from Operating Activities

#### Suplus/Deficit for the year including Capital Grants

Suplus/Deficit for the year excluding Capital Grants & Contributions

Capital Grants & Contributions

#### Adjustments for non-cash items:

Depreciation, amortisation and impairment loss

Revaluation on investment property (gain) / loss

Increase / (Release from) current provisions & non-interest bearing liabilities

Increase / (Release from) other non-current provisions & non-interest bearing liabilities

(Increase) / Release from non-current interest bearing assets

Capitalised interest

#### Operating surplus before working capital changes:

#### Change in W/C Investment

(Increase)/decrease in inventories

(Increase)/decrease accounts receivable

Increase/(decrease) in trade payables

#### Net cash flow from Operating activities

#### Cash flows from Investing Activities

Capital expenditure

Decrease/(Increase) in non-current receivables

(Additions) / Disposals of investment property

#### Net cash flow from Investing activities

#### Cash flows from Financing Activities

New loans raised

Loans repaid

(Decrease) / Increase in consumer deposits

#### Net cash flow from Financing activities

Change in Cash

Cash/(Overdraft), Beginning

Cash/(Overdraft), Ending

|   | 1              | 2              | 3                | 4                | 5                | 6                | 7                | 8                | 9                | 10               |
|---|----------------|----------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
|   | <u>2024</u>    | <u>2025</u>    | <u>2026</u>      | <u>2027</u>      | <u>2028</u>      | <u>2029</u>      | <u>2030</u>      | <u>2031</u>      | <u>2032</u>      | <u>2033</u>      |
| <b>Suplus/Deficit for the year including Capital Grants</b>                               | 141,731        | 374,659        | 470,938          | 106,978          | 202,624          | 236,271          | 282,630          | 340,169          | 409,618          | 492,272          |
| Suplus/Deficit for the year excluding Capital Grants & Contributions                      | (322,721)      | (153,546)      | (41,069)         | (393,287)        | (290,887)        | (255,607)        | (211,502)        | (158,798)        | (95,648)         | (19,900)         |
| Capital Grants & Contributions  | 464,452        | 528,205        | 512,007          | 500,265          | 493,511          | 491,878          | 494,132          | 498,967          | 505,266          | 512,172          |
| <b>Adjustments for non-cash items:</b>  |                |                |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |
| Depreciation, amortisation and impairment loss  | 466,991        | 467,064        | 471,006          | 485,440          | 500,522          | 515,527          | 530,649          | 546,067          | 561,949          | 578,449          |
| Revaluation on investment property (gain) / loss  | -              | -              | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                |
| Increase / (Release from) current provisions & non-interest bearing liabilities           | 1,187          | 7,634          | 7,940            | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                |
| Increase / (Release from) other non-current provisions & non-interest bearing liabilities | 4,655          | 4,748          | 4,843            | 14,412           | 18,974           | 22,432           | 25,858           | 29,218           | 32,449           | 35,468           |
| (Increase) / Release from non-current interest bearing assets                             | (225)          | 898            | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                |
| Capitalised interest  | -              | -              | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                |
| <b>Operating surplus before working capital changes:</b>                                  | 614,340        | 855,004        | 954,727          | 606,830          | 722,120          | 774,230          | 839,138          | 915,454          | 1,004,016        | 1,106,189        |
| <b>Change in W/C Investment</b>   | (32,827)       | 21,799         | 217,432          | 17,204           | 9,717            | 5,693            | 7,258            | 7,836            | 7,567            | 6,913            |
| (Increase)/decrease in inventories  | 9,393          | 570            | (1,325)          | (1,880)          | (2,067)          | (2,313)          | (2,586)          | (2,861)          | (3,140)          | (3,430)          |
| (Increase)/decrease accounts receivable   | 6,012          | (0)            | 0                | 0                | (0)              | (0)              | 0                | 0                | (0)              | (0)              |
| Increase/(decrease) in trade payables   | (48,232)       | 21,230         | 218,757          | 19,083           | 11,784           | 8,006            | 9,843            | 10,696           | 10,706           | 10,343           |
| <b>Net cash flow from Operating activities</b>  | 581,512        | 876,803        | 1,172,159        | 624,034          | 731,837          | 779,923          | 846,396          | 923,290          | 1,011,583        | 1,113,102        |
| <b>Cash flows from Investing Activities</b>   |                |                |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |
| Capital expenditure   | (591,025)      | (599,454)      | (620,000)        | (640,139)        | (678,582)        | (719,320)        | (762,499)        | (808,266)        | (856,776)        | (908,193)        |
| Decrease/(Increase) in non-current receivables  | 1,345          | (3)            | (2)              | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                |
| (Additions) / Disposals of investment property  | (267,692)      | (16,537)       | (18,243)         | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                |
| <b>Net cash flow from Investing activities</b>  | (857,372)      | (615,994)      | (638,245)        | (640,139)        | (678,582)        | (719,320)        | (762,499)        | (808,266)        | (856,776)        | (908,193)        |
| <b>Cash flows from Financing Activities</b>   |                |                |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |
| New loans raised  | -              | -              | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                | -                |
| Loans repaid  | (45,421)       | (42,238)       | (39,543)         | (43,479)         | (47,806)         | (52,564)         | (17,904)         | 0                | -                | -                |
| (Decrease) / Increase in consumer deposits  | 12,133         | 9,839          | 10,158           | 10,544           | 9,039            | 9,489            | 10,293           | 11,132           | 12,076           | 13,409           |
| <b>Net cash flow from Financing activities</b>  | (33,288)       | (32,399)       | (29,386)         | (32,935)         | (38,767)         | (43,075)         | (7,611)          | 11,132           | 12,076           | 13,409           |
| <b>Change in Cash</b>   | (309,147)      | 228,410        | 504,528          | (49,039)         | 14,487           | 17,528           | 76,286           | 126,156          | 166,882          | 218,318          |
| Cash/(Overdraft), Beginning   | 832,039        | 522,892        | 751,301          | 1,255,830        | 1,206,790        | 1,221,278        | 1,238,806        | 1,315,092        | 1,441,248        | 1,608,130        |
| <b>Cash/(Overdraft), Ending</b>   | <b>522,892</b> | <b>751,301</b> | <b>1,255,830</b> | <b>1,206,790</b> | <b>1,221,278</b> | <b>1,238,806</b> | <b>1,315,092</b> | <b>1,441,248</b> | <b>1,608,130</b> | <b>1,826,448</b> |

## CHAPTER 7: ORGANISATIONAL PERFORMANCE DEVELOPMENT AND MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

### 1. Introduction

Integrated Development Planning enables the achievement of the planning stage of performance management. Performance management fulfils the implementation, management, monitoring, and evaluation of the Integrated Development Plan. The performance of an organisation is integrally linked to that of its staff. It is therefore vitally important for any municipality to periodically review its own performance as well as that of its employees.

Table 6-5: Definitions of Key Performance Management Concepts

| CONCEPT                             | DEFINITION   |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Performance Management              | <p>Are all those processes and systems designed to actively manage and develop performance at the level of individuals, teams, Departments and the entire organisation; to ensure that the strategy and vision of the organisation are achieved. Performance management therefore entails:</p> <p>The definition of the performance that is being managed (design)</p> <p>The process of performance management (implementation)</p>   |
| Performance Management System (PMS) | <p>A framework that describes and represents how the municipality's cycle of processes of performance planning, monitoring, measurement, review, reporting and improvement will be conducted, organised, and managed, including determining the roles of the different role-players.</p> <p>The method used by the Nelson Mandela Bay Municipality is the balanced scorecard method that takes into account financial, internal business, customer and learning and growth perspectives.</p> |
| Key Performance Areas (KPAs)        | Service domain that is crucial to achievement of organisational goals.   |
| Objective                           | Statement about the ultimate and long-term outcomes the organisation wishes to achieve.  |
| Key Performance Indicators (KPIs)   | Measures (qualitative and quantitative) that whether progress are being made towards achieving set objectives.   |
| Input indicators                    | An indicator that measures equipment, resources, economy, and efficiency.  |
| Output indicators                   | An indicator that measures results.  |
| Outcome indicators                  | An indicator that measures the impact of reaching the target.  |
| Impact indicator                    | Indicators that measure the marked effect or influence of achieving specific outcomes.   |
| Baseline                            | Quantitative and/or qualitative level of performance as at the beginning of the monitoring period that the institution aims to improve on. It is the initial step in setting performance targets in most instances would be the level of performance recorded in the year prior to the planning period.  |

| CONCEPT                         | DEFINITION   |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Performance targets             | Quantifiable levels of the indicators or milestones an individual or organization sets to achieve at a given point in time.  |
| Target dates                    | The deadline applied to the performance target.  |
| Performance plan                | Plan of agreed Key Performance Areas, Objectives, Key Performance Indicators and Targets covering a period of twelve months and assessed quarterly. makes up Annexure A of the performance agreement   |
| Annual performance review cycle | Continuous period of 12 months: 1 July to 30 June of the following year.   |
| Review                          | An assessment of employees, directorates, and the institution as a whole to monitor progress, resolve problems and adjust performance outputs, as part of the performance cycle. Within an evaluation cycle, four performance reviews/assessments will take place. |

## 2. Objectives of Performance Management

The objectives of the Municipal Wide Performance Management System aim to:

The most important objective of the performance management system is to ensure that the entire municipality in synchrony with a common vision and mission and that all the objectives and strategies of the municipality as contained in the IDP are achieved

The establishment of a framework for effective and regular performance feedback and reporting

To create management information that enables the municipality to take decisions with reference to other Human Resource processes, such as remuneration and training, for example

Ensure that the top Layer SDBIP is aligned to the IDP, and therefore, to political priorities

Develop an Implementation Plan that reflects tangible programmes, activities, and targets to achieve the priorities

Ensure effective linkage between planning and budgeting through SDBIP

Ensure that SDBIP form the basis of an effective organisational and employee performance management system

Develop a monitoring and evaluation system that guarantees performance management and reporting against performance

Install a performance-oriented culture across the municipality.

## 3. The Employee Performance Management System

Aims to accelerate work performance of individuals to a higher level and to develop the capacity and ability of the municipality to sustain performance by encouraging Individual accountability and responsibility for individual performance, as well as development

- Improve the organisational performance by enhancing and acknowledging individual exceptional performance

- Communicates the standards and performance expectation to each employee
- Serves as a vehicle for implementing the Municipality's objectives
- Clarify expectations of what individuals are required to achieve
- Develop the skills and competencies of individuals within the organisation
- Foster a sound working relationship between managers and employees through counselling and coaching; the provision of feedback
- Provide a tool for managers to manage the performance of their staff
- Allow employees to become more actively involved in managing their own performance
- To identify underperformance and to implement and justify the resultant corrective follow-up actions
- Reward employees whose performance exceeds the output criteria
- Install a performance-oriented culture throughout the organisation, at the level of employees
- Focus on the development of staff members
- Offer improved token of appreciation as part of motivation to reward excellent performance by individuals
- Strengthening the accountability of individuals and their ownership of their own development
- Improved communication within the work environment.

#### **4. Relationship between the IDP, Budget and PMS**

The IDP is a key strategic planning tool in which the municipality's five-year programmes and projects are set out. The IDP programmes and projects inform the municipality's budgeting processes. Performance management measures, IDP implementation and budget performance.

#### **Steps in Implementing the PMS**

The following steps need to be followed to ensure that the Performance Management System is effectively implemented:

##### **Step 1: Planning for Performance**

Planning involves the setting of key performance areas, indicators, targets, and objectives. Practically, this is done as follows:

##### **Note 1: Key Performance Areas (KPAs)**

KPAs are transferred directly from the IDP to the SDBIP, which then forms the basis for a PMS, e.g. basic service delivery

##### **Note 2: Objectives**

Objectives should be specific, outcome- and impact-focused and it should not be general statements, e.g. to ensure that all households in municipal demarcated areas have access to water

##### **Note 3: Key Performance Indicators (KPIs)**

The **SMART** principle should apply with regards to KPIs, which states that each indicator must be:

Specific:            Each KPI must be clear and concise

**Measurable:** A KPI should not be vague and general, but measurable, e.g. 'number,' '%' or specific targets time

**Achievable/Attainable:** A KPI should be within reach

**Realistic:** Can it be done taking into account constraints?

**Time bound:** Can it be achieved within a certain timeframe?

#### **Note 4: Performance Targets**

Performance targets should be realistic and measurable and should correspond with available resources and capacity

Note 5: Integration between 'organisational' and 'individual' performance management

The organisational scorecard emanates from the top layer SDBIP. These targets are then filtered through to the various directorates, which forms the basis for Section 57 performance contracts. From this level, the KPIs are further filtered down to units and section. The process is then cascaded down in the same manner to all levels

#### **Step 2: Monitoring Performance**

Monitoring as a management tool is the observation or verification of project activities to check if they are proceeding according to planning and whether resources are being used efficiently and effectively. A continuous flow of information is therefore key to enhance decision making which, among other things, requires data collection, verification of evidence and comparisons to be made. Monitoring produces results to be used for evaluation.

#### **Step 3: Measuring Performance**

To measure performance over the year, quarterly targets are added to the performance scorecard template.

Step 4: Performance Evaluation

Evaluation is a careful and systematic retrospective assessment of the design, implementation, and results of activities. The aim of evaluation is to determine the value of the fulfilment of objectives, efficiency, effectiveness, impact, and sustainability.

#### **Step 5: Performance Reporting**

At a managerial/subordinate level, performance should be monitored daily. Organisational performance is reported quarterly, bi-annually and annually. In addition to formal reporting, the political leadership also reports to communities regularly through outreach programmes.

Table 7.1: Reporting mandates and recipients

| Frequency and nature of report  | Mandate   | Recipients   |
|---|---|--|
| Quarterly progress report   | Section 41 (1) (e) of the Systems Act<br>Section 166 (2) (a) (v) and (vii) of the Municipal Management Finance Act (MFMA)<br>Regulation 7 of Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations. | 1. Municipal Manager<br>2. Executive Mayor<br>3. Mayoral Committee<br>4. Audit Committee   |
| Mid-year performance assessment (assessment and report due by 25 January each year)                             | Section 72 of the MFMA<br>Section 13 (2) (a) of Municipal Planning Performance Management Regulations 2001.   | 1. Municipal Manager<br>2. Executive Mayor<br>3. Mayoral Committee<br>4. Council<br>5. Audit Committee<br>6. National Treasury<br>7. Provincial Government                     |
| Annual report (to be tabled before Council by 31 January (draft and approved / published by 31 March each year) | Sections 121 and 127 of the MFMA, as read with<br>Section 46 of the Systems Act and<br>Section 6 of the Systems Amendment Act.  | 1. Executive Mayor<br>2. Mayoral Committee<br>3. Council<br>4. Audit Committee<br>5. Auditor-General<br>6. National Treasury<br>7. Provincial Government<br>8. Local Community |

## 5. **REVISED PERFORMANCE MONITORING, REPORTING AND EVALUATION FRAMEWORK**

Performance monitoring, reporting and evaluation is a value adding function to the Rustenburg Local Municipality's progress and success. The Performance Management System (PMS) of the city is used to measure organisational and individual performance, thus, enhancing the achievement of the municipality's long-term objectives, goals and strategies. To properly execute its functions in monitoring, reporting and evaluation, the city formalised and institutionalized the functions in 2001. A Performance Management System (PMS) Framework was developed to drive and guide organization Performance.

The PMS Framework is aligned to the strategic plans (SDG, NDP, PDS, Master Plan, IDP and SDBIP) of the municipality in order to respond to the needs of the organization.

### 5.1 **LEGISLATIVE FRAMEWORK FOR MONITORING AND EVALUATION**

The Performance, monitoring, reporting and evaluation at the Rustenburg Local Municipality is informed by the following legislations and policies:

| Legislation/Policy                      | Requirements for monitoring and evaluation   |
|---|--|
| Municipal Systems Act, (Act 32 of 2000) | The MSA requires all municipalities to promote a culture of performance through the establishment of a PMS, which must set Key Performance Indicators (KPI) and targets, as well as monitor, review and report on municipal performance, based |

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  | on indicators linked to the Integrated Development Plan (IDP), including the national indicators prescribed by National Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (CoGTA)   |
| Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations (MPPMR):   | MPPMR (2001) requires that a municipality's Integrated Development Plan (IDP) identifies all Key Performance Indicators (KPIs) set by the municipality. The 2001 Regulations, also defines a municipality's performance management system as a framework that describes and represents how the municipality's cycle and processes of performance planning, monitoring, measurement, review and reporting and improvement will be conducted including determining the roles of different role-players in the PMS process. The regulations require that in developing a PMS, a municipality must ensure it complies with the requirements of the MSA by demonstrating the operation and management of the PMS, clarifying roles and responsibilities, determining frequency of reporting and accountability lines for performance as well as ensuring alignment of IDP processes with employee performance management. |
| Municipal Finance Management Act, (Act 56 of 2003) (MFMA)  | The MFMA sets out reporting obligations of the municipality on the budget and IDP implementation, to promote sound financial management.   |
| Municipal Performance Regulations for Municipal Managers and Managers Directly Accountable to Municipal Managers (2006): | Set out how the performance of municipal managers will be directed, monitored and improved.  |
| Framework for Managing Programme Performance Information   | The framework set out how performance information should be managed by government institutions. It provides guidance on the SMART principle which mainly applies to KPIs and Targets.  |
| National Evaluation Policy Framework   | The Framework is a reference guide for evaluations studies that can be undertaken by government institutions   |
| Policy Framework for the Government-Wide Monitoring and Evaluation   | This is an apex document that guides the establishment and institutionalization of monitoring and evaluation in government wide.   |

Performance of the Municipality is measured against the performance indicators and targets in its Integrated Development Plan (IDP), Annual Budget and Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP).

The municipality reports to Council in terms of the six (6) National Government's Strategic Key Performance Areas for local government, which are:

1. Basic Service Delivery.
2. Local Economic Development.
3. Municipal Institutional Transformation and Development.
4. Municipal Financial Viability and Management,
5. Good Governance and Public Participation, and
6. Spatial Rationale.